Andrews' Series of Latin School Books.

PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,

47 WASHINGTON STREET, BOSTON.

THE LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS prepared by Prof. E. A. ANDREWS, exclusive of his Latin-English Lexicon, founded on the Latin-German Lexicon of Dr. Freund, constitute two distinct series, adapted to different and distinct purposes. The basis of the First Series is Andrews' First Latin Book; of the Second, Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

FIRST SERIES.

This Series is designed expressly for those who commence the study of Latin at a very early age, and for such as intend to pursue it to a limited extent only, or merely as subsidiary to the acquisition of a good English education. It consists of the following works, viz.:—

1. Andrews' First Latin Book; or Progressive Lessons in Reading and Writing Latin. This small volume contains most of the leading principles and grammatical forms of the Latin language, and, by the logical precision of its rules and definitions, is admirably fitted to serve as an introduction to the study of general grammar. The work is divided into lessons of convenient length, which are so arranged that the student will, in all cases, be prepared to enter upon the study of each successive lesson, by possessing a thorough knowledge of those which preceded it. The lessons generally consist of three parts:—1st. The statement of important principles in the form of rules or definitions, or the exhibition of orthographical or etymological forms; 2d. Exercises, designed to illustrate such principles or forms; and 3d. Questions, intended to assist the student in preparing his lesson. In addition to the grammatical lessons contained in this volume, a few pages of Reading Lessons are annexed, and these are followed by a Dictionary comprising all the Latin words contained in the work. This book is adapted to the use of all schools above the grade of primary schools, including also Academies and Female Seminaries. It is prepared in such a manner that it can be used with little difficulty by any intelligent parent or teacher, with no previous knowledge of the language.

2. The Latin Reader, with a Dictionary and Notes, containing explanations of difficult idioms, and numerous references to the Lessons contained in the First Latin Book.

3. The Viri Romæ, with a Dictionary and Notes, referring, like those of the Reader, to the First Latin Book. This series of three small volumes, if faithfully studied according to the directions contained in them, will not only render the student a very tolerable proficient in the principles of the Latin language and in the knowledge of its roots, from which so many words of his English language are derived, but will constitute the best preparation for a thorough study of the English grammar.

SECOND SERIES.

NOTE.—The "Latin Reader" and the "Viri Romæ," in this series, are the same as in the first series.

This Series is designed more especially for those who are intending to become thoroughly acquainted with the Latin language, and with the principal classical authors of that language. It consists of the following works:—

1. Latin Lessons. This small volume is designed for the younger classes of Latin students, who intend ultimately to take up the larger Grammar, but to whom that work would, at first, appear too formidable. It contains the prominent principles of Latin grammar, expressed in the same language as in the larger Grammar, and likewise Reading and Writing Lessons, with a Dictionary of the Latin words and phrases occurring in the Lessons.

2. Latin Grammar. Revised, with Corrections and Additions. A Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By Professors E. A. ANDREWS and S. STODDARD. This work, which for many years has been the text-book in the department of Latin Grammar, claims the merit of having first introduced into the schools of this country the subject of grammatical analysis, which now occupies a conspicuous place in so many grammars of the English language. More than twenty years have elapsed since the first publication of this Grammar, and it is hardly necessary to say that its merits—placing it in a practical view, preëminently above every other Latin Grammar—have been so fully appreciated that it has been adopted as a Text Book in nearly every College and Seminary in the country. The present edition has not only been *thoroughly revised and corrected (two years of continuous labor having been devoted to its careful revision and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it aims to occupy,)* but it contains at least *one third* more matter than the previous editions. To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals, and of the more recent German grammars, was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end particular attention was directed:—1st. *To the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language*; 2d. *To a clear exposition of its inflectional changes*; 3d. *To a proper basis of its syntax*; and 4th. *To greater precision in rules and definitions.*

3. Questions on the Grammar. This little volume is intended to aid the student in preparing his lessons, and the teacher in conducting his recitations.

4. A Synopsis of Latin Grammar, comprising the Latin Paradigms, and the Principal Rules of Latin Etymology and Syntax. The few pages composing this work contain those portions of the Grammar to which the student has occasion to refer most frequently in the preparation of his daily lessons.

5. Latin Reader. The Reader, by means of two separate and distinct sets of notes, is equally adapted for use in connection either with the First Latin Book or the Latin Grammar.

6. Viri Romæ. This volume, like the Reader, is furnished with notes and references, both to the First Latin Book and to the Latin Grammar. The principal difference in the two sets of notes found in each of these volumes consists in the somewhat greater fulness of those which belong to the smaller series.

7. Latin Exercises. This work contains exercises in every department of the Latin Grammar, and is so arranged that it may be studied in connection with the Grammar through every stage of the preparatory course. It is designed to prepare the way for original composition in the Latin language, both in prose and verse.

8. A Key to Latin Exercises. This Key, in which all the exercises in the preceding volume are fully corrected, is intended for the use of teachers only.

9. Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this edition of Cæsar has been formed by reference to the best German editions. The Notes are principally grammatical. The Dictionary, which, like all the others in the series, was prepared with great labor, contains the usual significations of the words, together with an explanation of all such phrases as might otherwise perplex the student.

10. Sallust. Sallust's Jugurthine War and Conspiracy of Cataline, with a Dictionary and Notes. The text of this work, which was based upon that of Cortius, has been modified by reference to the best modern editions, especially by those of Kritz and Geriach; and its orthography is, in

general, conformed to that of Pottier and Planche. The Dictionaries of Cæsar and Sallust connected with this series are original works, and, in connection with the Notes in each volume, furnish a very complete and satisfactory apparatus for the study of these two authors.

11. Ovid. Selections from the Metamorphoses and Heroides of Ovid, with Notes, Grammatical References, and Exercises in Scanning. These selections from Ovid are designed as an introduction to Latin poetry. They are accompanied with numerous brief notes explanatory of difficult phrases, of obscure historical or mythological allusions, and especially of grammatical difficulties. To these are added such Exercises in Scanning as serve fully to introduce the student to a knowledge of Latin prosody, and especially of the structure and laws of hexameter and pentameter verse.

In announcing the Revised Edition of ANDREWS AND STODDARD'S LATIN GRAMMAR, the Publishers believe it to be quite unnecessary to speak of the merits of the work. The fact that in the space of about *Twenty Years*, SIXTY-FIVE EDITIONS, numbering above **Two Hundred Thousand Copies**, have been required for the purpose of meeting the steadily increasing demand for the work, sufficiently evinces the estimation in which it has been held. In preparing this Revised and Enlarged Edition, every portion of the original work has been reconsidered in the light of the experience of twenty years spent by the present editor in studies connected with this department of education, and with the aid of numerous publications in the same department, which, during this period, have issued from the European press. The results of this labor are apparent on almost every page, in new modifications of the old materials, and especially in such additional information in regard to its various topics as the present advanced state of classical education in this country seemed obviously to demand. The publishers commend this new edition to the attention of Teachers throughout the country, and express the hope that in its present form it will be deemed worthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received.

The following are extracts from a few of the many letters the Publishers have received from teachers from all parts of the country in commendation of this work:—

The revised edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar is without doubt the best published in America. I have no doubt that the time is near at hand when this series of works will, by all lovers of the classics, be considered as the 'National Series.' The pronunciation is now by the same class considered the American Standard. I will hail with joy the day when every college and school in our country shall have adopted Prof Andrews' series as the foundation of true classic knowledge. As such I consider it, and for that reason have I used it since I first knew its existence.—*Martin Armstrong, Potomac Seminary, Romney, Va.*

Allow me to say, after a careful examination, that, in my judgment, it is the best manual of Latin Grammar to be found in the English language. In revising it the author has preserved the happy medium between saying too much and too little, so desirable for a Latin text-book for this country. In philosophical arrangement, simplicity of expression, and for brevity and fulness, it must entitle the author to the first rank in American classical scholarship. I shall use it, in my classes, and recommend it to all teachers of Latin in this country.—*N. E. Cobleigh, Professor of Ancient Languages and Literature, in Lawrence University, Appleton, Wis.*

I most heartily concur in the above recommendation.—*F. O. Blair, Professor in Lawrence University.*

The Grammar, as revised, is, I think, for school purposes superior to any work of the kind yet published in America. Philosophic in its arrangement and definitions, and full and accurate in its details, it sets forth the results of the learned researches of the Germans in language easy of comprehension and suitable for reference in daily recitations.—*L. H. Deneen, Lebanon, Illinois.*

I am highly pleased with the Revised Edition, and consider the additions as decided improvements In my opinion Dr. Andrews' works surpass all others in the market. I see no reason why the Grammar should not now supersede even Zumpt's, both in the study and recitation rooms.—*Sidney A. Norton, Hamilton, Ohio.*

NEW SERIES OF LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS.

I have reason to believe that the improvements, introduced into the last edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar by my respected and lamented friend Dr. Andrews, a little before his death, add very decidedly to the value of a work, which has done more to give the knowledge of that language to the youth of this country than any, perhaps than all others.—*Theodore W. Woolsey, President of Yale College, New Haven.*

No book, probably, has done more to improve classical training in American schools than Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar. Its use is almost universal; and where it has not itself been adopted as a manual, it has made grammars of similar excellence necessary. The last edition, the sixty-fifth, was carefully revised by the lamented Dr Andrews, not long before his death, by whom it was greatly enlarged by the incorporation of much valuable information, derived mainly from the last edition of the Latin Grammar of Professor Zumpt. It will therefore be found to be much improved as a repository of the principles and facts of the Latin language.—*Thomas A. Thacher, Professor of Latin in Yale College, New Haven.*

It is unnecessary to commend a Latin Grammar, which has been for twenty years in common use in our Colleges, and has generally superseded all others. The Revised Edition contains the results of the labors of Dr. Andrews, during all that time, on various Latin Classics, and on his great Latin Lexicon; and cannot, therefore, but be greatly improved.—*Edward Robinson, D. D., LL. D., Prof of Biblical Literature in Union Theol. Seminary, New York City.*

I regard Andrews' and Stoddard's new Latin Grammar, as an exceedingly valuable work. It evidently contains the results of the Author's careful and long continued investigation, and from its fulness, clearness, and accuracy, will undoubtedly become the Standard Latin Grammar of this Continent. In Western New York, we have for a long time been using the earlier editions, and they have rapidly won upon the public regard. This new edition will give it a stronger claim upon our favor. It must rapidly supersede all others. I can unhesitatingly recommend the New Grammar as the best in use.—*Lewis H. Clark, Principal of Sodus Academy, Wayne Co., N. Y.*

I have looked over the new edition of the Grammar with great interest. It is now eighteen years since I introduced it into this college, and I have never felt inclined to change it for any other. The revision, without changing its general character, has added greatly to its fulness and completeness. It is now fully equal to Zumpt's in these respects, and far superior to it in adaptation to the class room. There is no *other* school grammar that can pretend to compare with it. I have introduced the new edition here, and have no idea I shall ever wish to substitute another. The services of Prof. Andrews in the cause of classical learning in the United States cannot be over estimated.—*M. Sturgus, Professor in Hanover College, Indiana.*

I am willing to say that I am decidedly in favor of Andrews' Latin Series.—*Geo. Gale, Galesville University, Wisconsin.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar I consider decidedly the best Latin Grammar ever published.—*Ransom Norton, North Livermore, Maine.*

Such a work as Andrews and Stoddard's Revised Latin Grammar needs no recommendation, it speaks for itself.—*A. A. Keen, Professor of Greek and Latin, Tufts College, Medford, Ms.*

I have examined the revised edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and think it a complete success. I see it has all of Zumpt's merits and none of his defects, and welcome its advent with great pleasure.—*James M. Whiton, Hopkins Grammar School, New Haven, Conn.*

I have examined Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and say, without hesitation, that the principles of the Latin language can be more easily and systematically acquired from it than any work I have ever used. The arrangement and simplicity of its terms are such as to make it easily comprehended by the beginner, while, at the same time, its copiousness is sufficient for the most advanced student. The author has evidently noted and profited by the defects in this respect of most of the Latin Grammars now in use.—*C. W. Field, Mauch Chunk. Pa.*

The superior merits of the original work are too well known and appreciated to need any commendation from me. I have had some means of knowing how great pains and labor Dr. Andrews has bestowed upon this final revision and improvement of the work, and, therefore, was not unprepared to find its acknowledged excellence materially increased, and I do not hesitate to say, that its value has been greatly enhanced, and that it has been brought as near as practicable to the present state of philological science.—*John D. Philbrick, Superintendent of Public Schools, city of Boston.*

I have looked the Grammar through with much care and a great degree of satisfaction, and I unhesitatingly pronounce it superior to any Latin Grammar in method and manner of discussion, and happily adapted to the wants of both teachers and pupils.—*J. W. Simonds, Principal of New England Christian Institute, Andover, N. H.*

4

We have lately introduced the Revised Edition, and regard it as a great improvement upon former editions. We shall use it exclusively in future.—*E. Flint, Jr., Principal of Lee High School.*

After a due examination. I am happy to state that the Author has admirably accomplished the objects which he aimed at in making this last revision. He has added much that is in the highest degree valuable without materially changing the arrangement of the original work. The work appears to me well adapted to the daily use of our Classical Schools, and I shall hereafter direct my classes to use it.—*C. L. Cushman, Principal of Peabody High School, South Danvers, Ms.*

The Revised Grammar seems to me greatly improved and to be every thing a scholar could wish.—*Z. B. Sturgis, Charlestown, Indiana.*

I have subjected the Revised Edition to the test of actual use in the recitation room, and am persuaded that in its present form it decidedly surpasses every other Latin Grammar in point of adaptation to the wants of students in our Academies, High Schools and Colleges.—*William S. Palmer, Central High School, Cleaveland, Ohio.*

I think Andrews' Series of Latin Works the most systematic and best arranged course I have ever seen,—and believe if our pupils would use them altogether, we should find them much better scholars. I shall use them wholly in my school.—*A. C. Stockin, Principal of Monmouth Academy, Maine.*

The examination of the Revised Edition has afforded me very great pleasure, and leads me to express the deep and sincere conviction that it is the most complete Grammar of the Latin language with which I am acquainted, and best adapted for ready consultation upon any subject connected with the study of Latin Authors. The paper, the typography, and the binding,—the whole style of publication—are such as to commend the good taste and judgment of the Publishers.—*J. R. Boyd, Principal of Maplewood Young Ladies Institute, Pittsfield, Mass.*

I find the Revised Edition to be just what is needed for a Latin Grammar,—clear, comprehensive, yet concise, in the subject matter. I shall introduce it as a permanent textbook.—*B. F. Duke, Principal of Clyde High School, Wayne Co., N. Y.*

I have carefully examined your Revised Edition throughout, particularly the Corrections and Additions. It now appears to me all that can be desired. It seems like parting with a familiar friend to lay aside the *old* edition, with its many excellencies, and adopt the *new*, but I shall cheerfully make the sacrifice for the greater benefit that will accrue to those commencing the study of Latin from time to time.—*J. H. Graham, Principal of Northfield Institution, Vermont.*

I thought before that the *old edition* was entitled to the appellation of " *The* Latin Grammar," but I perceive its value has been much increased by the numerous emendations and additions of Prof. Andrews. The Grammar is now fitted to be a complete hand-book for the Latin scholar during his whole course.—*E. W. Johnson, Canton Academy, Canton, N. Y.*

I unhesitatingly pronounce the Revised Edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar the best Grammar of the Latin Language, and shall certainly use my influence in its behalf.—*H. E. J. Clute, Edinboro', Pa.*

After a thorough examination, I have no hesitation in pronouncing it the best Latin Grammar for the purposes of the recitation room that I have ever examined. In its present form it ought certainly to displace a large majority of the Grammars in common use. Its rules of Syntax are expressed with accuracy and precision, and are in fact, what all rules ought to be, reliable guides to the learner.—*James W. Andrews, Principal of Hopewell Academy, Penn.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, in the arrangement and adaptation to the learner, has excelled all others, and the revised edition is certainly a great improvement, and I do believe is better adapted to the wants of the student than any other. The whole seems to be critically revised and corrected. Prof. Andrews was truly the student's benefactor.—*M. L. Severance, North Troy, Vermont.*

It gives me great pleasure to bear my testimony to the superior merits of the Latin Grammar edited by Professor Andrews and Mr. Stoddard. I express most cheerfully, unhesitatingly, and decidedly, my preference of this Grammar to that of Adam, which has, for so long a time, kept almost undisputed sway in our schools.—*Dr. C. Beck, Cambridge.*

I know of no Grammar published in this country, which promises to answer so well the purposes of elementary classical instruction, and shall be glad to see it introduced into our best schools.—*Charles K. Dillaway, Boston.*

Your new Latin Grammar appears to me much better suited to the use of students than any other grammar I am acquainted with.—*Prof. Wm. M. Holland, Hartford, Ct.*

I have adopted the Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard in the school under my charge, believing it better adapted, upon the whole, for elementary instruction than any similar work which I have examined. It combines the improvements of the recent German works on the subject with the best features of that old favorite of the schools, Dr. Adam's Latin Grammar.—*Henry Drisler, Professor of Latin in Columbia College.*

A careful review of the Revised Edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, shows that this favorite text-book still continues to deserve the affections and confidence of Teachers and Pupils, incorporating as it does the results of Prof. Andrews' own constant study for many years with the investigations of English and German Philologists. No other Grammar is now so well fitted to meet the wants of the country as the rapid demand for it will show beyond doubt.—*A. S. Hartwell, University of St. Louis.*

This Grammar of the Latin Language, now universally pronounced *the very best*, is greatly improved by the corrections, revisions and additions of this revised edition. We do not believe a text-book was ever written which introduced so great an improvement in the method of teaching Latin, as this has done. We wish the revised edition the greatest success, which we are sure it merits.—*Rhode Island Schoolmaster.*

I have examined your revised edition with considerable care, and do not hesitate to pronounce it a great improvement upon the old editions, and as near perfection as we are likely to have. I have no doubt it will come into general use.—*A. Williams, Professor of Latin, Jefferson College, Canonsburg, Pa.*

I have been much interested in the Revised Edition. The improvement is very striking, and I shall no longer think of giving it up and putting Zumpt in its place. I am much pleased with the great improvement in the typography. You have given to our schools a book fifty per cent better in every respect, and I trust you will have your reward in largely increased sales.—*William J. Rolfe, Master of Oliver High School, Lawrence, Ms.*

I can with much pleasure say that your Grammar seems to me much better adapted to the present condition and wants of our schools than any one with which I am acquainted, and to supply that which has long been wanted—a good Latin Grammar for common use.—*F. Gardner, Principal of Boston Latin School.*

The Latin Grammar of Andrews and Stoddard is deserving, in my opinion, of the approbation which so many of our ablest teachers have bestowed upon it. It is believed that, of all the grammars before the public, this has greatly the advantage, in regard both to the excellence of its arrangement, and the accuracy and copiousness of its information.—*H. B. Hackett, Prof. of Biblical Literature in Newton Theological Seminary.*

The universal favor with which this Grammar is received was not unexpected. It will bear a thorough and discriminating examination. In the use of well-defined and expressive terms, especially in the syntax, we know of no Latin or Greek grammar which is to be compared to this.—*American Quarterly Register.*

These works will furnish a series of elementary publications for the study of Latin altogether in advance of any thing which has hitherto appeared, either in this country or in England.—*American Biblical Repository.*

I cheerfully and decidedly bear testimony to the superior excellence of Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar to any manual of the kind with which I am acquainted. Every part bears the impress of a careful compiler. The *principles* of syntax are happily developed in the rules, whilst those relating to the moods and tenses supply an important deficiency in our former grammars. The rules of prosody are also clearly and fully exhibited.—*Rev. Lyman Coleman, Manchester, Vt.*

This work bears evident marks of great care and skill, and ripe and accurate scholarship in the authors. We cordially commend it to the student and teacher.—*Biblical Repository.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar is what I expected it would be—an excellent book. We cannot hesitate a moment in laying aside the books now in use, and introducing this.—*Rev. J. Penney, D. D., New York.*

Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar bears throughout evidence of original and thorough investigation and sound criticism. It is, in my apprehension, so far as simplicity is concerned, on the one hand, and philosophical views and sound scholarship on the other, far preferable to other grammars; a work at the same time highly creditable to its authors and to our country.—*Professor A. Packard, Bowdoin College, Maine.*

I do not hesitate to pronounce Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar superior to any other with which I am acquainted. I have never seen, any where, a greater amount of valuable matter compressed within limits equally narrow.—*Hon. John Hall, Principal of Ellington School, Conn.*

We have no hesitation in pronouncing this Grammar decidedly superior to any now in use.—*Boston Recorder.*

Dr. Robinson's Gesenius.

Robinson's Hebrew Lexicon. Sixth Edition, Revised and Stereotyped. A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament, including the Biblical Chaldee. Translated from the Latin of William Gesenius, late Professor of Theology in the University of Halle-Wittemberg. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D., Professor of Biblical Literature in the Union Theological Seminary, New York. A new edition, with corrections and large additions, partly furnished by the author in manuscript, and partly condensed from his larger Thesaurus, as compiled by Roediger. These corrections and additions were made by Dr. Gesenius, during an interval of several years, while carrying his Thesaurus through the press, and were transcribed and furnished by him expressly for this edition. They will be found to be very numerous, every page having been materially corrected and enlarged, and a large number of articles having been re-written. It is printed on a new type, the face and cut of which is very beautiful, and has been highly commended and approved.

Dr. Robinson had already been trained to the business of lexicographical labor, when he began the translation of the present work. He is, in an uncommon degree, master of his own native tongue. He has diligence, patience, perseverance—yea, the iron diligence of Gesenius himself. For aught that I have yet been able to discover, all that can reasonably be expected or desired, has been done by the translator; not only as to rendering the work into English, but as to the manner and the accuracy of printing. The work will speak for itself, on the first opening. It does honor, in its appearance, to editor, printers, and publishers. I have only to add my hearty wish, that its beautiful white pages may be consulted and turned over, until they become thoroughly worn with the hands of the purchasers.—*Prof. Stuart, in the Biblical Repository.*

There is no lexicon in English that can be put on a level with Robinson's. I recommend the present as the best Lexicon of the Hebrew and Biblical Chaldee which an English scholar can have.—*Rev. Dr. Samuel Davidson, of London.*

Gesenius' Lexicon is known wherever Hebrew is studied. On the merits of this work criticism has long ago pronounced its verdict of approval.—*London Jewish Chronicle.*

This is a very beautiful and complete edition of the best Hebrew Lexicon ever yet produced. Gesenius, as a Hebrew philologist, is unequalled.—*London Clerical Journal.*

This is decidedly the most complete edition of Gesenius' Manual Hebrew Lexicon.—*London Journal of Sacred Literature.*

Robinson's Harmony of the Gospels, in Greek.

A Harmony of the Four Gospels, in Greek, according to the text of Hahn. Newly arranged, with Explanatory Notes, by EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D., Professor of Biblical Literature in the Union Theological Seminary, New York. Revised Edition.

This work of P.. Robinson confines itself to the legitimate sphere of a Harmony of the Gospels; and we do not hesitate to say that in this sphere it will be found to be all that a Harmony need or can be. The original text is printed with accuracy and elegance. It is a feast to the eyes to look upon a page of so much beauty. Its arrangement is distinguished for simplicity and convenience. No one will ever be able to comprehend the relations of the Gospels to each other, or acquire an exact knowledge of their contents, unless he studies them with the aid of a Harmony. The present work furnishes in this respect just the facility which is needed; and we trust that among its other effects, it will serve to direct attention more strongly to the importance of this mode of study.—*Prof. Hackett, of Newton Theological Seminary.*

Palmer's Arithmetic.

Arithmetic, Oral and Written, practically applied by means of Suggestive Questions. By THOMAS H. PALMER, Author of the Prize Essay on Education, entitled the "Teacher's Manual," "The Moral Instructor," etc.

Robinson's Harmony of the Gospels, in English.

A Harmony of the Four Gospels, in English, according to the common version; newly arranged, with Explanatory Notes. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D.

The object of this work is to obtain a full and consecutive account of all the facts of our Lord's life and ministry. In order to do this, the four gospel narratives have been so brought together, as to present as nearly as possible the true chronological order, and where the same transaction is described by more than one writer, the different accounts are placed side by side, so as to fill out and supply each other. Such an arrangement affords the only full and perfect survey of all the testimony relating to any and every portion of our Lord's history. The evangelists are thus made their own best interpreters; and it is shown how wonderfully they are supplementary to each other in minute as well as in important particulars, and in this way is brought out fully and clearly the fundamental characteristics of their testimony, unity in diversity. To Bible classes, Sabbath schools, and all who love and seek the truth in their closets and in their families, this work will be found a useful assistant.

I have used "Robinson's English Harmony" in teaching a Bible Class. The result, in my own mind, is a conviction of the great merits of this work, and its adaptation to impart the highest life and interest to Bible Class exercises, and generally to the diligent study of the Gospel. It is much to be desired that every one accustomed to searching the Scriptures should have this invaluable aid.—*Rev. Dr. Skinner, New York.*

Robinson's Dictionary of the Bible.

Robinson's Bible Dictionary. A Dictionary for the use of Schools and Young Persons. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D. D., LL. D. Illustrated with Engravings on wood, and Maps of Canaan, Judea, Asia Minor, and the Peninsula of Mount Sinai, Idumea, etc.

Elements of Astronomy.

The Elements of Astronomy; or The World as it is and as it Appears. By the author of "Theory of Teaching," "Edward's First Lessons in Grammar," etc. Revised in manuscript by George P. Bond, Esq., of the Cambridge Observatory, to whom the author is also indebted for superintending its passage through the press.

Scott's Family Bible.

Scott's Family Bible. Boston Stereotype Edition. 6 vols. royal 8vo., containing all the Notes, Practical Observations, Marginal References, and Critical Remarks, as in the most approved London edition, with a line engraved likeness of the Author, Family Record, etc.

This Edition is the only one that has, or can have, the benefit of the final Additions and Emendations of the Author. The extent of these may be judged from the fact that upwards of *Four Hundred Pages of letter-press were added;* and as they consist chiefly of Critical Remarks, their importance to the Biblical student is at once apparent. The Preface to the entire work contains an elaborate and compendious view of the evidences that the Holy Scriptures were given by inspiration of God. Prefixed to each Book, both in the Old and New Testament, is an Introduction, or statement of its purport and intent. There are also copious Marginal References, with various Tables, a Chronological Index, and a copious Topical Index.

☞ *Orders solicited.*

A

GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE;

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

E. A. ANDREWS AND S. STODDARD.

THE SIXTY-FIFTH EDITION.

REVISED WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS,

BY E. A. ANDREWS, LL. D.

BOSTON:
PUBLISHED BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,
47 Washington Street.
1861.

_7 0_

_12/3/1890_

PREFACE.

As more than twenty years have elapsed, since the first publication of this Grammar, it can scarcely be necessary, in offering to the public a revised edition of the work, to make more than a passing allusion to its original plan or to the circumstances to which it owed its origin.

For some years previous to the date of its publication, the progress of classical learning in Europe, and particularly in Germany, had been such, as plainly to indicate the necessity of a corresponding advance in the manuals of Latin grammar employed in the schools of this country. Their deficiencies had indeed become so apparent, that various attempts had already been made to furnish a remedy by means of translations of German grammars; but none of these, however excellent in many respects, had seemed to be fully adapted to the purpose for which they were intended.

To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals and of the more recent German grammars was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end their attention was directed, first to the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language, secondly to a clearer exposition of its inflectional changes, thirdly to the proper basis of its syntax, and fourthly to greater precision in its rules and definitions.

The system of rules for the division and accentuation of Latin words, prepared in pursuance of the plan which has just been specified, was accordingly more copious than any previously found in the Latin grammars in common use in this country. For the purpose also of preventing the formation of erroneous habits of pronunciation in the early part of the student's course, the penultimate quantities of all Latin words occurring in the Grammar were carefully marked, unless determinable by some general rule, and the paradigms were divided and accented in such a manner as to indicate their true pronunciation.

In their treatment of Latin etymology, the authors aimed to render its study less a mere exercise of memory, and in a greater degree an efficient aid in the general cultivation of the mental powers. The principal means adopted for this purpose consisted in the practical distinction, every where made in treating inflected words, between the root, or ground-form, and the termination.

The third prominent peculiarity of the original work was its direct derivation of the rules of Syntax from the logical analysis of sentences, and its distinct specification of the particular use of each of the several words of which a sentence is composed. This method of treating syntax—a method previously unknown in the schools of this country—has, since that period, been extensively adopted, and in some instances greatly extended, particularly in a portion of the English grammars recently published in this country, and has probably contributed more to the advancement of grammatical science, than any other innovation of modern times.

The errors noticed in the original work have been corrected, as successive editions have issued from the press, but no opportunity has occurred, until the present, of thoroughly revising it in every part. Two years of continuous labor have now been devoted to its revision, and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it originally aspired to occupy.

In all the modifications which have now been made, I have aimed to accomplish these two purposes—to preserve, as far as possible, the identity of the work, and at the same time to bring it as near, as should be practicable, to the present state of philological science. Hence, while I have made no changes either in language or arrangement, but such as appeared to me quite necessary, I have omitted none which logical accuracy or requisite fulness of explanation seemed to demand. In doing even this it soon became evident, that the changes and additions must be more numerous, than would well consist with the convenient use of the old and the new editions in the same classes. Though not insensible of the trouble occasioned to the teacher by alterations in a familiar text-book, I could not but suppose, that such modifications as the progress of the last twenty years had rendered necessary, would still be welcomed by him, notwithstanding the personal inconvenience arising from the disturbance of his previous associations. To his pupils, who will have known no other form of the Grammar, than that in which it now appears, the work, it is believed, will not only be as easy of comprehension in its new, as in its old form, but in its practical application far more satisfactory.

Of the minor changes and additions occurring on almost every page, and even of the occasional rearrangement of small portions of the materials, it is unnecessary to speak particularly. The student familiar with former editions will at once detect these slight modifications, and note them in his memory for future use; and though he may fail to find a rule, exception, or remark on the page where he has been wont to see it, he will still meet with it in the same relative position,—in the same section and subdivision of the section in which it formerly appeared.

In the department of Orthoëpy will now be found some account of the Continental mode of pronouncing Latin; and, by means of the joint exhibition of

this and of the English methods, the student will be able to use the Grammar with equal facility, whether choosing to adhere to the usual pronunciation of English and American scholars, or preferring that of the continental schools.

In the Etymology of nouns, no other alteration need be specified, except the introduction, in the third declension, of "Rules for forming the nominative singular from the root." These are copied, in a modified form, from the editor's First Latin Book. In themselves they are of considerable utility in showing the mutual relations between the sounds of certain letters, and they are also closely connected with corresponding changes in some of the verbal roots. In the Etymology of adjectives, besides the minor modifications already alluded to, a few changes in arrangement have been made in those sections which relate to Comparison. To pronouns have been added some remarks on Pronominal Adjectives, which seemed to require a more particular notice, than they had heretofore received, both in their relation to each other and to the Adverbial Correlatives. The Etymology of particles has been treated somewhat more fully than in former editions—a fulness especially observable in relation to adverbs and conjunctions, and which was rendered necessary by the more extended treatment of those particles in the revised Syntax.

In almost every section of the Syntax the student will meet with modifications and especially with additions, which, as in other parts of the work, are introduced in such a manner as seldom to interfere with the references made to former editions in the series based upon this Grammar. The principal exception to the latter remark is to be found in sections 247—251, which relate to certain uses of the ablative.

A comparison of the Prosody in the present and former editions will show, that it has been revised with minute care in every part. Similar attention has also been given to the Appendix, in which will be found some additions relating to Roman Money, Weights and Measures. For the greater convenience of the student the Index in this edition has been much enlarged.

In conclusion, I would briefly indicate the principal sources from which have been derived the various additions and corrections, to which allusion has been made. In preparing the original work, the earlier editions of Zumpt's Grammar were consulted at almost every step, and while frequent use was made of the grammars of Scheller, Grant, Adam, Ruddiman, Hickie and others, the treatises of Zumpt were even then regarded as the most valuable embodiment of the principles of Latin philology. It was therefore natural and almost unavoidable, in revising a work which had in so many points received both its form and its substance from the earlier labors of that distinguished grammarian, to look to his maturer works for many of the materials by means of which our original sketch should be made more complete. Accordingly I have constantly consulted the last edition of his Grammar, translated by Dr. Schmitz, and have freely incorporated in this edition such

1*

of its materials, as were suited to my purpose   In most cases his ideas have
been either expressed in my own language, or in language so modified as to
suit the general plan of my work.   In the Etymology, and not unfrequently in
the Syntax also, the copious Grammar of Ramshorn has furnished valuable
materials; and the Grammars of Key and of Kühner, the latter translated by
Prof. Champlin, have been consulted with profit and satisfaction.   In the
sections comprising conjunctions, and especially in those relating to gram-
matical analysis, I am happy to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. S.
Greene of Brown University.   To the sources already specified I must add the
Latin Lexicon of Dr. Freund, in editing a translation of which I had frequent
occasion to note such matters as promised to be of utility in the revision of this
Grammar.   The additions in the Appendix relating to Roman money, etc.,
are taken principally from Dr. Riddle's translation of Dr. Freund's School
Dictionary.   To these references I will only add, that such other notes re-
lating to Latin philology, as I have made during the past twenty years, so
far as they were adapted to my purpose, have either been used in my former
occasional corrections, or are incorporated in the present edition.

In taking a final leave of the earliest of the elementary Latin works with
which my name has been associated, and with which, in my own mind, must
ever be connected the pleasant memory of my early friend and associate,
Prof. Stoddard, I trust I shall be pardoned in commending it once more to
the kind indulgence of the teachers of this country, and in expressing the
hope that, in its present form, it will be deemed not altogether unworthy of a
continuance of the favor which it has so long received.   I cannot indeed ven-
ture to indulge the hope, that all the imperfections of the work have even now
been removed, or that, in my attempts to render it more perfect, I may not
sometimes have fallen into new errors; but this I can truly say, that since its
first publication I have devoted much time to its revision, and have sought to
manifest my sense of the kindness with which it has been received, by doing
all in my power to render it less unworthy of public favor.

                                                        E. A. ANDREWS.

New Britain, Conn., Oct., 1857.

CONTENTS.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

§ 1. The Latin language is the language spoken by the ancient Romans. Latin Grammar teaches the principles of the Latin language. These relate,

1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words;
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification.

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoëpy; the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of written language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

2. The Romans used only the capital letters.
3. *I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.
4. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* occurs only at the beginning of a few words before *a*, and even in these *c* is commonly used, except in their abbreviated form; as, *K* or *Kal.* for *Kalendæ* or *Calendæ*, the Calends.
5. *Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.
6. *H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ **3.**   Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

1. The vowels are . . . . *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

The consonants are
divided into

$$\begin{cases}
\text{Liquids,} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots l, m, n, r. \\
\text{Mutes,} \begin{cases} \text{Labials,} \ldots \ldots p, b, f, v. \\ \text{Palatals,} \ldots \ldots c, g, k, q, j. \\ \text{Linguals,} \ldots \ldots t, d. \end{cases} \\
\text{Sibilant,} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots s. \\
\text{Double consonants,} \ldots \ldots x, z. \\
\text{Aspirate,} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots h.
\end{cases}$$

2. *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs; z* to *ts* or *ds;* and, except in compound words, the double consonant is always written, instead of the letters which it represents. In some Greek words *x* is equivalent to *chs.*

DIPHTHONGS.

§ **4.**   Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong.*

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, uu,* and *yi. Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ.*

PUNCTUATION.

§ **5.**   The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks of punctuation, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

Marks of *quantity* and of *accent* are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

1. There are three marks of quantity, viz. ˘, ˉ, ˜ ; the first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long ; the third, that it is doubtful, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. There are also three written accents—the acute (´), the grave (`), and the circumflex (^). These were used by the old grammarians to denote the rising and sinking of the voice in the Roman mode of pronouncing words. (See §§ 14 and 15.) In modern elementary Latin works, the acute marks the emphatic syllable of a word, (§ 16), the grave distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd,* because ; *quod,* which ; and the circumflex is placed over certain penultimate and final syllables that are formed by contraction.

The diæresis (¨) denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel ; as, *aër,* the air. It is used principally with *ae, ai,* and *oe.*

ORTHOËPY.

§ 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

The various systems now prevalent in Europe, may, however, be reduced to two—the *Continental* and the *English*—the former prevailing, with only slight diversities, in most of the countries of continental Europe, and the latter in England. Their principal difference is found in the pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs, since, in both methods, the consonants are pronounced in nearly the same manner.

THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.

[According to this system, each of the vowels, when standing at the end of a syllable, is considered as having but one sound, which, however, may be either short or long. Thus,

Short ă, as in hat.	Long ō, as in no.
Long ā, as in father.	Short ŭ, as in tub.
Short ĕ, as in met.	Long ū, as in full.
Long ē, as in there.	æ *or* œ, as *e* in there.
Short ĭ, as in sit.	au, as *ou* in our.
Long ī, as in machine.	eu, as in feudal.
Short ŏ, as in not.	ei, as *i* in ice.

REMARK. These sounds are sometimes slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable.]

THE ENGLISH METHOD.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing Latin words, regard has been had both to English analogy and to the laws of Latin accentuation. See § 14 and 15. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 7. A vowel, when ending an accented syllable, has always its long English sound; as,

pa′-ter, de′-dit, vi′-rus, to′-tus, tu′-ba, Ty′-rus; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal, metre, vital, total, tutor, tyrant.*

1. *A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has nearly the sound of *a* in *father* or in *ah*, but less distinct or prolonged; as, *mu'-sa, e-pis'-tō-la, a-cer'-bus, Pal-a-mē'-des*; pronounced *mu'-zah*, etc.

2. *E, o*, and *u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and less distinct; as, *re'-te, vo'-lo, u'-su-i*.

3. (*a.*) *I* final has always its long sound; as, *qui, au'-di, le-gā'-ti*.

REM. 1. The final *i* of *tibi* and *sibi* has its short sound.

(*b.*) *I*, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, has an indistinct sound like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us* (fă'-be-us), *phi-los'-ŏ-phus* (phe-los'-o-phus).

EXC. *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant, as in *i-do'-ne-us*, or ends a syllable before a vowel, as in *fi-ē'-bam*.

REM. 2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ **8.** A vowel has always its *short* English sound, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as,

mag'-nus, reg'-num, fin'-go, hoc, fus'-tis, cyg'-nus, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet, seldom, finish, copy, lustre, symbol*.

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* before *dr* and *rt*, has the sounds of *a* in *quadrant* and in *quart*; as, *qua'-dro, quad-ra-gin'-ta, quar'-tus*. In other connections *a* before *r* has the sound of *a* in *part*; as, *par-ti-ceps, ar'-ma*; except when followed by another *r*, as in *par-ri-ci'-da*.

EXC. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ig'-nes, au'-des*.

EXC. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos, il'-los, dom'-ĭ-nos*.

EXC. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam, post'-e-a*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē'-mus*.

EXC. 5. *E, i* and *y* before final *r*, or before *r* in a syllable not final, when followed in the next syllable by any other consonant, except *r*, have the sound of *e* and *i* in the English words *her* and *fir*; as, *fer, fert, fer'ti-lis; hir, hir'cus, myr'-tus*.

II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ **9.** *Ae* and *oe* are always diphthongs unless separated by diæresis. They are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ'-tas, œs'-tas, pœ'-na, œs'-trum*.

1. *Ai, ei, oi*, and *yi*, usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; as, *Maia, Pompeius, Troia, Harpyia*; pronounced *Ma'-ya, Pom-pe'-yus, Tro'-ya, Har-py'-ya*.

REMARK 1. *Ei*, when a diphthong and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *i*; as in *hei, om'-neis.*

2. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus, au'-rum,* pronounced *laws,* etc.

REM. 2. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lā-us.*

3. *Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu, Or-pheus* (or'-phuse), *Eu-phrā-tes.*

REM. 3. The letters *eu* are pronounced separately in the terminations *eus* and *eum* of *Latin* nouns, and of all adjectives, whether Greek or Latin, except neuter; as, *ur'-ce-us, me'-us, me'-um, e'-um.* In other situations they form a diphthong; as, *Eu-rŏ'-pa, Thē'-seus, e'-heu.*

4. *Ua, ue, ui, uo, uu,* when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa, we,* etc.; as, *lin'-qua, quē'-ror, sua'-de-o, quŏ'-tus, ĕ'-quus.* They are always diphthongs after *q*, usually also after *g*, and often after *s*.

5. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic,* when monosyllables, is pronounced like *wi*, and by some like long *i*.

III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

C.

C has the sound of *s* before *e, i,* and *y,* and the diphthongs *æ, œ,* and *eu*; as, *ce'-do, cĭ'-bus, Cæ'-sar, cœ'-lum, ceu, Cy'-rus.* In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to, cru'-dus, lac.*

1. *Ch* has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta* (kar'-tah), *machĭna* (mak'-ĕ-nah).

EXC. *C,* following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu* and *yo,* has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia* (so'-she-ah), *caduceus* (ca-du'she-us), *Sicyon* (sish'-e-on).

REMARK. In the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, the hard sound of *c* and *g* seems to have been retained in all their combinations.

G.

G has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e, i,* and *y,* and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*; as *ge'-nus, aq'-ï-tis, Gy'-ges, Gæ-tū'-li.* In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag, go.*

EXC. When *g* comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger* (aj'-er), *exaggeratio* (ex-aj-e-ra'-she-o).

S.

§ 11. *S* has generally its hissing sound, as in *so, thus.*

EXC. 1. (*a.*) When *si* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by a consonant in an accented syllable, the *s* has the sound of *sh*; as, *Per'-si-a* (per'-she-a).

(*b.*) But when *si* or *zi* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh;* as, *As-pa'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah), *Sa-ba'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-ah).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh;* as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): so *Sosia, Theodosia, Lysias.*

EXC. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e, œ, au, b, m, n,* and *r*, has the sound of *z;* as, *res, œs, laus, trabs, hi'-ems, lens, Mars.*

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Ce'-sar, cæ-sü'-ra, mi'-ser, mu'-sa, re-sid'-u-um, cau'-sa, ro'-sa,* and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Ces-a-re'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans;* as, *trans'-e-o.*

T.

§ 12.   1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh;* as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpitius* (sul-pish'-e-us).

EXC. *T*, in such case, retains its hard sound (*a*) after *s, t*, or *x;* as, *Sal-lus'-ti-us, Brut'-ti-i, Sex'-ti-us:* (*b*) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon;* as, *Eu-ryt'-i-on, Am-phic'-ty-on;* and (*c*) in old infinitives in *er;* as, *flec'-ti-er,* for *flec'-ti.*

X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z;* at the end, that of *ks;* as, *Xenŏphon* (zen'-o-phon); *axis* (ak'-sis).

EXC. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz;* as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *inexhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

EXC. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh;* as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *pexui* (pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ch* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Chthonia* (tho'-ni-a). *Pithia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca, gna'-vus, tme'-sis, Cte'-si-as, Ptol-e-mœ'-us, psal'-lo.*

OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13.   1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one. The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 282–301; but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted:—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.

5. A vowel before *x, z, j,* or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position,* as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, *i. e.* either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a *vowel.*

OF ACCENTUATION.

I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ **14.** 1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (′), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (ˆ), composed of the acute and the grave, i. e. of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute; when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *pix, ĕt, pârs; dōs, jûs, spês.*

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pă′ter, mă′-ter, pen′-na.*

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rô-mä, mû-sä, lû-cê, jû-ris;* if otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hŏ′-mŏ, dĕ′ās, Rŏ′-mä* (abl.), and *ar′-tĕ,* in which *a* is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* is *long,* it is accented; but if it is *short,* the accent is on the *antepenult;* as, *a-mī′-cus, dom′-ĭ-nus.*

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

EXC. Vocatives of the second declension in *i,* instead of *ie,* from nominatives in *ius,* and genitives in *i,* instead of *ii,* are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as, *Vir-gĭl-i; Va-lĕ′-ri, in-gĕ′-ni.* So, also, the compounds of *facit* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fă′-cit, tep-e-fă′-cit.*

§ **15.** If the penult is *common,* the accent, in prose, is upon the *antepenult;* as, *vol′-ŭ-cris, phar′-ĕ-tra, il′-ĭ-que:* but genitives in *ius,* in which *i* is common, accent their *penult* in prose; as, *u-nī′-us, is-tī′-us.*

REM. 8. All the syllables of a Latin word, except that on which the acute or circum-flex accent falls, are supposed to have the grave accent, and were pronounced with the lower tone.

1. The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cun, sub'-e-o.*

2. In accentuation, the enclitics *que, ne, ve,* and also those which are annexed to pronouns,* are accounted constituent parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta, it'-ă-que ; vi'-rum, vi-rum'-que.*

II. Of English Accents.

§ 16. Accent, in English, is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words. Cf. § 5, 2.

According to the English method of pronouncing Latin, a word may have two, three, or even four accents. That accent which is nearest to the termina-tion of the word, and which always corresponds in position with the Latin ac-cent, is called the *primary* or *principal* accent, and the *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary. The *third* and *fourth* accents, in like man-ner, precede the secondary, and are subject in all respects to the same rules; as, *pa'-ter, ma'-ter, ser-mo'-nes, dom'-i-nis ; pe-ric'-ŭ-lum, con''-ju-ra'-ti-o, op''-por-tu''-ni-tā'-tes, ex-er''''-ci-ta'''-ti-on'-i-bus'-que.*

1. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod'-e-rā'-tus, tol'-e-rab'-i-lis.*

2. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur, ad''-o-les-cen'-ti-a.*

3. Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod'''-e-ra''-ti-ō'-nis, tol'''-e-ra-bil''-i-ŏ'-rem, ex-er''''-ci-ta'''-ti-ō'-nis.*

DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

VOWELS.

§ 17. Every Latin word is to be divided into as many syllables, as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

REMARK. In the following rules, the term *vowel* includes not only single vowels, but diphthongs; and when a particular vowel is mentioned, a diph-thong, also, ending with that vowel is intended.

CONSONANTS.

SPECIAL RULES.

§ 18. REMARK. The following special rules, relating to particular letters or to particular combinations of letters, are in all cases to be regarded rather than the general rules, §§ 19—23, when the latter are inconsistent with the former.

1. *H,* when standing alone between two vowels, is always joined to the vowel that follows it.

Thus, *mi'-hi, tra'-hĕ-re, co'-hors, ro''-hor-ta'-ti-o.*

---

* These are *te, met, pte, ce, cine.* and *dem* ; as, *tute, egŏmet, meapte, hicce, hiccĭne, idem.*

2. *Ch, ph,* and *th,* in the division of words into syllables, are considered, not as separate letters, but as single aspirated mutes, and hence are never separated.

Thus, *A-chĭl'-les, Ach''-ra-dĭ'-na, Neph'-ĕ-le, Te'-thys.*

3. *Gl, sl,* and *thl,* when standing alone between any two vowels, unless the first be *u,* and *bl* after *u* are always separated.

Thus, *Æg'-le, Ag-lau'-rus, At'-las, ath-lĕt'-i-cus;—Pub'-li-us, Pub-lic'-ŏ-la, res-pub'-li-ca.*

4. In writing syllables, *x,* when standing alone between two vowels, is united to the vowel before it, but, in pronouncing such syllables, its elementary sounds are separated.

Thus, *sax'-um* (sak'-sum); *ax-il'-la* (ak-sil'-lah); *ex-em'-plum* (eg-zem'-plum); *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us).

GENERAL RULES.

I. SIMPLE WORDS.

§ **19.** A.—*A single Consonant between two Vowels.*

1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r,* between the *last two vowels* of a word, or between the vowels of any two *unaccented* syllables, must be joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *t* in *pā'-ter* and *au'-tem;* *th* in *œ'-ther;* *cl* in *Hi-er'-ŏ-cles;* *q* in *ă'-qua;* *cr* in *ă'-cris* and *vol'-ŭ-cris;* *chr* in *ă'-chras;* *r* in *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us;* *m* in *et''-y-mo-lŏ'-gi-a;* *l* in *am''-bu-lā-tŏ'-ri-us;* and *gr* in *per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o.* Respecting *ch* and *th* cf. § 18, 2.

Exc. *Tĭb'-i* and *sĭb'-i* are commonly excepted.

§ **20.** 2. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r, before* the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *t* in *i-tin'-ĕ-ra;* *d* in *ri-dē'-to;* *th* in *œ-the'-ri-us;* *cl* in *Eu-cli'-des* and *Her''-a-clē'-a;* *gr* in *a-gres'-tis* and *a-gric'-ŏ-la;* *pr* in *ca-pre'-ŏ-lus;* *q* in *a-quā'-ri-us;* and *phr* in *Eu-phrā'-tes.*

§ **21.** 3. A single consonant *after* the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the penult.

Thus, *m* in *dom'-i-nus* and *dom''-i-na'-ti-o;* *t* in *pat'-ĕ-ra;* *th* in *Scyth'-i-a;* and *q* in *aq'-ui-la* (ak'-we-lah), and *Aq''-ui-ta'-ni-a* (ak''-we-ta'-ne-ah).

4. When a mute with *l* or *r* follows the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, the mute is to be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *cr* in *ac'-ri-ter, ac''-ri-mo'-ni-a;* *tr* in *det''-ri-men'-tum;* *pr* in *cap'-ri-pes, cap''-ri-mul'-gus,* *phl* in *Paph''-la-go'-ni-a;* and *phr* in *Aph''-ro-dis'-i-a.* Respecting *phl* and *phr* cf. § 18, 2.

EXCEPTIONS TO THE 3D AND 4TH RULES.

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r,* after an accented *a, e,* or *o,* and before two vowels the first of which is *e, i,* or *y,* must be joined to the syllable following the accent.

Thus, *d* in *ra'-di-us, tæ'-di-um, me''-di-ā'-tor ; r* in *hæ'-re-o, Ca''-ry-ā'-tes ;* *ch* in *bra'-chi-um ; q* in *re'-qui-es, re''-qui-es'-co ; tr* in *pa'-tri-us, Œ-no'-tri-a ;* and *r* and *l* in *ce''-re-a'-li-a.*

Exc. 2. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accent-ed *u*, must be joined to the vowel following it.

Thus, *r* in *lu'-ri-dus, au'-re-us ; cr* in *Eu'-cri-tus ; gl* in *ju'-glans ;* and *pl* in *Nau''-pli-us, du'-pli-co,* and *du''-pli-ca'-ti-o.* Cf. § 18, 3.

§ 22. B.—*Two Consonants between two Vowels.*

Any two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r* in the cases before mentioned, when standing between two vowels, must be sepa-rated.

Thus, *rp* in *cor'-pus, rm* in *for'-ma* and *ger-mā'nus ; rv* in *ca-ter'-va ; sc* in *ad-o-les'-cens ; nn* in *an'-nus ; phth* in *aph'-tha ; cch* in *Bac'-chus* and *Bac''-cha-na'-li-a ;* and *thl* in *ath-lē'-ta.*

C.—*Three or four Consonants between two Vowels.*

1. When three consonants stand between any two vowels, the last, or, if that be *l* or *r* after a mute, the two last, are joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *mpt* in *emp'-tor, ad-emp'-ti-o ; str* in *fe-nes'-tra ; mpl* in *ex-em'-plum ; rthr* in *ar-thrī'-tis.*

2. When four consonants stand between two vowels, two are joined to each vowel ; as, *nstr* in *trans-trum.*

II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 23. 1. In dividing a compound word into syllables the com-ponent parts are to be separated, if the former part ends with a con-sonant ; as, *ab-es'-se, in'-ers, cir'-cum-er'-ro, su'-pĕr-est, sub'-ĭ-tus, præ-ter'-e-a, trans'-ĭ-tur, sub'-stru-o.* So, also, if a consonant is inserted to prevent hiatus, it is joined to the preceding vowel ; as, *prod'-e-o, red'-e-o, sed-it'-i-o.*

2. But if the former part either ends with a vowel, or has dropped its termination, it is to be divided like a simple word ; as, *def'-ē-ro, dīl'-ĭ-gens, be-nev'-o-lus, præs'-to, eg'-ŏ-met ;—po'-tes, po-tes'-tis, an''-ĭ-mad-ver'-to, vē'-ne-o* (from *venum, ĕo*), *mag-nan'-ĭ-mus, am-bā'-ges, lon-gæ'-vus.*

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. 1. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and their various inflections.

2. The classes, into which words are divided in reference to their significa-tion, are called *Parts of Speech.*

3. The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive* or *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

4. The first four are *inflected;* the last four, which are sometimes called *Particles*, are *not inflected*, except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

REM. Substantives, pronouns, and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns;* but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ 25. 1. To verbs belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

2. *Inflection*, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison*.

3. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined;* verbs are *conjugated*, and adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

NOUNS.

§ 26. 1. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar; Rōma*, Rome; *Tĭbĕris*, the Tiber.

3. A *common* or *appellative* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is alike applicable; as, *hŏmo*, man or a man; *ăvis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *leo*, a lion; *mendacium*, a falsehood.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, *exercĭtus*, an army.

REM. 1. The following are examples of nouns used as collectives, viz. *exercĭtus, gens, juventus, multitūdo, nobĭlĭtas, plebs, popŭlus, turba, vis,* and *vulgus.*

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *bonĭtas*, goodness; *gaudium*, joy; *festinatio*, haste.

REM. 2. A *concrete*, in distinction from an abstract noun, is one which denotes an object that has an actual and independent existence; as, *Rōma, hŏmo, popŭlus, ferrum.*

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum*, wood; *ferrum*, iron; *cĭbus*, food.

REM. 3. Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as an abstract noun.

7. To nouns belong *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

REM. 4. Adjectives and participles have likewise different genders, numbers, and cases, corresponding to those of nouns.

GENDER.

§ 27. 1. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

2. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

3. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

4. Those nouns are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes; as, *vir*, a man; *mulier*, a woman.

5. Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though denoting objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes.

Thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo*, speech, is grammatically masculine, because, though not indicative of sex, it takes an adjective of that form which is appropriated to nouns denoting males.

6. The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. MASCULINES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *păter*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *ĕquus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tibĕris*, the Tiber; *Aquĭlo*, the north wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

Exc. *Styx* and some names of rivers in *a* and *e* are feminine. §§ 62, and 41, 1.

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic* * *Atlas*, *hæc Ida*, *hoc Soracte*.

§ 29. FEMININES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helĕna*, Helen; *māter*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *nāvis*, *insŭla*, *fabŭla*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

Ægyptus, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pĭrus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Sāmos*, the name of an island; *Euñŭchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

Exc. Names of countries and islands in *um*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *ōrum*, are neuter.—Names of towns in *i*, *ōrum*; four in *o*, *ōnis*, viz. *Trasino*, *Hippo*, *Narbo*, and *Sulmo*, with *Tunes*, *Taras*, and *Canōpus*, are masculine. Names of towns in *um* or *on*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *ōrum*; those in *e* and *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable nouns in *i* and *y*, and some barbarous names, as *Suthul*, *Hispal* and *Gadir* are neuter.—Names of trees and plants in *er* of the third declension, (§ 60), with *baccar* and *rōbur* are neuter. A few names in *us*, *i*, (§ 50), with *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *Stȳrax* and *unēdo* are masculine.—A few names of gems in *us*, *i*, are also masculine.

---

* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

§ 30. COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *părens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end.

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

Adolescens, *a youth.*
Affīnis, *a relative by mar-*
　riage.
Ales, *a bird.*
Antistes, *a chief priest.*
Auctor, *an author.*
Augur, *an augur.*
Bos, *an ox or cow.*
Canis, *a dog.*
Civis, *a citizen.*
Cōmes, *a companion.*
Conjux, *a spouse.*
Consors, *a consort.*
Convīva, *a guest.*
Custos, *a keeper.*
Dux, *a leader.*

Exsul, *an exile.*
Grus, *a crane.*
Hospes, *a guest, a host.*
Hostis, *an enemy.*
Index, *an informer.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Interpres, *an interpreter.*
Jūdex, *a judge.*
Juvĕnis, *a youth.*
Martyr, *a martyr.*
Miles, *a soldier.*
Munĭceps, *a burgess.*
Mus, *a mouse.*
Nēmo, *nobody.*
Obses, *a hostage.*
Patruēlis, *a cousin.*

Palumbes, *a wood-pigeon.*
Pārens, *a parent.*
Par, *a mate.*
Præses, *a president.*
Præsul, *a chief priest.*
Princeps, *a prince or*
　princess.
Serpens, *a serpent.*
Sacerdos, *a priest or*
　priestess.
Satelles, *a life-guard.*
Sus, *a swine.*
Testis, *a witness.*
Vātes, *a prophet.*
Verna, *a slave.*
Vindex, *an avenger.*

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

Conjux, *atque* pārens, princeps, pătruēlis, *et* infans,
Affīnis, vindex, jūdex, dux, mīles, *et* hostis,
Augūr, *et* antistes, juvĕnis, convīva, săcerdos,
Mūnĭ-*que*-ceps, vātes, adolescens, cīvis, *et* auctor,
Custos, nēmo, cōmes, testis, sus, bōs-*que*, cănis-*que*,
Pro consorte tōrī par, præsul, verna, sătelles,
Mus-*que* obses, consors, interprĕs, *et* exsūl, *et* hospes.

§ 31. 1. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

2. The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction:—

Artifex, *an artist.*
Auspex, *a soothsayer.*
Eques, *a horseman.*

Fur, *a thief.*
Hēres, *an heir.*
Hŏmo, *a man or woman.*

Lătro, *a robber.*
Lībĕri, *children.*
Pĕdes, *a footman.*

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advĕna*, a stranger; and some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian.

§ 32. 1. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction:—

Cōpiæ, *troops.*
Custodiæ, *guards.*
Excubiæ, *sentinels.*

Opĕræ, *laborers.*
Proles, }
Subōles, } *offspring.*

Vigiliæ, *watchmen.*

2. Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

Acroāma, *a buffoon.*	Mancipium, } *a slave.*	Scortum, } *a prostitute.*
Auxilia, *auxiliaries.*	Servitium,	Prostibŭlum,

3. (*a.*) In some personal appellatives masculines and feminines are distinguished by different terminations affixed to the same root. The masculines end in *us, er, o, tor,* etc.; the feminines in *a* or *trix;* as, *cŏquus, cŏqua; magister, magistra; lēno, lēna; inventor, inventrix; tibīcen, tibīcĭna; ăvus, avia; rex, regīna; poēta, poētria.*

(*b.*) So also in some names of animals; as, *ĕquus, ĕqua; gallus, gallīna; leo, lea* and *leaēna.* Sometimes the words are wholly different; as, *taurus, vacca.*

4. Some names of animals are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine without regard to difference of sex; as, *anguis, serpens, dā-ma, talpa, tigris, colŭber* and *colŭbra,* etc.

§ **33.** EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene.* These commonly follow the gender of their terminations.

Thus, *passer,* a sparrow, *corvus,* a raven, are masculine; *aquila,* an eagle, *vul-pes,* a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

NOTE. This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femina* is usually added.

§ **34.** NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns; as, *fas, nĕfas, nihil, gummi, pondo.*

2. Names of letters; as, *o longum,* long *o.* But these are sometimes feminine, *litĕra* being understood.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning; as, *pater est dissyllăbum; pater* is dissyllabic.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively; as *scire tuum,* your knowledge; *ultĭmum vale,* the last farewell; *hoc diu,* this (word) *diu.*

REMARK. 1. Words derived from the Greek retain the gender which they have in that language.

REM. 2. Some nouns have different genders in the singular and plural, and are called *heterogeneous* nouns. See § 92.

NUMBER.

§ **35.** 1. (*a.*) Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether they represent one object or more than one.

(*b.*) Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural,* —which are distinguished by their terminations. The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.

PERSON.

2. The person of a noun or pronoun is the character sustained by the object which it represents, as being the speaker, the person addressed, or the person or thing spoken of.

Hence there are three persons. The speaker is of the *first* person, the person addressed is of the *second* person, and the person or thing spoken of is of the *third* person.

CASES.

§ **36.**   Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

Cases are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words. Latin nouns have six cases ; viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative,* and *Ablative.*

REMARK. Though there are six cases in each number, no noun has in each number so many different terminations.

§ **37.**   1. The nominative denotes the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb ; as, ego *scribo,* I write. Caius *dicit, Caius* says.

2. The genitive denotes *origin, possession,* and many other relations, which, in English, are expressed by the preposition *of* or by the *possessive* case ; as, *Vita Cæsăris,* the life *of* Cæsar, or *Cæsar's* life.

3. The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done ; as, *Ille* mihi *librum dedit,* He gave the book *to me.*

4. The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

5. The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

6. The ablative denotes *privation,* and many other relations, especially those expressed in English by the prepositions *with, from, in,* or *by.*

REMARK. The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *casus recti,* i. e. the uninflected cases ; and the others, *casus obliqui ; i. e.* the oblique or inflected cases.

DECLENSIONS.

§ **38.**   The regular forming of the several cases in both numbers, by annexing the appropriate terminations to the root, is called *declension.*

The Latin language has five declensions or modes of declining nouns, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *æ,* in the second in *i,* in the third in *is,* in the fourth in *ūs,* and in the fifth in *ei*

§ **39.**   The following table exhibits a comparative view of the terminations or case-endings of the five declensions.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.

	I.	II.		III.		IV.		V.
		M.	*N.*	*M.*	*N.*	*M.*	*N.*	
Nom.	ă,	ŭs, ĕr, ŭm,		ŏr, etc. ĕ, etc.		ŭs,	ū,	ēs,
Gen.	æ,	ī,		ĭs,		ūs,		eī,
Dat.	æ,	ō,		ī,		uī,	ū,	eī,
Acc.	ăm,	ŭm,		ĕm,(ĭm), ĕ, etc.		ŭm,	ū,	ĕm,
Voc.	ă,	ĕ, ĕr, ŭm,		ŏr, etc. ĕ, etc.		ŭs,	ū,	ēs,
Abl.	ā.	ō.		ĕ, (ī.)		ū.		ē.

Plural.

	I.	II.			III.		IV.		V.
Nom.	æ,	ī,		ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă)	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Gen.	ārŭm,	ōrŭm,			ŭm, (iŭm),		uŭm,		ērŭm,
Dat.	īs,		īs,		ĭbŭs,		ĭbŭs,	(ŭbŭs),	ēbŭs,
Acc.	ās,	ōs,		ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă)	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Voc.	æ,	ī,		ă,	ēs,	ă, (iă),	ūs,	uă,	ēs,
Abl.	īs.		īs.		ĭbŭs.		ĭbŭs,	(ŭbŭs).	ēbŭs.

Remarks.

§ 40. 1. The terminations of the nominative, in the third declension, are very numerous. See §§ 55, 58, 62, 66.

2. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, always ends in *m*.

3. The vocative singular is like the nominative in all Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension.

4. The nominative and vocative plural always end alike.

5. The genitive plural always ends in *um*.

6. The dative and ablative plural always end alike;—in the 1st and 2d declensions, in *is*; in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, in *bus*.

7. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, always ends in *s*.

8. Nouns of the neuter gender have the accusative and vocative like the nominative, in both numbers; and these cases, in the plural, always end in *a*.

9. The 1st and 5th declensions contain no nouns of the neuter gender, and the 4th and 5th contain no proper names.

10. Every inflected word consists of two parts—a *root*, and a *termination*. The root or *crude form*, is the part which is not changed by inflection. The termination is the part annexed to the root. The root of a *declined* word may be found by removing the termination of any of its oblique cases. The case commonly selected for this purpose is the genitive singular.

11. The preceding table exhibits terminations only. In the fifth declension, the *e* of the final syllable, though unchanged, is considered as belonging to the termination.

FIRST DECLENSION.

§ **41.** Nouns of the first declension end in ă, ē, ās, ēs. Those in *a* and *e* are feminine; those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

Latin nouns of the first declension end only in *a*. They are thus declined:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
Nom.	mū'-să,	*a muse;*	Nom.	mu'-sæ,	*muses;*
Gen.	mu'-sæ,	*of a muse;*	Gen.	mu-să'-rŭm,	*of muses;*
Dat.	mu'-sæ,	*to a muse;*	Dat.	mu'-sis,	*to muses;*
Acc.	mu'-săm,	*a muse;*	Acc.	mu'-sās,	*muses;*
Voc.	mu'-să,	*O muse;*	Voc.	mu'-sæ,	*O muses;*
Abl.	mu'-să,	*with a muse.*	Abl.	mu'-sis,	*with muses.*

In like manner decline

Au'-la, *a hall.*	Lit'-ĕ-ra, *a letter.*		Sa-git'-ta, *an arrow.*
Cu'-ra, *care.*	Lus-cin'-i-a, *a nightingale.*		Stel'-la, *a star.*
Ga'-le-a, *a helmet.*	Mach'-i-na, *a machine.*		Tŏ'-ga, *a gown.*
In'-su-la, *an island.*	Pen'-na, *a feather, a quill.*		Vi'-a, *a way.*

NOTE. As the Latin language has no article, appellative nouns may be rendered either with or without the English articles *a, an,* or *the,* according to their connection.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ **42.** 1. Names proper and appellative of men, as, *Sulla, Cinna; poēta,* a poet; *nauta,* a sailor; and names of rivers, though ending in *a,* are masculine: § 28, 1 and 2. But the following names of rivers have been used as feminine: viz. *Albŭla, Allia, Druentia, Garumna, Himĕra, Matrŏna, Mosella, Trebia. Lēthe* is always feminine.

Ossa and *Œta,* names of mountains, are masculine or feminine.

2. *Hadria,* the Adriatic sea, *dāma* in Virgil and Statius, and *talpa* in Virgil, are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ **43.** *Genitive singular.* 1. The poets sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āī;* as, *aula,* gen. *aulāī.*

2. *Familĭa,* after *păter, māter, filĭus,* or *filĭa,* usually forms its genitive in *as;* as, *mater-familĭas,* the mistress of a family; gen. *matris-familĭas;* nom. plur. *matres-familĭas* or *familĭārum.* Some other words anciently formed their genitive in the same manner.

Genitive plural. The genitive plural of patronymics in *es,* of several compounds in *cŏla* and *gĕna,* and of some names of nations, is sometimes, especially in poetry, formed in *um* instead of *ārum;* as, *Æneădum, Cælicŏlum, terrigĕnum, Lapĭthum.* So *amphŏrum, drachmum,* for *amphorārum, drachmārum.*

Dative and Ablative plural. The following nouns have sometimes *ābus* instead of *is,* in the dative and ablative plural, especially when it is necessary to distinguish them from the same cases of masculines in *us* of the second declension having the same root; as, *filiis et filiābus,* to sons and daughters.

3

Dea, *a goddess.*   Equa, *a mare.*
Filia, *a daughter.*   Mūla, *a she mule.*

The use of a similar termination in *anima, asīna, liberta, nāta, conserva,* and some other words, rests on inferior authority.

GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *ē, ās,* and *ēs,* and some also in *ă,* are Greek. Greek nouns in *ă* are declined like *musa,* except that they sometimes have *ān* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossa;* acc. *Ossam,* or *Ossan.*

Greek nouns in *e, as,* and *es,* are thus declined in the singular number:—

N. Pe-nel'-ŏ-pē,	*N.* Æ-nē'-ās,	*N.* An-chī'-sēs,
G. Pe-nel'-ŏ-pēs,	*G.* Æ-nē'-æ,	*G.* An-chī'-sæ,
D. Pe-nel'-ŏ-pæ,	*D.* Æ-nē'-æ,	*D.* An-chī'-sæ,
Ac. Pe-nel'-ŏ-pēn,	*Ac.* Æ-nē'-ăm *or* ān,	*Ac.* An-chī'-sēn,
V. Pe-nel'-ŏ-pē,	*V.* Æ-nē'-ā,	*V.* An-chī'-sē *or* ā,
Ab. Pe-nel'-ŏ-pē.	*Ab.* Æ-nē'-ā.	*Ab.* An-chī'-sā *or* ē.

§ 45. In like manner decline

Al'-o-e, *aloes.*   Ti-ā'-ras, *a turban.*
E-pit'-ŏ-me, *an abridgment.*   Co-mē'-tes, *a comet.*
This'-be.   Dy-nas'-tes, *a ruler.*
Bo'-rē-as, *the north wind.*   Pri-am'-I-des, *a son of Priam.*
Mi'-das.   Py-rī'-tes, *a kind of stone.*

1. Most proper names in *es,* except patronymics, follow the third declension; but in the accusative they often have both *em* and *en,* and in the vocative both *es* and *e.* See §§ 80, IV, and 81.

2. Greek nouns of the first declension, which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa.*

3. The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *ēs* and *ē* into *a;* as, *Atrīdes, Atrīda,* a son of Atreus; *Perses, Persa,* a Persian; *geo-mētres, geomĕtra,* a geometrician; *Circe, Circa;* *epitōme, epitŏma;* *grammatice, grammatica,* grammar; *rhetorice, rhetorica,* oratory.—So also *tiāras, tiāra.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *ĕr, ĭr, ŭs, ŭm, os, on.* Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er, us,* and *um,* are thus declined :—

SINGULAR.

	A lord.	*A son-in-law.*	*A field.*	*A kingdom.*
N.	dŏm'-ĭ-nŭs,	gĕ'-nĕr,	ă'-gĕr,	reg'-nŭm,
G.	dom'-ĭ-ni,	gen'-ĕ-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nī,
D.	dom'-ĭ-nō,	gen'-ĕ-rō,	a'-grō,	reg'-nō,
Ac.	dom'-ĭ-nŭm,	gen'-ĕ-rŭm,	a'-grŭm,	reg'-nŭm,
V.	dom'-ĭ-nĕ,	ge'-nĕr,	a'-gĕr,	reg'-nŭm,
Ab.	dom'-ĭ-nō.	gen'-ĕrō.	a'-grō.	reg'-nō.

PLURAL.

N.	dom'-ĭ-nī,	gen'-ĕ-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nă,
G.	dom-i-nō'-rŭm,	gen-e-rō'-rŭm,	a-grō'-rŭm,	reg-nō'-rŭm,
D.	dom'-i-nīs,	gen'-ĕ-rīs,	a'-grīs,	reg'-nīs,
Ac.	dom'-ĭ-nōs,	gen'-ĕ-rōs,	a'-grōs,	reg'-nă,
V.	dom'-ĭ-nī,	gen'-ĕ-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nă,
Ab.	dom'-ĭ-nīs.	gen'-ĕ-rīs.	a'-grīs.	reg'-nīs.

Like *domĭnus* decline

An'-ĭ-mus, *the mind.*   Fŏ'-cus, *a hearth.*   Nu'-mĕ-rus, *a number.*
Clip'-e-us, *a shield.*   Gla'-di-us, *a sword.*   O-ce'-ā-nus, *the ocean.*
Cor'-vus, *a raven.*   Lū'-cus, *a grove.*   Trŏ'-chus, *a trundling-hoop.*

NOTE. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns, whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form. See § 40, R. 3.

§ **47.** A few nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gĕro* and *fĕro* ; as, *armĭger, -ĕri,* an armor-bearer ; *Lucĭfer, -ĕri,* the morning star ; and the following :—

A-dul'-ter, *an adulterer.*   Lī'-ber, *Bacchus.*   Pu'-er, *a boy.*
Cel'-ti-bĕr, *a Celtiberian.*   Lib'-ĕ-ri, (*plur.*,) *children.*   Sŏ'-cer, *a father-in-law.*
I'-ber, *a Spaniard.*   Pres'-bȳ-ter, *an elder.*   Ves'-per, *the evening.*

Mul'-ct-ber, Vulcan, sometimes has this form.

§ **48.** 1. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in adding the terminations, (§ 322, 4), and are declined like *ager* ; thus,

A'-per, *a wild boar.*   Lī'-ber, *a book.*   Al-ex-an'-der.
Aus'-ter, *the south wind.*   Ma-gis'-ter, *a master.*   Is'-ter.
Fā'-ber, *a workman.*   On'-ā-ger, *a wild ass.*   Teu'-cer.

2. *Vir,* a man, with its compounds, and the patrial *Trēvir,* (the only nouns in *ir,*) are declined like *gener.*

Like *regnum* decline

An'-trum, *a care.*   Ex-em'-plum, *an example.*   Præ-sid'-i-um, *a defence.*
A'-tri-um, *a hall.*   Ne-go'-ti-um,* *a business.*   Sax'-um, *a rock.*
Bel'-lum, *war.*   Ni'-trum, *natron.*   Scep'-trum, *a sceptre.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ **49.** 1. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine:—

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit.*   Dialectos, *a dialect.*   Miltos, *vermilion.*
Alvus, *the belly.*   Diphthongus, *a diphthong.*   Pharus(os), *a light-house.*
Antidŏtus, *an antidote.*   Dŏmus, *a house, home.*   Plinthus, *the base of a*
Arctos(us), *the Northern*   Erēmus, *a desert.*   *column.*
  Bear.   Hūmus, *the ground.*   Vannus, *a corn-fan.*
Carbāsus, *a sail.*

2. Greek nouns in *ŏdus* (ἡ ὅδος), and *mĕtros*, are likewise feminine; as, *synŏdus,* an assembly ; *diamĕtros,* a diameter.

---

* Pronounced *ne-go'-she-um.* See § 12.

§ 50. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, etc. are feminine. See § 29, 2.

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

Acanthus, *bear's-foot*.	Ebŭlus, *an elder*.	Rŭbus, *a blackberry-bush*.
Amarantus, *amaranth*.	Helleborus, *hellebore*.	Tribŭlus, *a caltrops*.
Asparăgus, *asparagus*.	Intŭbus, *endive*.	
Calămus, *a reed*.	Juncus, *a bulrush*.	And sometimes
Carduus, *a thistle*.	Raphănus, *a radish*.	Amarăcus, *marjoram*.
Dūmus, *a bramble*.	Rhamnos, *buck-thorn*.	Cytisus, *snail-clover*.

Oleaster and *pinaster*, names of trees, are also masculine.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

Beryllus, *a beryl*.	Chrysoprāsus, *chrysoprase*.	So also,
Carbuncŭlus, *a carbuncle*.	Opălus, *opal*.	Pyrōpus, *gold-bronze*.

Chrysolĭthus, *chrysolite*, and smaragdus, *an emerald*, are doubtful.
Names of females in *um* are feminine: § 29, 1: as, *mea Glycerium*, Ter.
Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as, *apium*, parsley; *aconītum*, wolf's bane.
Canōpus, Pontus, Hellespontus, Isthmus, and all plural names in *i* of countries and towns are masculine. *Abȳdus(os)* is doubtful.
Names of countries and towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter; as, *Ilium* or *Ilion* ; *Ecbătāna, ōrum*.

§ 51. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

Balānus, *a date*.	Grossus, *an unripe fig*.	Phasēlus, *a light vessel*.
Barbĭtos, *a lute*.	Pumpĭnus, *a vine-leaf*.	

Atŏmus, an atom, and *cŏlus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

Pelăgus, the sea, and *vīrus*, poison, are neuter.
Vulgus, the common people, is neuter, and rarely masculine.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 52. *Genitive singular.* When the genitive singular ends in *ĭi*, the poets frequently contract it into *ī* ; as, *ingĕnī*, for *ingenii*.

Vocative singular. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluvius, Latīnus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu, popŭlus Albānus*. Liv.

Proper names in *ĭus* omit *e* in the vocative ; as, *Horatius, Horāti* ; *Virgilius, Virgĭli*.

Filius, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fīli* and *geni*. Other nouns in *ius*, including patrials and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e* ; as, *Delius, Delie* ; *Tirynthius, Tirynthie* ; *Laertius, Laertie*.

§ 53. *Genitive plural.* The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight and measure, is commonly formed in *um*, instead of *ōrum*: § 322, 4.

Such are particularly *nummum, sestertium, denarium, medimnum, jugĕrum, modium, talentum*. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deum, libĕrum, Danaum* ; etc., and sometimes *om* is found instead of *um* ; as, *Achivom*. Virg. Cf. § 322, 8.

Deüs, *a god*, is thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	de'-us,	N.	dī'-i, dī, *or* de'-i,
G.	de'-i,	G.	de-ō'-rum,
D.	dī'-o,	D.	dī'-is, dīs, *or* de'-is,
Ac.	de'-um,	Ac.	de'-os,
V.	de'-us,	V.	dī'-i, dī, *or* de'-i,
Ab.	de'-o.	Ab.	dī'-is, dīs, *or* de'-is.

Jēsus, or *Iēsus*, the name of the Savior, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other oblique cases.

GREEK NOUNS.

§ **54.** 1. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are commonly changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um*; but sometimes both forms are in use; as, *Alphēos*, and *Alphēus*; *Ilion* and *Ilium*. Greek names in *ros* after a consonant commonly change *ros* into *er*; as, *Alexandros, Alexander*; *Teucros, Teucer*. In a few words *ros* is changed to *rus*; as, *Codrus, hydrus*, and once in Virgil, *Teucrus*.

Greek nouns are thus declined in the singular number:—

	Singular.			Barbiton, *a lyre*.
N.	Dē'-lŏs,	Andrŏ'-ge-ōs,	N.	bar'-bĭ-tŏn,
G.	De'-lī,	An-drŏ'-ge-ŏ, *or* ī,	G.	bar'-bĭ-tī,
D.	De'-lō,	An-drŏ'-ge-ō,	D.	bar'-bĭ-tō,
Ac.	De'-lŏn *or* ŭm,	An-drŏ'-ge-ō, *or* ōn,	Ac.	bar'-bĭ-tŏn,
V.	De'-lĕ,	An-drŏ'-ge-ŏs,	V.	bar'-bĭ-tŏn,
Ab.	De'-lō.	An-drŏ'-ge-ō.	Ab.	bar'-bĭ-tō.

2. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are declined like those of *dominus* and *regnum*; but the nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *æ*, as, *canephóræ*.

3. In early writers some nouns in *os* have a genitive in *ū* (*ου*); as, *Menandrū*. Ter.

4. A genitive plural in *ōn*, instead of *ōrum*, occurs in the titles of books and in some names of places; as, *Georgicōn*; *Philēnōn aræ*. Sall.

5. Greek proper names in *eus* (see § 9, R. 3), are declined like *dominus*, except that the vocative ends in *eu*; but sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative also, they retain the Greek form, viz. gen. *ĕŏs*, dat. *ĕĭ* (contracted *ēī*), acc. *ĕā* or *ĕă*, and are of the third declension. See §§ 86, and 306, (1.) So in Lucretius the neuter *pelăgus* (Greek πέλαγος, εος) has an accusative plural *pelăgē* for *pelăgea* after the third declension. § 83, 1.—See also respecting a genitive in *i* of some proper nouns in *es*, § 73, Rem.—*Panthă* occurs in Virgil, Æ. 2, 322, as the vocative of *Panthūs*. Cf. § 81.

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ **55.** The number of final letters, in this declension, is twelve. Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y*; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

REM. The following terminations belong exclusively to Greek nouns; viz. *ma, i, y, ān, īn, ŏn, ȳn, ēr, ȳr, ys, eus, yx, inx, ynx*, and plurals in *e*.

Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.

To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender: if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

§ 56.

The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If *is* be removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rŭpes*, genitive (found in the dictionary) *rŭpis*, root *rŭp*, dative *rŭpi*, etc.: so *ars*, gen. *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, etc.; *opus*, gen. *opĕris*, root *opĕr*, dat. *opĕri*, etc.

Rules for Forming the Nominative Singular of the Third Declension from the Root.

I. Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; u, t, d,* and some in *r,* add *s* to form the nominative; as, *trăbis, trabs; hiĕmis, hiems; gruis, grus.*

Remark 1. *T, d* and *r* before *s* are dropped; as, *nepŏtis, nepos; laudis, laus; floris, flos.* So *bovis, bos,* drops *v.*

Rem. 2. *C* and *g* before *s* form *x*; as, *vocis, vox; regis, rex.* So *vs* forms *x* in *nivis, nix.* Cf. §§ 3, 2, and 171, 1.

Rem. 3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, t,* is commonly changed to *e*; as, *pollicis, pollex; cœlibis, cœlebs; principis, princeps; comitis, comes.* So *ŭ* is changed to *ĕ* in *aucŭpis, auceps.*

Rem. 4. Short *ĕ* or *ŏ* before *r* in neuters is changed to *ŭ*; as, *genĕris, genŭs; tempŏris, tempŭs.*

Rem. 5. Short *ĕ* before *r* is changed to *ĭ* in the masculines *cinĕris, cinis; cucŭmĕris, cucŭmis; pulvĕris, pulvis; vomĕris, vomis.*

Rem. 6. A few and those mostly monosyllabic roots of masculines and feminines, not increasing in the genitive, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone; as, gen. *rŭpis*, nom. *rŭpes*; gen. *auris*, nom. *auris.*

Rem. 7. A few neuters add *ĕ* to the root to form the nominative; as, *rētis, rētĕ; maris, marĕ.*

II. To roots ending in *l* and *n,* to some in *r* and *s,* and to those of most neuters in *t,* no addition is made in forming the nominative; as, *animālis, animal; canōnis, cănon; honōris, hŏnor; assis, as.*

Remark 1. Final *ōn* and *ĭn* in the roots of masculines and feminines, become *o* in the nominative; as, *sermōnis, sermo; arundinis, arundo.*

Rem. 2. Final *ĭn* in the roots of neuters becomes *ĕn* in the nominative; as, *fluminis, flūmĕn.* So also in the masculines, *oscen, pecten, tibicen* and *tubicen.*

Rem. 3. *Tr* and *br* at the end of a root, take *ĕ* between them in the nominative; as, *patris, păter; imbris, imber.* Cf. §§ 108, 48, and 106.

Rem. 4. Short *ŏ* is changed to *ŭ* in *ebŏris, ĕbŭr; femŏris, fĕmŭr; jecŏris, jĕcŭr;* and *robŏris, rōbŭr.*

Rem. 5. In the roots of neuters *at* drops *t,* and *it* becomes *ŭt* in the nominative; as, *poēmătis, poēma; capitis, caput.*

Rem. 6. Roots of this class ending in repeated consonants drop one of them in the nominative; as, *fellis, fel; farris, far; assis, as; bessis, bes.*

The following are the two forms of termination in this declension:—

	Singular.		Plural	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N.	*	*	ēs,	ă, (iă),
G.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ŭm, (iŭm),	ŭm, (iŭm),
D.	ī,	ī,	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs,
Ac.	ĕm, (ĭm),	*	ēs,	ă, (iă),
V.	*	*	ēs,	ă, (iă),
Ab.	ĕ, (ī).	ĕ, (ī).	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

Hŏnor, *honor ;* masc.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
G.	ho-nō'-ris,	ho-nō'-rum,
D.	ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
V.	ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
Ab.	ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-ĭ-bus.

Turris, *a tower ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
G.	tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
D.	tur'-ri,	tur'-rĭ-bus,
Ac.	tur'-rim, rem,	tur'-res,
V.	tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
Ab.	tur'-ri, *or* re.	tur'-rĭ-bus.

Rūpes, *a rock ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
G.	ru'-pĭs,	ru'-pĭ-um,
D.	ru'-pĭ,	ru'-pĭ-bus,
Ac.	ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
V.	ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
Ab.	ru'-pe.	ru'-pĭ-bus.

Nox, *night ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	nox,	noc'-tes,
G.	noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
D.	noc'-ti,	noc'-tĭ-bus,
Ac.	noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
V.	nox,	noc'-tes,
Ab.	noc'-te.	noc'-tĭ-bus.

Ars, *art ;* fem.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ars,	ar'-tes,
G.	ar'-tis,	ar'-ti-um,*
D.	ar'-ti,	ar'-tĭ-bus,
Ac.	ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
V.	ars,	ar'-tes,
Ab.	ar'-te.	ar'-tĭ-bus.

Miles, *a soldier ;* com. gen.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	mĭ'-les,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
G.	mil'-ĭ-tis,	mil'-ĭ-tum,
D.	mil'-ĭ-ti,	mi-lit'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	mil'-ĭ-tem,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
V.	mĭ'-les,	mil'-ĭ-tes,
Ab.	mil'-ĭ-te.	mi-lit'-ĭ-bus.

Sermo, *speech ;* masc.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
G.	ser-mō'-nis,	ser-mō'-num,
D.	ser-mō'-ni,	ser-mon'-ĭ-bus,
Ac.	ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
V.	ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
Ab.	ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-ĭ-bus.

Păter, *a father ;* masc.

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
G.	pa'-tris,	pa'-trum,
D.	pa'-tri,	pat'-rĭ-bus,
Ac.	pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
V.	pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
Ab.	pa'-tre.	pat'-rĭ-bus.

* Pronounced *ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um.* See § 12.

Sĕdile, *a seat;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. se-dī´-le,	se-dil´-ĭ-a,
G. se-dī´-lis,	se-dil´-ĭ-um,
D. se-dī´-li,	so-dil´-ĭ-bus,
Ac. se-dī´-le,	se-dil´-ĭ-a,
V. se-dī´-le,	se-dil´-ĭ-a,
Ab. se-dī´-li.	se-dil´-ĭ-bus.

Virgo, *a virgin;* fem.

Singular.	Plural.
N. vir´-go,	vir´-gĭ-nes,
G. vir´-gĭ-nis,	vir´-gĭ-num,
D. vir´-gĭ-ni,	vir-gin´-ĭ-bus,
Ac. vir´-gĭ-nem,	vir´-gĭ-nes,
V. vir´-go,	vir´-gĭ-nes,
Ab. vir´-gĭ-ne.	vir-gin´-ĭ-bus.

Carmen, *a verse;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. car´-men,	car´-mĭ-na,
G. car´-mĭ-nis,	car´-mĭ-num,
D. car´-mĭ-ni,	car-min´-ĭ-bus,
Ac. car´-men,	car´-mĭ-na,
V. car´-men,	car´-mĭ-na,
Ab. car´-mĭ-ne.	car-min´-ĭ-bus.

Animal, *an animal;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ăn´-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma´-li-a,
G. an-i-mā´-lis,	an-i-ma´-li-um,
D. an-i-mā´-li,	an-i-mal´-i-bus,
Ac. an´-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma´-li-a,
V. an´-ĭ-mal,	an-i-ma´-li-a,
Ab. an-i-mā´-li.	an-i-mal´-i-bus.

Iter, *a journey;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ĭ´-ter,	i-tin´-ĕ-ra,
G. i-tin´-ĕ-ris,	i-tin´-ĕ-rum,
D. i-tin´-ĕ-ri,	it-i-ner´-ĭ-bus,
Ac. ĭ´-ter,	i-tin´-ĕ-ra,
V. ĭ´-ter,	i-tin´-ĕ-ra,
Ab. i-tin´-ĕ-re.	it-i-ner´-ĭ-bus.

Opus, *work;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ŏ´-pus,	op´-ĕ-ra,
G. op´-ĕ-ris,	op´-ĕ-rum,
D. op´-ĕ-ri,	o-per´-ĭ-bus,
Ac. o´-pus,	op´-ĕ-ra,
V. o´-pus,	op´-ĕ-ra,
Ab. op´-ĕ-re.	o-per´-ĭ-bus.

Lăpis, *a stone;* masc.

Singular.	Plural.
N. la´-pis,	lap´-ĭ-des,
G. lap´-ĭ-dis,	lap´-ĭ-dum,
D. lap´-ĭ-di,	la-pid´-ĭ-bus,
Ac. lap´-ĭ-dem,	lap´-ĭ-des,
V. la´-pis,	lap´-ĭ-des,
Ab. lap´-ĭ-de.	la-pid´i-bus.

Căput, *a head;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ca´-put,	cap´-ĭ-ta,
G. cap´-ĭ-tis,	cap´-ĭ-tum,
D. cap´-ĭ-ti,	ca-pit´-ĭ-bus,
Ac. ca´-put,	cap´-ĭ-ta,
V. ca´-put,	cap´-ĭ-ta,
Ab. cap´-ĭ-te.	ca-pit´-ĭ-bus.

Poëma, *a poem;* neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. po-ē´-ma,	po-em´-ă-ta,
G. po-em´-ă-tis,	po-em´-ă-tum,
D. po-em´-ă-ti,	po-e-mat´-ĭ-bus, *or* po-em´-ă-tis,
Ac. po-ē´-ma,	po-em´-ă-ta,
V. po-ē´-ma,	po-em´-ă-ta,
Ab. po-em´-ă-te.	po-e-mat´-ĭ-bus, *or* po-em´-ă-tis.

RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28—34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o, er, or, es* increasing in the genitive, *os,* and *n,* are masculine; as,

sermo, speech; *dŏlor,* pain; *flos,* a flower; *carcer,* a prison; *pes,* a foot; *cănon,* a rule.

Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* are feminine; as, *ratio,* reason; *legio,* a legion.

REM. 1. But numerals in *io;* as, *binio, trinio,* etc., except *unio,* unity, are masculine.

. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go,* of more than two syllables, are feminine; as, *arundo,* a reed; *imāgo,* an image. So also *grando,* hail. But *comĕdo,* a glutton; *unĕdo,* the arbute tree; and *harpăgo,* a grappling-hook, are masculine.

REM. 2. *Margo,* the brink of a river, is doubtful. *Cupīdo,* desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.
3. *Căro,* flesh, and Greek nouns in *o,* are feminine; as, *ĕcho,* an echo. *Būbo,* the owl, is once feminine, Virg. A. 4, 462.

Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Laver,* a water plant, and *tŭber,* the tuber tree, are feminine, but when the latter denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter,* a boat, is feminine, and once, in Tibullus, masculine. *Siser,* skirret, is neuter in the singular, but masculine in the plural.

2. The following, in *er,* are neuter:—

Acer, *a maple-tree.*	Papāver, *a poppy.*	Tūber, *a swelling.*
Cadāver, *a dead body.*	Piper, *pepper.*	Uber, *a teat.*
Cicer, *a vetch.*	Siler, *an osier.*	Ver, *the spring.*
Iter, *a journey.*	Spinther, *a clasp.*	Verber, *a scourge.*
Lāser, *assafœtida.*	Sūber, *a cork-tree.*	Zingĭber, *ginger.*

Exceptions in OR.

§ 61. *Arbor,* a tree, is feminine: *ădor,* spelt; *æquor,* the sea; *marmor,* marble; and *cor,* the heart, are neuter.

Exceptions in ES increasing in the genitive.

1. The following are feminine:—

Compes, *a fetter.*	Quies, *and* Requies, *rest.*	Tēges, *a mat.*
Merces, *a reward.*	Inquies, *restlessness.*	
Merges, *a sheaf of corn.*	Sēges, *growing corn.*	

2. *Ales,* a bird; *cōmes,* a companion; *hospes,* a guest; *interpres,* an interpreter; *miles,* a soldier; *obses,* a hostage; *præses,* a president; and *satelles,* a life-guard, are common, § 30. *Æs,* brass, is neuter.

Exceptions in OS.

3. *Arbos*, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; *eos*, the morning; and rarely *nĕpos*, a grandchild, are feminine: *sacerdos*, *custos*, and *bos* are common, § 80: *ŏs*, the mouth, and *ŏs*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *épos*, epic poetry; and *mélos*, melody.

Exceptions in N.

4. Nouns in *men* with four in *n* are neuter—*glūten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

5. Four nouns in *on* are feminine—*aëdon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a king-fisher; *icon*, am image; and *sindon*, muslin.

FEMININES.

§ 62.
Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the geni-tive, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; as,

œtas, age; *nūbes*, a cloud; *ăris*, a bird; *chlămys*, a cloak; *laus*, praise; *trabs*, a beam; *pax*, peace.

Exceptions in AS.

1. *Mas*, a male, *vas*, a surety, and *as*, a piece of money, or any unit divisi-ble into twelve parts, are masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also mascu-line; as, *adāmas*, adamant. So also *Mélas*, the name of a river, § 28, 2. *Arcas* and *Nōmas* are common.—(2.) *Vas*, a vessel, the indeclinable nouns, *fas* and *nēfas*, and Greek nouns in *as*, *ătis*, are neuter; as, *artŏcreas*, a meat-pie; *bucĕ-ras*, a species of herb.

Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.

3. *Acinăces*, a scimitar, and *côles* or *côlis*, a stalk, are masculine. *Antistes*, *palumbes*, *vātes*, and *vepres*, are masculine or feminine. *Cacoëthes*, *hippomănes*, *nepenthes*, and *panăces*, Greek words, are neuter.

Exceptions in IS.

§ 63.
1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

(1.) Masc. *Crīnis*, hair; *ignis*, fire; *pānis*, bread; *mānes*, (plur.), departed spirits.—(2.) Masc. or fem. *Amnis*, a river; *cinis*, ashes; *f'inis*, an end; *clānis*, the haunch; *cănis*, a dog; *f'ūnis*, a rope. The plurals, *cinēres*, the ashes of the dead, and *f'ines*, boundaries, are always masculine.

2. The following are common or doubtful:—

Anguis, *a snake*.	Corbis, *a basket*.	Tigris, *a tiger*.
Callis, *a path*.	Pollis, *fine flour*.	Torquis, *a chain*.
Canālis, *a conduit pipe*.	Pulvis, *dust*.	
Contubernālis, *a comrade*.	Scrŏbis, *a ditch*.	

3. The following are masculine:—

Axis, *an axle*.	Cenchris, *a serpent*.	Follis, *a pair of bellows*.
Aquālis, *a water-pot*.	Collis, *a hill*.	Fustis, *a club*.
Cassis, *a net*.	Cucŭmis, *a cucumber*.	Glis, *a dormouse*.
Caulis, or } *a stalk*.	Ensis, *a sword*.	Lăpis, *a stone*.
Cōlis, } *a stalk*.	Fascis, *a bundle*.	Lemūres, pl., *spectres*.

Mensis, *a month.*	Sanguis, *blood.*	Sentis, *a brier.*
Mugĭlis, *a mullet.*	Sēmis, *or*	Sodālis, *a companion.*
Orbis, *a circle.*	Semissis,	Torris, *a firebrand.*
Piscis, *a fish.*	Bessis,	compounds	Unguis, *a nail.*
Postis, *a post.*	Centussis,	of *as.*	Vectis, *a lever.*
Quiris, *a Roman.*	Decussis,	Vermis, *a worm.*
Samnis, *a Samnite.*	Tressis,	Vōmis, *a ploughshare.*

4. Names of male beings, rivers, and months in *is* are masculine; as, *Dis,* Pluto; *Anūbis,* an Egyptian deity; *Tigris,* the river Tigris; *Aprīlis,* April. See § 28.

Exceptions in YS.

Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine; as, *Hălys, Othrys.* See § 28, 2 and 3

Exceptions in S preceded by a consonant.

§ **64.** 1. *Dens,* a tooth; *fons,* a fountain; *mons,* a mountain; and *pons,* a bridge, are masculine. So also are *auceps,* a bird-catcher; *chălybs,* steel; *cliens,* a client; *ellops,* a kind of fish; *ĕpops,* a hoopoe; *gryps,* a griffin; *hydrops,* the dropsy; *mĕrops,* a kind of bird. *Rūdens,* a rope, is masculine and very rarely feminine.

2. The following nouns also are masculine, viz. (*a.*) these which are properly adjectives—*confluens* and *torrens,* scil. *amnis; occidens* and *oriens,* scil. *sol;* (*b.*) compounds of *dens—tridens,* a trident, and *bidens,* a two-pronged mattock;—but *bidens,* a sheep, is feminine; (*c.*) the parts of *as* ending in *ns;* as, *sextans, quadrans, triens, dodrans,* and *dextans.*

3. The following are common or doubtful:—

| Adeps, *grease.* | Seps, *a kind of serpent.* | Serpens, *a serpent.* |
| Forceps, *pincers.* | Scrobs, *a ditch.* | Stirps, *the trunk of a tree.* |

Animans an animal, which is properly an adjective, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Exceptions in X.

§ **65.** 1. AX. *Anthrax,* cinnabar; *cōrax,* a raven; *cordax,* a kind of dance; *drōpax,* an ointment; *stȳrax,* a kind of tree; *thōrax,* a breast-plate; and *Atax,* the river Aude, are masculine; *līmax,* a snail, is common.

2. EX. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *fax, forfex, lex, nex, prex,* (obsolete in nom. and gen. sing.), and *supellex,* which are feminine; to which add (§ 29) *cărex, ĭlex, mūrex, pellex,* and *vitex. Atriplex* is neuter and very rarely masculine or feminine. *Alex,* a fish-pickle; *cortex,* bark; *imbrex,* a gutter-tile; *ōbex,* a bolt; and *silex,* a flint, are doubtful: *sĕnex,* an old person; *grex,* a herd; *rūmex,* sorrel; and *pūmex,* pumice-stone, are masculine and very rarely feminine.

3. IX. *Cĭlix,* a cup; *fornix,* an arch; *phœnix,* a kind of bird; and *spādix,* a palm-branch, are masculine: *lārix,* the larch-tree; *perdix,* a partridge; and *vărix,* a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. OX. *Box* and *ĕsox,* names of fishes, are masculine.

5. UX. *Trādux,* a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. YX. *Bombyx,* a silk-worm; *călyx,* the bud of a flower; *coccyx,* a cuckoo; *ŏryx,* a wild goat, and names of mountains in *yx,* as *Eryx,* are masculine. *Onyx,* a box made of the onyx-stone, and *sardōnyx,* a precious stone; also, *calx,* the heel, and *calx,* lime; *lynx,* a lynx, and *sandyx,* a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Bombyx,* when it signifies silk, is doubtful.

7. *Quincunx, septunx, dēcunx, deunx,* parts of *as,* are masculine.

NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, t, ar, ur, us,* and *men,* are neuter; as,

diadēma, a crown; *rēte,* a net; *hydromēli,* mead; *lac,* milk; *vectīgal,* revenue; *cǎput,* the head; *calcar,* a spur; *guttur,* the throat; *pectus,* the breast; and *flūmen,* a river.

Exceptions in L, C, and E.

Mūgil, a mullet, and *sol,* the sun, are masculine. *Sal,* salt, is masculine or neuter, in the singular; but, in the plural, it is always masculine. *Lac* is neuter and rarely masculine. *Præneste* is neuter, and once in Virgil feminine.

Exceptions in AR and UR.

§ 67. *Furfur,* bran; *sǎlar,* a trout; *turtur,* a turtle dove; and *vultur,* a vulture, are masculine.

Exceptions in US.

1. *Lěpus,* a hare; and Greek nouns in *pus* (ποῦς), are masculine; as, *tripus,* a tripod; but *lagōpus,* a kind of bird, is feminine.

2. Nouns in *us,* having *ūtis,* or *ūdis,* in the genitive, are feminine; as, *juventus,* youth; *incus,* an anvil.

3. *Pecus, -ūdis,* a brute animal, and *tellus,* the earth, are feminine. *Pessĭnus,* and *Selinus,* names of towns, are also feminine. See § 29.

4. *Grus,* a crane; *mus,* a mouse; and *sus,* a swine, are masculine or feminine.

5. *Rhus,* sumach, is masculine, and rarely feminine.

RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 68. 1. The genitive singular of the third declension of *Latin* nouns always ends in *is,* in *Greek* nouns it sometimes ends in *os* and *us.*

A.

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ătis;* as, *di-a-dē´-ma, di-a-dem´-ă-tis,* a crown; *dog´-ma, dog´-mă-tis,* an opinion.

E.

3. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is;* as, *rē´-te, rē´-tis,* a net; *se-dī´-le, se-dī´-lis,* a seat.

L.

4. Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hydrom´-ē-li,* mead, has *hyd-ro-mel´-ĭ-tis* in the genitive.

O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis;* as, *ser´-mo, sermō´-nis,* speech; *pā´-vo, pa-vō´-nis,* a peacock.

REMARK. Patrials in o have *ŏnis*; as, *Macĕdo, -ŏnis*; but some have *ōnis*, as, *Eburōnes*, etc. See 3d exception to increments in O, § 287.

EXC. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *ĭnis*; as, *a-run'-do, a-run'-dĭ-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go, i-mag'-ĭ-nis*, an image.

But four dissyllables—*cūdo, ūdo, līgo* and *mango*; and three trisyllables—*comēdo, unēdo*, and *harpȳgo*, have *ōnis*.

EXC. 2. The following nouns, also, have *ĭnis*:—*Apollo; hŏmo*, a man; *nēmo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

Căro, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis;* *Nerio*, the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Anien*, and *Neriēnes*.

EXC. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ūs*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Didus*, dat. *Dido*, etc.; *Argo, -us*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido, Didōnis*.

Y.

Greek nouns in *y* have their genitive in *yos*; as, *mĭsy, misȳos*, or, by contraction, *misys*.

C.

§ **70.** The only nouns in *c* are *ā'-lec, a-lē'-cis*, fish-brine, and *lac, lac'-tis*, milk.

L. N. R.

Nouns in *l, n,* and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul, con'-sŭ-lis*, a consul; *că'-non, can'-ŏ-nis*, a rule; *hŏ'-nor, ho-nō'-ris*, honor.

So, An'-I-mal, an-i-mā'-lis, *an animal.*   Cal'-car, cal-cā'-ris, *a spur.*
Vĭ'-gil, vig'-ĭ-lis, *a watchman.*   Car'-cer, car'-cĕ-ris, *a prison.*
Tĭ'-tan, Ti-tā'-nis, *Titan.*   A'-mor, a-mō'-ris, *love.*
Sī'-ren, Si-rē'-nis, *a Siren.*   Gut'-tur, gut'-tŭ-ris, *the throat.*
Del'-phin, del-phī'-nis, *a dolphin.*   Mar'-tyr, mar'-tȳ-ris, *a martyr.*

Exceptions in L.

Fel, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*, making *fellis* and *mellis*.

Exceptions in N.

§ **71.** 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *ĭnis*; as, *flū'-men, flŭ'-mĭ-nis*, a river; *glū'-ten, glu'-tĭ-nis*, glue.

The following masculines, also, form their genitive in *ĭnis*:—*oscen*, a bird which foreboded by its notes; *pecten*, a comb; *tibīcen*, a piper; and *tubīcen*, a trumpeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *ōn* form their genitive in *ontis*; as, *Laomēdon, Laomedontis*. Some in *īn* and *ȳn* add *is* or *os*; as, *Trāchin*, or *Trāchyn, Trachīnis* or *Trachȳnos*.

Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pă'-ter, pa'-tris*, a father. So also *imber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*; as, *Octōber, Octōbris*.

4

But *cráter*, a cup; *sóter*, a savior; and *láter*, a brick, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, a kind of corn, has *farris*; *hŏpar*, the liver, *hepätis*; *Lar* or *Lars*, *Lartis*; *iter*, a journey, has *itinĕris* from the old nominative *itiner*; *Jupiter*, *Jovis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordis*.

3. These four in *ur* have *ŏris* in the genitive:—*ĕbur*, ivory; *fĕmur*, the thigh; *jĕcur*, the liver; *rŏbur*, strength.

Fémur has also *fĕminis*, and *jĕcur*, *jecinŏris*, and *jocinŏris*.

AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *ätis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tä'-tis*, age; *pĭ-ĕ-tas*, *pi-e-tä'-tis*, piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mäs*, a male, *märis*; *vas*, a surety, *vädis*; and *räs*, a vessel, *väsis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anätis*.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *ădis* or *ădos*, and the neuters in *ătis*; as, *adāmas*, *-antis*, adamant; *lampas*, *-ădis*, a lamp; *Pallas*, *-ădis* or *-ădos*; *bucĕras*, *-ätis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nŏmas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *ădis*. *Mĕlas*, the name of a river, has *Melānis*.

ES.

§ 73. 1. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is*, *ĭtis*, *ĕtis*, or *ētis*; as, *rū'-pes*, *ru'-pis*, a rock; *mĭ'-les*, *mil-ī-tis*, a soldier; *sē'-ges*, *seg'-ĕ-tis*, growing corn; *quĭ'-es*, *qui-ē'-tis*, rest.

REMARK. A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *ei*, or, by contraction, *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *is*, *ei* or *-i*; and a few in *æ* after the first declension; as, *Orestes*, *is* or *æ*.

2. Those which make *ĭtis* are,

Ales, *a bird.*	Gurges, *a whirlpool.*	Poples, *the ham.*
Ames, *a fowler's staff.*	Hospes, *a guest.*	Satelles, *a lifeguard.*
Antistes, *a priest.*	Limes, *a limit.*	Stipes, *the stock of a tree.*
Cæspes, *a turf.*	Merges, *a sheaf of corn.*	Termes, *an olive bough.*
Cōmes, *a companion.*	Miles, *a soldier.*	Trames, *a by-path.*
Eques, *a horseman.*	Palmes, *a vine-branch.*	Veles, *a skirmisher.*
Fōmes, *touchwood.*	Pedes, *a foot-soldier.*	

3. The following have *ĕtis*:—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *indĭges*, a man deified; *interpres*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *sĕges*, a corn-field; and *tĕges*, a mat.

4. The following have *ētis*:—*Cēbes*; *Cres*, a Cretan; *lēbes*, a caldron; *magnes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; *inquies*, restlessness; and *tāpes* (used only in acc. and abl.), tapestry.—Some Greek proper names have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chrēmes*, *-ētis*, or *-is*. *Dáres*, *-ētis*, or *-is*.

Exc. 1. *Obses*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *ĭdis*. *Hēres*, an heir, and *merces*, a reward, have *ēdis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *ĕdis*.

Exc. 2. *Cēres* has *Cerĕris*; *bes*, *bessis*; *præs*, *prædis*; and *æs*, *æris*.

IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *au'-ris*, the ear; *ă'-vis*, *ă'-vis*, a bird.

Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ĕris*:—*cĭnis*, ashes; *pulvis*, dust; *vŏmis* or *vŏmer*, a ploughshare.   *Cucŭmis*, a cucumber, has *ĕris* and rarely *is*.

Exc. 2. The following have *ĭdis*:—*cāpis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cuspis*, a point; *lăpis*, a stone; and *prōmulsis*, an antepast.

Exc. 3. Two have *ĭnis*:—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis* or *sanguen*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *ĭtis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quĭris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Glis*, a dormouse, has *glīris*.

GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, whose genitive ends in *ios* or *eos*, (*ιος* or *εως*), form their genitive in Latin in *is*; as (*a.*) verbals in *sis*; as, *basis, mathēsis*, etc. (*b.*) compounds of *polis* (*πόλις*); as, *metropŏlis, Neapŏlis*, etc.; and (*c.*) a few other proper names, as *Charybdis, Lachēsis, Syrtis*, etc.   In some nouns of this class the Greek genitive is sometimes found; as, *Nemĕsis, Nemesios*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, whose Greek genitive is in *ĭdos* (*ĭδος*), form their Latin genitive in *ĭdis*; as, *ægis, aspis, ephemĕris, pyrāmis, tyrannis, Ænēis, Iris, Nerēis*, etc.   *Tigris* has both *is* and *ĭdis;* and in some other words of this class later writers use *is* instead of *ĭdis*.

3. *Chāris* has *Charĭtis;* *Salāmis, Salamīnis*, and *Simŏis, Simoentis*.

OS.

§ **75.**   Nouns in *ōs* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis;* as, *flos, flō´-ris*, a flower; *nĕ´-pos, ne-pō´-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris*:—

Flos, *a flower.*	Lăbos or *lăbor, labor.*	Os, *the mouth.*
Glos, *a husband's sister.*	Lĕpos or *lĕpor, wit.*	Ros, *dew.*
Hŏnos or *hŏnor, honor.*	Mos, *a custom.*	

Arbos or *arbor*, a tree, has *ŏris*.

The following have *ōtis*:—

Cos, *a whetstone.*	Monocĕros, *a unicorn.*	Nĕpos, *a grandchild.*
Dos, *a dowry.*	Rhinocĕros, *a rhinoceros.*	Sacerdos, *a priest.*

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis;* *bos*, an ox, *bŏvis;* and *ŏs*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek nouns in *os* have *ŏis* in the genitive; as, *hēros*, a hero; *Minos, Tros*, a Trojan; and some Greek neuters in *os* are used in the third declension in the nominative and accusative only; as, *Argos, cētos, ĕpos, mēlos*.

US.

§ **76.**   1. Nouns in *ŭs* form their genitive in *ĕris* or *ŏris;* as, *gĕ´-nus, gen´-ĕ-ris*, a kind; *tem´-pus, tem´-pŏ-ris*, time.

2. Those which make *ĕris* are, *ăcus*, (chaff,) *fœdus, fānus, gĕnus, glŏmus, lătus, mūnus, ŏlus, ŏnus, ŏpus, pondus, rădus, scĕlus, sĭdus, ulcus, vellus, viscus* and *vulnus*.   In early writers *pĭgnus* has sometimes *pignĕris*.

3. Those which make *ŏris* are, *corpus, dĕcus, dĕdĕcus, facĭnus, fĕnus, frīgus, lĕpus, lĭtus, nĕmus, pectus, pĕcus, pĕnus, pignus, stercus, tempus*, and *tergus*.

Exc. 1. These three in *ūs* have *ūdis*:—*incŭs*, an anvil; *pălŭs*, a morass; and *subscŭs*, a dove-tail.   *Pĕcŭs*, a brute animal, has *pecŭdis*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis*:—*juventŭs*, youth; *sălŭs*, safety; *senectŭs*, old age; *servitŭs*, slavery; *virtŭs*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *ūs* have *ūris;* as, *crus*, the leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, broth; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *tus*, frankincense; except *grus* and *sus*, which have *gruis*, and *suis;* and *rhus*, which has *rhois* or *roris. Tellus,* the earth, has *tellūris;* and *Ligus* or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris.*

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis, laudis.*

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pūs* (πους) have *ŏdis;* as, *tripus, tripŏdis*, a tripod; *Œdipus, -ŏdis;* but this is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis;* as, *Amăthus, Amathuntis.* So *Trapēzus, Opus, Pessinus,* and *Selinus.*

Exc. 7. Greek nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos;* as, *Orpheus, -eos.* But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus, -ěi* or-*ī.* Cf. § 64, 5.

YS.

§ 77. 1. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and make their genitive in *ўis* (contracted *ȳs*), or, as in Greek, *yos* (υος); as,

Cotys, gen. *Cotyis* or *Cotys; Tēthys, -yis* or *ўos.* So *Atys, Căpys, Erinnys, Hălys, Othrys.* A few have *ўdis;* as, *chlămys, chlamȳdis.*

S preceded by a consonant.

2. Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis;* as, *trabs, trā'-bis*, a beam; *hi'-ems, hĭ-ě-mis,* winter; *pars, par'-tis*, a part; *frons, fron'-tis*, the forehead.

(1.) Those in *bs, ms,* and *ps;* as, *scrobs, hiems, stirps,* change *s* into *is;* except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *grȳphis.*

  REMARK. Compounds in *ceps* from *căpio* have *ĭpis;* as, *princeps, princĭpis,* a prince. But *auceps* has *aucŭpis.*

(2.) Those in *ls, ns,* and *rs;* as, *puls, gens, ars,* change *s* into *tis.*

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis:—frons,* foliage: *glans,* an acorn; *juglans,* a walnut; *lens,* a nit; and *libripens,* a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tiryns,* a town of Argolis, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

T.

§ 78. 1. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *ĭtis.* They are, *căput,* the head, gen. *cap'-ĭ-tis;* and its compounds, *occĭput* and *sincĭput.*

X.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive by resolving *x* into *cs* or *gs*, and inserting *i* before *s;* as, *vox (vocs) vō'-cis*, the voice; *lex (legs) lē'-gis,* a law.

(1.) Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis;* as, *fornax, fornācis,* except *fax, făcis.* Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ăcis;* as, *thorax, thorăcis;* a few have *ācis;* as, *cōrax, corācis;* and Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis;* as, *Astyănax, Astyanactis.*

(2.) Nouns in *ex* have *ĭcis;* as, *judex, judĭcis: ŏbex* has *obĭcis* or *objĭcis;* and *vibex, vibĭcis. Nex, prex,* (nom. obs.), *rĕsex* and *fenĭsex* have *ĕcis; ălex, narthex,* and *verrex* have *ēcis,* and *fiex, faĕcis. Lex* and *rex* have *ēgis; aquilex* and *grex* have *ēgis; rēmex* has *remĭgis;* and *supellex, supellectilis.*

(3.) Nouns in *ix* have *ĭcis*; as, *cervix, cervīcis*; and less frequently *ĭcis*; as, *cālix, calīcis*. But *nix* has *nĭvis*; *strix*, foreign names of men, and gentile nouns in *rix* have *ĭgis*; as, *Bitūrix, Dumnŏrix*, etc.

(4.) Nouns in *ox* have *ōcis*; as, *vox, vōcis*; but *Cappădox* has *Cappădŏcis*; *Allŏbrox, Allobrŏgis*; and *nox, noctis*.

(5.) Of nouns in *ux*, *crux, dux, trādux*, and *nux* have *ŭcis*; *lux* and *Pollux, ūcis*.—*Conjux* has *conjŭgis, frux* (nom. obs.) *frūgis*, and *faux, faucis*.

(6.) *Yx*, a Greek termination, has *ўcis, ўcis*, or *ўgis, ўgis*. *Onyx* and *sar-dŏnyx*, in which *x* is equivalent to *chs* (§ 3, 2) have *ўchis*; as, *ŏnyx, onўchis*.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79.
The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*.

Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte dătus*. Varro in Gellius. So *œre* for *œri*, Cic. and Liv.; and *jūre* for *jūri*. Liv.

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

(*a*.) The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nomi-native.

(*b*.) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin nouns in *is*, which do not increase in the geni-tive, have *im*, and some Greek nouns have *im, in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accus-ative singular in *im*; as, *Hispălis, Tibĕris, Anūbis*; so also *Albis, Athĕsis, Bœtis, Arar* or *Arăris, Bĭlbĭlis, Apis, Osiris, Syrtis*, etc. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*. *Scaldis* has *in* and *em*, and *Liris, im, in*, and *em*. *Liger* has *Ligĕrim*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im* :—

Amussis, *a mason's rule*.	Mephītis, *foul air*.	Sināpis, *mustard*.
Būris, *a plough-tail*.	Pelvis, *a basin*.	Sitis, *thirst*.
Cannăbis, *hemp*.	Rāvis, *hoarseness*.	Tussis, *a cough*.
Cucūmis, (*gen.* -is), *a cucumber*.	Secūris, *an axe*.	Vis, *strength*.

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em* :—

Febris, *a fever*. Puppis, *the stern*. Restis, *a rope*. Turris, *a tower*.

But these have *em*, and rarely *im* :—

Bipennis, *a battle-axe*.	Nāvis, *a ship*.	Sementis, *a sowing*.
Clāvis, *a key*.	Praesēpis, *a stall*.	Strigĭlis, *a flesh-brush*.
Messis, *a harvest*.		

4. *Lens* and *pars* have rarely *lentim* and *partim;* and *crātim* from *crates*, is found in Plautus.

5. Early writers formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80.
The accusative singular of masculine and feminine Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

I. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, *impure*, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a ;* as, *lampas, lampădis* (Greek -δος), *lampăda; chlămys, chlamўdis, chlamўdem*, or -*ўda ; Helicon, Helicŏnis, Helicōna*.

REMARK. In like manner these three, which have *is* *pure* in the genitive— *Trōs*, *Trōis*, *Trōem*, and *Trōa*, a Trojan; *hēros*, *hēros*, a hero; and *Minos*, a king of Crete.—*Aĕr*, the air; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; and *pæan*, a hymn, have usually *a*; as, *aĕra*, *æthĕra*, *delphina*, *pœāna*. *Pan*, a god, has only *ă*.

EXC. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*; *Păris*, *Parĭdis*; *Parim*, or *Parĭdem*.

EXC. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elĭdis*; *Elin* or *Elĭdem*. So *tigris*, gen. *is* or *idis*; acc. *tigrim* or *tigrin*.

II. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys*, gen. *yos*, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *Charybdis*, (gen. Lat. *-is*, Gr. *ǁ*, acc. *Charybdim* or *-in*; *Hălys*, *-yis* or *-yos*, *Halym* or *-yn*. So *rhus*, gen. *rhois*, has *rhun* or *rhum*.

III. Proper names ending in the diphthong *eus*, gen. *ĕi* and *ĕos*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus*, *Thesea*; *Tӯdeus*, *Tӯdea*. See § 54, 5.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the first declension; as, *Achilles*, *Achillen*; *Xerxes*, *Xerxen*; *Sophŏcles*, *Sophŏclen*. Cf. § 45, 1. Some also, which have either *ĕtis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *ĕtem*, *ĕta*, or *em*, the termination *en*; as, *Chrēmes*, *Thāles*.

VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

§ **81.** The vocative is like the nominative.

REMARK. Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Tēthys*, *Tethy*; *Melampus*, *Melampu*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have a vocative in *ē*, after the first declension; as, *Socrates*, *Socrate*. § 45, 1.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ **82.** The ablative singular commonly ends in *e*.

EXC. 1. (*a*.) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *sedile*, *sedĭli*; *anĭmal*, *anĭmāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*.

(*b*.) But names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative; viz. *baccar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hĕpar*, the liver; *jŭbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair; *sal*, salt. *Rēte*, a net, has either *e* or *i*; and *mare*, the sea, has sometimes in poetry *mare* in the ablative.

EXC. 2. (*a*.) Nouns which have *im* alone, or both *im* and *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; *Tibĕris*, *-im*, *i*; *December*, *Decembri*; *Aprĭlis*, *Aprĭli*.

(*b*.) But *Bætis*, *cannăbis*, and *sināpis*, have *e* or *i*. *Tigris*, the tiger, has *tigrĭde*; as a river it has both *Tigrĭde* and *Tigri*.

EXC. 3. (*a*.) Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre* or *turri*.

(*b*.) So *Elis*, acc. *Elĭdem* und *Elin*, has *Elĭde* or *Eli*. But *restis*, and most Greek nouns with *idis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Păris*, *-idis*, *-ide*.

EXC. 4. (*a*.) Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e*; as, *familiāris*, a friend; *natālis*, a birthday; *sodālis*, a companion; *trirēmis*, a trireme.—Participles in *ns*, used as nouns, have commonly *e* in the ablative, but *continens* has *i*.

(*b.*) When adjectives in *is* become proper names, they always have *e*; as, *Juvenális, Juvenále*. *Affínis* and *ædílis* have generally *e*; as have always *juvénis*, a youth; *rúdis*, a rod; and *volúcris*, a bird.

Exc. 5. (*a.*) The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:—

Amnis,	Collis,	Ignis,	Pars,	Supellex,
Anguis,	Convallis,	Imber,	Postis,	Tridens,
Avis,	Corbis,	Mugĭlis,	Pŭgil,	Unguis,
Bilis,	Fīnis,	Orbis,	Sordes,	Vectis,
Cīvis,	Fustis,	Ovis,	Sors,	Vesper.
Classis,				

(*b.*) *Occiput* has only *i*, and *rus* has either *e* or *i*; but *rure* commonly signifies from the country, and *rurí*, in the country. *Mel* has rarely *i*.

(*c.*) So also names of towns, when denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthagĭni*, at Carthage; so, *Anxúri* and *Lacedæmóni*, and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Cănális* has *i*, and very rarely *e*.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys, Atye*, or *Aty*.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ **83.** I. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermónes, rūpes*:—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* only, or in *e* and *i*, have *ia*; as, *căput, capĭta*; *sedíle, sedilia*; *rēte, retia*. *Aplustre* has both *a* and *ia*.

1. Some Greek neuters in *os* have *ē* in the nominative plural; as, *mélos*; nom. plural, *mele*; (in Greek μέλεα, by contraction μέλη). So *Tempe*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

II. The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; as, *sedíle, sedĭli, sedilium*; *turris, turre* or *turri, turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nūbes, nubium*; *hostis, hostium*.

Exc. *Cănis, juvĕnis, fŏris, mugĭlis, prōles, strues*, and *vātes*, have *um*; so oftener have *ăpis, strigĭlis*, and *volúcris*; less frequently *mensis, sĕdes*, and, in the poets only, *ambāges, cædes, clādes, vepres*, and *cælestis*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs, urbium*; *gens, gentium*; *arx, arcium*.

Exc. *Lynx, sphinx*, and *ops* (nom. obsolete) have *um*.

Most monosyllables in *s* and *x* pure have *um*, but the following have *ium*; *dos, mas, glis, lis, os (ossis), faux*, (nom. obs.) *nix, nox, strix, vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*; so also *far* and *ren*, and sometimes *lar*.

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*, but sometimes *um*; as, *cliens, clientium* or *clientum*; *Arpīnas, Arpinatium*.

(1.) Other nouns in *as* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *ætas, ætā-tum* or *ætatium*. *Penātes* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*cāro, compes, linter, imber, ūter, venter, Samnis, Quiris,* and usually *Insūber*. *Fornax* and *pālus* have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *gigas, gigantum*; *Arabs, Arābum*; *Thrax, Thrācum*;—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *ōn*; as, *Epigramma, epigrammatōn*; *Metamorphōsis, -eōn.* The patrial *Maleōn* also is found in Curtius, 4, 13.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boum* in the genitive plural.

REM. 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *mānes, mānium*; *cœlites, cœlitum*; *ilia, ilium*; as if from *mānis, cœles,* and *ile.* So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia, Saturna-lium*; but these have sometimes *ōrum* after the second declension. *Ales* has sometimes, by epenthesis, *alituum.* See § 322, 3.

DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ĭbus.*

EXC. 1. *Bos* has *bōbus* and *būbus*, by contraction, for *bovĭbus*; *sus* has *sūbus* by syncope, for *suĭbus.* § 322, 5, and 4.

EXC. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ibus*; as, *poëma, poëmatis,* or *poëmatibus.*

EXC. 3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *si,* and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis, herōidis*; *herōisi,* or *herōisin.* Ovid. So in Quintilian, *Metamorphosēsi.*

ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *ēs, ă, iă.*

EXC. 1. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *eīs,* instead of *ĭs*; as, *partes,* gen. *partium,* acc. *partīs* or *partēs.*

EXC. 2. Greek masculines and feminines, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *as*; as, *lampas, lampădis, lampădas.* So also *hēros, herōis, herōas,* and some barbarian names of nations have a similar form; as, *Brigantas, Allobrŏgas.*

Jupĭter, and *vis,* strength, are thus declined:—

Singular.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Ju'-pĭ-ter,	*N.* vis,	vī'-res,
G. Jŏ'-vis,	*G.* vis,	vir'-i-um,
D. Jŏ'-vi,	*D.* —	vir'-ĭ-bus,
Ac. Jŏ'-vem,	*Ac.* vim,	vī'-res,
V. Ju'-pĭ-ter,	*V.* vis,	vī'-res,
Ab. Jŏ'-ve.	*Ab.* vi.	vir'-ĭ-bus.

§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension:—

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
S.	Lampas,	{ -ădis, -ădos, }	{ -ădi,	{ -ădem, -ăda, }	-as,	-ăde.
Pl.	-ădes,	-ădum,	-adĭbus,	{ -ădes, -ădas, }	-ădes,	-adĭbus.
S.	Hēros,	-ōis,	-ōi,	{ -ōem, -ōa, }	-os,	-ōe.
Pl.	-ōes,	-ōum,	-oïbus,	{ -ōes, -ōas, }	-ōes,	-oïbus.
	Chĕlys,	{ -ўis, -ўos, }	-ўi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y,	-ўe *or* y.
	Poēsis,	{ -is, -ĭos, -ĕos, }	-i,	{ -ĭm, -ĭn, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ei, -i, -ĕos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ĕa, ēn, }	-es, -ĕ,	-e *or* -i.
	Orpheus,	-ĕos,	-ĕi,	-ĕa,	-eu,	See § 54.
	Aër,	-ĕris,	-ĕri,	-ĕra,	-er,	-ĕre.
	Didō,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and, except in the genitive, are indeclinable in the singular.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined:—

Fructus, *fruit.*		Cornu, *a horn.*	
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. fruc'-tŭs,	fruc'-tūs,	N. cor'-nŭ,	cor'-nu-ă,
G. fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tu-ŭm,	G. cor'-nūs,	cor'-nu-ŭm,
D. fruc'-tu-ī,	fruc'-tĭ-bŭs,	D. cor'-nū,	cor'-nĭ-bŭs,
Ac. fruc'-tŭm,	fruc'-tūs,	Ac. cor'-nŭ,	cor'-nu-ă,
V. fruc'-tŭs,	fruc'-tūs,	V. cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ă,
Ab. fruc'-tū.	fruc'-tĭ-bŭs.	Ab. cor'-nū.	cor'-nĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Can'-tus, *a song.*	Fluc'-tus, *a wave.*	Se-nā'-tus, *the senate.*
Cur'-rus, *a chariot.*	Luc'-tus, *grief.*	Gĕ'-lu, *ice.* (in sing.)
Ex-er'-cĭ-tus, *an army.*	Mo'-tus, *motion.*	Vĕ'-ru, *a spit.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine:—

Acus, *a needle.*	Ficus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus, *a gallery.*
Dŏmus, *a house.*	Manus, *a hand.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*

Cŏlus, a distaff, and the plurals *Quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *Idus*, the Ides, are also feminine. So *noctu*, by night, found only in the ablative singular

Pēnus, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Sĕcus*, sex, is neuter; see § 94. *Spĕcus*, a den, is masculine and rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification; as,

Anus, *nŭrus*, *socrus;—cornus*, *laurus*, and *quercus*. *Myrtus* also is feminine and rarely masculine. See § 29, 1 and 2.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 89. *Dŏmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, **and partly of the second.** It is thus declined:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	do'-mŭs,	do'-mŭs,
G.	do'-mŭs, *or* do'-mī,	dom'-u-ŭm, *or* do-mō'-rŭm,
D.	dom'-u-ī, *or* do'-mŏ,	dom'-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	do'-mŭm,	do'-mŭs, *or* do'-mōs,
V.	do'-mŭs,	do'-mŭs,
Ab.	do'-mō.	dom'-ĭ-bŭs.

(*a.*) *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domī* commonly signifies, at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, and in ancient inscriptions. In the genitive and accusative plural the forms of the second declension are more used than those of the fourth.

(*b.*) *Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *ficus*, a fig, or a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Pēnus* is of the second, third or fourth declension.

(*c.*) Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu*, *cornus*, or *cornum*. Adjectives, compounds of *manus*, are of the first and second declensions.

REMARK 1. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	fructŭs,	fructŭēs, ŭs,
G.	fructŭs, -ūs,	fructŭŭm, -ŭm,
D.	fructui, -ū,	fructuĭbŭs, -ŭbŭs, *or* -ĭbŭs,
Ac.	fructuĕm, -ŭm,	fructŭēs, ŭs,
V.	fructŭs,	fructŭēs, -ūs,
Ab.	fructuĕ, -ū.	fructuĭbŭs, -ŭbŭs, *or* -ĭbŭs.

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors; as, *anuis*, Ter. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus*, *senāti; tumultus*, *tumulti.* Sall.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *um* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ŭbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

Acus, a needle.	*Artus*, a joint.	*Partus*, a birth.	*Spĕcus*, a den.
Arcus, a bow.	*Lăcus*, a lake.	*Pĕcu*, a flock.	*Tribus*, a tribe.

Gĕnu, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *vĕru*, a spit, have *ibus* or *ŭbus*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ **90.** Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined: —

	Res, *a thing.*			Dies, *a day.*	
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	rēs,	rēs,	N.	dī'-ēs,	dī'-ēs,
G.	rĕ'-ī,	rē'-rŭm,	G.	di-ē'-ī,	di-ē'-rŭm,
D.	rĕ'-ī,	rē'-bŭs,	D.	di-ē'-ī,	di-ē'-bŭs,
Ac.	rĕm,	rēs,	Ac.	dī'-ĕm,	dī'-ēs,
V.	rēs,	rēs,	V.	dī'-ēs,	dī'-ēs,
Ab.	rē.	rē'-bŭs.	Ab.	dī'-ē.	di-ē'-bŭs.

REMARK. Nouns of this declension, like those of the fourth, seem to have belonged originally to the third declension.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

NOTE. *Dies* is seldom feminine, in good prose writers, except when it denotes duration of time, or a day fixed and determined.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ĕ* or in *ī*, instead of *ei;* as, gen. *diē* for *diēi*, Virg.; *fide* for *fidei*, Hor.; *acie* for *aciēi*, Cæs.—gen. *plēbi* for *plēbei*, Liv.—dat. *fide* for *fidei*, Hor., *pernicie*, Liv., and *pernicii*, Nep., for *perniciēi*. The genitive *rabies* contracted for *rabiei*, after the third declension, is found in Lucretius.

REMARK 1. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies, effigies, eluvies, facies, glacies, progenies, series, species, spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

REM. 2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plēbes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies, aries, paries, quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ **91.** When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublica*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *mater-familias*, a mistress of a family. Cf. § 43, 2.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
N. V.	res-pŭb'-lĭ-ca,	N. V.	res-pub'-lĭ-cæ,
G. D.	re-i-pŭb'-lĭ-cæ,	G.	re-rum-pŭb-li-cā'-rum,
Ac.	rem-pŭb'-lĭ-cam,	D. Ab.	re-bus-pŭb'-lĭ-cis,
Ab.	re-pŭb'-lĭ-că.	Ac.	res-pŭb'-lĭ-cas.

	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*
N.	jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	N.	ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
G.	ju-ris-ju-ran'-di,	————	G.	ma-tris-fa-mil'-i-as,
D.	ju-ri-ju-ran'-do,	————	D.	ma-tri-fa-mil'-i-as,
Ac.	jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	Ac.	ma-trem-fa-mil'-i-as,
V.	jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da.	V.	ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
Ab.	ju-re-ju-ran'-do.		Ab.	ma-tre-fa-mil'-i-as, *etc.*

NOTE. The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes— *Variable, Defective,* and *Redundant.*

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A noun is variable, which, in some of its parts, changes either its gender or declension or both.

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous ;* those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites.*

Heterogeneous Nouns.

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as,

Avernus, Dindȳmus, Ismărus, Massicus, Mænălus, Pangæus, Tartărus, Taygĕtus ; plur. *Averna,* etc.

2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

jŏcus, a jest; plur. *jŏci,* or *jŏca ;—lŏcus,* a place; plur. *lŏci,* passages in books, topics, places; *lŏca,* places ;—*sibilus,* a hissing; plur. *sibila,* rarely *sibili ;—intŭbus,* endive; plur. *intŭbi* or *intŭba.*

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural ; as,

carbăsus, a species of flax; plur. *carbăsa,* very rarely *carbăsi,* sails, etc., made of it ;—*Hierosolȳma, -æ,* Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolȳma, -ōrum.*

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural ; as,

cælum, heaven; plur. *cæli ;—Elysium ;* plur. *Elysii ;—Argos ;* plur. **Argi.** So *siser,* neut., plur. *siseres,* masc.

5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as,

frēnum, a bridle; plur. *frēni* or *frēna ;—rastrum,* a rake; plur. *rastri,* or, more rarely, *rastra ;—pugillar,* a writing tablet; plur. *pugillāres* or *pugillaria.*

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural ; as,

epŭlum, a feast; plur. *epŭlæ ;—balneum,* a bath; plur. *balneæ* or *balnea ;—nundinum,* a market-day; plur. *nundinæ,* a fair.

7. Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural ; as,

delicia or *delicium,* delight; plur. *deliciæ.*

Heteroclites.

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; as,

nom. and acc. *jugĕrum,* an acre; gen. *jugĕri* or *jugĕris;* abl. *jugĕro* and *jugĕre;* plur., nom., and acc. *jugĕra;* gen. *jugĕrum;* abl. *jugĕris* and *jugĕribus.*

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural; as,

vās, a vessel; plur. *vāsa, ōrum. Ancīle,* a shield, has sometimes *ancīliōrum,* in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vāsa. -ōrum,* properly comes from *vāsum, -i,* but the latter, together with the plural of *vas, vāsis,* became obsolete.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or in number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes.*

Such are *pondo,* a pound; most nouns in *i;* as, *gummi,* gum: foreign words; as, *Aaron, Jacob; sēmis,* a half; *git,* a kind of plant; the singular of *mille,* a thousand; words put for nouns; as, *velle suum,* for *sua voluntas,* his own inclination; and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote;* if found in two cases, a *Diptote;* if in three, a *Triptote;* if in four, a *Tetraptote;* and if in five, a *Pentaptote.*

The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those which occur but once in Latin authors are distinguished by an asterisk :—

Abactus, acc. pl.: a driving away.

Accitu, *abl.: a calling for.*

Admissu, *abl.: admission.*

Admonitu, *abl.: admonition.*

Æs, not used in *gen. pl.*

Affātu, *abl.; an addressing;—pl.* affā-tus, -ĭbus.

Algus, *nom.;* algum, *acc.;* algu, *abl.; cold.*

Ambāge, *abl.; a going around;—pl.* entire.

Amissum, acc.; a loss.

Aplustre, *nom.* and *acc.; the flag of a ship;—pl.* aplustria, *or* aplustra.

Arbitrātus, *nom.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; judgment.*

Arcessītu, *abl.; a sending for.*

Astu, *nom., acc.; a city.*

Astus, *nom.; astu, abl.; craft;—astus, acc. pl.*

Cacoëthes, *nom., acc.; an evil custom;—*cacoëthe, *nom. pl.; -e,* and -es, *acc. pl.*

Canities, *nom.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.*

Cētos, *acc.; a whale;—*cēte, *nom.* and *acc. pl.;* cetis, *dat.*

Chaos, *nom. acc.; chao, abl.; chaos.*

Cassem, *acc.; casse, abl.; a net;—pl. entire.*

Circumspectus, *nom.; -uum; -u; a looking around.*

Coactu, *abl.; constraint.*

Cœlīte, *abl.; pl. entire; inhabitants of heaven.*

Commutātum, acc.; an alteration.

Compĕdis, *gen.; compĕde, abl.; a fetter;—pl. compĕdes, -ium, -ĭbus.*

Concessu, *abl.; permission.*

Condiscipulātu, *abl.; companionship at school.*

Crātim, *or* -em, *acc.; -e, abl.; a hurdle;—pl.* crātes, -ium, -ĭbus.

Cupressu, *abl.; a cypress.*

Daps, *nom., scarcely used;* dăpis, *gen. etc. pl.* dapes, -ĭbus; *a feast.*

Dātu, abl.; a giving.

Derīsus, -ui, *dat.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; ridicule.*

5

Despicatui, *dat.; contempt.*

Dica, *nom.; dicam, acc.; a legal process;—dicas, acc. pl.*

Dicis, *gen.; as, dicis gratia, for form's sake.*

Ditiōnis, *gen.; -i, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; power.*

Diu, *abl.; in the day time.*

Divisui, *dat.; a dividing.*

Ebur, *ivory;—not used in the plural.*

Efflagitātu, abl.; importunity.

Ejectus, nom.; a throwing out.

Epos, *nom. and acc.; an epic poem.*

Ergo, *abl. (or adv.); for the sake.*

Essēdas, *acc. pl.; war chariots.*

Evectus, *nom.; a carrying out.*

Fæx, *dregs, wants gen. pl.*

Fāme, *abl.; hunger.*

Far, *corn, not used in the gen., dat., and abl. pl.*

Fas, *nom.; acc.; right.*

Fauce, *abl.; the throat;—pl. entire.*

Fax, *a torch, wants gen. pl.*

Fel, *gall, wants gen. pl.*

Feminis, *gen.; -i, dat.; -e, abl.; the thigh;—pl. femina, -ibus.*

Flictu, *abl.; a striking.*

Fŏris, *nom. and gen.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; a door;—pl. entire.*

Fors, *nom.; -tis, gen.; -tem, acc.; -te, abl.; chance.*

Frustratui, abl.; a deceiving.

Frux, *fruit, nom. scarcely used;—frūgis, gen., etc.*

Fulgetras, *acc. pl.; lightning.*

Gausāpe, *nom., acc., abl.; a rough garment;—gausāpa, acc. pl.*

Glos, *nom.; a husband's sister.*

Grātes, *acc. pl.;—gratibus, abl.; thanks.*

Hebdomādam, *acc.; a week.*

Hiems, *winter, not used in gen., dat. and abl. pl.*

Hippomānes, *nom. and acc.*

Hir, nom.; the palm of the hand.

Hortātu, *abl.; an exhorting;—pl. hortatibus.*

Impĕtis, *gen.; -e, abl.; a shock;—pl. impetibus.*

Incitas, *or -a, acc. pl.; as, ad incitas redactus, reduced to a strait.*

Inconsultu, abl.; without advice.

Indultu, abl.; indulgence.

Inferiæ, *nom. pl.; -as, acc.; -is, abl.; sacrifices to the dead.*

Infitias, *acc. pl.; a denial; as, ire infitias, to deny.*

Ingratiis, *abl. pl., (used adverbially); against one's will.*

Injussu, *abl.; without command.*

Inquies, *nom.; restlessness.*

Instar, *nom., acc.; a likeness.*

Interdiu, *abl. (or adv.); in the day time.*

Invitātu, abl.; an invitation.

Irrisui, *dat.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; derision.*

Jŏvis, *nom., rarely used;—pl. Joves.*

Jugĕris, *gen.; -e, abl.; an acre;—pl. jugĕra, -um, -ibus.*

Jussu, *abl.; command.*

Lābes, *a spot, wants gen. pl.*

Lūcu, *abl.; day-light.*

Ludificatui, dat.; a mockery.

Lux, *light, wants the gen. pl.*

Mandātu, *abl.; a command.*

Māne, *nom., acc.; mane, or rarely -i, abl.; the morning.*

Mel, *honey, not used in gen., dat., and abl. pl.*

Mēlos, *nom., acc.; melo, dat.; melody;—mēle, nom., acc. pl.*

Mĕtus, *fear, not used in gen., dat., and abl. pl.*

Missu, *abl.; a sending;—pl. missus, -ibus.*

Monĭtu, *abl.; admonition;—pl. monitus.*

Nātu, *abl.; by birth.*

Nauci, *gen., with non; as, homo non nauci, a man of no account.*

Nĕtas, *nom., acc.; wickedness.*

Nēmo, *nobody, wants the voc. and the pl.*

Nepenthes, *nom., acc.; an herb.*

Nex, *death, wants the voc.;—nĕces, nom., acc. pl.*

Nihil, *or nihilum, nom. and acc.; -i, gen.; -o, abl.; nothing.*

Noctu, *abl.; by night.*

Nuptui, *dat.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; marriage.*

Obex, *nom.; -icem, acc.; -ice, or -jice, abl.; a bolt;—pl. obices, -jicibus.*

Objectum, *acc.; -u, abl.; an interposition;—pl. objectus.*

Obtentui, *dat.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; a pretext.*

Opis, *gen.; ŏpem, acc.; ŏpe, abl.; help;—pl. entire.*

Oppositu, *abl.; an opposing;—pl. oppositus, acc.*

Opus, *nom., acc.; need.*

Os, *the mouth, wants the gen. pl.*

Panăces, *nom.; -is, gen.; -e, abl.; an herb.*

Pax, *peace, wants gen. pl.*

Peccātu, *abl.; a fault.*

Pecūdis, *gen.; -i, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.;—pl. entire.*

Pelăgo, *dat.; pl. of pelăgus; the sea.*

Permissu, *abl.; -um, acc.; permission.*

Piscātus, *nom.; -i, gen.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; a fishing.*

Pix, *pitch*; pĭces, *acc. pl.*
Pondo, *abl.*; *in weight.* Cf. § 94, 1.
Prĕci, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *prayer;—pl.* entire.
Prŏcer; *nom.*; -em, *acc.*; *a peer;—pl.* entire.
Promptu, *abl., readiness.*
Pus wants *gen. dat.* and *abl. pl.*
Relātum, *acc.;—u, abl.*; *a recital.*
Repetundārum, *gen. pl.*; -is, *abl.*; *money taken by extortion.*
Rogātu, *abl.*; *a request.*
Ros, *dew*, wants *gen. pl.*
Rus, *the country*, wants *gen., dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Satias, *nom.*; -ātem, *acc.*; āte, *abl.*; *satiety.*
Sĕcus, *nom., acc.*; *sex.*
Situs, *nom.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *situation;—*situs, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*
Sĭtus, *nom.*; -ūs, *gen.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *rust;—*situs, *acc. pl.*
Sol, *the sun*, wants *gen. pl.*
Sordis, *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e and -i, *abl;* *filth;—pl.* sordes,-ium, etc.
Spontis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *of one's own accord.*
Subŏles, *offspring*, wants *gen. pl.*

Suppetiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; *supplies.*
Tābum, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *corrupt matter.*
Tempe, *nom. acc. voc. pl.*; *a vale in Thessaly.*
Tus wants *gen., dat.*, and *abl. pl.*
Vēnui and -o, *dat.*; um, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*; *sale.*
Veprem, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *a brier;—pl.* extirior.
Verbĕris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *a stripe;—pl.* verbĕra, um, ĭbus.
Vesper, *nom.*; -um, *acc-*; -e, -i, *or* -o, *abl.*; *the evening.*
Vespĕra, *nom.*; -am, *acc.*; -ā, *abl.*; *the evening.*
Vicis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *change;—pl.* entire, except *gen.*
Vīrus, *nom.*; -us, *acc.*; -o, *abl.*; *poison.*
Vis, *nom.* and *dat.* rare; *strength; pl.* vires, -ium, etc. See § 85.
Viscus, *nom.*; -ĕris, *gen.*; -ĕre, *abl.*; *an internal organ. pl.* viscĕra, etc.
Vocātu, *abl.*; *a calling;—*vocātus, *acc. pl.*

REMARK 1. To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire. Cf. § 90, R. 1.

REM. 2. For the use of the vocative, also, of many nouns, no classical authority can be found.

§ **95.** 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(*a*) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are generally names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of herbs, of the arts, most material and abstract nouns; but these may have a plural when used as common nouns, (§ 26, R. 3.), and many others.

REM. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns is often used to denote the existence of the quality, attribute, etc. in different objects, or the repetition of an action ; and in poetry such plurals are used for the sake of emphasis or metre. See § 98.

The following list contains many of the *nouns which want the plural*, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

Aconītum, *wolfsbane*, p.
Adorea, *a military reward.*
Aër, *the air*, p.
Æs, *brass, money*, p.
Æther, *the sky.*

Ævum, *age, lifetime*, p.
Album, *an album.*
Allium, *garlic*, p.
Amicitia, *friendship*, p.
Argilla, *white clay.*
Avēna, *oats*, p.

Balaustium, *the flower of the pomegranate.*
Balsāmum, *balsam*, p.
Barathrum, *a gulf.*
Callum, *hardened skin*, p.
Calor, *heat*, p.

Carduus, *a thistle*, p.
Căro, *flesh*, p.
Cēra, *wax*, p.
Cestus, *a girdle*.
Cicūta, *hemlock*, p.
Cœnum, *mud*.
Contagium, *contagion*, p.
Crōcum, *saffron*.
Crŏcus, *saffron*, p.
Cruor, *blood*, p.
Cŭtis, *the skin*, p.
Dilucŭlum, *the dawn*.
Ebur, *ivory*.
Electrum, *amber*, p.
Far, *corn*, p.
Fel, *gall*, p.
Fervor, *heat*, p.
Fides, *faith*, p.
Fīmus, *dung*.
Fŭga, *flight*, p.
Fūmus, *smoke*, p.
Furor, *madness*, p.
Galla, *an oak-apple*, p.
Gĕlu, *frost*.
Glarea, *gravel*.
Gloria, *glory*, p.
Glastum, *woad*.
Glūten, *or*
Glutĭnum, *glue*.
Gypsum, *white plaster*.
Hēpar, *the liver*.
Hespĕrus, *the evening star*.
Hilum, *a little thing*.
Hordeum, *barley*, p.
Hūmus, *the ground*.
Indōles, *native quality*, p.
Ira, *anger*, p.
Jŭbar, *radiance*.
Jus, *justice, law*, p.
Justitium, *a law vacation*.

Lac, *milk*.
Lætitia, *joy*, p.
Languor, *faintness*, p.
Lardum, *bacon*, p.
Lātex, *liquor*, p.
Lētum, *death*.
Lignum, *wood*, p.
Līnus, *mud*.
Liquor, *liquor*, p.
Lues, *a plague*.
Lŭtum, *clay*, p.
Lux, *light*, p.
Macellum, *the shambles*.
Māne, *the morning*.
Marmor, *marble*, p.
Mel, *honey*, p.
Merīdies, *mid-day*.
Mors, *death*, p.
Munditia, *neatness*, p.
Mundus, *female ornaments*.
Muscus, *moss*.
Nectar, *nectar*.
Nēmo, *no man*.
Nequitia, *wickedness*, p.
Nihĭlum, nihil, or nil, *nothing*.
Nitrum, *natron*.
Oblivio, *forgetfulness*, p.
Omāsum, *bullock's tripe*.
Opium, *opium*.
Palea, *chaff*, p.
Pax, *peace*, p.
Pēnum, *and*
Pĕnus, *provisions*, p.
Piper, *pepper*.
Pix, *pitch*, p.
Pontus, *the sea*.
Prolubium, *desire*.
Pūbes, *the youth*.
Pulvis, *dust*, p.

Purpŭra, *purple*, p.
Quies, *rest*, p.
Ros, *dew*, p.
Rŭbor, *redness*, p.
Sabŭlo *and*
Sabŭlum, *gravel*.
Sal, *salt*.
Sălum, *the sea*.
Sălus, *safety*.
Sanguis, *blood*.
Scrupŭlum, *a scruple*, p.
Senium, *old age*.
Siler, *an osier*.
Sināpi, *mustard*.
Siser, *skirret*, p
Sĭtis, *thirst*.
Sol, *the sun*, p.
Sŏpor, *sleep*, p.
Specimen, *an example*.
Spūma, *foam*, p.
Sulfur, *sulphur*, p.
Supellex, *furniture*.
Tābes, *a consumption*.
Tābum, *corrupt matter*.
Tellus, *the earth*.
Terror, *terror*, p.
Thymum, *thyme*, p.
Tribŭlus, *a thistle*, p.
Tristitia, *sadness*.
Ver, *spring*.
Vespera, *the evening*.
Veternus, *lethargy*.
Vigor, *strength*, p.
Vīnum, *wine*, p.
Virus, *poison*.
Viscum, *and*
Viscus, *bird-lime*.
Vitrum, *woad*.
Vulgus, *the common people*.
Zingiber, *ginger*.

§ **96.** (*b*). The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bacchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolica*, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places:—

Acrocerauuia,	Baiæ,	Fundi,	Locri,	Sŭsa,
Amyclæ,	Ceraunia,	Gabii,	Parisii,	Syracūsæ,
Artaxāta,	Ecbatāna,	Gādes,	Philippi,	Thermopylæ,
Athēnæ,	Esquiliæ,	Gemoniæ,	Puteoli,	Veii.

NOTE. Some of those in *i* properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other *nouns which want the singular*, and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number:—

Acta, *records*.	Alpes, *the Alps*, s.	Apīnæ, *trifles*.
Adversaria, *a memorandum-book*.	Annāles, *annals*, s.	Argutiæ, *witticisms*, s.
	Antæ, *door-posts*.	Arma, *arms*.
Æstīva, sc. castra, *summer quarters*.	Antes, *rows*.	Artus, *the joints*, s.
	Antiæ, *a forelock*.	Bellaria, *sweetmeats*.

Bigæ, *a two-horse chariot,* s.
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of fishes.*
Brevia, *shallow places.*
Calendæ, *the Calends.*
Cancelli, *balustrades.*
Cāni, *gray hairs.*
Casses, *a hunter's net,* s.
Caulæ, *sheep-folds.*
Celĕres, *the body-guard of the Roman kings.*
Cibaria, *victuals,* s.
Clitellæ, *a pack-saddle.*
Codicilli, *a writing.*
Cœlĭtes, *the gods,* s.
Crepundia, *a rattle.*
Cunabŭla, *and*
Cūnæ, *a cradle.*
Cyclădes, *the Cyclades,* s.
Decĭmæ, *tithes,* s.
Diræ, *the Furies,* s.
Divĭtiæ, *riches.*
Druĭdes, *the Druids.*
Dryădes, *the Dryads,* s.
Epŭlæ, *a banquet,* s.
Eumenĭdes, *the Furies,* s.
Excubiæ, *watches.*
Exsequiæ, *funeral rites.*
Exta, *entrails.*
Exuviæ, *spoils.*
Facetiæ, *pleasantry,* s.
Feriæ, *holidays,* s.
Fĭdes, *a stringed instrument,* s.
Flabra, *blasts.*
Fræces, *the lees of oil.*
Frāga, *strawberries,* s.
Geminī, *twins,* s.
Gēnæ, *cheeks,* s.
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Grātes, *thanks.*
Habēnæ, *reins,* s.
Hiberna, sc. castra, *winter quarters.*
Hyădes, *the Hyades,* s.
Idus, *the ids of a month.*
Ilia, *the flank.*
Incunabŭla, *a cradle.*
Indutiæ, *a truce.*

Induviæ, *clothes.*
Ineptiæ, *fooleries,* s.
Infĕri, *the dead.*
Inferiæ, *sacrifices in honor of the dead.*
Insecta, *insects.*
Insidiæ, *an ambuscade,* s.
Justa, *funeral rites.*
Lactes, *small entrails,* s.
Lamenta, *lamentations.*
Lapicidīnæ, *a stone quarry.*
Latĕbræ, *a hiding place,* s.
Laurīces, *young rabbits.*
Lautia, *presents to foreign ambassadors.*
Lemūres, *hobgoblins.*
Lendes, *nits*
Libĕri, *children,* s.
Lucĕres, *a division of the Roman cavalry.*
Magalia, *cottages.*
Majōres, *ancestors.*
Mānes, *the shades,* s.
Manubiæ, *spoils of war.*
Mapalia, *huts,* s.
Minaciæ, *and*
Minæ, *threats.*
Minōres, *posterity.*
Mœnia, *the walls of a city,* s.
Multitia, *garments finely wrought.*
Munia, *official duties.*
Naiădes, *water-nymphs,* s.
Nāres, *the nostrils,* s.
Natāles, *parentage.*
Nātes, *the haunches,* s.
Nōmæ, *corroding sores or ulcers,* s.
Nōnæ, *the nones of a month.* § 326, 1.
Nūgæ, *jests, nonsense.*
Nundĭnæ, *the weekly market.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Oblivia, *forgetfulness,* s.
Officiæ, *cheats,* s.
Optimātes, *the aristocratic party,* s.

Palearia, *the dewlap,* s.
Pandectæ, *the pandects.*
Parietīnæ, *old walls.*
Partes, *a party,* s.
Pascua, *pastures,* s.
Penātes, *household gods,* s.
Phalēræ, *trappings.*
Philtra, *love potions.*
Pleiădes, *the Pleiads* or *seven stars,* s.
Postĕri, *posterity.*
Præbia, *an amulet.*
Præcordia, *the diaphragm, the entrails.*
Primitiæ, *first fruits.*
Procēres, *nobles,* s.
Pugillaria, or -āres, *writing-tablets.*
Quadrīgæ, *a team of four horses,* s.
Quirītes, *Roman citizens,* s.
Quisquiliæ, *refuse.*
Reliquiæ, *the remains,* s.
Salĕbræ, *rugged roads,* s.
Salīnæ, *salt pits.*
Scālæ, *a ladder,* s.
Scatĕbræ, *a spring,* s.
Scōpæ, *a broom.*
Scruta, *old stuff.*
Sentes, *thorns,* s.
Sponsalia, *espousals.*
Stativa, sc. castra, *a stationary camp.*
Supĕri, *the gods above.*
Talaria, *winged shoes.*
Tenĕbræ, *darkness,* s.
Tesca, *rough places.*
Thermæ, *warm baths.*
Tormĭna, *colic-pains.*
Transtra, *seats for rowers,* s.
Trīcæ, *trifles, toys.*
Utensilia, *utensils.*
Valvæ, *folding doors,* s.
Vepres, *brambles,* s.
Vergiliæ, *the seven stars.*
Vindiciæ, *a legal claim,* s.
Virgulta, *bushes.*

§ **97.**　The following usually differ in meaning in the different numbers.

Ædes, -is, *a temple.*
Ædes, -ium, *a house.*
Aqua, *water.*
Aquæ, *medicinal springs.*
Auxilium, *aid.*
Auxilia. *auxiliary troops.*

Bŏnum, *a good thing.*
Bŏna, *property.*
Carcer, *a prison.*
Carcĕres, *the barriers of a race-course.*
Castrum, *a castle.*

Castra, *a camp.*
Comitium, *a part of the Roman forum.*
Comitia, *an assembly for election.*
Copia, *plenty.*

Copiæ, *troops, forces.*
Cupedia, -æ, *daintiness.*
Cupediæ, -ārum, *and*
Cupedia, -ōrum, *dainties.*
Facultas, *ability.*
Facultātes, *property.*
Fastus, -ūs, *pride.*
Fastus, -uum, *and*
Fasti, -ōrum, *a calendar.*
Fortūna, *Fortune.*
Fortūnæ, *wealth.*
Furfur, *bran.*
Furfures, *dandruff.*
Gratia, *favor.*
Gratiæ, *thanks.*

Impedimentum, *a kinderance.*
Impedimenta, *baggage.*
Litĕra, *a letter of the alphabet.*
Litĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lūdus, *pastime.*
Lūdi, *public games.*
Lustrum, *a morass.*
Lustra, *a haunt or den of wild beasts.*
Mos, *custom.*
Mōres, *manners.*
Nāris, *a nostril.*
Nāres, *the nose.*

Natālis, *a birthday.*
Natāles, *birth, lineage.*
Opĕra, *work, labor.*
Opĕræ, *workmen.*
Opis, gen. *power.*
Opes, -um, *means, wealth.*
Plăga, *a region, tract.*
Plăgæ, *nets, toils.*
Principium, *a beginning.*
Principia, *the general's quarters.*
Rostrum, *a beak, prow.*
Rostra, *the Rostra.*
Sal, *salt.*
Sāles, *witticisms.*

§ **98.** The following plurals, with a few others, are sometimes used in poetry, especially in the nominative and accusative, instead of the singular, for the sake of emphasis or metre.

Æquŏra, *the sea.*
Alta, *the sea.*
Anĭmi, *courage.*
Auræ, *the air.*
Carīnæ, *a keel.*
Cervīces, *the neck.*
Colla, *the neck.*
Cŏmæ, *the hair.*
Connubia, *marriage.*
Corda, *the heart.*
Corpŏra, *a body.*
Crepuscŭla, *twilight.*
Currūs, *a chariot.*
Exsilia, *banishment.*
Frigŏra, *cold.*
Gaudia, *joy.*
Gramĭna, *grass.*
Guttŭra, *the throat.*

Hymenæi, *marriage.*
Ignes, *love.*
Inguĭna, *the groin.*
Iræ, *anger.*
Jejunia, *fasting.*
Jŭbæ, *a mane.*
Limĭna, *a threshold.*
Litŏra, *a shore.*
Mensæ, *a service or course of dishes.*
Neniæ, *a funeral dirge.*
Numĭna, *the divinity.*
Odia, *hatred.*
Ora, *the mouth, the countenance.*
Oræ, *confines.*
Ortus, *a rising, the east.*
Otia, *ease, leisure.*

Pectŏra, *the breast.*
Reditūs, *a return.*
Regna, *a kingdom.*
Rictūs, *the jaws.*
Robŏra, *strength.*
Silentia, *silence.*
Sinūs, *the bosom of a Roman garment.*
Tædæ, *a torch.*
Tempŏra, *time.*
Terga, *the back.*
Thalămi, *marriage or marriage-bed.*
Tŏri, *a bed, a couch.*
Tūra, *frankincense.*
Viæ, *a journey.*
Vultus, *the countenance.*

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ **99.** Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (*a*.) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbos*, a tree: (*b*.) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris,*; gen. *tigris,* or -*ĭdis;* a tiger.

2. In declension; as, *laurus;* gen. -*i*, or -*ūs;* a laurel.

3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.

4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, -*æ*, and *senectus*, -*ūtis;* old age.

5. In termination and gender; as *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.

6. In declension and gender; as *pēnus*, -*i* or *ūs*, masc. or fem., and *pēnus*, -*ŏris*, neut.; a store of provisions. *Spēcus*, -*ūs* or -*i*, masc. fem. or neut.; a cave.

7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *menda*, -*æ*, fem. and *mendum*, -*i*, neut.; a fault.

The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

Acĭnus, -um, *and* -a, *a berry.*
Adagium, *and* -io, *a proverb.*
Admonitio, -um, *and* -us, ŭs, *a reminding.*
Æthra, *and* æther, *the clear sky.*
Affectio, *and* -us, ŭs, *affection.*
Agamemnuo, *and* -on, *Agamemnon.*
Alabaster, tri, *and* pl. -tra, ŏrum, *an alabaster box.*
Alimonia, *and* -um, *aliment.*
Alluvio, *and* -es, *a flood.*
Alvearium, *and* -āre, *a bee-hive.*
Amarācus, *and* -um, *marjoram.*
Amygdăla, *and* -um, *an almond.*
Anfractum, *and* -us, ŭs, *a winding.*
Angiportum, *and* -us, ŭs, *a narrow lane or alley.*
Antidŏtus, *and* -um, *an antidote.*
Aranea, *and* -us, i, *a spider.*
Arar, *and* Arāris, *the river Arar.*
Arbor, *and* -os, *a tree.*
Architectus, *and* -on, *an architect.*
Arcus, -ūs, *and* i, *a bow.*
Attagēna, *and* -gen, *a moor-hen.*
Avaritia, *and* -ies, *avarice.*
Augmentum, *and* -men, *an increase.*
Baccar, *and* -āris, *a kind of herb.*
Bacŭlus, *and* -um, *a staff.*
Balteus, *and* -um, *a belt.*
Barbaria, *and* -ies, *barbarism.*
Barbitus, *and* -on, *a harp.*
Batillus, *and* -um, *a fire-shovel.*
Blanditia, *and* -ies, *flattery.*
Buccīna, *and* -um, *a trumpet.*
Būra, *and* -is, *a plough-tail.*
Buxus, *and* -um, *the box-tree.*
Cæpa, *and* cæpe, *an onion.*
Calamister, tri, *and* -trum, *a crisping-pin.*
Callus, *and* -um, *hardened skin.*
Cancer, cri, *or* ĕris, *a crab.*
Canitia, *and* -ies, *hoariness.*
Cāpus, *and* cāpo, *a capon.*
Carrus, *and* -um, *a kind of waggon.*
Cassĭda, *and* -cassis, *a helmet.*
Catīnus, *and* -um, *a bowl, dish.*
Chirogrăphus, *and* -um, *a hand-writing.*
Cingŭla, -us, *and* -um, *a girdle.*
Clipeus, *and* -um, *a shield.*
Cochlearium, -ar, *and* -āre, *a spoon.*
Colluvio, *and* -ies, *filth.*
Commentarius, *and* -um, *a journal.*
Compāges, *and* -go, *a joining.*
Conātum, *and* -us, ŭs, *an attempt.*
Concinnĭtas, *and* -tūdo, *neatness.*
Consortium, *and* -io, *partnership.*
Contagium, -io, *and* -es, *contact.*
Cornum, -us, i, *or* ūs, *a cornel tree.*
Costos, i, *and* -um, *a kind of shrub.*

Cratēra, *and* crāter, *a bowl.*
Crŏcus, *and* -um, *saffron.*
Crystallus, *and* -um, *crystal.*
Cubĭtus, *and* -um, *the elbow.*
Cupidĭtas, *and* -pĭdo, *desire.*
Cupressus, i, *or* ūs, *a cypress-tree.*
Delicia, *and* -um, *delight.*
Delphīnus, *and* delphin, *a dolphin.*
Dictamnus, *and* -um, *dittany.*
Diluvium, -o, *and* -ies, *a deluge.*
Dōmus, i, *or* ūs, *a house.*
Dorsus, *and* -um, *the back.*
Durĭtia, *and* -ies, *hardness.*
Effigia, *and* -ies, *an image.*
Elegia, *and* -on, i, *an elegy.*
Elĕphantus, *and* -phas, *an elephant.*
Epitŏma, *and* -e, *an abridgment.*
Essēda, *and* -um, *a chariot.*
Evander, dri, *and* -drus, *Evander.*
Eventum, *and* -us, ŭs, *an event.*
Exemplar, *and* -āre, *a pattern.*
Fīcus, i, *or* ūs, *a fig-tree.*
Fimus, *and* -um, *dung.*
Frētum, *and* -us, ŭs, *a strait.*
Fulgetra, *and* -um, *lightning.*
Galērus, *and* -um, *a hat, cap.*
Ganea, *and* -um, *an eating-house.*
Gausāpa, -es, -e, *and* -um, *frieze.*
Gibba, -us, *and* -er, ĕri, *a hump.*
Glutĭnum, *and* -ten, *glue.*
Gobius, *and* -io, *a gudgeon.*
Grammatĭca, *and* -e, *grammar.*
Grus, gruis, *and* gruis, is, *a crane.*
Hebdomăda, *and* -mas, *a week.*
Hellebŏrus, *and* -um, *hellebore.*
Honor, *and* hōnos, *honor.*
Hyssōpus, *and* -um, *hyssop.*
Ilios, -um, *and* -on, *Troy.*
Incestus, *and* -us, ŭs, *incest.*
Intŭbus, *and* -um, *endive.*
Jugŭlus, *and* -um, *the throat.*
Juventa, -us, ūtis, *and* -as, *youth.*
Labor, *and* lābos, *labor.*
Lacerta, *and* -us, *a lizard.*
Laurus, i, *or* ūs, *a laurel.*
Lĕpor, *and* lĕpos, *wit.*
Ligur, *and* -us, ūris, *a Ligurian.*
Lupīnus, *and* -um, *a lupine.*
Luxuria, *and* -ies, *luxury.*
Mæander, -dros, *and* -drus, *Mæander.*
Margarīta, *and* -um, *a pearl.*
Materia, *and* -ies, *materials.*
Medimnus, *and* -um, *a measure.*
Menda, *and* -um, *a fault.*
Modius, *and* -um, *a measure.*
Mollitia, *and* -ies, *softness.*
Momentum, *and* -men, *influence.*
Mūgil, *and* -llis, *a mullet.*
Mulcĭber, ĕri, *or* ĕris, *Vulcan.*

Mulctra, *and* -um, *a milk-pail.*
Munditia, *and* -ies, *neatness.*
Muria, *and* -ies, *brine or pickle.*
Myrtus, *i or* ŭs, *a myrtle.*
Nardus, *and* -um, *nard.*
Nāsus, *and* -um, *the nose.*
Necessĭtas, *and* -ūdo, *necessity.*
Nequitia, *and* -ies, *worthlessness.*
Notitia, *and* -ies, *knowledge.*
Oblivium, *and* -io, *forgetfulness.*
Obsidium, *and* -io, *a siege.*
Œdĭpus, *i, or* ŏdis, *Œdipus.*
Ostrea, *and* -um, *an oyster.*
Palātus, *and* -um, *the palate.*
Palumba, -us, *and* -es, *a pigeon.*
Papȳrus, *and* -um, *papyrus.*
Paupertas, *and* -ies, *poverty.*
Pāvus, *and* pāvo, *a peacock.*
Pēnus, *i,* -ŏris, *or* ŭs, *and* pēnum, *provisions.*
Peplus, *and* -um, *a veil.*
Perseus, *ei, or* eos, *Perseus.*
Pileŭs, *and* -um, *a hat.*
Pīnus, *i, or* ŭs, *a pine-tree.*
Pistrīna, *and* -um, *a bake-house.*
Planitia, *and* -ies, *a plain.*
Plăto, *and* Plăton, *Plato.*
Plebs, *and* plēbes, *ei, the common people.*
Porrus, *and* -um, *a leek.*
Postulātum, *and* -io, *a request.*
Præsēpia, -ium, -es, *or* -is, *and* -e, *a stable.*
Prætextum, *and* -us, ŭs, *a pretext.*
Prosapia, *and* -ies, *lineage.*
Rāpa, *and* -um, *a turnip.*
Requies, ētis *or* ēi, *rest.*
Rēte, *and* rētis, *a net.*
Reticŭlus, *and* -um, *a small net.*

Rictum, *and* -us, ūs, *the open mouth.*
Sævitia, -ūdo *and* -ies, *ferocity.*
Sāgus, *and* -um, *a military cloak.*
Sanguis, *and* sanguen, *blood.*
Satrāpes, *and* satraps, *a satrap.*
Scabrĭtia, *and* -ies, *roughness.*
Scorpius, -os, *and* -io, *a scorpion.*
Segmentum, *and* -men, *a piece.*
Segnitia, *and* -ies, *sloth.*
Senecta, *and* -us, *old age.*
Sequester, *tri, or* tris, *a trustee.*
Sesāma, *and* -um, *sesame.*
Sibĭlus, *and* -a, ōrum, *a hissing.*
Sināpi, *and* -s, *mustard.*
Sīnus, *and* -um, *a goblet.*
Spārus, *and* -a, ōrum, *a spear.*
Spurcitia, *and* -ies, *filthiness.*
Strāmentum, *and* -men, *straw.*
Suffīmentum, *and* -men, *fumigation.*
Suggestus, *and* -um, *a pulpit, stage.*
Suppărus, *and* -um, *a linen garment.*
Supplicium, -icamentum, *and* -icatio *a public supplication.*
Tapētum, -ēte, *and* -es, *tapestry.*
Teneritas, *and* -tūdo, *softness.*
Tergum, *and* -us, ōris, *the back.*
Tiāra, *and* -as, *a turban.*
Tignus, *and* -um, *a beam, timber.*
Tigris, *is, or* idis, *a tiger.*
Titānus, *and* Titan, *Titan.*
Tonitruum, *and* -trus, ŭs, *thunder.*
Torāle, *and* -al, *a bed-covering.*
Trābes, *and* trabs, *a beam.*
Tribūla, *and* -um, *a threshing sledge.*
Vespera, -per, ĕri *und* ĕris, *the evening.*
Vīnacĕus, *and* -a, ōrum, *a grape-stone.*
Viscus, *and* -um, *the mistletoe.*
Vulgus, *masc. and neut., the common people.*

REMARK 1. To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion;* also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrīda*. See § 45.

REM. 2. Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi; Fidēna* and *Fidēnæ; Thēbe* and *Thēbæ*.

NOTE. The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

§ **100.** Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

I. FROM NOUNS.

From nouns are derived the following classes :—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.

NOTE 1. Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

(*a.*) Masculine patronymics end in *ĭdes*, *īdes*, *ădes*, and *ĭădes*.

(1.) Nouns in *us* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a short syllable, form their patronymics in *ĭdes*; as, *Priămus*, *Priamĭdes*; *Agamemnŏn*, gen. *ŏnis*, *Agamemnŏnĭdes*.

(2.) Nouns in *ēus* and *cles* form their patronymics in *īdes*; as, *A-trēus*, *Atrīdes*; *Herăcles* (i. e. Hercules), *Heraclīdes*.

REM. 1. *Æmīdes*, in Virg. A. 9, 653, is formed in like manner, as if from *Æmēus*, instead of *Æmēas*.

(3.) Nouns in *ās* and *ēs* of the first declension form their patronymics in *ădes*, as *Æmēās*, *Æmēădes*; *Hippŏtes*, *Hippŏtădes*.

(4.) Nouns in *ius* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a long vowel, form their patronymics in *ĭădes*; as, *Thestius*, *Thestĭădes*; *Amphitryŏ* (gen. *ŏnis*), *Amphitryonĭădes*.

REM. 2. A few nouns also of the first declension have patronymics in *ĭădes*; as, *Anchises*, *Anchisĭădes*.

(*b.*) Feminine patronymics end in *is*, *ēis*, and *ias*, and correspond in termination to the masculines, viz. *is* to *ĭdes*, *ēis* to *ĭdes*, and *ias* to *ĭădes*; as, *Tyndărus*, *Tyndarĭdes*; *Tyndărīs*; *Nēreus*, masc. *Nēreīdes*, fem. *Nēreīs*; *Thestius*, masc. *Thestĭădes*, fem. *Thestĭas*.

REM. 3. A few feminines are found in *ĭne*, or *ĭŏne*; as, *Nerĭne*, *Acrisĭŏne*, from *Nereus* and *Acrisius*.

NOTE 2. Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country; and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as,

Trōs, a Trojan man; *Trōs*, a Trojan woman : *Macĕdo*, a Macedonian ; *Samnas*, a Samnite; from *Trŏja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

NOTE 3. Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood ; as, *hŏmo*, *civis*, etc. See § 128, 6.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive ; as, *liber*, a book ; *libellus*, a little book.

Diminutives generally end in *ŭlus*, *ŭla*, *ŭlum*, or *cŭlus*, *cŭla*, *cŭlum*, according as the primitive is masuline, feminine, or neuter.

A. 1. If the primitive is of the first or second declension, or its root ends in *c*, *g*, *d*, or *t* after a vowel, the diminutive is formed by annexing *ŭlus*, *a*, *um* to the root ; as, *arŭlus*, *serrŭlus*, *puerŭlus*, *sutŭlum*, *cornicŭla*, *regŭlus*, *capitŭlum*, *mercedŭla*; from *āra*, *servus*, *puer*, *scūtum*, *cornix*, (-*ĭcis*), *rex*, (*rēgis*), *căput*, (-*ĭtis*), *merces*, (-*ēdis*.)

2. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *e* or *i*, instead of *ŭlus*, *a*, *um*, add *ŏlus*, *a*, *um*; as, *fīlĭŏlus*, *glŏrĭŏla*, *horreŏlum* ; from *filius*, *gloria*, *horreum*.

3. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, form diminutives by contraction in *ellus*, *a*, *um*, and some in *illus*, *a*, *um*; as, *ocellus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, *lucĕllum*; from *ocŭlus*, *asina*, *liber*, *lacrum*; and *sigillum*, *tigillum*, from *signum*, *tignum*.

B. 1. If the primitive is of the third, fourth, or fifth declension, the diminutive is formed in *cŭlus*, (or *ĭcŭlus*), *a*, *um*.

2. Primitives of the third declension whose nominative ends in *r*, or in *os* or *us* from roots ending in *r*, annex *cŭlus* to the nominative ; as, *fratercŭlus*, *soror-*

cŭla, oscŭlum, corpuscŭlum; from *frāter, sŏror, ŏs, (ōris), corpus, (-ŏris).*—So also primitives in *es* and *is*, but these drop the *s* of the nominative; as, *ignicŭlus, nūbecŭla, diecŭla;* from *ignis, nūbes, dies.*

3. Primitives of other terminations of the third declension, and those of the fourth, add *ĭcŭlus* to the root; as, *ponticŭlus, coticŭla, ossicŭlum, versicŭlus, cornicŭlum;* from *pons, cos, ŏs, (ossis), versus, cornu.*

4. Primitives in *o, (ĭnis* or *ōnis)*, in adding *cŭlus, a, um,* change the final vowel of the root (*i* or *o*) into *u;* as, *homuncŭlus, sermuncŭlus;* from *hŏmo* and *sermo;* and a few primitives of other terminations form similar diminutives; as, *avuncŭlus, domuncŭla;* from *ăvus* and *dŏmus.*

C. 1. A few diminutives end in *uleus;* as, *equuleus, aculeus;* from *ĕquus* and *ăcus;* and a few also in *io;* as, *homuncio, senecio,* from *hŏmo* and *sēnex.*

2. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives; as, *asellŭlus,* from *asellus;* sometimes two or more diminutives with different terminations are formed from the same primitive, as, *homuncŭlus, homŭllus,* and *homuncio;* from *hŏmo;* and sometimes the primitive undergoes euphonic changes; as *rumuscŭlus,* from *rūmor.*

REM. Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as *ranun-cŭlus, scamillus,* from *rāna* and *scamnum.*

4. *(a.)* An amplificative is a personal appellation denoting an excess of that which is expressed by its primitive; as,

Capito, one who has a large head: so *naso, labeo, bucco, fronto, mento,* one who has a large nose, lips, or cheeks, a broad forehead or long chin; from *căput, năsus, labia, bucca, frons,* and *mentum.*

(b.) A few personal appellatives in *io* denote the trade or profession to which a person belongs; as, *ludio,* an actor; *pellio,* a furrier; from *ludus,* and *pellis.*

5. The termination *ium* added to the root of a noun, indicates the office or condition, and often, derivatively, an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive; as, *collegium,* colleagueship, and thence an assembly of colleagues; *servitium,* servitude, and collectively the servants; so *sacerdotium,* and *ministerium;* from *collēga, servus, sacerdos,* and *minister.*

6. The termination *imonium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting something derived from the primitives, or imparting to it its peculiar character; as, *testimonium,* testimony; so *vadimonium, patrimonium, matrimonium;* from *testis, vas (vadis), pater,* and *mater.*

7. The termination *ētum,* added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercētum, laurētum, olivētum,* from *quercus, laurus,* and *oliva.*

So, also, *esculētum, dumētum, myrtētum,* and by analogy *saxētum.* But some drop *e;* as, *carectum, salictum, virgultum,* and *arbustum.*

8. The termination *ārium,* added to the root of a noun, denotes a receptacle of the things signified by the primitive; as, *aviārium,* an aviary; *plantārium,* a nursery; from *ŏris,* a bird, and *planta,* a plant.

9. The termination *ile,* added to the root of names of animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovile,* a stall for oxen; so *caprile, ovile;* from *bōs,* an ox, *căper,* a goat, and *ŏvis,* a sheep.

NOTE 1. This class and the preceding are properly neuter adjectives.

NOTE 2. Abstract nouns are derived either from adjectives or from verbs. See § 26, 5.

II. FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 101. 1. Abstract nouns are formed by adding the termination *ĭas, itŭdo, ia, itia* or *ities, ēdo,* and *imōnia* to the root of the primitive.

2. Abstracts in *itas*, (equivalent to the English *ty* or *ity*), are formed from adjectives of each declension ; as, *cupiditas, teneritas, celeritas, crudelitas, felicitas* ; from *cupidus, tener, celer, crudelis,* and *felix.*

(1.) When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *etas* ; as, *pietas,* from *pius* ; and when it ends in *t,* *as* only is added ; as, *honestas* from *honestus.*

(2.) In a few abstracts *i* before *tas* is dropped ; as, *libertas, juventas,* from *liber, juvenis.* In *facultas* and *difficultas,* from *facilis, difficilis,* there is a change also in the root-vowel from *i* to *u.*

(3.) A few abstracts are formed in *itus* or *tus,* instead of *itas* ; as, *servitus, juventus,* from *servus* and *juvenis.* See § 76, Exc. 2.

3. Abstracts in *itūdo* are formed from adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations ; as, *magnitūdo, altitūdo, fortitūdo, acritūdo,* from *magnus, altus, fortis, acer.* Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus,* generally form their abstracts by adding *ūdo* instead of *itūdo* to their root ; as, *consuetūdo,* from *consuetus.*

4. Abstracts in *ia* (equivalent to the English *ce* or *cy,*) are for the most part formed from adjectives of one termination ; as, *clementia, constantia, impudentia,* from *clemens, constans, impudens.* But some adjectives in *us* and *er ,* including verbals in *cundus,* likewise form their verbals in *ia ;* as, *miseria, angustia, facundia,* from *miser, angustus, facundus.*

5. Abstracts in *itia* and *ities* are formed from adjectives in *us* and *is ;* as, *justitia, tristitia, duritia,* and *durities, segnitia* and *segnities,* from *justus, tristis, dūrus,* and *segnis.*

6. A few abstracts are formed in *ēdo,* and a few in *imōnia ;* sometimes two or more abstracts of different terminations are formed from the same adjective ; as, *acritus, acritūdo, acrēdo,* and *acrimonia,* from *acer.* In such case those in *itūdo* and *imonia* seem to be more intensive in signification than those in *itas.*

REMARK. Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes.*

III. FROM VERBS.

§ **102.** Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal* nouns.

The following are the principal classes :—

1. Abstract nouns expressing the action or condition denoted by a verb, especially by a neuter verb, are formed by annexing *or* to their first root ; as, *amor,* love ; *favor,* favor ; *mœror,* grief ; *splendor,* brightness ; from *amo, faveo, mœreo,* and *splendeo.*

2. (*a.*) Abstracts are also formed from many verbs by annexing *ium* to the first or to the third root ; as, *colloquium,* a conference ; *gaudium,* joy ; *exordium,* a beginning ; *exitium,* destruction ; *solatium,* consolation ; from *colloquor, gaudeo, exordior, exeo* and *solor.*

3. Some verbal abstracts are formed by annexing *ēla, imōnia,* or *imōnium,* to the first root of the verb ; as, *querēla* and *querimonia,* a complaint ; *suadēla,* persuasion ; from *quēror* and *suadeo.*

4. (*a.*) The terminations *men* and *mentum,* added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denote the thing to which the action belongs, both actively and passively, or a means for the performance of the action ; as, *fulmen* from *fulgeo, flāmen* from *fluo, agmen* from *ago, solāmen* from *solor, documentum* from *doceo, blandimentum* from *blandior.*

(*b.*) The final consonant of the root is often dropped, and the preceding and connecting vowels contracted into one syllable ; as, *ago, (agimen) agmen ; foveo, (fovimentum,) fomentum.*

(*c.*) Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use ; as, *atramentum*, ink; but, in this case, the connecting vowel seems to imply its reference to such a verb as *atrāre*, to blacken.

5. (*a.*) The terminations *ŭlum, bŭlum, cŭlum ; brum, crum, trum*, annexed to the first root of a verb, denote an instrument for performing the act expressed by the verb, or a place for its performance ; as, *cingŭlum, opercŭlum, venabŭlum, ventilābrum, fulcrum, spectrum*, from *cingo, opĕrio, vēnor, ventĭlo, fulcio, spĕcio*.

(*b.*) Sometimes *cŭlum* is contracted into *clum* ; as, *vinclum* for *vincŭlum*. Sometimes, also, *s* is inserted before *trum* ; as, *rostrum*, from *rōdo*, and a connecting vowel is placed before this and some of the other terminations; as, *arātrum, stabŭlum, cubicŭlum*, from *āro, sto*, and *cŭbo*.

(*c.*) Some words of this kind are formed from nouns ; as, *acetabŭlum*, a vinegar cruet ; *turibŭlum*, a censer ; from *acētum* and *tus*.

6. (*a.*) Nouns formed by adding *or* and *rix* to the third root of the verb, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb; as, *adjūtor, adjūtrix*, an assistant ; *fautor, fautrix*, a favorer ; *victor, victrix*, a conqueror ; from *adjŭvo (adjūt-), făveo (faut-), vinco (vict-)*. They are often likewise used as adjectives. The feminine form seems common than the masculine, and when the third root of the verb ends in *s*, the feminine is sometimes formed in *trix* ; as, *tondeo (tons-) tonstrix*.

(*b.*) Some nouns in *tor* are formed immediately from other nouns ; as, *viător*, a traveller ; *janitor*, a door-keeper; from *via* and *janua*. In *meretrix* from *mereo, i* of the third root becomes *e*.

(*c.*) The agent of a few verbs is denoted by the terminations *a* and *o* annexed to the first root ; as, *convīva*, a guest ; *advĕna*, a stranger ; *scrība*, a scribe ; *erro*, a vagrant ; *bibo*, a drunkard; *comēdo*, a glutton, from *convīvo, advĕnio*, etc.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by annexing *io* and *us* (gen. *ūs*) to the third root of a verb; as, *actio*, an action ; *lectio*, reading ; from *ăgo (act-), lĕgo (lect-) ;—cantus*, singing ; *visus*, sight ; *ūsus*, use; from *căno (cant-), video (vis-), ūtor (ūs-)*.

REMARK 1. Nouns of both forms, and of like signification, are frequently derived from the same verb; as, *concursio* and *concursus*, a running together; *mōtio* and *mōtus*, etc.

REM. 2. Nouns formed by adding the termination *ūra* to the third root of a verb, sometimes have the same signification as those in *io* and *us*, and sometimes denote the result of an action; as, *positūra*, position; *vinctūra*, a binding together ; from *pōno*, and *vincio*; and the termination *ēla* has sometimes the same meaning; as, *querēla*, complaint ; *loquēla*, speech, from *quĕror* and *lŏquor*.

NOTE. One of these forms is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *ōrium*, added to the third root of a verb, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed; as, *auditōrium*, a lecture-room; *condĭtōrium*, a repository; from *audio* and *condo*.

COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

§ **103.**   Compound nouns are formed variously :—

1. Of two nouns; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat, of *rūpes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive; as, *senātūsconsultum*, a decree of the senate; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer; in others, both parts are declined; as, *respublica, jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb ; as, *artĭfex*, an artist, of *ars* and *făcio*; *fidĭcen*, a harper, of *fĭdes* and *căno*; *agrĭcŏla*, a husbandman, of *ăger* and *cŏlo*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinoctium,* the equinox, of *æquus* and *nox; millepeda,* a millepede, of *mille* and *pes.*

In *duumvir, triumvir, decemvir, centumvir,* the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK 1. When the former part of a compound word is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *i;* as, *artifex, rupicapra, agricola,* etc. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place ; as, *quinquennium,* of *quinque* and *annus; magnanimus,* of *magnus* and *animus.*

4. Of an adverb and a noun ; as, *nefas,* wickedness; *nemo,* nobody; of *ne, fas,* and *homo.* So *biduum,* of *bis* and *dies.*

5. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *incuria,* want of care, of *in* and *cura.* So *intervallum,* an interval; *præcordia,* the diaphragm; *proverbium,* a proverb; *subsellium,* a low seat; *superficies,* a surface.

REM. 2. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it : as, *ignobilis, illepidus, imprudentia, irrumpo,* of *in* and *nobilis, lepidus,* etc. See § 196.

ADJECTIVES.

§ **104.** An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification,* into various classes; as denoting,

1. Character or quality ; as, *bonus,* good; *albus,* white; *amicus,* friendly.

2. State or condition; as, *felix,* happy; *dives,* rich.

3. Possession; as, *herilis,* a master's; *patrius,* a father's.

4. Quantity; as, *magnus,* great; *totus,* entire; *parvus,* small.

5. Number; as, *unus,* one; *secundus,* second; *tot,* so many; *quot,* as many. These are called *numerals.*

6. Time; as, *annuus,* yearly; *hesternus,* of yesterday; *bimus,* of two years; *trimestris,* of three months.

7. Place; as, *altus,* high; *vicinus,* near; *aërius,* aërial; *terrestris,* terrestrial.

8. Material; as, *aureus,* golden; *fagineus,* beechen; *terrenus,* earthen.

9. Part; as, *nullus,* no one; *aliquis,* some one. These are called *partitives.*

10. Country; as, *Romanus,* Roman; *Arpinas* of Arpinum. These are called *potrials.*

11. Diminution; as, *parvulus,* from *parvus,* small; *misellus,* from *miser,* miserable. These are called *diminutives.*

12. Amplification; as, *vinosus* and *vinolentus,* much given to wine; *auritus,* having long ears. These are called *amplificatives.*

13. Relation; as, *avidus,* desirous of ; *memor,* mindful of ; *insuetus.* These are called *relatives.*

14. Interrogation; as, *quantus?* how great; *qualis?* of what kind; *quot?* how many? *quotus?* of what number? These are called *interrogatives;* and, when not used interrogatively, they are called *correlatives.*

15. Specification; as, *talis,* such; *tantus,* so great; *tot,* so many. These are called *demonstratives.*

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **105.** 1. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DE-CLENSIONS.

2. The masculine of adjectives belonging to the first and second declensions, ends either in *us* or in *er*. The feminine and neuter are formed respectively by annexing *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine. The masculine in *us* is declined like *domĭnus;* that in *er* like *gĕner* or *ăger;* the feminine always like *mūsa;* and the neuter like *regnum.*

REMARK 1. The masculine of one adjective, *sătur, -ŭra, -ŭrum,* full, ends in *ur,* and is declined like *gĕner.*

Bŏnŭs, *good.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bo'-nŭs,	bo'-nă,	bo'-nŭm,
G.	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nī,
D.	bo'-nō,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nō,
Ac.	bo'-nŭm,	bo'-năm,	bo'-nŭm,
V.	bo'-nĕ,	bo'-nă,	bo'-nŭm,
Ab.	bo'-nō.	bo'-nā.	bo'-nō.

Plural.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nă,
G.	bo-nō'-rŭm,	bo-nā'-rŭm,	bo-nō'-rŭm,
D.	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,	bo'-nīs,
Ac.	bo'-nōs,	bo'-nās,	bo'-nă,
V.	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nă,
Ab.	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.	bo'-nīs.

In like manner decline

Al'-tus, *high.*	Fī'-dus, *faithful.*	Lon'-gus, *long.*
A-vā'-rus, *covetous.*	Im'-prŏ-bus, *wicked.*	Plē'-nus, *full.*
Be-nig'-nus, *kind.*	In-ī'-quus, *unjust.*	Tac'-ĭ-tus, *silent.*

REM. 2. Like *bŏnus* are also declined all participles in *us ;* as,

<div align="center">A-mā'-tus.   Am-a-tū'-rus.   A-man'-dus.</div>

Rem. 3. The masculine of the vocative singular of adjectives in *us* is sometimes like the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amīcus.* Hor. *Meus* has both *mi* and *meus.*

REM. 4. The genitive plural of distributive numerals ends commonly in *ûm* instead of *ōrum ;* as, *crassitūdo binûm digitōrum.* Plin.

3. Tĕner, *tender.*

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	te′-nĕr,	ten′-ĕ-ră,	ten′-ĕ-rŭm,
G.	ten′-ĕ-rī,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-rī,
D.	ten′-ĕ-rō,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-rō,
Ac.	ten′-ĕ-rŭm,	ten′-ĕ-răm,	ten′-ĕ-rŭm,
V.	te′-nĕr,	ten′-ĕ-ră,	ten′-ĕ-rŭm,
Ab.	ten′-ĕ-rō.	ten′-ĕ-rā.	ten′-ĕ-rō.

Plural.

N.	ten′-ĕ-rī,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-ră,
G.	tĕn-e-rō′-rŭm,	ten-e-rā′-rŭm,	ten-e-rō′-rŭm,
D.	ten′-ĕ-rīs,	ten′-ĕ-rīs,	ten′-ĕ-rīs,
Ac.	ten′-ĕ-rōs,	ten′-ĕ-rās,	ten′-ĕ-ră,
V.	ten′-ĕ-rī,	ten′-ĕ-ræ,	ten′-ĕ-ră,
Ab.	ten′-ĕ-rīs.	ten′-ĕ-rīs.	ten′-ĕ-rīs.

In like manner are declined

As′-per, *rough.*	Lă′-cer, *torn.*	Pros′-per, *prosperous.*
Ex′-ter, *foreign.*	Lī′-ber, *free.*	Să′-tur, *full.*
Gib′-ber, *crook-backed.*	Mī′-ser, *wretched.*	

So also *alter,* except in the genitive and dative singular (see § 107), *semĭfer,* and the compounds of *gĕro* and *fĕro;* as, *lanĭger, opĭfer.*

NOTE. *Prosper* is less frequent than *prospĕrus,* and *exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ **106.** The other adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension; as,

Pĭger, *slothful.*

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	pi′-gĕr,	pi′-gră,	pi′-grŭm,
G.	pi′-grī,	pi′-græ,	pi′-grī,
D.	pi′-grō,	pi′-græ,	pi′-grō,
Ac.	pi′-grŭm,	pi′-grăm,	pi′-grŭm,
V.	pi′-gĕr,	pi′-gră,	pi′-grŭm,
Ab.	pi′-grō.	pi′-grā.	pi′-grō.

Plural.

N.	pi′-grī,	pi′-græ,	pi′-gră,
G.	pi-grō′-rŭm,	pi-grā′-rŭm,	pi-grō′-rŭm,
D.	pi′-grīs,	pi′-grīs,	pi′-grīs,
Ac.	pi′-grōs,	pi′-grās,	pi′-gră,
V.	pi′-grī,	pi′-græ,	pi′-gră,
Ab.	pi′-grīs.	pi′-grīs.	pi′-grīs.

In like manner decline

Æ′-ger, *sick.*	Mă′-cer, *lean.*	Scă′-ber, *rough.*
A′-ter, *black.*	Nĭ′-ger, *black.*	Si-nis′-ter, *left.*
Crē′-ber, *frequent.*	Pul′-cher, *fair.*	Tē′-ter, *foul.*
Glă′-ber, *smooth.*	Ru̇′-ber, *red.*	Vă′-fer, *crafty.*
In′-tĕ-ger, *entire.*	Să′-cer, *sacred.*	

Dexter, right, has *-tra, -trum,* and less frequently *-tĕra, -tĕrum.*

§ **107.** Six adjectives in *us,* and three in *er,* have their genitive singular in *ius,* and their dative in *ī,* in all the genders :—

Alius, *another.*	Tōtus, *whole.*	Alter, *-tĕra, -tĕrum, the other.*
Nullus, *no one.*	Ullus, *any.*	Uter, *-tra, -trum, which of the two.*
Sōlus, *alone.*	Unus, *one.*	Neuter, *-tra, -trum, neither.*

To these may be added the other compounds of *ŭter,*—namely, *uterque,* each of two; *utercumque, uterlibet,* and *utervis,* which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque,* etc.—also, *alterŭter,* one of two; gen. *alterutrius,* and sometimes *alterius utrius;* dat. *alterutri.* So *alteruterque,* and *unusquisque.* See § 138, 4.

Nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ullus, and *ūnus* are thus declined :—

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ū′-nŭs,	ū′-nă,	ū′-nŭm,
G.	u-nī′-ŭs,*	u-nī′-ŭs,	u-nī′-ŭs,
D.	u′-nī,	u′-nī,	u′-nī,
Ac.	u′-nŭm,	u′-năm,	u′-nŭm,
V.	u′-nĕ,	u′-nă,	u′-nŭm,
Ab.	u′-nō.	u′-nā.	u′-nō.

The plural is regular, like that of *bŏnus.*

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius,* contracted for *aliius.*

REM. 2. Except in the genitive and dative singular, *alter* is declined like *tĕner,* and *uter* and *neuter* like *pĭger.*

REM. 3. Some of these adjectives, in early writers, and occasionally even in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bŏnus, tĕner,* or *pĭger.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ **108.** Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one

I. Those of three terminations end in *er,* masc.; *is,* fem.; and *e,* neut.; and are thus declined :—

Acer, *sharp.*

Singular.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ā′-cĕr,	ā′-cris,	ā′-crĕ,
G.	a′-cris,	a′-cris,	a′-cris,
D.	a′-crī,	a′-crī,	a′-crī,
Ac.	a′-crĕm,	a′-crĕm,	a′-crĕ,
V.	a′-cĕr,	a′-cris,	a′-crĕ,
Ab.	a′-crī.	a′-crī.	a′-crī.

* See § 15.

Plural.

N.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-crĭ-ă,
G.	a'-crĭ-ŭm,	a'-crĭ-ŭm,	a'-crĭ-ŭm,
D.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs,	ac'-rĭ-bŭs,	ac'-rĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-crĭ-ă,
V.	a'-crēs,	a'-crēs,	a'-crĭ-ă,
Ab.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs.	ac'-rĭ-bŭs.

In like manner are declined the following;—

Al'-ăcer, *cheerful.*	Pa-lus'-ter, *marshy.*	Sil-ves'-ter, *woody.*
Cam-pes'-ter, *champaign.*	Pe-des'-ter, *on foot.*	Ter-res'-ter, *terrestrial.*
Cel'-ĕ-ber, *famous.*	Pŭ'-ter, *rotten.*	Vol'-ŭ-cer, *winged.*
E-ques'-ter, *equestrian.*	Sa-lū'-ber, *wholesome.*	

To these add names of months in -*ber*, used as adjectives; as, *October*, etc. (cf. § 71), and *cĕler*, swift, which has *celĕris*, *celĕre*; gen. *celĕris*, etc.

REMARK 1. The termination *er* was anciently sometimes feminine; as, *volūcer fāma.* Petr.: and, on the other hand, the masculine often ends in *is*; as, *collis silvestris*, Cæs.

REM. 2. *Volăcer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ **109.** II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us*.

Those in *is, e*, are thus declined:—

Mitis mild.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
	M. & F.	*N.*		*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	mĭ'-tĭs,	mĭ'-tĕ,	*N.*	mĭ'-tēs,	mit'-i-ă,*
G.	mĭ'-tĭs,	mĭ'-tĭs,	*G.*	mĭt'-i-ŭm,*	mit'-i-ŭm,
D.	mĭ'-tĭ,	mĭ'-tĭ,	*D.*	mit'-ĭ-bŭs,	mit'-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	mĭ'-tĕm,	mĭ'-tĕ,	*Ac.*	mĭ'-tēs,	mit'-i-ă,
V.	mĭ'-tĭs,	mĭ'-tĕ,	*V.*	mĭ'-tēs,	mit'-i-ă,
Ab.	mĭ'-tĭ.	mĭ'-tĭ.	*Ab.*	mit'-ĭ-bŭs.	mit'-ĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Ag'-ĭ-lis, *active.*	Dul'-cis, *sweet.*	In-col'-ŭ-mis, *safe.*
Brĕ'-vis, *short.*	For'-tis, *brave.*	Mi-rab'-ĭ-lis, *wonderful.*
Cru-dē'-lis, *cruel.*	Gră'-vis, *heavy.*	Om'-nis, *all.*

Tres, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis.*

NOTE. Several adjectives of this class have forms also in *us, a, um.* See § 116.

§ **110.** (*a.*) All comparatives, except *plus*, more, are thus declined:—

---

* Pronounced *mish'-e-a*, etc.　See § 12.

Mitior,* *milder.*

Singular.

	M. & F.	*N.*
N.	mit′-i-ŏr,	mit′-i-ŭs,
G.	mit-i-ō′-rĭs,	mit-i-ō′-rĭs,
D.	mit-i-ō′-rĭ,	mit-i-ō′-rĭ,
Ac.	mit-i-ō′-rĕm,	mit′-i-ŭs,
V.	mit′-i-ŏr,	mit′-i-ŭs,
Ab.	mit-i-ō′-rĕ, *or* -rī.	mit-i-ō′-rĕ, *or* -rī.

Plural.

	M. & F.	*N.*
N.	mit-i-ō′-rēs,	mit-i-ō′-ră,
G.	mit-i-ō′-rŭm,	mit-i-ō′-rŭm,
D.	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bŭs,	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	mit-i-ō′-rēs,	mit-i-ō′-ră,
V.	mit-i-ō′-rēs,	mit-i-ō′-ră,
Ab.	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bŭs.	mit-i-or′-ĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Al′-ti-or, *higher.*
Au-da′-ci-or, *bolder.*
Bre′-vi-or, *shorter.*
Cru-de′-li-or, *more cruel.*

Dul′-ci-or, *sweeter.*
Fe-lic′-i-or, *happier.*
Fe-ro′-ci-or, *fiercer.*
For′-ti-or, *braver.*

Gra′-vi-or, *heavier.*
Pru-den′-ti-or, *more prudent.*
U-be′-ri-or, *more fertile.*

Plūs, *more,* is thus declined:—

Singular.				*Plural.*	
N.			*M. & F.*		*N.*
N.	plus,	N.	plū′-rēs,		plū′-ră, *rarely* plu′-ri-ă,
G.	plū′-rĭs,	G.	plu′-ri-ŭm,		plu′-ri-ŭm,
D.	——— ,	D.	plu′-ri-or,		plu′-ri-bŭs,
Ac.	plus,	Ac.	plū′-rēs,		plū′-ră,
V.	——— ,	V.	——— ,		
Ab.	(plū′-rĕ, *obs.*)	Ab.	plu′-ri-bŭs.		plu′-ri-bŭs.

So, but in the plural number only, *complūres,* a great many.

§ **111.** III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders. They all end in *l, r, s,* or *x,* and increase in the genitive.

They are thus declined:—

Fēlix, *happy.*

Singular.

	M. & F.	*N.*
N.	fe′-lix,	fe′-lix,
G.	fe-lī′-cĭs,	fe-lī′-cĭs,
D.	fe-lī′-cī,	fe-lī′-cī,
Ac.	fe-lī′-cĕm,	fe′-lix,
V.	fe′-lix,	fe′-lix,
Ab.	fe-lī′-cĕ, *or* -cī.	fe-lī′-cĕ, *or* -cī.

---

* Pronounced *mish′-e-or,* etc. See § 12.

Plural.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	fe-lī'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ă,*
G.	fe-lic'-i-ŭm,*	fe-lic'-i-ŭm,
D.	fe-lic'-ĭ-bŭs,	fe-lic'-ĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	fe-lī'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ă,
V.	fe-lī'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ă,
Ab.	fe-lic'-ĭ-bŭs.	fe-lic'-ĭ-bŭs.

Præsens, present.

Singular.

	M. & F.	N.
N.	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
G.	præ-sen'-tĭs,	præ-sen'-tĭs,
D.	præ-sen'-tī,	præ-sen'-ti,
Ac.	præ-sen'-tĕm,	præ'-sens,
V.	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
Ab.	præ-sen'-tĕ, or -tī.	præ-sen'-tĕ, or -tī.

Plural.

N.	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ă,†
G.	præ-sen'-ti-ŭm,	præ-sen'-ti-ŭm,
D.	præ-sen'-ti-bŭs,	præ-sen'-tĭ-bŭs,
Ac.	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ă,
V.	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ă,
Ab.	præ-sen'-tĭ-bŭs.	præ-sen'-tĭ-bŭs.

In like manner decline

Au'-dax, -ācis, *bold.*	Par'-ti-ceps, -ipis, *participant.*	Sol'-lers, -tis, *shrewd.*
Com'-pos, -ōtis, *master of.*		Sos'-pes, -ĭtis, *safe.*
Fĕ'-rox, -ōcis, *fierce.*	Præ'-pes, -ĕtis, *swift.*	Sup'-plex, -ĭcis, *suppliant.*
In'-gens, -tis, *huge.*	Prū'-dens, -tis, *prudent.*	

REMARK. All present participles are declined like *præsens;* as,
A'-mans. Mŏ'-nens. Rĕ'-gens. Ca'-pi-ens. Au'-di-ens.

NOTE. A few adjectives of one termination have redundant forms in **us, a,
um;** see § 116.

RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ **112.** Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

1. Of those in *es* (cf. § 73) some have *-ĕtis;* as, *hēbes, perpes, præpes,* and *tēres;* —*inquies* and *lociples* have *-ētis;*—some have *-ĭtis;* as, *dives, sospes,* and *superstes;*—some have *-ĭdis;* as, *dēses,* and *rēses;*—*bipes,* and *tripes* have *-pĕdis;*—*pūbes* has *pubĕris,* and *impūbes, impubĕris* and *impūbis.*

---

* Pronounced *fe-lish'-e-um,* etc.   See § 10, Exc., and § 7, 3, (b.)

† Pronounced *pre-zen'-she-a,* etc

2. *Compos* and *impos* have *-ŏtis*, and *exos*, *exossis.—Exlex* has *exlēgis*, *pernox* has *pernoctis* (§ 78), *praecox*, *praecŏcis* and *redux*, *redŭcis.—Caelebs* has *caelĭbis*, (§ 77); *intercus*, *intercŭtis*, and *vetus*, *vetĕris*. Those in *ceps* which are compounds of *căput*, have *-cĭpitis;* as, *anceps*, *praeceps* (§ 78, 1); but the compounds of *ceps* from *căpio* have *-ĭpis;* as, *particeps*, *particĭpis.—*Those in *cors*, compounds of *cor*, have *-cordis;* as, *concors*, *concordis* (§ 71, Exc. 2).—*Mĕmor* and *immĕmor* have *-ŏris.*

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 113. 1. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative singular neuter have only *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The ablatives *bimestre*, *caeleste*, and *perenne* are found in Ovid, and *cognomine* in Virgil.

2. Comparatives and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute, have rather *e* than *i;* but participial adjectives in *ns* have rather *i* than *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:—

Bicorpor, bĭpes, caelebs, compos, dēses, discŏlor, hospes, impos, impūbes, juvĕnis, locŭples, pauper, princeps, pūber *or* pūbes, sĕnex, sospes, superstes, tricorpor, tricuspis, *and* trĭpes.

Exc. 3. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:—

Anceps, concors, discors, hĕbes, immĕmor, ĭners, ingens, ĭnops, mĕmor, par, praeceps, rĕcens, rĕpens, vĭgil, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

REM. 1. *Inerte* occurs in Ovid, *recente* in Ovid and Catullus, and *praecipe* in Ennius.

REM. 2. *Praesens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i;* when used of persons, it has *e*.

NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND GENITIVE PLURAL.

§ 114. 1. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium;* but comparatives in *or*, with *vetus*, old, and *ūber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

2. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine adjectives, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *īs* or *ēis*, instead of *ēs*. Cf. § 85, Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *făcio*, *căpio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *cĕler*, *compar*, *cĭcur*, *dives*, *mĕmor*, *immĕmor*, *praepes*, *supplex*, and *vĭgil*, make their genitive plural in *um*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sons*, and *insons* have either *um* or *ium*. The poets and the later prose writers sometimes form the genitive plural of other adjectives and of participles in *ns*, by syncope, in *um*, instead of *ium;* as, *caelestum*, Virg. Ovid, etc.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

§ **115.** Some adjectives are defective, others redundant.

DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. (*a.*) Many adjectives denoting personal qualities or attributes want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following :—

Bicorpor, bīpes, cælebs, compos, consors, degĕner, dīves, impos, impūbes, industrius, īnops, insons, invītus, juvĕnis, locuples, mĕmor, pauper, particeps princeps, pūber, *or* pūbes, rĕdux, sĕnex, sons, sospes, superstes, supplex, tricorpor, vigil.

(*b.*) *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature both of substantives and adjectives, and correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6, (*a.*)

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender :—

Concŏlor, dēses, hĕbes, perpes, rēses, tĕres, versicŏlor.

3. The names of months, which are properly adjectives, have only the masculine and feminine genders.

4. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frūgi*, temperate; *nēquam*, worthless; *săt* or *sătis*, sufficient; the plurals *aliquot*, *tŏt*, *quŏt*, *tŏtidem*, *quŏtquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*. Cf. § 118, 1, and 6, (*b.*)

5. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases :—

Bilicem, *acc.*; *doubly-tissued.* Cetĕra, cetĕrum, *the rest,* wants the nom. sing. masc. Decemplicem, *acc.*: *tenfold.* Exspes, *nom.*; *hopeless.* Inquies, *nom.*; -ētem, *acc.*; -ēte, *abl.*; *restless.* Mactus, *and* macte, *nom.*; macte, *acc.*; *honored*; —macti, *nom. plur.* Necesse, *and* necessum, *nom., acc.*; *necessary.* Plus, *nom., acc.*; plūris, *gen.*; *more* ;—*pl.* plūres, -a, *nom. acc.*; -ium *gen.*; ibus, *dat., abl.* Cf. § 110. Postĕra, postĕrum, *coming after,* wants the nom. sing. masc. Pŏtis, *nom. sing.* and *pl.*, all genders; able. Pŏte, *nom. sing.*, for potest; *possible.* Septemplicis, *gen.*; -ce, *abl.*; *seven-fold.* Siremps, *and* sirempse, *nom.* and *acc.*; *alike.* Tantundem, *nom. acc.*; tantīdem, *gen.*; tantandem, *acc.*; *so much.* Trilicem, *acc.*; *trebly-tissued*; trilīces, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*

REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ **116.** The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

Acclīvis, *and* -us, *r*, *ascending.*
Auxiliāris, *and* -ius, *auxiliary.*
Bijŭgis, *and* -us, *yoked two together.*
Declīvis, *and* -us, *r*, *descending.*
Exanĭmis, *and* -us, *r*, *lifeless.*
Hilāris, *and* -us, *cheerful.*
Imbecillis, *r*, *and* -us, *weak.*
Impūbes, *and* -is, *r*, *-is* or *-ĕris*, *not grown up.*
Inermis, *and* -us, *r*, *unarmed.*
Infrēnis, *and* -us, *r*, *unbridled.*

Inquies, *and* -ētus, *r*, *restless.*
Joculāris, *and* -ius, *r*, *laughable.*
Multijŭgis, *r*, *and* -us, *yoked many together.*
Opŭlens, *and* -lentus, *rich.*
Præcox, -cŏquis, *and* -cŏquus, *early ripe.*
Proclīvis, *and* -us, *r*, *sloping.*
Quadrijŭgis, *and* -us, *yoked four together.*
Semianĭmis, *and* -us, *half alive.*

Semiermis, *and* -us, *half armed.*   Sublīmis, *and* -us, *r, high.*
Semisomnis, *and* -us, *r, half asleep.*   Unānīmis, *r, and* -us, *unanimous.*
Singulāris, *and* -ius, *single.*   Vīŏlens, *r, and* -lentus, *violent.*

To these may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as, *salūber* and *-bris, celĕber* and *-bris.* Cf. § 108, R. 1.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ **117.** Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes— *Cardinal, Ordinal,* and *Distributive.*

I. Cardinal numbers are those which simply denote the number of things, in answer to the question *Quot?* ' How many ?' They are,

1.	Unus,	*one.*	I.
2.	Duo,	*two.*	II.
3.	Tres,	*three.*	III.
4.	Quătuor,	*four.*	IIII. *or* IV.
5.	Quinque,	*five.*	V.
6.	Sex,	*six.*	VI.
7.	Septem,	*seven.*	VII.
8.	Octo,	*eight*	VIII.
9.	Nŏvem,	*nine.*	VIIII. *or* IX.
10.	Dĕcem,	*ten.*	X.
11.	Undĕcim,	*eleven.*	XI.
12.	Duodĕcim,	*twelve.*	XII.
13.	Tredĕcim,	*thirteen.*	XIII.
14.	Quatuordĕcim,	*fourteen.*	XIIII. *or* XIV.
15.	Quindĕcim,	*fifteen.*	XV.
16.	Sedĕcim, *or* sexdĕcim,	*sixteen.*	XVI.
17.	Septendĕcim,	*seventeen.*	XVII.
18.	Octodĕcim,	*eighteen.*	XVIII.
19.	Novendĕcim,	*nineteen.*	XVIIII. *or* XIX.
20.	Vĭginti,	*twenty.*	XX.
21.	Viginti unus, *or* unus et viginti,	*twenty-one.*	XXI.
22.	Viginti duo, *or* duo et viginti, etc.,	*twenty-two.*	XXII.
30.	Trĭginta,	*thirty.*	XXX.
40.	Quādrāginta,	*forty.*	XXXX. *or* XL.
50.	Quinquaginta,	*fifty.*	L.
60.	Sexaginta,	*sixty.*	LX.
70.	Septuaginta,	*seventy.*	LXX.
80.	Octoginta, *or* octnaginta,	*eighty.*	LXXX.
90.	Nōnāginta,	*ninety.*	LXXXX. *or* XC.
100.	Centum,	*a hundred.*	C.
101.	Centum unus, *or* centum et unus, etc.,	*a hundred and one.*	CI.
200.	Dŭcenti, -æ, a,	*two hundred.*	CC.
300.	Trēcenti, etc.,	*three hundred.*	CCC.
400.	Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*	CCCC, *or* CD.
500.	Quingenti,	*five hundred.*	IƆ, *or* D.
600.	Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*	IƆC, *or* DC.
700.	Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*	IƆCC, *or* DCC.
800.	Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*	IƆCCC, *or* DCCC.
900.	Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*	IƆCCCC, *or* DCCCC.
1000.	Mille,	*a thousand.*	CIƆ, *or* M.
2000.	Duo millia, *or* bis mille,	*two thousand.*	CIƆCIƆ, *or* MM.

5000.	Quinque millia, *or* ⎱ quinquies mille, ⎰	*five thousand.*	IƆƆ.
10000.	Decem millia, *or* ⎱ decies mille, ⎰	*ten thousand.*	CCIƆƆ.
50000.	Quinquaginta millia, *or* quinquagies mille, ⎱⎰	*fifty thousand.*	IƆƆƆ.
100000.	Centum millia, *or* ⎱ centies mille, ⎰	*a hundred thousand.*	CCCIƆƆƆ.

§ **118.** 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; from four to a hundred inclusive they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bŏnus.*

For the declension of *ūnus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

Duo is thus declined :—

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	dŭ′-o,	du′-æ,	du′-o,
G.	du-ō′-rum,	du-ā′-rum,	du-ō′-rum,
D.	du-ō′-bus,	du-ā′-bus,	du-ō′-bus,
Ac.	du′-os, *or* du′-o,	du′-as,	dŭ′-o,
V.	du′-o,	du′-æ,	du′-o,
Ab.	du-ō′-bus.	du-ā′-bus.	du-ō′-bus.

REMARK 1. *Duōrum, duārum*, are often contracted into *duûm*, especially in compounds; as, *duûmvir*, and when joined with *millium.—Ambo*, both, which partakes of the nature of a numeral and of a pronoun, is declined like *duo.*

2. The cardinal numbers, except *ūnus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

REM. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *una nuptiæ*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So, also, when it takes the signification of " alone " or " the same "; as, *uni Ubii*, the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivēre*,—with the same manners.

3. (*a.*) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et;* thus. *dĕcem et tres, dĕcem et nŏvem*, or, omitting *et, dĕcem nŏvem. Octodēcim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(*b.*) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et;* as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus.* Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et;* as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus, trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex. Et* is never twice used; but the poets sometimes take *ac, atque*, or *que*, instead of *et.*

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, etc., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, etc. (excepting sixty-eight, sixty-nine, and ninety-eight), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti*, two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodetriginta, undetriginta*, etc. Neither *un (unus)* nor *duo* can be declined in these combinations. The additive forms for thirty-eight, etc. to ninety-eight, and for forty-nine, etc. to ninety-nine, except those for sixty-nine, seem not to occur.

5. (*a.*) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia;* as, *dĕcem millia*, ten thousand; *ducenta millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, a thousand, the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the

combination *centēna millia*; as, *decies centēna millia*, a million; *centies centēna millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centēna millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies*, scil. *centēna millia*.

(*b.*) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodĕcim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(*a.*) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number, and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.; as, *mille homĭnum*, a thousand men; *duo millia homĭnum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

(*b.*) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable: as, *mille homĭnes*, a thousand men; *cum bis mille homĭnibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters*. I. denotes *one*; V. *five*; X. *ten*; L. *fifty*; and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

(*a.*) The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, etc. But V. and L. are never repeated.

(*b.*) When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater value, the less takes away its value from the greater; but being placed after, it adds its value to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

(*c.*) A *thousand* was marked thus, CIƆ, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IƆ, or, by contraction, D.

(*d.*) The annexing of the *apostrophus* or inverted C (Ɔ) to IƆ makes its value ten times greater; thus, IƆƆ marks *five thousand*; and IƆƆƆ, *fifty thousand*.

(*e.*) The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of Ɔ, to the number CIƆ, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIƆƆ denotes *ten thousand*; and CCCIƆƆƆ, *a hundred thousand*. The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIƆƆƆ, CCCIƆƆƆ, signified *two hundred thousand*, etc.

(*f.*) We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus, IIĪ. denotes *three thousand*; X̄., *ten thousand*.

§ **119.** II. *Ordinal* numbers are such as denote order or rank, and answer to the question, *Quōtus?* Which of the numbers? They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bŏnus*; as, *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.

III. *Distributive* numbers are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things, and answer to the question, *Quotēni?* How many apiece? as, *singŭli*, one by one, or, one to each; *bīni*, two by two, or two to each, etc. They are always used in the plural, and are declined like the plural of *bŏnus*, except that they usually have *ûm* instead of *orum* in the genitive plural. Cf. § 105, R. 4.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs, which answer to the question, *Quoties?* How many times? —

	Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
1.	Prīmus, *first.*	Singŭli, *one by one.*	Sĕmel, *once.*
2.	Sĕcundus, *second.*	Bīni, *two by two.*	Bis, *twice.*
3.	Tertius, *third.*	Terni, *or* trīni.	Ter, *thrice.*
4.	Quartus, *fourth.*	Quaterni.	Quăter, *four times.*
5.	Quintus, *fifth.*	Quīni.	Quinquies.
6.	Sextus, *sixth.*	Sēni.	Sexies.
7.	Septĭmus, *seventh.*	Septēni.	Septies.
8.	Octāvus, *eighth.*	Octōni.	Octies.
9.	Nōnus, *ninth.*	Novēni.	Novies.
10.	Dĕcĭmus, *tenth,* etc.	Dēni.	Dĕcies.
11.	Undecĭmus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
12.	Duodecĭmus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
13.	Tertius decĭmus.	Terni dēni.	Terdecies.
14.	Quartus decĭmus.	Quaterni dēni.	Quatuordecies.
15.	Quintus decĭmus.	Quīni dēni.	Quindecies.
16.	Sextus decĭmus.	Sēni dēni.	Sedecies.
17.	Septĭmus decĭmus.	Septēni dēni.	Decies et septies.
18.	Octāvus decĭmus.	Octōni dēni.	Duodevicies.
19.	Nōnus decĭmus.	Novēni dēni.	Undevicies.
20.	Vicēsĭmus, *or* vigēsĭmus.	Vicēni.	Vīcies.
21.	Vicesĭmus prīmus.	Vicēni singŭli.	Semel et vicies.
22.	Vicesĭmus secundus.	Vicēni bīni, etc.	Bis et vicies, etc.
30.	Tricēsĭmus, *or* trigēsĭmus.	Tricēni.	Tricies.
40.	Quādrāgesĭmus.	Quadragēni.	Quadragies.
50.	Quinquagesĭmus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquagies.
60.	Sexagesĭmus.	Sexagēni.	Sexagies.
70.	Septuagesĭmus.	Septuagēni.	Septuagies.
80.	Octogesĭmus.	Octogēni.	Octogies.
90.	Nonagesĭmus.	Nonagēni.	Nonagies.
100.	Centesĭmus.	Centēni.	Centies.
200.	Dŭcentesĭmus.	Ducēni.	Ducenties.
300.	Trēcentesĭmus.	Trecēni, *or* trecentēni.	Trecenties, *or* tricenties.
400.	Quadringentesĭmus.	Quadringēni, *or* quadringentēni.	Quadringenties.
500.	Quingentesĭmus.	Quingēni.	Quingenties.
600.	Sexcentesĭmus.	Sexcēni, *or* sexcentēni.	Sexcenties.
700.	Septingentesĭmus.	Septingēni.	Septingenties.
800.	Octingentesĭmus.	Octingēni.	Octingenties.
900.	Nongentesĭmus.	Nongēni.	Noningenties.
1000.	Millesĭmus.	Millēni, *or* singŭla millia.	Millies.
2000.	Bis millesĭmus.	Bis millēni, *or* bīna millia.	Bis millies.

§ 120. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus, prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus.*

2. (*a.*) From thirteen to nineteen, the smaller number, is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertius decĭmus,* but sometimes the greater with or without *et*; as, *decĭmus et tertius,* or *decĭmus tertius.*

(*b.*) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesĭmus, unus et tricesĭmus,* etc.; one and twentieth, or twenty-second, etc., by *duo,* or *alter et vicesĭmus,* etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et,* or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesĭmus quartus,* or *quartus et vicesĭmus.*

(*c.*) For eighteenth, etc. to fifty-eighth, and for nineteenth, etc. to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicēsimus*, etc., and *undevicēsimus*, etc., are often used.

3. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives *duodevicēni*, etc., *undevicēni*, etc.

4. (*a.*) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *bina spicula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binae nuptiae*, two weddings.

(*b.*) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quinus*, *septēnus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodetricies* and *undequadragies* are found.

§ 121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold, in answer to the question, *quotiplex?* They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *felix*; as,

Simplex, *single.*	Quincuplex, *fivefold.*
Duplex, *twofold*, or *double.*	Septemplex, *sevenfold.*
Triplex, *threefold.*	Decemplex, *tenfold.*
Quadruplex, *fourfold.*	Centuplex, *a hundred fold.*

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *duplus, a, um*, twice as great; so *triplus, quadruplus, octuplus, decuplus.* They are generally found only in the neuter.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *bimus, a, um*, two years old; so *trimus, quadrimus*, etc. Also, *biennis*, lasting two years, biennial; so *quadriennis, quinquennis*, etc. So also, *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, etc., *biduus*, etc. To these may be added certain nouns, compounds of *annus* and *dies* with the cardinal numbers; as, *biennium, triennium*, etc., a period of two, etc. years; *biduum, triduum*, etc., a period of two, etc. days.

4. Adjectives in *arius*, derived from the distributives, and denoting of how many equal parts or units a thing consists; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, etc.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quoteni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are *tot, totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; and the adverbs, *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

6. *Fractional expressions*, which denote the parts of a thing. These are expressed in Latin by *pars* with *dimidia, tertia, quarta*, etc. Thus, ½, *dimidia pars*; ⅓, *tertia pars*, etc. When the number of parts into which a thing is divided exceeds by one only the parts mentioned, as in ⅔, ¾, etc. the fraction is expressed simply by *duae, tres*, etc. *partes*, denoting two out of three, three out of four, etc.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 122. 1. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bŏnus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opācus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *aeneus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

2. The *comparison* of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.

3. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

4. The positive simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality; as, *altus*, high; *mitis*, mild.

5. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

6. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissĭmus*, highest; *mitissĭmus*, mildest.

REM. 1. Sometimes also the comparative denotes that a quality, at different times or in other circumstances, belongs in different degrees to the *same* object; as, *est sapientior quam fuit*, he is wiser than he was.

REM. 2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quam sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

REM. 3. The comparative is also used elliptically instead of our 'too' or 'rather'; as, *vivit liberius*, he lives too freely, or, rather freely. Cf. § 256, R. 9.

REM. 4. The superlative, like the positive with *per*, (cf. § 127, 2), often indicates a high degree of a quality without direct comparison with the same quality in other objects; as, *amicus carissimus*, a very dear friend.

§ **123.** 1. Degrees of a quality *inferior* to the positive may be denoted by the adverbs *minus*, less; *minime*, least, prefixed to the positive; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minus jucundus*, less pleasant; *minime jucundus*, least pleasant.

2. A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to the positive; as, *amarus*, bitter; *subamarus*, bitterish, or, somewhat bitter.

3. An *equal* degree of a quality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quam*, *æque* followed by *ac*, *sic* followed by *ut*, etc.; as, *hebes*, *æque ac pecus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ **124.** 1. The comparative and superlative in Latin, as in English, are denoted either by peculiar terminations, or by certain adverbs prefixed to the positive. Cf. § 127, 1.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.

2. The terminational comparative ends in *ior*, *ior*, *ius*; the terminational superlative in *issĭmus*, *issĭma*, *issĭmum*.

3. These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as,

altus, *altior*, *altissĭmus*;   high, higher, highest.
mitis, *mitior*, *mitissĭmus*;   mild, milder, mildest.
felix, (gen. *felĭcis*,) *felĭcior*, *felĭcissĭmus*; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

Arc'-tus, *strait.*	Cru-dē'-lis, *cruel.*
Cā'-rus, *dear.*	Fer'-ti-lis, *fertile.*
Doc'-tus, *learned.*	Lē'-vis, *light.*

Cā'-pax, *capacious.*
Clē'-mens, (gen. -tis) *merciful.*
In'-ers, (gen. -tis), *sluggish.*

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ **125.** 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rĭmus* to that termination; as, *ācer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrimus*.

In like manner, *pauper, pauperrimus. Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterrimus*, from the old collateral form *vēter*.

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *limus* to the root:—

Facilis,	facilior,	facillimus,	*easy.*
Difficilis,	difficilior,	difficillimus,	*difficult.*
Gracilis,	gracilior,	gracillimus,	*slender.*
Humilis,	humilior,	humillimus,	*low.*
Similis,	similior,	simillimus,	*like.*
Dissimilis,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus,	*unlike.*

Imbecillus or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus.*

3. (*a.*) Five adjectives in *ficus* (from *făcio*) derive their comparatives and superlatives from supposed forms in *ens*:—

Beneficus,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus,	*beneficent.*
Honorificus,	honorificentior,	honorificentissimus,	*honorable.*
Magnificus,	magnificentior,	magnificentissimus,	*splendid.*
Munificus,	munificentior,	munificentissimus,	*liberal.*
Maleficus,	———— ,	maleficentissimus,	*hurtful.*

(*b.*) Adjectives in *dicens* and *vŏlens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dĭcus* and *vŏlus* are more common; as,

Maledicens or dicus, maledicentior, maledicentissimus, *slanderous.*
Benevŏlens, or -vŏlus, benevolentior, benevolentissimus, *benevolent.*

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextimus,	*right.*
Extĕra, (*fem.*)	exterior,	extrēmus, *or* extĭmus,	*outward.*
Postĕra, (*fem.*)	posterior,	postrēmus, *or* postūmus,	*hind.*
Infĕrus,	inferior,	infimus, *or* imus,	*below.*
Supĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus, *or* summus,	*above.*

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postĕra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extĕra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:—

Bŏnus,	melior,	optĭmus,	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Mălus,	pejor,	pessĭmus,	*bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	minor,	minĭmus,	*little,*	*less,*	*least.*
Multus,	————	plurĭmus,			
Multa,	————	plurĭma,	*much,*	*more,*	*most.*
Multum,	plus,*	plurĭmum,			
Nēquam,	nequior,	nequissĭmus,	*worthless,* etc.		
Frūgi,	frugalior,	frugalissĭmus,	*frugal,* etc.		

REM. 2. All these, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted, either form their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, or take them from other words of similar signification.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive:—

Citerior, citimus, *nearer.*	Prior, primus, *former.*
Deterior, deterrimus, *worse.*	Propior, proximus, *nearer.*
Interior, intĭmus, *inner.*	Ulterior, ultimus, *farther.*
Ocior, ocissimus, *swifter.*	

---

* See § 110.

2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissĭmus, *skilful.*
Inclŭtus, inclutissĭmus, *renowned.*
Invictus, invictissĭmus, *invincible.*
Invītus, invitissĭmus, *unwilling.*
Merĭtus, meritissĭmus, (very rare,) *deserving.*

Par, parissĭmus, (very rare), *equal.*
Persuāsus, persuasissĭmum (neuter), *persuaded.*
Săcer, sacerrĭmus, *sacred.*

3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Aprīcus, apricissĭmus, *sunny.*
Bellus, bellissĭmus, *fine.*
Cōmis, comissĭmus, *courteous.*
Diversus, diversissĭmus, *different.*

Falsus, falsissĭmus, *false.*
Fīdus, fidissĭmus, *faithful.*
Nŏvus, novissĭmus, *new.*
Vĕtus, veterrĭmus, *old.*

4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young.*
Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic.*
Alăcer, alacrior, *active.*
Ater, atrior, *black.*
Caecus, caecior, *blind.*
Dēses, desidior, *inactive.*
Diuturnus, diuturnior, *lasting.*
Infinītus, infinitior, *unlimited.*
Ingens, ingentior, *great.*
Jejūnus, jejunior, *fasting.*
Juvĕnis, junior, *young.*
Licens, licentior, *unrestrained.*
Longinquus, longinquior, *distant.*
Opīmus, opimior, *rich.*

Proclīvis, proclivior, *sloping.*
Prōnus, pronior, *bending down.*
Protervus, protervior, *violent.*
——— sequior, *worse.*
Propinquus, propinquior, *near.*
Salūtāris, salutarior, *salutary.*
Sătis, *sufficient* ; satius, *preferable.*
Sătur, saturior, *full.*
Sĕnex, senior, *old.*
Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody.*
Sinister, sinisterior, *left.*
Supīnus, supinior, *lying on the back.*
Surdus, surdior, *deaf.*
Tĕres, teretior, *round.*

REMARK 1. The superlative of *juvĕnis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minĭmus natu*, youngest; and that of *sĕnex* by *maxĭmus natu*, oldest. The comparatives *minor natu* and *major natu* sometimes also occur.

REM. 2. Most adjectives also in *ilis, ĭlis, ālis*, and *bĭlis*, have no terminational superlative.

5. Many variable adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(*a.*) Adjectives in *bundus, ĭmus, īnus* (except *dīvīnus*), *ōrus,* most in *ĭvus,* and in *us* pure (except *-quus.*) Yet *arduus, assiduus, egregius, exiguus, industrius, perpetuus, pius, strenuus,* and *vacuus,* have sometimes a terminational comparison. So, dropping *i, noxior, innoxior, sobrior.*

(*b.*) The following—*almus, calvus, cānus, cicur, claudus, degĕner, delirus, dispar, egēnus, impar, impĭger, incĭdus, lacer, mĕmor, mirus, nūdus, praecox, praeditus, rŭdis, salvus, sospes, superstes, vulgāris,* and some others.

§ **127.** 1. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *măgis,* more, and *maxĭme,* most ; as, *idoneus,* fit ; *magis idoneus, maxĭme idoneus.*

2. Various degrees of a quality above the positive are expressed by *admŏdum, aliquanto, apprime, bĕne, imprimis, multum, oppĭdo, perquam,* and *valde,* and also by *per* compounded with the positive ; as, *diffĭcilis,* difficult ; *perdiffĭcilis,* very difficult. To a few adjectives *prae* is in like manner prefixed ; as, *praedūrus,* very hard.

3. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam,* even, still, *or* yet ; and that of both comparative and superlative, by

prefixing *longe* or *multo*, much, far; as, longe *nobilissĭmus*; longe *melior*, *ŭter* multo *facilius*; multo *maxĭma pars.*

4. *Vel*, 'even', and *quam*, with or without *possum*, 'as much as possible', before the superlative, render it more emphatic; as, *Cicĕro* vel *optĭmus oratōrum Romanōrum.* Quam *maxĭmum* potest *milĭtum numĕrum collĭgit*; quam *doctissĭmus*, extremely learned; quam *celerrĭme*, as speedily as possible.

NOTE 1. Instead of *quam* with *possum*, *quantus* is sometimes used, in the same case as the superlative; as, Quantis *maxĭmis* potuit *itinerĭbus contendit.*

NOTE 2. *Unus*, with or without *omnĭum*, is sometimes added to superlatives to increase their force; as, *Hoc ego* ūno *omnĭum plurĭmum ūtor.* Cic. *Urbem* ūnam *mihi amicissĭmam declināvi*, Id. It is used in like manner with *excello.*

5. All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

6. Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive with the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beātus*, happier than we. Cic. *Ante alĭas pulchritudĭne insignis*, most beautiful. Liv. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *Ante alĭos pulcherrĭmus omnes.* Virg.

7. Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore, cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jŭgum*, *somnus*, *gĕro*, and *fĕro*, and many others.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives.* The following are the principal classes:—

1. (*a.*) The termination *ĕus*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes similarity; as, *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; *virgineus*, maidenly; from *aurum*, *argentum*, etc. See § 9, Rem. 3.

(*b.*) Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *neus* and *nus;* as, *eburneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

(*c.*) The termination *inus* has the same meaning; as, *adamantĭnus*, of adamant; *cedrĭnus*, of cedar; from *adămas* and *cedrus.* So, also, *ēnus;* as, *terrēnus*, of earth, from *terra.*

(*d.*) The termination *ēus* or *ius* (Greek *uos*), and also *ĭcus*, belong to adjectives formed from Greek names of men, and denote 'of' or 'pertaining to'; as, *Achillēus*, *Sophoclēus*, *Aristotelīus*, *Platonĭcus;* *Pythagorēus* and *Pythagorēus;* *Homerīus* and *Homerĭcus.* Names in *ius* make adjectives in *ĭacus;* as, *Archĭas*, *Archĭācus.* Sometimes, though rarely in the purest Latin authors, adjectives in *ēus* or *ius* are formed from Latin names; as, *Marcellīa* or *-ēa*, a festival in honor of the Marcelli.

2. (*a.*) The terminations *ālis*, *āris*, *ārius*, *ilis*, *atĭlis*, *icĭus*, *īcus*, *ius*, *ĕus*, and *inus*, denote 'belonging' 'pertaining,' or 'relating to'; as, *capitālis*, relating to the life; from *caput.*

So *comitiālis, regālis : Apollināris, consulāris, populāris; argentarius; civīlis,
hostīlis, juvenīlis; aquatĭlis, fluviatĭlis; tribunĭcius, patrĭcius; bellĭcus, civĭcus, Ger-
manĭcus; accusatorius, imperatorius; regius; Hectorēus; canīnus, equīnus, ferīnus,
masculīnus ; from comitia, rex, Apollo, consul, populus, argentum, civis,* etc.

(*b.*) The termination *ilis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostīlis,* hostile;
puerīlis, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer.*

(*c.*) The termination *īnus* belongs especially to derivatives from names of
animals, and other living beings.

3. The termination *arius,* as a substantive, scil. *faber,* etc., generally denotes
profession or occupation; as, *argentarius,* a silversmith; from *argentum;*—
coriarius, statuarius ; from *corium* and *statua.* When added to numeral adjec-
tives, it denotes how many equal parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

4. The terminations *ōsus* and *lentus* denote abundance, fulness; as, *animōsus,*
full of courage; *fraudulentus,* given to fraud; from *animus* and *fraus.* So *lapi-
dōsus, vinōsus, portuōsus, turbulentus, sanguinolentus, violentus.* Before *lentus,* a
connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *ŭ,* but sometimes *ŏ.*

Note.— Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives.* See § 104, 12.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in *ŭlus, cŭlus,* etc., in the same
manner as from nouns; as, *dulcĭcŭlus,* sweetish; from *dulcis.* So *lentŭlus, mi-
sĕllus, parvŭlus,* etc. See § 100, 3, and § 104, 11. Diminutives are sometimes
formed from comparatives; as, *majuscŭlus, duriuscŭlus,* somewhat great, some-
what hard, etc. Double diminutives are formed from *paucus,* viz *pauxillus* and
pauxillŭlus ; and from *bōnus,* (*bēnus*) are formed *bellus* and *bellŭlus.*

6. (*a.*) From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived *pa-
trial* adjectives in *ensis, īnus,* as and *ānus,* denoting of or belonging to such
places.

(*b.*) Thus from *Canna* is formed *Cannensis;* from *Sulmo, Sulmonensis.* In
like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrensis, circensis.* But *Athēna*
makes *Atheniensis ;* and some Greek towns in *ia* and *ēa* drop *i* and *e* in their
adjectives; as, *Antiochensis, Nicomedensis.*

(*c.*) Those in *īnus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium;*
as, *Aricia, Aricīnus ; Caudium, Caudīnus ; Capitolium, Capitolīnus ; Latium, La-
tīnus.* Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also
form adjectives in *īnus ;* as, *Tarentum, Tarentīnus.*

(*d.*) Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um ;* some from nouns in
a ; as, *Arpinum, Arpīnas ; Caprĭa, Caprĭnas.*

(*e.*) Those in *ānus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension,
or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba, Albānus ; Rōma, Romānus ; Cūma,
Cumānus ; Thēba, Thebānus;* also from some of the second declension; as,
*Tusculum, Tusculānus ; Fundi, Fundānus :—fons, fontānus ; mons, montānus ;
urbs, urbānus: oppidum, oppidānus.*

(*f.*) Adjectives with the terminations *ānus, iānus,* and *īnus* are formed from
names of men; as, *Sulla, Sullānus ; Tullius, Tulliānus ; Jugurtha, Jugurthīnus.*

(*g.*) Greek names of towns in *pŏlis* form patrial adjectives in *polītānus;* as,
Neapŏlis, Neapolītānus.

(*h.*) Greek names of towns generally form patrials in *ius ;* as, *Rhodus, Rho-
dius ; Lacedaemon, Lacedaemonius ;*—but those in *a* form them in *aeus ;* as, *La-
rissa, Larissaeus ; Smyrna, Smyrnaeus.*

(*i.*) From many patrials; as, *B-itannus, Gallus, Afer, Persa, Arabs,* etc.,
adjectives are formed in *icus* and *ius ;* as, *Britannĭcus, Gallĭcus, Africus, Persi-
cus, Arabĭcus ;* so *Syrus, Syrius ; Thrax, Thracius.*

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from
nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally
signify *wearing* or *furnished with;* as,

alātus, winged; *barbātus,* bearded; *galeātus,* helmeted; *aurītus,* long-eared;
turrītus, turreted; *cornūtus,* horned; from *ala, barba, galea, auris,* etc.

8. The termination *aneus*, annexed to the root of an adjective or participle in *us*, expresses a resemblance to the quality denoted by the primitive; as, *supervacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

§ **129.** II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, (see § 150, 5,) has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

errābundus, moribundus, from *erro, morior*, equivalent to *errans, moriens*.

(*a.*) In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulābundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimābundus*, weeping profusely.

(*b.*) Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively, viz. *pudibundus* and *lascivibundus*.

(*c.*) Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus, verēcundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *idus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

algidus, cold; *calidus*, warm; *madidus*, moist; *rapidus*, rapid; from *algeo, caleo, madeo, rapio.*

3. The termination *uus*, also, denotes the quality expressed by the verb; and adjectives in *uus* derived from active verbs take a passive meaning; as,

congruus, agreeing, from *congruo*; so, *assiduus, nocuus, innocuus :—irriguus*, well watered; *conspicuus*, visible; from *irrigo, conspicio.*

4. (*a.*) The terminations *ilis* and *bilis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denote passively, capability, or desert; as,

amabilis, worthy to be loved; *credibilis*, deserving credit; *placabilis*, easy to be appeased; *agilis*, active; *ductilis*, ductile; from *amo, credo, placo, ago, duco.* They are rarely active; as, *horribilis, terribilis, fertilis; aër per cuncta meabilis.* Plin.

(*b.*) In adjectives of these forms, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *i*; sometimes, also, in those from verbs of the second conjugation, in these and other forms, *i* is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis, terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo.*

(*c.*) These terminations, with the connecting vowel, are sometimes added to the third root; as, *flexilis, flexibilis; coctilis, coctibilis*, from *flecto (flex-)*, etc.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, has a passive sense; as, *fictitius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; from *fingo (fict-)*, etc.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as,

audax, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax* rapacious; from *audeo, loquor, rapio.*

7. The termination *ivus*, annexed to the third root of a verb, denotes fitness or ability to produce the action expressed by the verb; as, *disjunctivus*, disjunctive, from *disjungo.*

8. Verbals in *tor* and *trix*, (see § 102, 6, (*a.*),) are often used as adjectives, especially in poetry; as, *victor exercitus, victrices literæ.* In the plural they become adjectives of three terminations; as, *victores, victrices, victricia.* So also *hospes*, especially by the later poets, is used as an adjective, having *hospita* in the feminine singular and also in the neuter plural.

§ **130.**   III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participial adjectives*; as, *ămans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *crastĭnus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie.*

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra;* *postĕrus*, subsequent, from *post.*

COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **131.**   Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *caprĭpes*, goat-footed—of *căper* and *pes;* *ignicŏmus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *cŏma.*

NOTE.—See, respecting the connecting short ĭ, in case the first part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, § 103, Rem. 1.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctĭvăgus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *văgus.* So *lucĭfŭgus*, shunning the light—of *lux* and *fugax.*

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *cornĭger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gĕro;* *letĭfer*, bringing death—of *lētum* and *fĕro.* So *carnivŏrus, causidĭcus, ignicŏmus, lucĭfŭgus, particeps.*

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquævus*, of the same age—of *æquus* and *ævum;* *celerĭpes*, swift-footed—of *cĕler* and *pes.* So *centimănus, decennis, maynanĭmus, misericors, unanĭmis.*

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgemĭnus*, a hundred-fold; *multicăvus*, having many cavities; *quintusdecĭmus*, the fifteenth.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *brevilŏquens*, speaking briefly—of *brĕvis* and *lŏquor;* *magnĭfĭcus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *făcio.*

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualiscumque, quotcumque, uterque.*

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus.*

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *malĕdĭcax*, slanderous—of *măle* and *dĭcax.* So *antemeridiānus*, before mid-day.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benĕfĭcus*, beneficent—of *bĕne* and *făcio;* *malĕvŏlus*, malevolent—of *măle* and *vŏlo.*

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *āmens*, mad—of *a* and *mens.* So *consors, decŏlor, deformis, implūnis, inermis.*

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concăvus*, concave; *infĭdus*, unfaithful. So *improvidus, percărus, prædives, subalbĭdus.*

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *contĭnuus*, uninterrupted—of *con* and *teneo;* *insciens*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio.* So *præcĭpuus, promiscuus, substillus, superstes.*

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to the consonant which follows it; as, *imprūdens*—of *in* and *prūdens.* See § 196; and cf. § 103, R. 2.

PRONOUNS.

§ **132**. 1. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ego, *I.*	Hic, *this, the latter.*	Suus, *his, hers, its,* etc.
Tu, *thou.*	Is, *that* or *he.*	Cujus? *whose?*
Sui, *of himself,* etc.	Quis? *who?*	Noster, *our.*
Ille, *that, the former.*	Qui, *who.*	Vester, *your.*
Ipse, *himself.*	Meus, *my.*	Nostras, *of our country.*
Iste, *that, that of yours.*	Tuus, *thy.*	Cujas? *of what country?*

3. *Ego, tu,* and *sui,* and commonly also *quis* and its compounds, are substantives: the other pronouns, both simple and compound, are adjectives, but are often by ellipsis used as substantives.

4. *Ego, tu,* and *sui* are commonly called *personal pronouns.* They are a species of appellatives (§ 26, 3,) of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker to designate himself; *tu,* to designate the person whom he addresses. Hence *ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second. (§ 35, 2.) *Sui* is of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

5. The remaining pronouns, except *quis* and its compounds, are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

6. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* and *cujus,* have the same extent of signification as the pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of their primitives.

7. Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but most of them want the vocative. *Sui,* from the nature of its signification, wants also the nominative in both numbers.

8. The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **133**. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

Singular.

N. ĕ'-gŏ, *I.*	tū, *thou.*	{ su'-ī, *of himself, herself, itself.*
G. me'-ī, *of me.*	tu'-ī, *of thee.*	
D. mĭ'-hĭ, *to me.*	tĭb'-ĭ,* *to thee.*	sĭb'-ĭ,* *to himself,* etc.
Ac. mē, *me.*	tē, *thee.*	sē, *himself,* etc.
V. ———	tū, *O thou.*	
Ab. mē, *with me.*	tē, *with thee.*	sē, *with himself,* etc.

* See § 19, 1, Exc.

Plural.

N.	nōs, *we.*	vōs, *ye or you.*	
G.	nos'-trum *or* nos'-trī, } *of us.*	ves'-trum *or* ves'-trī, } *of you.*	su'-ī, *of themselves.*
D.	nō'-bīs, *to us.*	vō'-bīs, *to you.*	sĭb'-ī, *to themselves.*
Ac.	nōs, *us.*	vōs, *you.*	sē, *themselves.*
V.	———	vōs, *O ye or you.*	———
Ab.	nō'-bīs, *with us.*	vō'-bīs, *with you.*	sē, *with themselves.*

REMARK 1. *Mē* and *mī* are ancient forms for *mihi.* So *min'* for *mihine,* Pers. 1, 2.

REM. 2. The syllable *met* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse*; as, *egŏmet,* I myself; *mihi-met ipsi,* for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu, tŭtĕ* or *tutĕmet* is used. In the accusative and ablative the reduplicated forms *mēmē* and *tētē* in the singular, and *sēsē* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte,* intensive, *med* and *ted,* for me and te, and *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui,* occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrōrum, nostrārum,* and *ves-trōrum, vestrārum.* Respecting the difference in the use of *nostrum* and *nostri, vestrum* and *vestri,* see § 212, R. 2, N. 2.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mēcum, nobiscum,* etc. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes :—*demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, indefinite, possessive,* and *patrial.*

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille, iste, hic,* and *is,* and their compounds, and are thus declined :—

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N. il'-lĕ,	il'-lă,	il'-lŭd,	il'-lī,	il'-læ,	il'-lă,
G. il-līʹ-us,*	il-līʹ-us,	il-līʹ-us,	il-lō'-rum,	il-lā'-rum,	il-lō'-rum,
D. il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-līs,	il'-līs,	il'-līs,
Ac. il'-lum,	il'-lam,	il'-lŭd,	il'-lōs,	il'-lās,	il'-lă,
V. il'-lĕ,	il'-lă,	il'-lŭd,	il'-lī,	il'-læ,	il'-lă,
Ab. il'-lō.	il'-lā.	il'-lō.	il'-līs.	il'-līs.	il'-līs.

*See § 15, 1.

Iste is declined like *ille*.

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | |
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hĭc,	hæc,	hŏc,	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hū′-jŭs,	hū′-jŭs,	hū′-jús,	hō′-rum,	hā′-rum,	hō′-rum,
D. huic*,	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hŏc,	hōs,	hās,	hæc,
V. hĭc,	hæc,	hŏc,	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab. hōc.	hāc.	hōc.	hīs.	hīs.	hīs.

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | |
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ĭs,	e′-ă,	ĭd,	i′-ī,	e′-æ,	e′-ă,
G. e′-jŭs,	e′-jŭs,	e′-jŭs,	e-ō′-rum,	e-ā′rum,	e-ō′-rum,
D. e′-ī,	e′-ī,	e′-ī,	i′-īs *or* e′-īs,	i′-īs *or* e′-īs,	i′-īs *or* e′-īs,
Ac. e′-um,	e′-am,	ĭd,	e′-ōs,	e′-ās,	e′-ă,
V. ―――	―――	―――			
Ab. e′-ō.	e′-ā.	e′-ō.	i′-īs *or* e′-īs.	i′-īs *or* e′-īs.	i′-īs *or* e′-īs.

REMARK 1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *olli* masc. plur. in Virgil. *Illæ* fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also in Cato, *hæ* for *huic* fem.; *hice* for *hi*, and *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Im* for *eum*, is found in the Twelve Tables; *eii* for *ei*, and *ibus* and *iibus* for *iis*, in Plautus; *eæ*, fem., for *ei*, and *eäbus* for *iis*, in Cato.

REM. 2. From *ecce*, lo! with *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed, in colloquial language, nom., *ecca*; *eccilla*, *eccillud*; acc. sing., *eccam*, *eccum*; *eccillum* (by syncope *ellum*), *eccillam*; *eccistam*; acc. plur., *eccos*, *ecca*.

REM. 3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste hic*, and *ille hic*; or, as some say, of *iste ce*, and *ille ce*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

Istic is thus declined:—

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | |
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is′-tĭc,	is′-tæc,	is′-tŏc, *or* is′-tŭc,	*N.* ―――	is′-tæc,	―――
Ac. is′-tŭnc,	is′-tanc,	is′-tŏc, *or* is′-tŭc,	*Ac.* ―――	―――	is′-tæc.
Ab. is′-tŏc.	is′-tāc.	is′-tŏc.			

Illic is declined in the same manner.

REM. 4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hujusce*, *huncce*, *hancce*, *hocce*, *hice*, *hæce* or *hæc*, *horunc*, *harumce*, *harunce*, or *harunc*, *hosce*, *hasce*, *hisce*; *illusce*, *illæce*, *illosce*, *illasce*, *illisce*; *istăce*, *istisce*; *ejusce*, *iisce*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine*, *hoscine*, *hiscine*; *istuccine*, *istaccine*, *istoscine*; *illiccine*, *illanccine*.

REM. 5. *Mŏdi*, the genitive of *mŏdus*, annexed to the genitive singular of demonstrative and relative pronouns, imparts to them the signification of adjectives of quality; as, *hujusmŏdi* or *hujuscemŏdi*, like *talis*, of this sort, such; *illiusmŏdi* and *istiusmŏdi*, of that sort; *cujusmŏdi*, of what sort, like *qualis*; *cu-*

――――――――――――――――――――――――――――――

* See § 9, 5.

juscemŏdi, cujusquemŏdi, cujusmodicunque, of what kind soever; *cujusdammŏdi,* of some kind. So also *istimŏdi, cuimŏdi* and *cuicuimŏdi,* instead of *istiusmŏdi, cujusmŏdi,* etc.

REM. 6. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is,* forming *idem,* "the same," which is thus declined:—

Singular.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	ĭ'-dem,	e'-ă-dem,	ĭ'-dem,
G.	e-jus'-dem,	e-jus'-dem,	e-jus'-dem,
D.	e-ī'-dem,	e-ī'-dem,	e-ī'-dem,
Ac.	e-un'-dem,	e-an'-dem,	ĭ'-dem,
V.	———		
Ab.	e-ō'-dem.	e-ā'-dem.	e-ō'-dem.

Plural.

	M.	F.	N.
N.	i-ī'-dem,	e-æ'-dem,	e'-ă-dem,
G.	e-o-run'-dem,	e-o-run'-dem,	e-o-run'-dem,
D.	e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem,	e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem,	e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem,
Ac.	e-os'-dem,	e-as'-dem,	e'-ă-dem,
V.	———		
Ab.	e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem.	e-is'-dem, *or* i-is'-dem.	e-is'dem, *or* i-is'-dem.

NOTE 1. In compound pronouns, *m* before *d* is changed into *n;* as, *eundem, eorundem,* etc.

NOTE 2. In Sallust *isdem,* and in Palladius *hisdem* occur for *iisdem;* and Ennius in Cicero has *eademnet* for *eădem.*

INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse,* and the intensive compounds already mentioned. See §§ 133, R. 2, and 134, R. 4.

Ipse is compounded of *is* and the suffix *pse,* and is thus declined:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ip'-sĕ,	ip'-să,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sæ,	ip'-să,
G.	ip'-sī'-us,	ip'-sī'-us,	ip'-sī'-us,	ip-sō'-rum,	ip-sā'-rum,	ip-sō'-rum,
D.	ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sīs,	ip'-sīs,	ip'-sīs,
Ac.	ip'-sum,	ip'-sam,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sōs,	ip'-sās,	ip'-să,
V.	ip'-sĕ,	ip'-să,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sæ,	ip'-să,
Ab.	ip'-sō.	ip'-sā.	ip'-sō.	ip'-sīs.	ip'-sīs.	ip'-sīs.

REMARK 1. *Ipse* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse, tu ipse,* Jupiter himself, etc.; and hence is sometimes called the *adjunctive* pronoun.

REM. 2. A nominative *ipsus,* occurs in early writers, and a superlative *ipsissimus,* his very self, is found in Plautus.

REM. 3. In old writers the *is* of *ipse* is declined, while *pse* remains undeclined; as, *eapse,* (nom. and abl.), *eumpse,* and *eopse,* instead of *ipsa, ipsam,* and *ipso.* So also *reapse,* i. e. *re eapse,* "in fact."

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **136.** Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun or pronoun.

1. They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis,* whoever. The latter are called *general* relatives.

2. In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun or pronoun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent.*

Qui is thus declined:—

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | |
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quī,	quæ,	quŏd,	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cū'-jŭs,	cū'-jŭs,	cū'-jŭs,	quō'-rum,	quā'-rum,	quō'-rum,
D.	cui,*	cui,	cui,	quī'-bŭs,	quī'-bŭs,	quī'-bŭs,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quŏd,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——			
Ab.	quō.	quā.	quō.	quī'-bŭs.	quī'-bŭs.	quī'-bŭs.

REMARK 1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders, and rarely also for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo, qua, qui,* and *quibus, cum* is commonly annexed, cf. § 133, 4. Cicero uses *quicum* for *quōcum,* when an indefinite person is meant.

REM. 2. *Queis* (monosyllabic, § 9, R. 1), and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus.* *Cŭjus* and *cui* were anciently written *quōjus* and *quoi*: and, instead of the genitive *cŭjus,* a relative adjective *cŭjus, a, um,* very rarely occurs.

3. *Quicumque,* (or *quicunque*), is declined like *qui.*

REM. 3. *Qui* is sometimes separated from *cumque* by the interposition of one or more words; as, *quæ me cumque vocant terræ.* Virg. A similar separation sometimes occurs in the other compounds of *cumque.*

4. *Quisquis* is thus declined:—

| | *Singular.* | | | | *Plural.* |
	M.	F.	N.		M.
N.	quis'-quis,	quis'-quis,†	quid'-quid,	N.	quī'-quī,
Ac.	quem'-quem,	——	quid'-quid,	D.	qui-bus'-quī-bus,
Ab.	quō'-quō.	quā'-quā.	quō'-quō.		

REM. 4. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid.* *Quiqui* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus; and *quidquid* is used adjectively in Cato R. R. 48.

---

* See § 9, 5; and cf. § 306, (1.)   † Cf. § 137, R. (1.)

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **137.** Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis?	} *who? what?*	Ecquis?	} *is any one?*
Quisnam?		Eccquisnam?	
Qui?	} *which? what?*	Numquis?	
Quinam?		Numquisnam,	

Cūjus? *whose?*
Cūjas? *of what country?*

1. *Quis* is commonly used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. The interrogative *qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

Quis is thus declined :—

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quĭs,	quæ,	quĭd,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cū´-jŭs,	cū´-jŭs,	cū´-jŭs,	quō´-rum,	quā´-rum,	quō´-rum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cni,	quī´-bŭs,	quī´-bŭs,	quī´-bŭs,
Ac.	quem,	quam,	quĭd,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V.						
Ab.	quō.	quā.	quō.	quī´-bŭs.	quī´-bŭs.	quī´-bŭs.

REMARK (1.) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. *Quisnam, quisque* and *quisquam* also occur as feminine.

REM. (2.) *Qui* is used for the ablative of *quis* in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui.* Cf. § 136, R. 1.

REM. (3.) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of the indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (some one, any one), especially after the conjunctions *ec* (for *en*), *si, ne, neu, nisi, num*; and after relatives, as *quo, quanto,* etc. Sometimes *quis* and *qui* are used in the sense of *quâlis?* what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quinam* have respectively the signification and declension of the interrogatives *quis* and *qui.* In the poets *nam* sometimes stands before *quis.* Virg. G. 4, 445.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis* are declined and used like *quis;* but are sometimes adjectives. Virg. Ecl. 10, 28: Cic. Att. 13, 8.

REM. (4.) *Ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *numquis* is *numqua.*

REM. (5.) *Ecqui* and *numqui* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui,* and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* and *numquisnam* are declined like *ecquis;* but are found only in the singular;—the former in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine; the latter in the nominative masculine and accusative neuter. In the nominative feminine and in the ablative, the former is used adjectively.

5. The interrogative *cujus* is also defective:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	M.	F.	N.		F.
N.	cū´-jŭs,	cū´-jă,	cū´-jum,	N.	cū´-jæ,
Ac.	cū´-jum,	cū´-jam,	—	Ac.	cū´-jās.
Ab.	—	cū´-jā.	—		

6. *Cūjās* is declined like an adjective of one termination; *cūjas, cujātĭs.* See § 139, 4.

NOTE. The interrogative pronouns are used not only in direct questions but in such dependent clauses also, as contain only an indirect question; as, e. g. in the direct question, *quis est?* who is he? in the indirect, *nescio quis sit,* I know not who he is. *Quī,* in this sense, is found for *quis;* as, *qui sit apĕrit,* he discloses who he is. Cf. § 265, N.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ **138.** Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

Alĭquis, *some one.*   Quisquam, *any one.*   Quĭdam, *a certain one.*
Sĭquis, *if any.*   Quispiam, *some one.*   Quīlibet, } *any one you*
Nēquis, *lest any.*   Unusquisque, *each.*   Quīvis, } *please.*
Quisque, *every one.*   Aliquipiam, *any, some.*   Quis *and* qui, § 137, R. (3.)

NOTE. *Siquis* and *nequis* are commonly written separately, *si quis* and *ne quis:* so also *unus quisque.*

1. *Alĭquis* is thus declined:—

	Singular.		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	al´-ĭ-quis,	al´-ĭ-qua,	al´-ĭ-quod, *or* -quid,
G.	al-i-cū´-jus,	al-i-cū´-jus,	al-i-cū´-jus,
D.	al´-ĭ-cui,	al´-ĭ-cui,	al´-ĭ-cui,
Ac.	al´-ĭ-quem,	al´-ĭ-quam,	al´-ĭ-quod, *or* -quid,
V.	—	—	—
Ab.	al´-ĭ-quo.	al´-ĭ-quā.	al´-ĭ-quo.

	Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.
N.	al´-ĭ-qui,	al´-ĭ-quæ,	al´-ĭ-qua,
G.	al-i-quō´-rum,	al-i-quā´-rum,	al-i-quō´-rum,
D.	a-liq´-ui-bus,*	a-liq´-ui-bus,	a-liq´-ui-bus,
Ac.	al´-ĭ-quos,	al´-ĭ-quas,	al´-ĭ-qua,
V.	—	—	—
Ab.	a-liq´-ui-bus.	a-liq´-ui-bus.	a-liq´-ui-bus.

* Pronounced *a-lĭk´-wĕ-bus.* See §§ 9, 4, and 21, 3.

2. *Siquis* and *nēquis* are declined in the same manner; but they sometimes have *quœ* in the fem. singular and neut. plural.

(*a.*) *Aliquis*, in the nominative singular masculine, is used both as a substantive and as an adjective;—*aliqui*, as an adjective, but is nearly obsolete. *Aliquœ* in the fem. sing. occurs as an adjective in Lucretius, 4, 2, 64. *Siqui*, and *nēqui*, which are properly adjectives, are used also substantively for *siquis* and *nēquis*, and in the nominative singular masculine these two forms are equivalent. The ablatives *aliqui* and *siqui* also occur.

(*b.*) *Aliquid*, *siquid*, and *nēquid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *aliquod*, etc., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

(*a.*) In the neuter singular, however, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*. The forms *quidque* or *quicque*, *quidpiam* or *quippiam* are used substantively.

(*b.*) *Quisquam* wants the feminine (except *quamquam*, Plaut. Mil. 4, 2, 68), and also the plural, and, with a few exceptions in Plautus, it is always used substantively, its place as an adjective being supplied by *ullus*. *Quispiam* is scarcely used in the plural, except in the nominative feminine, *quœpiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, which are often written separately, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, etc. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural. *Unumquidquid* for *unumquidque* occurs in Plautus and Lucretius.

5. *Quīdam*, *quīlibet*, and *quīvis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have both *quod* and *quid* in the neuter, the former used adjectively, the latter substantively.

Note. *Quīdam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, etc. Cf. § 134, Note 1.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. 1. The possessive are derived from the genitives of the substantive pronouns, and of *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* and *cūjus*. *Meus, tuus,* and *suus,* are declined like *bŏnus;* but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi,* and very rarely *meus.* Cf. § 105, R. 3. In late writers *mi* occurs also in the feminine and neuter.

2. *Cūjus* also is declined like *bŏnus;* but is defective. See § 137, 5. It occurs only in early Latin and in legal phraseology.

3. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *pĭger.* See § 106.

Remark 1. The terminations *pte* and *met* intensive are sometimes annexed to possessive pronouns, especially to the ablative singular; as, *suopte pondĕre,* by its own weight; *suapte manu,* by his own hand. So *nostrapte culpā;* *suumpte amicum;* *meamet culpā.* The suffix *met* is usually followed by *ipse;* as, *Hannibal suāmet ipse fraude captus abiit.* Liv.; but Sallust has *meamet facta dicĕre.*

Rem. 2. *Suus,* like its primitive *sui,* has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. *Meus, tuus, noster,* and *vester,* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132, 4.

PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

4. (*a.*) These are *nostras* and *cūjas*. See §§ 100, 2, and 128, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras, nostrātis,* but both are defective.

(*b.*) *Nostras* is found in the nominative and genitive singular, in the nominative plural, (masc. and fem., *nostrātes,* neut. *nostratia*), and in the ablative, (*nostratībus*). *Cūjas* or *quōjas* occurs in the nominative, genitive and accusative (*cujātem* masc.) singular, and in the nominative plural, masc. (*cujātes*). Cf. § 137, 6.—*Nostrātis* and *cujātis* (or *quojātis*) also occur in the nominative.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

5. To the adjective pronouns may be added certain adjectives of so general a meaning, that they partake, in some degree, of the character of pronouns. Of this kind are :—

(1.) (*a.*) *Alius, ullus, nullus,* and *nonnullus,* which answer to the question, who ?

(*b.*) *Alter, neuter, alterŭter, utervis,* and *uterlĭbet,* which answer to the question, *ŭter ?* which of two ?

(2.) Adjectives denoting quality, size, or number, in a general way. These stand in relation to one another, and are hence called *correlatives.*

REMARK. The *relatives* and *interrogatives* of this class begin with *qu,* and are alike in form. The *indefinites* are formed from the relatives by prefixing *ali.* The *demonstratives* begin with *t,* and are sometimes strengthened by *dem.* A *general relative,* having a meaning more general than the relative, is formed by doubling the simple relative, or by affixing to it the termination *cumque.* A *general indefinite* is formed by annexing *libet* or *vis* to the relative.

(3.) Their mutual relation is denoted by the following table, with which may be compared the *adverbial correlatives,* § 191, R. 1.

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Relat. general.	Indefin.	Indef. general.
quālis?	tālis,	quālis,	{ qualis-qualis, / qualiscumque.	}	— qualislĭbet.
quantus?	{ tantus, / tantundem, }	quantus,	{ quantus-quantus, / quantuscumque,	aliquantus,	quantuslĭbet,
quŏt?	tŏt, totĭdem,	quŏt,	{ quot-quot, / quoteumque,	{ aliquot,	quotlĭbet,
quŏtus?	tŏtus,	quŏtus,	quotuscumque,	(aliquŏtus),	——.

Diminutives.

| quantŭlus? | tantŭlus. | —. | quantuluscumque. | aliquantŭlum. | ——. |

NOTE 1. The suffix *cumque,* which is used in forming general relatives, is composed of the relative adverb *cum (quum)* and the suffix *que,* expressive of universality, as in *quisque* and in adverbs, (see § 191). *Cumque,* therefore, originally signified 'whenever.' When attached to a relative, whether a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, it renders the relative meaning more general; as, *qui,* who; *quicunque,* whoever; or, every one who.

NOTE 2. *Cujusmŏdi* is sometimes used for *qualis,* and *hujusmŏdi, istĭusmŏdi, ejusmŏdi,* and *ejusdemmŏdi* for *tālis.* Cf. § 134, R. 5.

VERBS.

§ **140.**　A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

1. That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb. (2.) That which is affirmed of the subject is called the *predicate.* Cf. § 201.

3. A verb either expresses an *action* or *state*; as, *puer legit,* the boy *reads*; *aqua calet,* the water *is warm*;—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda,* the earth *is* round.

4. All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum,* I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called the *copŭla.*

§ **141.**　Verbs are either *active* or *neuter.*

Note. Active and neuter verbs are sometimes called *transitive* and *intransitive*; and verbs of motion are by some grammarians divided into *active-transitive* and *active-intransitive,* according as they require, or do not require, an object after them.

I. An *active* or *transitive verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te,* I love thee; *sequĭtur consŭlem,* he follows the consul.

II. A *neuter* or *intransitive verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit,* the horse runs; *gradior,* I walk.

Remark 1. Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated into English by active verbs. Thus *indulgeo,* I indulge, *noceo,* I hurt, *pareo,* I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such Latin verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, ' I am indulgent, I am hurtful,' etc. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust,* and, in this sense, takes an object; as, *credo tibi salūtem meam,* I intrust my safety to you; but by ellipsis it usually means *to believe*; as, *crede mihi,* believe me.

To verbs belong *voices, moods, tenses, numbers,* and *persons.*

VOICES.

(*a.*) Voice, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the relation of the agent to the action of the verb.

(*b.*) Most active Latin verbs have, for this purpose, two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices.*

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting upon* some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum,* the boy *is reading* a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber* legitur *a puĕro*, a book *is read* by the boy.

REM. 2. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, scil. *librum, litĕras,* etc., a book, a letter, etc.; *virtus laudātur*, virtue is praised, scil. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations. Cf. § 152.

§ **142.** 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice. See § 184, 2.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fīdo*, I trust. *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as, *ausus sum*, I dared. Hence these verbs are called *neuter passives*, or *semideponents*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapŭlo*, I am beaten, and *vēneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are hence called *neutral passives*.

4. (*a.*) Deponent verbs have a transitive or intransitive signification with only the passive form. They are called *deponent verbs*, from *depōno*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *sĕquor*, I follow; *mŏrior*, I die.

(*b.*) Some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive signification, especially in the perfect participle. These are sometimes called *common verbs*. Cf. § 162, 17.

MOODS.

§ **143.** (*a.*) Moods (or modes) are forms of the verb, which denote the relation of the action or state, expressed by the verb, to the mind of the speaker or to some other action.

(*b.*) Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is used in independent and absolute *assertions* and *inquiries;* as, *amo*, I love; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

2. The *subjunctive* mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind; as, *si me* obsĕcret, *redibo;* if *he entreat* me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is used in commanding, exhorting, or entreating; as, *ama*, love thou ; *amanto*, they shall love.

4. The *infinitive* mood is used to denote an action or state indefinitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *virtus est vitium* fugĕre, *to shun* vice is a virtue.

TENSES.

§ 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *time* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past, and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect,* and *future perfect* tenses.

<table>
<tr><td>Present</td><td rowspan="3">{</td><td>action</td><td rowspan="3">}</td><td>amo, I love, *or* am loving; *Present tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Past</td><td>not com-</td><td>amābam, I was loving; *Imperfect tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Future</td><td>pleted;</td><td>amābo, I shall love, *or* be loving; *Future tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Present</td><td rowspan="3">{</td><td>action</td><td rowspan="3">}</td><td>amāvi, I have loved; *Perfect tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Past</td><td>com-</td><td>amavĕram, I had loved; *Pluperfect tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Future</td><td>pleted;</td><td>amavēro, I shall have loved; *Future perfect tense.*</td></tr>
</table>

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

<table>
<tr><td>Present</td><td rowspan="3">{</td><td>action</td><td rowspan="3">}</td><td>amor, I am loved; *Present tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Past</td><td>not com-</td><td>amābar, I was loved; *Imperfect tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Future</td><td>pleted;</td><td>amābor, I shall be loved; *Future tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Present</td><td rowspan="3">{</td><td>action</td><td rowspan="3">}</td><td>amātus sum, or fui, I have been loved; *Perfect tense.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Past</td><td>com-</td><td>amātus eram, or fuĕram, I had been loved; *Pluperfect.*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Future</td><td>pleted;</td><td>amātus ero, or fuĕro, I shall have been loved; *Future Perfect.*</td></tr>
</table>

§ 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *ămo*, I love, *or* am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense; as, *apud Parthos, signum dătur tympăno;* among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum. A general truth is sometimes also expressed by the perfect.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero;* for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is often in narration used for the perfect indefinite. It is then called the *historical present;* as, *desiliunt ex equis, provŏlant in primum;* they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam,* I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam,* I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiēbat jamdūdum verba;* he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.

3. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present; as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending, preparing,* or *attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, *or* shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvi*, I have loved, *or* I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite;* in the latter, the *perfect indefinite, historical perfect,* or *aorist.*

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *littĕras scripsĕram, quum nuncius vēnit; I had written* the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum cœnavĕro, proficiscar;* when *I shall have supped,* I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive.* It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses.*

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised,' or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can, may have* or *can have,* must, in certain connections, be translated by *might, could, would,* or *should; might have, could have,* etc. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.

NUMBERS.

§ **146.** Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*. Cf. § 35, 1.

PERSONS.

§ **147.** Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first*, *second*, and *third*. Cf. § 35, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the second person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the second and third persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, *-to* in the active, and *-tor* in the passive voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, in both voices :—

	Active.			*Passive.*		
Person.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Singular.	o, i, *or* m,	s,	t;	r,	ris,	tur;
Plural.	mus,	tis,	nt.	mur,	mini,	ntur.

These may be called *personal* terminations.

REMARK 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the second person singular and plural, which end in *sti* and *stis*, and in one of the forms of the third person plural, which ends in *re*.

REM. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

REM. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego, nos*; *tu* and *vos*, are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ **148.** 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses;* like an adjective, it has *declension** and *gender;* and like both, it has two *numbers.*

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future ; as, *amans,* loving ; and *amatūrus,* about to love ;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future ; as, *amā-tus,* loved, *or* having been loved ; *amandus,* to be loved.

---

*See §§ 105, R. 2: and 111, R.

(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandi*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

CONJUGATION.

§ **149.** 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

> In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;
> In the second, ... *ē* long;
> In the third, ... *ĕ* short;
> In the fourth, ... *ī* long.

EXCEPTION. *Do, dăre,* to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *ă* short before *re*.

§ **150.** A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root,* and the *termination.* Cf. § 40, R. 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv, u,* and *iv,* to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt, ĭt,* and *ĭt.*

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

4. In the third conjugation, the second root either is the same as the first, or is formed from it by adding *s ;* the third root is formed by adding *t.* See § 171.

NOTE. In the second and fourth conjugations, *e* and *i* before *o* are considered as belonging not to the root, but to the termination. In verbs whose second or third roots are formed irregularly, the general root often undergoes some change in the parts derived from them.

5. The vowel which unites the general root with the remaining letters of the verb, is called the *connecting* vowel. Each conjugation, except the third, is, in a great degree, distinguished by a peculiar connecting vowel, which is the same as characterizes the infinitives. See § 149, 2.

(*a.*) In the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is generally *ĕ* or *ĭ.* In the second and fourth conjugations, and in verbs in *io* of the third, a second connecting vowel is sometimes added to that which characterizes the conjugation; as, *a* in *doceant, u* in *capiunt,* etc.

(*b.*) In verbs whose second and third roots are formed irregularly, the connecting vowel often disappears, or is changed in the parts derived from those roots; but it is almost always found in the parts derived from the first root.

§ **151.** 1. From the *first* root are derived, in each voice, the present, imperfect, and future indicative ; the present and imperfect subjunctive ; the imperative, and the present infinitive. From this root are derived also the present participle, the gerund, and the future participle passive.

2. From the *second* root are derived, in the active voice, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative ; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, and the perfect infinitive.

3. (*a.*) From the *third* root are derived, in the active voice, the supine in *um,* and the future participle ; the latter of which, with the verb *esse,* constitutes the future infinitive active.

(*b.*) From this root are derived, in the passive voice, the supine in *u,* and the perfect participle ; from the latter of which, with the verb *sum,* are formed all the tenses which in the active are derived from the second root. The future infinitive passive is formed from the supine in *um,* and *īri,* the present infinitive passive of the verb *eo,* to go.

4. The present and perfect indicative, the supine in *um,* and the present infinitive, are called the *principal parts* of the verb, because from the first three the several roots are ascertained, and from the last, the characteristic vowel of the conjugation. In the passive voice, the principal parts are the present indicative and infinitive, and the perfect participle.

NOTE. As the supine in *um* is wanting in most verbs, the third root must often be determined from the perfect participle, or the future participle active.

§ **152.** The following table exhibits a connected view of the verbal terminations, in all the conjugations. By annexing these to the several roots, all the parts of a verb may be formed.

Terminations added to the First Root.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Conjugation		SINGULAR. Persons.			PLURAL. Persons.	
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
1.	-o,	-ās,	-it;	-āmŭs,	-ātĭs,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-ĭs,	-ĭt;	-ĭmŭs,	-ĭtĭs,	-unt.
4.	-ĭo,	-īs,	-ĭt;	-ĭmŭs,	-ītĭs,	-ĭunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ăbam,	-ăbās,	-ăbāt;	-ăbāmŭs,	-ăbātĭs,	-ăbant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbās,	-iēbāt;	-iēbāmŭs,	-iēbātĭs,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ăbō,	-ăbĭs,	-ăbĭt;	-ăbĭmŭs,	-ăbĭtĭs,	-ăbunt.
2.	-ēbō,	-ēbĭs,	-ēbĭt;	-ēbĭmŭs,	-ēbĭtĭs,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
4.	-ĭam,	-iēs,	-iet;	-iēmŭs,	-iētĭs,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-ēs,	-et;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
2.	-eam,	-eās,	-eat;	-eāmŭs,	-eātĭs,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-ās,	-at;	-āmŭs,	-ātĭs,	-ant.
4.	-ĭam,	-ĭās,	-ĭat;	-ĭāmŭs,	-ĭātĭs,	-ĭant.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Conj.	SINGULAR. Persons.				PLURAL. Persons.		
	1.	2.		3.	1.	2.	3.
1.	-ŏr,	-ārĭs	or -ārĕ,	-ātŭr;	-āmŭr,	-āmĭnĭ,	-antŭr.
2.	-eŏr,	-ērĭs	or -ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnĭ,	-entŭr.
3.	-ŏr,	-erĭs	or -erĕ,	-ĭtŭr;	-ĭmŭr,	-ĭmĭnĭ,	-untŭr.
4.	-ĭŏr,	-īrĭs	or -īrĕ,	-ītŭr;	-ĭmŭr,	-ĭmĭnĭ,	-iuntŭr.

Imperfect.

1.	-ăbār,	-ăbārĭs	or -ăbārĕ,	-ăbātŭr;	-ăbāmŭr,	-ăbāmĭnĭ,	-ăbantŭr.
2.	-ēbār,	-ēbārĭs	or -ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr;	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnĭ,	-ēbantŭr.
3.	-ēbār,	-ēbārĭs	or -ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr;	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnĭ,	-ēbantŭr.
4.	-iēbār,	-iēbārĭs	or -iēbārĕ,	-iēbātŭr;	-iēbāmŭr,	-iēbāmĭnĭ,	-iēbantŭr.

Future.

1.	-ăbŏr,	-ăbērĭs	or -ăbērĕ,	-ăbĭtŭr;	-ăbĭmŭr,	-ăbĭmĭnĭ,	-ăbuntŭr.
2.	-ēbŏr,	-ēbērĭs	or -ēbērĕ,	-ēbĭtŭr;	-ēbĭmŭr,	-ēbĭmĭnĭ,	-ēbuntŭr.
3.	-ăr,	-ērĭs	or -ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnĭ,	-entŭr.
4.	-ĭăr,	-iērĭs	or -iērĕ,	-iētŭr;	-iēmŭr,	-iēmĭnĭ,	-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1.	-ĕr,	-ērĭs	or ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnĭ,	-entŭr.
2.	-eăr,	-eārĭs	or eārĕ,	-eātŭr;	-eāmŭr,	-eāmĭnĭ,	-eantŭr.
3.	-ăr,	-ārĭs	or ārĕ,	-ātŭr;	-āmŭr,	-āmĭnĭ,	-antŭr.
4.	-ĭăr,	-ĭārĭs	or iārĕ,	-ĭātŭr;	-ĭāmŭr,	-ĭāmĭnĭ,	-ĭantŭr.

IMPERFECT. (Imperfect Subjunctive)

Active

1. -ārem, -ārēs, -āret; -ārēmŭs, -ārētis, -ārent.
2. -ērem, -ērēs, -ēret; -ērēmŭs, -ērētis, -ērent.
3. -ĕrem, -ĕrēs, -ĕret; -ĕrēmŭs, -ĕrētis, -ĕrent.
4. -īrem, -īrēs, -īret; -īrēmŭs, -īrētis, -īrent.

Passive

1. -ārer, -ārēris or -ārēre, -ārētur; -ārēmur, -ārēminī, -arentur.
2. -ērer, -ērēris or -ērēre, -ērētur; -ērēmur, -ērēminī, -erentur.
3. -ĕrer, -ĕrēris or -ĕrēre, -ĕrētur; -ĕrēmur, -ĕrēminī, -ĕrentur.
4. -īrer, -īrēris or -īrēre, -īrētur; -īrēmur, -īrēminī, -īrentur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present

1. -ā;
2. -ē;
3. -ĕ;
4. -ī;

Future

1. -āto, -āto; -antō.
2. -ēto, -ēto; -entō.
3. -ĭto, -ĭto; -untō.
4. -īto, -īto; -iuntō.

INFIN. Pres. { 1. -ārĕ, 2. -ērĕ, 3. -ĕrĕ, 4. -īrĕ.

PART. Pres. { 1. -āns, 2. -ēns, 3. -ens, 4. -iens.
Fut. { 1. -ātōr, 2. -itōr, 3. -itōr, 4. -ītōr.

GER. { 1. -andī, 2. -endī, 3. -endī, 4. -iendī.

PART. Fut. { 1. -andus, 2. -endus, 3. -endus, 4. -iendus.

INFIN. Pres. { 1. -ārī, 2. -ērī, 3. -ī, 4. -īrī.

NOTE. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have two connecting vowels in the parts in which they occur in verbs of the fourth conjugation, and these vowels are the same in both.

Terminations added to the Second and Third Roots.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the second and third roots, are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

ACTIVE VOICE.—SECOND ROOT.			PASSIVE VOICE.—THIRD ROOT.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	
Perf.	-ī, -istī, -it;	-imŭs, -istĭs, -ērunt or -ērĕ.	Perf.	-us sum or fuī,	-us ĕs or fuĭstī, etc.
Plup.	-ĕram, -ĕrās, -ĕrat;	-ĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant.	Plup.	-us eram or fuĕram,	-us ĕrās or fuĕrās, etc.
Fut. perf.	-ĕro, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.	Fut. perf.	-us ero or fuĕro,	-us ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	
Perf.	-ĕrim, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.	Perf.	-us sim or fuĕrim,	-us sīs or fuĕrĭs, etc.
Plup.	-issem, -issēs, -issĕt;	-issēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent.	Plup.	-us essem or fuissem,	-us essēs or fuissēs, etc.

INFIN. Perf. -isse.　　　　INFIN. Perf. -us esse or fuisse.

THIRD ROOT. INF. Fut. -ūrus osse. PART. Fut. -ūrus. F. SUP. -um.　　PART. Perf. -us. INF. Fut. -um īrī. L. SUP. -u.

REMARK 1. In analyzing a verb, the voice, person, and number, are ascertained by the *personal* terminations. See § 147, 3. The conjugation, mood, and tense, are, in general, determined by the letter or letters which intervene between the root of the verb and the personal terminations. Thus in *amabamus, mus* denotes that the verb is of the active voice, plural number, and first person; *ba* denotes that it is of the indicative mood, imperfect tense; and the connecting vowel *a* determines it to be of the first conjugation. So in *amarentini, mini* denotes the passive voice, plural number, and second person; *re*, the subjunctive mood, imperfect tense; and *a*, as before, the first conjugation.

REM. 2. Sometimes, the part between the root of the verb and the personal termination, does not precisely determine the conjugation, mood, and tense, but only within certain limits. In such cases, the conjugation may be learned, by finding the present tense in the dictionary, and if two forms are alike in the same conjugation, they can only be distinguished by the sense. Thus *amēmus* and *docēmus* have the same termination; but, as *amo* is of the first, and *doceo* of the second conjugation, the former is determined to be the subjunctive, the latter the indicative, present. *Regar* may be either the future indicative, or the present subjunctive—*bibĭmus* either the present or the perfect indicative.

§ **153.** SUM, I am, is called an *auxiliary* verb, because it is used, in conjunction with participles, to supply the want of simple forms in other verbs. From its denoting existence, it is sometimes called the *substantive* verb.

REMARK. *Sum* is very irregular in those parts which, in other verbs, are formed from the first root. Its imperfect and future tenses, except in the third person plural of the latter, have the form of a pluperfect and future perfect. It is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Fut. Part.*
Sum,	es'-sĕ,	fu'-ĭ,	fŭ'-tū'-rŭs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sum, *I am,*	sŭ'-mŭs, *we are,*
2. ĕs, *thou art,**	es'-tis, *ye† are,*
3. est, *he is ;*	sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect.

1. ĕ'-ram, *I was,*	ĕ-rā'-mŭs, *we were,*
2. ĕ'-rās, *thou wast,*	ĕ-rā'-tis, *ye were,*
3. ĕ'-răt, *he was ;*	ĕ'-rant, *they were.*

Future. *shall,* or *will.*

1. ĕ'-rŏ, *I shall be,*	ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs, *we shall be,*
2. ĕ'-rĭs, *thou wilt be,*	ĕr'-ĭ-tis, *ye will be.*
3. ĕ'-rĭt, *he will be ;*	ĕ'-runt, *they will be.*

* In the second person singular in English, the plural form *you* is commonly used except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es,* you are.
† The plural pronoun of the second person is either *ye* or *you*.

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

1. fu'-ī, *I have been,*   fu'-ĭ-mŭs, *we have been,*
2. fu-is'-tī, *thou hast been,*   fu-is'-tĭs, *ye have been,*
3. fu'-ĭt, *he has been;*   fu-ē'-runt *or* rĕ, *they have been.*

Pluperfect.

1. fu'-ĕ-ram, *I had been,*   fu-e-rā'-mŭs, *we had been,*
2. fu'-ĕ-rās, *thou hadst been,*   fu-e-rā'-tĭs, *ye had been,*
3. fu'-ĕ-răt, *he had been;*   fu'-ĕ-rant, *they had been.*

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

1. fu'-ĕ-rŏ, *I shall have been,*   fu-er'-ĭ-mŭs, *we shall have been,*
2. fu'-ĕ-rĭs, *thou wilt have been,*   fu-er'-ĭ-tĭs, *ye will have been,*
3. fu'-ĕ-rĭt, *he will have been;*   fu'-ĕ-rint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can.*

1. sim, *I may be,*   sī'-mŭs, *we may be,*
2. sīs, *thou mayst be,*   sī'-tĭs, *ye may be,*
3. sīt, *he may be;*   sint, *they may be.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

1. es'-sem, *I would be,*   es-sē'-mŭs, *we would be,*
2. es'-sēs, *thou wouldst be,*   es-sē'-tĭs, *ye would be,*
3. es'-sĕt, *he would be;*   es-sent, *they would be.*

Perfect.

1. fu'-ĕ-rim, *I may have been,*   fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mus, *we may have been,*
2. fu'-ĕ-rĭs, *thou mayst have been,*   fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs, *ye may have been,*
3. fu'-ĕ-rĭt, *he may have been;*   fu'-ĕ-rĭnt, *they may have been.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

1. fu-is'-sem, *I would have been,*   fu-is-sē'-mŭs, *we would have been,*
2. fu-is'-sēs, *thou wouldst have been,*   fu-is-sō'-tĭs, *ye would have been,*
3. fu-is'-sĕt, *he would have been;*   fu-is'-sent, *they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres.   1. ĕs, *be thou,*   es'-tĕ, *be ye,*
Fut.   2. es-tŏ, *thou shalt be,*   es-tō'-tĕ, *ye shall be,*
       3. es-tŏ, *let him be;*   sun'-tŏ, *let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.   es'-sĕ, *to be.*
Perfect.   fu-is'-sĕ, *to have been.*
Future.   fū-tū'-rŭs (ă, um), es'-sĕ, *or* fŏ'-rĕ, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future.   fŭ-tū´-rus, a, um, *about to be.*

§ **154.** REMARK 1. A present participle *ens* seems to have been anciently in use, and is still found in the compounds *absens, præsens,* and *pŏtens.*

REM. 2. The perfect *fui,* and its derivative tenses. are formed from an obsolete *fuo,* whence come also the participle *futūrus,* an old subjunctive present *fuam, fuas, fuat;* ——, ——, *fuant,* and the forms *fuvĭmus,* perf. ind., *fuvĕrint,* perf. subj., and *fuvisset,* plup. subj.

REM. 3. From *fuo* appear also to be derived the following:—

Subj. imperf. fŏ´-rem, fŏ´-rēs, fŏ´-rĕt; ——, ——, fŏ´-rent.
Inf. pres.   fŏ´-rĕ.

These forms seem to have been contracted from *fuĕrem,* etc., and *fuĕre.* *Fŏrem* is equivalent in meaning to *essem,* but the infinitive *fŏre* has, in most cases, acquired a future signification, equivalent to *futūrus esse.*

REM. 4. *Siem, sies, siet, sient,* for *sim, sis, sit, sint,* are found in ancient writers, as are also *escit* for *erit, escunt* for *erunt, ese, esētis,* and *esent,* for *esse, esētis,* and *essent.*

REM. 5. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds, *absum, adsum, dēsum, insum, intersum, obsum, præsum, subsum,* and *supersum.*

REM. 6. PROSUM, from the old form *prōd* for *prō,* and *sum,* has *d* after *pro,* when the simple verb begins with *e ;* as,

Ind. pres.   prō´-sum, prōd´-es, prōd´-est, etc.
— *imperf.*   prŏd´-ĕ-ram, prŏd´-ĕ-rās, etc.

REM. 7. (*a.*) POSSUM is compounded of *pŏtis,* able, and *sum.* They are sometimes written separately, and then *pŏtis* is the same in all genders and numbers.

(*b.*) In composition, *is* is omitted in *pŏtis,* and *t,* as in other cases, coming before *s,* is changed into *s.* In the infinitive, and imperfect subjunctive, *es* of the simple verb is dropped, as is also *f* at the beginning of the second root. In every other respect *possum* is conjugated like *sum,* wherever it is found; but the imperative, and the parts derived from the third root, are wanting.

Pres. Indic.   *Pres. Infin.*   *Perf. Indic.*
Pos´-sum,   pos´-sĕ,   pŏt´-u-i,   *I can,* or *I am able.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	
pos´-sum, pŏ´-tĕs, pŏ´-test;	pos´-sim, pos´-sīs, pos´-sīt;
pos´-sŭ-mŭs, pŏ-tes´-tĭs, pos´-sunt.	pos-sī´-mŭs, pos-sī´-tĭs, pos´-sint.
Imperfect.	
pŏt´-ĕ-ram, pot´-ĕ-rās, pot´-ĕ-răt;	pos´-sem, pos´-sēs, pos´-sĕt;
pŏt-ĕ-rā´-mŭs, -ĕ-rā´-tĭs, -ĕ-rant.	pos-sē´-mŭs, -sē´-tĭs, pos´-sent.
Future.	
pŏt´-ĕ-rŏ, pŏt´-ĕ-rĭs, pŏt´-ĕ-rĭt;	
pŏ-tĕr´-ĭ-mŭs, po-ter´-ĭ-tĭs, pot´-ĕ-runt.	
Perfect.	
pŏt´-u-ī, pŏt-u-is´tī, pŏt´-u-ĭt;	pŏ-tu´-ĕ-rim, -ĕ-rĭs, -ĕ-rĭt;
pŏ-tu´-ĭ-mŭs, -is´-tĭs, -ĕ´-runt *or* -ĕ´rĕ.	pŏt-u-ĕr´-ĭ-mŭs, -ĭ-tĭs, -ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

pŏ-tu´-ĕ-ram, -ĕ-răs, -ĕ-răt;   pŏt-u-is´-sem, -is´-sēs, -is´-sĕt;
pŏt-u-ĕ-rā´-mŭs, -ĕ-rā´-tĭs, -ĕ-rant.   pŏt-u-is-sē´-mŭs, -is-sē´-tĭs, -is´-sent.

Future Perfect.

pŏ-tu´-ĕ-rō, pŏ-tu´-ĕ-rĭs, pŏ-tu´-ĕ-rĭt;
pŏt-u-ĕr´-ĭ-mŭs, pŏt-u-ĕr-ĭ-tis, pŏ-tu´-ĕ-rint.

(No Imperative.)

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.
Pres. pos´-sĕ. *Perf.* pŏt-u-is´-sĕ.	pŏ´-tens, *able.*

NOTE. The following forms are also found; *potissum* for *possum*, *potessunt* for *possunt*, *potessim* and *possiem* for *possim*, *possies*, *possiet* and *potessit* for *possis* and *possit*, *potessem* for *possem*, *potesse* for *posse*, and before a passive infinitive the passive forms *potestur* for *potest*, *poterātur* for *poterat*, and *possētur* for *posset.—Potis* and *pote* without *est* are sometimes used for *potest.*

§ 155. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*
A´-mŏ,	ă-mā´-rĕ,	ă-mā´-vī,	ă-mā´-tum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *love, do love, am loving.*

Sing.	ă´-mŏ,	*I love,*
	ă´-mās,	*thou lovest,*
	ă´-măt,	*he loves;*
Plur.	ă-mā´-mŭs,	*we love,*
	ă-mā´-tĭs,	*ye love,*
	ă´-mant,	*they love.*

Imperfect. *was loving, loved, did love.*

Sing.	ă-mā´-bam,	*I was loving,*
	ă-mā´-bās,	*thou wast loving,*
	ă-mā´-băt,	*he was loving;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-bā´-mŭs,	*we were loving,*
	ăm-ā-bā´-tis,	*ye were loving,*
	ă-mā´-bant,	*they were loving.*

Future. *shall, or will.*

Sing.	ă-mā´-bŏ,	*I shall love,*
	ă-mā´-bĭs,	*thou wilt love,*
	ă-mā´-bĭt,	*he will love;*
Plur.	ă-māb´-ĭ-mŭs,	*we shall love,*
	ă-māb´-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye will love,*
	ă-mā´-bunt,	*they will love.*

Perfect. *loved, or have loved.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-vĭ,	*I have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis'-tĭ,	*thou hast loved,*
	ă-mā'-vĭt,	*he has loved;*
Plur.	ă-māv'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis'-tĭs,	*ye have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vē'-runt *or* -rĕ,	*they have loved.*

Pluperfect. *had.*

Sing.	ă-māv'-ĕ-ram,	*I had loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rās,	*thou hadst loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-răt,	*he had loved;*
Plur.	ă-māv-ĕ-rā'-mŭs,	*we had loved,*
	ă-māv-ĕ-rā'-tĭs,	*ye had loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rant,	*they had loved.*

Future Perfect. *shall, or will have.*

Sing.	ă-māv'-ĕ-rŏ,	*I shall have loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou wilt have loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rĭt,	*he will have loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-vĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we shall have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye will have loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rint,	*they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

Present. *may, or can.*

Sing.	ă'-mem,	*I may love,*
	ă'-mēs,	*thou mayst love,*
	ă'-mĕt,	*he may love;*
Plur.	ă-mē'-mŭs,	*we may love,*
	ă-mē'-tĭs,	*ye may love,*
	ă'-ment,	*they may love.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-rem,	*I would love,*
	ă-mā'-rēs,	*thou wouldst love,*
	ă-mā'-rĕt,	*he would love;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-rē'-mŭs,	*we would love,*
	ăm-ā-rē'-tĭs,	*ye would love,*
	ă-mā'-rent,	*they would love.*

Perfect. *may, or can have.*

Sing.	ă-māv'-ĕ-rim,	*I may have loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou mayst have loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rĭt,	*he may have loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-vĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we may have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye may have loved,*
	ă-māv'-ĕ-rint,	*they may have loved.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

Sing.	ăm-ā-vis'-sem,	*I would have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis'-sēs,	*thou wouldst have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis'-sĕt,	*he would have loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-vis-sē'-mŭs,	*we would have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis-sē'-tĭs,	*ye would have loved,*
	ăm-ā-vis'-sent,	*they would have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sing.	ă'-mā,	*love thou;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-tĕ,	*love ye.*
Fut. Sing.	ă-mā'-tŏ,	*thou shalt love,*
	ă-mā'-tŏ,	*he shall love;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-tō'-tĕ,	*ye shall love,*
	ă-man'-tŏ,	*they shall love.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	ă-mā'-rĕ,	*to love.*
Perfect.	ăm-ā-vis'-sĕ,	*to have loved.*
Future.	ăm-ā-tū'-rŭs, (ă, um,) es'-sĕ,	*to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	ă'-mans,	*loving.*
Future.	ăm-ā-tū'-rŭs, ă, um,	*about to love.*

GERUND.

G.	ă-man'-dī,	*of loving,*
D.	ă-man'-dŏ,	*for loving,*
Ac.	ă-man'-dum,	*loving,*
Ab.	ă-man'-dŏ,	*by loving.*

SUPINE.

Former.	ă-mā'-tum,	*to love.*

§ 156. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*
A'-mor,	ă-mā'-rī,	ă-mā'-tŭs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *am.*

Sing.	ă'-mŏr,	*I am loved,*
	ă-mā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou art loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭr,	*he is loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-mŭr,	*we are loved,*
	ă-mām'-ĭ-nī,	*ye are loved,*
	ă-man'-tŭr,	*they are loved.*

Imperfect. *was.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-băr,	*I was loved,*
	ăm-ā-bā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou wast loved,*
	ăm-ā-bā'-tŭr,	*he was loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-bā'-mŭr,	*we were loved,*
	ăm-ā-bām'-ĭ-nī,	*ye were loved,*
	ăm-ā-ban'-tŭr,	*they were loved.*

Future. *shall, or will be.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-bŏr,	*I shall be loved,*
	ă-māb'-ĕ-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou wilt be loved,*
	ă-māb'-ĭ-tŭr,	*he will be loved;*
Plur.	ă-māb'-ĭ-mŭr,	*we shall be loved,*
	ăm-ā-bĭm'-ĭ-nī,	*ye will be loved,*
	ăm-ā-bun'-tŭr,	*they will be loved.*

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs sum *or* fu'-ī,	*I have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕs *or* fu-is'-tī,	*thou hast been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs est *or* fu'-ĭt,	*he has been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-tĭ sŭ'-mŭs *or* fu'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tĭ es'-tĭs *or* fu-is'-tĭs,	*ye have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tĭ sunt, fu'ē'-runt *or* -rĕ,	*they have been loved.*

Pluperfect. *had been.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram,	*I had been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rās *or* fu'-ĕ-rās,	*thou hadst been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-răt *or* fu'-ĕ-răt,	*he had been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā-tĭ ĕ-rā'-mŭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā'-mŭs,	*we had been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tĭ ĕ-rā'-tĭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā'-tĭs,	*ye had been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tĭ ĕ'-rant *or* fu'-ĕ-rant,	*they had been loved.*

Future Perfect. *shall have been.*

Sing.	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ *or* fu'-ĕ-rŏ,	*I shall have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rĭs *ŏr* fu'-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou wilt have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tŭs ĕ'-rĭt *or* fu'-ĕ-rĭt,	*he will have been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā'-tĭ ĕr-ĭ-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,	*we shall have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tĭ ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye will have been loved,*
	ă-mā'-tĭ ĕ'-runt *or* fu'-ĕ-rint,	*they will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can be.*

Sing.	ă´-mĕr,	*I may be loved,*
	ă-mē´-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou mayst be loved,*
	ă-mē´-tŭr,	*he may be loved;*
Plur.	ă-mē´-mŭr,	*we may be loved,*
	ă-mēm´-ĭ-nī,	*ye may be loved,*
	ă-men´-tŭr,	*they may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

Sing.	ă-mā´-rĕr,	*I would be loved,*
	ăm-ā-rē´-rĭs *or* -rĕ,	*thou wouldst be loved,*
	ăm-ā-rē´-tŭr,	*he would be loved;*
Plur.	ăm-ā-rē´-mŭr,	*we would be loved,*
	ăm-ā-rēm´-ĭ-nī,	*ye would be loved,*
	ăm-ā-ren´-tŭr,	*they would be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

Sing.	ă-mā´-tŭs sim *or* fu´-ĕ-rim,	*I may have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tŭs sīs *or* fu´-ĕ-rĭs,	*thou mayst have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tŭs sit *or* fu´-ĕ-rit,	*he may have been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā´-tī sī´-mŭs *or* fu-er´-ĭ-mŭs,	*we may have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tī sī´-tĭs *or* fu-er´-ĭ-tĭs,	*ye may have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tī sint *or* fu´-ĕ-rint,	*they may have been loved.*

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

Sing.	ă-mā´-tŭs es´-sem *or* fu-is´-sem,	*I would have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tŭs es´-sēs *or* fu-is´-sēs,	*thou wouldst have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tŭs es´-sĕt *or* fu-is´-sĕt,	*he would have been loved;*
Plur.	ă-mā´-tī es-sē´-mŭs *or* fu-is-sē´-mŭs,	*we would have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tī es-sē´-tĭs *or* fu-is-sē´-tĭs,	*ye would have been loved,*
	ă-mā´-tī es´-sent *or* fu-is´-sent,	*they would have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sing.	ă-mā´-rĕ,	*be thou loved;*
Plur.	ă-mām´-ĭ-nī,	*be ye loved.*
Fut. Sing.	ă-mā´-tŏr,	*thou shalt be loved,*
	ă-mā´-tŏr,	*he shall be loved;*
Plur.	(ăm-ā-bĭm-ĭ-nī,	*ye shall be loved),*
	ă-man´-tŏr,	*they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	ă-mā´-rī,	*to be loved.*
Perfect.	ă-mā´-tŭs es´-sĕ *or* fu-is´-sĕ,	*to have been loved.*
Future.	ă-mā´-tum ĭ´-rī,	*to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. ă-mā'-tŭs,   loved, *or having been loved.*
Future. ă-man'-dŭs,   *to be loved.*

SUPINE.

Latter. ă-mā'-tū,   *to be loved.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *am*, are derived		From the second root, *amav*, are derived		From the third root, *amat*, are derived	
	Active.	Passive.		Active.	Passive.
Ind. pres.	amo.	amor.	*Ind. perf.*	amāvi,	amātus sum, etc.
— *imperf.*	amābam,	amābar.	— *plup.*	amavēram,	amātus eram, etc.
— *fut.*	amābo,	amābor.	— *fut. perf.*	amavēro,	amātus ero, etc.
Subj. pres.	amem,	amer.	*Subj. perf.*	amavērim,	amātus sim, etc.
— *imperf.*	amārem,	amārer.	— *plup.*	amavissem,	amātus essem, etc.
Imperat. pres. amā,		amāre.	*Inf. perf.*	amavisse,	amātus esse, etc.
— *fut.*	amāto,	amātor.			
			From the third root,		
Inf. pres.	amāre,	amāri.	*Inf. fut.*	amatūrus esse,	amātum iri.
Part. pres.	amans,		*Part. fut.*	amatūrus.	
— *fut.*		amandus.	— *perf.*		amātus.
Gerund.	amandi.		*Form. sup.* amātum.		*Lat. sup.* amātu.

§ 157. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	mŏ'-ne-ŏ.		*Pres. Ind.*	mŏ'-ne-ŏr.
Pres. Inf.	mŏ-nē'-rĕ.		*Pres. Inf.*	mŏ-nē'-ri.
Perf. Ind.	mŏn'-u-ĭ.		*Perf. Part.*	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs.
Supine.	mŏn'-ĭ-tum.			

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I advise.	*I am advised.*
Sing. mŏ'-ne-ŏ,	*Sing.* mŏ-ne-ŏr,
mŏ'-nēs,	mŏ-nē'-ris *or* -rĕ,
mŏ'-nĕt ;	mŏ-nē'-tŭr ;
Plur. mŏ-nē'-mŭs,	*Plur.* mŏ-nē'-mŭr,
mŏ-nē'-tĭs,	mŏ-nēm'-ĭ-nĭ,
mŏ'-nent.	mŏ-nen'-tŭr.

Imperfect.

I was advising.	*I was advised.*
S. mŏ-nē'-bam,	*S.* mŏ-nē'-băr,
mŏ-nē'-bās,	mŏn-ē-bā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
mŏ-nē'-băt ;	mŏn-ē-bā'-tŭr ;
P. mŏn-ē-bā'-mŭs,	*P.* mŏn-ē-bā'-mŭr,
mŏn-ē-bā'-tĭs,	mŏn-ē-bām'-ĭ-nĭ,
mŏ-nē'-bant.	mŏn-ē-ban'-tŭr.

ACTIVE. | PASSIVE.

Future.

I shall or *will advise.*	*I shall* or *will be advised.*
S. mŏ-nē'-bŏ,	S. mŏ-nē'-bŏr,
mŏ-nē'-bĭs,	mŏ-nēb'-ĕ-rĭs or -rĕ,
mŏ-nē'-bĭt ;	mŏ-nēb'-ĭ-tŭr ;
P. mŏ-nēb'-ĭ-mŭs,	P. mŏ-nēb'-ĭ-mŭr,
mŏ-nēb'-ĭ-tĭs,	mŏn-ē-bĭm'-ĭ-nī,
mŏ-nē'-bunt.	mŏn-ē-bun'-tŭr.

Perfect.

I advised or *have advised.*	*I was* or *have been advised.*
S. mŏn'-u-ī,	S. mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs sum or fu'-ī,
mŏn-u-ĭs'-tī,	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs ĕs or fu-ĭs'-tī,
mŏn'-u-ĭt ;	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs est or fu'-ĭt ;
P. mŏn-u'-ĭ-mŭs,	P. mŏn'-ĭ-tī sŭ'-mŭs or fu'-ĭ-mŭs,
mŏn-u-ĭs'-tĭs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tī es'-tĭs or fu-ĭs'-tĭs,
mŏn-u-ē'-runt or -rĕ.	mŏn'-ĭ-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rĕ-

Pluperfect.

I had advised.	*I had been advised.*
S. mŏ-nu'-ĕ-ram,	S. mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs ĕ'-ram or fu'-ĕ-ram,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rās,	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs ĕ'-rās or fu'-ĕ-rās,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-răt ;	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs ĕ'-răt or fu'-ĕ-răt ;
P. mŏn-u-ĕ-rā'-mŭs,	P. mŏn'-ĭ-tī ĕ-rā'-mŭs or fu-e-rā'-mŭs,
mŏn-u-ĕ-rā'-tĭs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tī ĕ-rā'-tĭs or fu-e-rā'-tĭs,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rant.	mŏn'-ĭ-tī ĕ'-rant or fu'-ĕ-rant.

Future Perfect.

I shall have advised.	*I shall have been advised.*
S. mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rŏ,	S. mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ or fu'-ĕ-rŏ,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rĭs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs ĕ'-rĭs or fu'-ĕ-rĭs,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rĭt ;	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs ĕ'-rĭt or fu'-ĕ-rĭt ;
P. mŏn-u-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,	P. mŏn'-ĭ-tī ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,
mŏn-u-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tī ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rint.	mŏn'-ĭ-tī ĕ'-runt or fu'-ĕ-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can advise.*	*I may* or *can be advised.*
S. mŏ'-ne-am,	S. mŏ'-ne-ăr,
mŏ'-ne-ās,	mŏ-ne-ā'-rĭs or -rĕ,
mŏ'-ne-ăt ;	mŏ-ne-ā'-tŭr ;
P. mŏ-ne-ā'-mŭs,	P. mŏ-ne-ā'-mŭr,
mŏ-ne-ā'-tĭs,	mŏ-ne-ām'-ĭ-nī,
mŏ'-ne-ant.	mŏ-ne-an'-tŭr.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should advise.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be advised.*
S. mŏ-nē'-rem,	S. mŏ-nē'-rĕr,
mŏ-nē'-rēs,	mŏn-ē-rē'-rĭs or -rĕ,
mŏ-nē'-rĕt ;	mŏn-ē-rē'-tūr ;
P. mŏn-ē-rē'-mŭs,	P. mŏn-ē-rē'-mŭr,
mŏn-ē-rē'-tĭs,	mŏn-ē-rēm'-ĭ-nī,
mŏ-nē'-rent.	mŏn-ē-ren'-tūr.

Perfect.

I may have advised.	*I may have been advised.*
S. mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rim,	S. mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs sim or fu'-ĕ-rim,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rĭs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs sĭs or fu'-ĕ-rĭs,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rĭt ;	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs sĭt or fu'-ĕ-rĭt ;
P. mŏn-u-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,	P. mŏn'-ĭ-tī sī'-mŭs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-mŭs,
mŏn-u-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tī sī'-tĭs or fu-ĕr'-ĭ-tĭs,
mŏ-nu'-ĕ-rint.	mŏn'-ĭ-tī sint or fu'-ĕ-rint.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have advised.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been advised.*
S. mŏn-u-is'-sem,	S. mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,
mŏn-u-is'-sēs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,
mŏn-u-is'-sĕt ;	mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs es'-sĕt or fu-is'-sĕt ;
P. mŏn-u-is-sē'-mŭs,	P. mŏn'-ĭ-tī es-sē'-mŭs or fu-is-sē'-mŭs,
mŏn-u-is-sē'-tĭs,	mŏn'-ĭ-tī es-sē'-tĭs or fu-is-sē'-tĭs,
mŏn-u-is'-sent.	mŏn'-ĭ-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mŏ'-nē, *advise thou;*	Pres. S. mŏ-nē'-rĕ, *be thou advised;*
P. mŏ-nē'-tĕ, *advise ye.*	P. mŏ-nēm'-ĭ-nī, *be ye advised.*
Fut. S. mŏ-nē'-tŏ, *thou shalt advise,*	Fut. S. mŏ-nē'-tŏr, *thou shalt be advised,*
mŏ-nē'-tŏ, *he shall advise;*	mŏ-nē'-tŏr, *he shall be advised ;*
P. mŏn-ē-tō'-tĕ, *ye shall advise,*	P. (mŏn-ē-bim'-ĭ-nī, *ye shall be advised,*)
mŏ-nen'-tŏ, *they shall advise.*	mŏ-nēn'-tŏr, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. mŏ-nē'-rĕ, *to advise.*	Pres. mŏ-nē'-rī, *to be advised.*
Perf. mŏn-u-is'-sĕ, *to have advised.*	Perf. mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs es'-sĕ or fu-is'-sĕ, *to have been advised.*
Fut. mŏn-ĭ-tū'-rŭs es'-sĕ, *to be about to advise.*	Fut. mŏn'-ĭ-tum ī'-rī, *to be about to be advised.*

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mŏ'-nens, *advising.* | *Perf.* mŏn'-ĭ-tŭs, *advised.*
Fut. mŏn-ĭ-tū'-rŭs, *about to advise.* | *Fut.* mŏ-nen'-dŭs, *to be advised.*

GERUND.

G. mŏ-nen'-dĭ, *of advising,*
D. mŏ-nen'-dŏ, *etc.*
Ac. mŏ-nen'-dum,
Ab. mŏ-nen'-dŏ.

SUPINES.

Former. mŏn'-ĭ-tum, *to advise.* | *Latter.* mŏn'-ĭ-tū, *to be advised.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,		From the second root, *monu*, are derived,		From the third root, *monit*, are derived,	
	Active.	*Passive.*		*Active.*	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	moneo,	moneor.	*Ind. perf.*	monui,	monitus sum, etc.
—— *imperf.*	monēbam,	monēbar.	—— *plup.*	monuĕram,	monitus eram, etc.
—— *fut.*	monēbo,	monēbor.	—— *fut. perf.*	monuĕro,	monitus ero, etc.
Subj. pres.	moneam,	monear.	*Subj. perf.*	monuĕrim,	monitus sim, etc.
—— *imperf.*	monērem,	monērer.	—— *plup.*	monuissem,	monitus essem, etc.
Imperat. pres.	mone,	monēre.	*Inf. perf.*	monuisse,	monitus esse, etc.
—— *fut.*	monēto,	monētor.		From the third root,	
Inf. pres.	monēre,	monēri.	*Inf. fut.*	monitūrus esse,	monitum iri.
Part. pres.	monens,		*Part. fut.*	monitūrus,	
—— *fut.*		monendus.	—— *perf.*		monitus.
Gerund.	monendi.		*Form. Sup.* monitum.	*Lat. Sup.* monitu.	

§ **158.**   THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. rĕ'-gŏ. | *Pres. Ind.* rĕ'-gŏr.
Pres. Inf. rĕg-ĕ-rĕ. | *Pres. Inf.* rĕ'-gī.
Perf. Ind. rex'-ī. | *Perf. Part.* rec'-tŭs.
Supine. rec'-tum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I rule.   *I am ruled.*

Sing. rĕ'-gŏ,   *Sing.* rĕ'-gŏr,
        rĕ'-gĭs,   rĕg-ĕ-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
        rĕ'-gĭt;   rĕg'-ĭ-tŭr;
Plur. rĕg'-ĭ-mŭs,   *Plur.* rĕg'-ĭ-mŭr,
        rĕg'-ĭ-tĭs,   rĕ-gĭm'-ĭ-nī,
        rĕ'-gunt.   rĕ-gun'-tŭr.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.	*I was ruled.*
S. rĕ-gē′-bam,	S. rĕ-gē′-băr,
rĕ-gē′-bās,	rĕg-ē-bā′-rĭs or -rĕ,
rĕ-gē′-bāt;	rĕg-ē-bā′-tŭr ;
P. rĕg-ē-bā′-mŭs,	P. rĕg-ē-bā′-mŭr,
rĕg-ē-bā′-tĭs,	rŭg-ē-bām′-ĭ-nī,
rĕ-gē′-bant.	rĕg-ē-ban′-tŭr.

Future.

I shall or will rule.	*I shall or will be ruled.*
S. rĕ′-gam,	S. rĕ′-găr,
rĕ′-gēs,	rĕ-gē′-rĭs or -rĕ,
rĕ′-gĕt;	rĕ-gē′-tŭr ;
P. rĕ-gē′-mŭs,	P. rĕ-gē′-mŭr,
rĕ-gē′-tĭs,	rĕ-gēm′-ĭ-nī,
rĕ′-gent.	rĕ-gen′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I ruled or have ruled.	*I was or have been ruled.*
S. rex′-ī,	S. rec′-tŭs sum or fu′-ī,
rex-is′-tī,	rec′-tŭs ĕs or fu-is′-tī,
rex′-ĭt;	rec′-tŭs est or fu′-ĭt;
P. rex′-ĭ-mŭs,	P. rec′-tī sŭ′-mŭs or fu′-ĭ-mŭs,
rex-is′-tĭs,	rec′-tī es′-tĭs or fu-is′-tĭs,
rex-ē′-runt or -rĕ.	rec′-tī sunt, fu-ē′-runt or -rĕ.

Pluperfect.

I had ruled.	*I had been ruled.*
S. rex′-ĕ-ram,	S. rec′-tŭs ĕ′-ram or fu′-ĕ-ram,
rex′-ĕ-rās,	rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rās or fu′-ĕ-rās,
rex′-ĕ-rāt;	rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rāt or fu′-ĕ-rāt ;
P. rex-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,	P. rec′-tī ĕ-rā′-mŭs or fu-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,
rex-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,	rec′-tī ĕ-rā′-tĭs or fu-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,
rex′-ĕ-rant.	rec′-tī ĕ′-rant or fu′-ĕ-rant.

Future Perfect.

I shall have ruled.	*I shall have been ruled.*
S. rex′-ĕ-rŏ,	S. rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rŏ or fu′-ĕ-rŏ,
rex′-ĕ-rĭs,	rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭs or fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
rex′-ĕ-rĭt ;	rec′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭt or fu′ ĕ-rĭt;
P. rex-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,	P. rec′-tī ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
rex-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,	rec′-tī ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
rex′-ĕ-rint.	rec′-tī ĕ′-runt or fu′-ĕ-rint.

<div style="text-align:center">

ACTIVE.　　　　　　　　PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

</div>

I may or can rule.	*I may or can be ruled.*
S. rĕ′-gam,	S. rĕ′-găr,
rĕ′-gās,	rĕ-gā′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
rĕ′-găt;	rĕ-gā′-tŭr;
P. rĕ-gā′-mŭs,	P. rĕ-gā′-mŭr,
rĕ-gā′-tĭs,	rĕ-gām′-ĭ-nĭ,
rĕ′-gant.	rĕ-gan′-tŭr.

<div style="text-align:center">

Imperfect.

</div>

I might, could, would, or should rule.	*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*
S. rĕg′-ĕ-rem,	S. rĕg′-ĕ-rĕr,
rĕg′-ĕ-rēs,	rĕg-ĕ-rē′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
rĕg′-ĕ-rĕt;	rĕg-ĕ-rē′-tŭr;
P. rĕg-ĕ-rē′-mŭs,	P. rĕg-ĕ-rē′-mŭr,
rĕg-ĕ-rē′-tĭs,	rĕg-ĕ-rēm′-ĭ-nĭ,
rĕg′-ĕ-rent.	rĕg-ĕ-ren′-tŭr.

<div style="text-align:center">

Perfect.

</div>

I may have ruled.	*I may have been ruled.*
S. rex′-ĕ-rim,	S. rec′-tŭs sim *or* fu′-ĕ-rim,
rex′-ĕ-rĭs,	rec′-tŭs sis *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
rex′-ĕ-rĭt;	rec′-tŭs sit *or* fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. rex-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,	P. rec′-ti si′-mŭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
rex-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,	rec′-ti si′-tĭs *or* fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
rex′-ĕ-rint.	rec′-ti sint *or* fu′-ĕ-rint.

<div style="text-align:center">

Pluperfect.

</div>

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.	*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*
S. rex-is′-sem,	S. rec′-tŭs es′-sem *or* fu-is′-sem,
rex-is′-sēs,	rec′-tŭs es′-sēs *or* fu-is′-sēs,
rex-is′-sĕt;	rec′-tŭs es′-sĕt *or* fu-is′-sĕt;
P. rex-is-sē′-mŭs,	P. rec′-ti es-sē′-mŭs *or* fu-is-sē′-mŭs,
rex-is-sē′-tĭs,	rec′-ti es-sē′-tĭs *or* fu-is-sē′-tĭs,
rex-is′-sent.	rec′-ti es′-sent *or* fu-is′-sent.

<div style="text-align:center">

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

</div>

Pres. S. rĕ′-gĕ, *rule thou,*	*Pres.* S. rĕg′-ĕ-rĕ, *be thou ruled;*
P. rĕg′-ĭ-tĕ, *rule ye.*	P. rĕ-gĭm′-ĭ-nĭ, *be ye ruled.*
Fut. S. rĕg′-ĭ-tŏ, *thou shalt rule,*	*Fut.* S. rĕg′-ĭ-tŏr, *thou shalt be ruled,*
rĕg′-ĭ-tŏ, *he shall rule ;*	rĕg′-ĭ-tŏr, *he shall be ruled;*
P. rĕg-ĭ-tŏ′-tĕ, *ye shall rule,*	P. (rĕ-gĭm′-ĭ-nĭ, *ye shall,* etc.)
rĕ-gun′-tŏ, *they shall rule.*	rĕ-gun′-tŏr, *they shall,* etc.

<div style="text-align:center">

10*

</div>

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. rĕg′-ĕ-rĕ, *to rule.*	*Pres.* rĕ′-gī, *to be ruled.*
Perf. rex-is′-sĕ, *to have ruled.*	*Perf.* rec′-tŭs es′-sĕ *or* fu-is′-sĕ, *to have been ruled.*
Fut. ᷓec-tū′-rŭs es′-se, *to be about to rule.*	*Fut.* rec′-tum ĭ′-rī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. rĕ′-gens, *ruling.*	*Perf.* rec′-tŭs, *ruled.*
Fut. rec-tū′-rŭs, *about to rule.*	*Fut.* rĕ-gen′-dŭs, *to be ruled.*

GERUND.

G. rĕ-gen′-dī, *of ruling.*
D. rĕ-gen′-dŏ, etc.
Ac. rĕ-gen′-dum,
Ab. rĕ-gen′-dŏ.

SUPINES.

Former. rec′-tum, *to rule.* | *Latter.* rec′-tū, *to be ruled.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,			From the second root, *rex*, are derived,		From the third root, *rect*. are derived,
	Active.	*Passive.*		*Active.*	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	rego,	regor.	*Ind. perf.*	rexi,	rectus sum, etc.
—— *imperf.*	regebam,	regebar.	—— *plup.*	rexĕram,	rectus eram, etc.
—— *fut.*	regam,	regar.	—— *fut. perf.*	rexĕro,	rectus ero, etc.
Subj. pres.	regam,	regar.	*Subj. perf.*	rexĕrim,	rectus sim, etc.
—— *imperf.*	regĕrem,	regĕrer.	—— *plup.*	rexissem,	rectus essem, etc.
Imperat. pres.	rege,	regĕre.	*Inf. perf.*	rexisse.	rectus esse, etc.
—— *fut.*	regito,	regitor.	From the third root,		
Inf. pres.	regĕre,	regi.	*Inf. fut.*	rectūrus esse,	rectum iri.
Part. pres.	regens,		*Part. fut.*	rectūrus.	
—— *fut.*		regendus.	—— *perf.*		rectus.
Gerund.	regendi.		*Form. Sup.* rectum.		*Lat. Sup.* rectu.

§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia, ie, io,* or *iu,* wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *căpio.*

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. că'-pĭ-ŏ, *to take.*	*Pres. Ind.* că'-pĭ-ŏr, *to be taken.*
Pres. Inf. căp'-ĕ-rĕ.	*Pres. Inf.* că'-pī.
Perf. Ind. cē'-pī.	*Perf. Part.* cap'-tŭs.
Supine. cap'-tum.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. că'-pĭ-ŏ,	*S.* că'-pĭ-ŏr,
că'-pĭs,	căp'-ĕ-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
că'-pĭt ;	căp'-ĭ-tŭr ;
P. căp'-ĭ-mŭs,	*P.* căp'-ĭ-mŭr,
căp'-ĭ-tĭs,	că-pĭm'-ĭ-nī,
că'-pĭ-unt.	că-pĭ-un'-tŭr.

Imperfect.

S. că-pĭ-ē'-bam,	*S.* că-pĭ-ē'-băr,
că-pĭ-ē'-băs,	că-pĭ-ē-bā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
că-pĭ-ē'-băt ;	că-pĭ-ē-bā'-tŭr ;
P. că-pĭ-ē-bā'-mŭs,	*P.* că-pĭ-ē-bā'-mŭr,
că-pĭ-ē-bā'-tĭs,	că-pĭ-ē-bām'-ĭ-nī,
că-pĭ-ē'-bant.	că-pĭ-ē-ban'-tŭr.

Future.

S. că'-pĭ-am,	*S.* că'-pĭ-ăr,
că'-pĭ-ēs,	că-pĭ-ē'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
că'-pĭ-ĕt ;	că-pĭ-ē'-tŭr ;
P. că-pĭ-ē'-mŭs,	*P.* că-pĭ-ē'-mŭr,
că-pĭ-ē'-tĭs,	că-pĭ-ēm'-ĭ-nī,
că'-pĭ-ent.	că-pĭ-en'-tŭr.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

Perf.	cē'-pī.	*Perf.*	cap'-tŭs sum *or* fu'-ī.
Plup.	cēp'-ĕ-ram.	*Plup.*	cap'-tŭs ĕ'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram.
Fut. perf.	cēp'-ĕ-rŏ.	*Fut. perf.*	cap'-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ *or* fu'-ĕ-rŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

S. că'-pĭ-am,	*S.* că'-pĭ-ăr,
că'-pĭ-ās,	că-pĭ-ā'-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
că'-pĭ-ăt ;	că-pĭ-ā'-tŭr ;
P. că-pĭ-ā'-mŭs,	*P.* că-pĭ-ā'-mŭr,
că-pĭ-ā'-tĭs,	că-pĭ-ām'-ĭ-nī,
că'-pĭ-ant.	că-pĭ-an'-tŭr.

ACTIVE.　　　　　　　　　PASSIVE.

Imperfect.

S. căp′-ĕ-rem, căp′-ĕ-rēs, căp′-ĕ-rĕt; P. căp-ĕ-rē′-mŭs, căp-ĕ-rē′-tĭs, căp′-ĕ-rent.	S. căp′-ĕ-rēr, căp-ĕ-rē′-rĭs or -rē, căp-ĕ-rē′-tŭr; P. căp-ĕ-rē′-mŭr, căp-ĕ-rēm′-ĭ-nĭ, căp-ĕ-ren′-tŭr.

Perf. cēp′-ĕ-rĭm.	*Perf.* cap′-tŭs sim or fu′-ĕ-rĭm.
Plup. cē-pis′-sem.	*Plup.* cap′-tŭs es′-sem or fu-is′-sem.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. 2. S. că′-pĕ;	P. 2. căp′-ĭ-tĕ.	S. căp′-ĕ-rĕ;	P. că-pĭm′-ĭ-nĭ.
Fut. 2. căp′-ĭ-tŏ,	căp-ĭ-tō-tĕ,	căp′-ĭ-tŏr,	(că-pĭ-ēm′-ĭ-nĭ,)
—— 3. căp′-ĭ-tŏ;	că-pĭ-un′-tŏ.	căp′-ĭ-tŏr;	că-pĭ-un′-tŏr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. căp′-ĕ-rĕ.	*Pres.* că′-pĭ.
Perf. cē-pis′-sĕ.	*Perf.* cap′-tŭs es′-sĕ or fu-is′-sĕ.
Fut. cap-tū′-rŭs es′-sĕ.	*Fut.* cap′-tum ī′-rĭ.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. că′-pĭ-ens.	*Perf.* cap′-tŭs.
Fut. cap-tū′-rŭs.	*Fut.* că-pĭ-en′-dŭs.

GERUND.

G. că-pĭ-en′-dĭ, etc.

SUPINES.

Former. cap′-tum. | *Latter.* cap′-tū.

§ 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. au′-dĭ-ŏ.	*Pres. Ind.* au′-dĭ-ŏr.
Pres. Inf. au-dī′-rĕ.	*Pres. Inf.* au-dī′-rī.
Perf. Ind. au-dī′-vī.	*Perf. Part.* au-dī′-tŭs.
Supine. au-dī′-tum.	

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I hear.   *I am heard.*
S. au′-di-ŏ,   S. au′-di-ŏr,
   au′-dīs,   au-di′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
   au′dit;   au-di′-tŭr;
P. au-di′-mŭs,   P. au-di′-mŭr,
   au′-di′-tĭs,   au-dīm′-ĭ-nī,
   au′-di-unt.   au-di-un′-tŭr.

Imperfect.

I was hearing.   *I was heard.*
S. au-di-ē′-bȧm,   S. au-di-ē′-bȧr,
   au-di-ē′-bās,   au-di-ē-bā′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
   au-di-ē′-bȧt;   au-di-ē-bā′-tŭr;
P. au-di-ē-bā′-mŭs,   P. au-di-ē-bā′-mŭr,
   au-di-ē-bā′-tĭs,   au-di-ē-bām′-ĭ-nī,
   au-di-ē′-bant.   au-di-ē-ban′-tŭr.

Future.

I shall or will hear.   *I shall or will be heard.*
S. au′-di-am,   S. au′-di-ȧr,
   au′-di-ēs,   au-di-ē′-rĭs *or* -rĕ,
   au′-di-ĕt;   au-di-ē′-tŭr;
P. au-di-ē′-mŭs,   P. au-di-ē′-mŭr,
   au-di-ē′-tĭs,   au-di-ēm′-ĭ-nī,
   au′-di-ent.   au-di-en′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I heard or have heard.   *I have been or was heard.*
S. au-di′-vi,   S. au-di′-tŭs sum *or* fu′-ī,
   au-di-vis′-tī,   au-di′-tŭs ĕs *or* fu-is′-tī,
   au-di′-vĭt;   au-di′-tŭs est *or* fu′-ĭt;
P. au-di′-ī-mŭs,   P. au-di′-ti sŭ′-mŭs *or* fu-ī-mŭs,
   au-di-vis′-tĭs,   au-di′-ti es′-tĭs *or* fu-is′-tĭs.
   au-di-vē′-runt *or* -rĕ.   au-di′-ti sunt, fu-ē′-runt *or* -rĕ.

Pluperfect.

I had heard.   *I had been heard.*
S. au-dīv′-ĕ-ram,   S. au-di′-tŭs ĕ′-ram *or* fu′-ĕ-ram,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rās,   au-di′-tŭs ĕ′-rās *or* fu′-ĕ-rās,
   au-dīv′-ĕ-rȧt;   au-di′-tŭs ĕ′-rȧt *or* fu′-ĕ-rȧt;
P. au-dīv-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,   P. au-di′-ti ĕ-rā′-mŭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā′-mŭs,
   au-dīv-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,   au-di′-ti ĕ-rā′-tĭs *or* fu-ĕ-rā′-tĭs,
   au-dīv-ĕ-rant.   au-di′-ti ĕ′-rant *or* fu-ĕ-rant.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

Future Perfect.

I shall have heard.	*I shall have been heard.*
S. au-dĭv′-ĕ-rŏ,	S. au-dĭ′-tŭs ĕ′-rŏ or fu′-ĕ-rŏ,
au-dĭv′-ĕ-rĭs,	au-dĭ′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭs or fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
au-dĭv′-ĕ-rĭt;	au-dĭ′-tŭs ĕ′-rĭt or fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. au-dĭ-vĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,	P. au-dĭ′-tĭ ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
au-dĭv′-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,	au-dĭ′-tĭ ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
au-dĭv′-ĕ-rĭnt.	au-dĭ′-tĭ ĕ′-runt or fu′-ĕ-rĭnt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may or *can hear.*	*I may* or *can be heard.*
S. au′-di-am,	S. au′-di-ăr,
au′-di-ās,	au-dĭ-ā′-rĭs or -rĕ,
au′-di-ăt;	au-dĭ-ā′-tŭr;
P. au-di-ā′-mŭs,	P. au-dĭ-ā′-mŭr,
au-di-ā′-tĭs,	au-dĭ-ām′-ĭ-nĭ,
au′-di-ant.	au-di-an′-tŭr.

Imperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should hear.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should be heard.*
S. au-dī′-rem,	S. au-dī′-rĕr,
au-dī′-rēs,	au-dĭ-rē′-rĭs or -rē,
au-dī′-rĕt;	au-dĭ-rē′-tŭr;
P. au-dĭ-rē′-mŭs,	P. au-dĭ-rē′-mŭr,
au-dĭ-rē′-tĭs,	au-dĭ-rēm′-ĭ-nĭ,
au-dī′-rent.	au-dĭ-ren′-tŭr.

Perfect.

I may have heard.	*I may have been heard.*
S. au-dĭv′-ĕ-rim,	S. au-dĭ′-tŭs sim or fu′-ĕ-rim,
au-dĭv′-ĕ-rĭs,	au-dĭ′-tŭs sĭs or fu′-ĕ-rĭs,
au-dĭv′-ĕ-rĭt;	au-dĭ′-tŭs sĭt or fu′-ĕ-rĭt;
P. au-dĭ-vĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,	P. au-dĭ′-tĭ sĭ′-mŭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-mŭs,
au-dĭ-vĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,	au-dĭ′-tĭ sĭ′-tĭs or fu-ĕr′-ĭ-tĭs,
au-dĭv′-ĕ-rĭnt.	au-dĭ′-tĭ sint or fu′-ĕ-rĭnt.

Pluperfect.

I might, could, would, or *should have heard.*	*I might, could, would,* or *should have been heard.*
S. au-dĭ-vis′-sem,	S. au-dĭ′-tŭs ĕs′-sem or fu-ĭs′-sem,
au-dĭ-vis′-sēs,	au-dĭ′-tŭs ĕs′-sēs or fu-ĭs′-sēs,
au-dĭ-vis′-sĕt;	au-dĭ′-tŭs ĕs′-sĕt or fu-ĭs′-sĕt;
P. au-dĭ-vis-sē′-mŭs,	P. au-dĭ′-tĭ es-sē′-mŭs or fu-ĭs-sē′-mŭs,
au-dĭ-vis-sē′-tĭs,	au-dĭ′-tĭ es-sē′-tĭs or fu-ĭs-sē′-tĭs,
au-dĭ-vis′-sent.	au-dĭ′-tĭ es′-sent or fu-ĭs′-sent.

ACTIVE. PASSIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. au'-dĭ, *hear thou;* *P.* au-dī'-tĕ, *hear ye.* *Fut. S.* au-dī'-tŏ, *thou shalt hear,* au-dī'-tŏ, *he shall hear;* *P.* au-di-tō'-tĕ, *ye shall hear,* au-di-un'-tŏ, *they shall* *hear.*	*Pres. S.* au-dī'-rĕ, *be thou heard;* *P.* au-dīm'-ĭ-nī, *be ye heard.* *Fut. S.* au-dī'-tŏr, *thou shalt be* *heard,* au-dī'-tŏr, *he shall be* *heard;* *P.* (au-di-ēm'-ĭ-nī, *ye shall* *be heard,*) au-di-un'-tŏr, *they shall* *be heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. au-dī'-rĕ, *to hear.* *Perf.* au-di-vis'-sĕ, *to have heard.* *Fut.* au-di-tū'-rŭs es-sĕ, *to be* *about to hear.*	*Pres.* au-dī'-rī, *to be heard.* *Perf.* au-dī'-tŭs es-sĕ *or* fu-is'- sĕ, *to have been heard.* *Fut.* au-dī'-tum ĭ'-rī, *to be about* *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. au'-di-ēns, *hearing.* *Fut.* au-di-tū'-rŭs, *about to hear.*	*Perf.* au-dī'-tŭs, *heard.* *Fut.* au-di-en'-dŭs, *to be heard.*

GERUND.

G. au-di-en'-dī, *of hearing.*
D. au-di-en'-dŏ, *etc.*
Ac. au-di-en'-dum,
Ab. au-di-en'-dŏ.

SUPINES.

Former. au-dī'-tum, *to hear.* | *Latter.* au-dī'-tū, *to be heard.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud,* are derived		From the second root, *audiv,* are derived,	From the third root, *audit,* are derived,
	Active. *Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*
Ind. pres.	audio, audior.	*Ind. perf.* audivi,	auditus sum, etc.
—— *imperf.*	audiebam, audiebar.	—— *plup.* audiveram,	auditus eram, etc.
—— *fut.*	audiam, audiar.	—— *fut. perf.* audivero,	auditus ero, etc.
Subj. pres.	audiam, audiar.	*Subj. perf.* audiverim,	auditus sim, etc.
—— *imperf.*	audirem, audirer.	—— *plup.* audivissem,	auditus essem, etc.
Imperat. pres.	audi, audire.	*Inf. perf.* audivisse,	auditus esse, etc.
—— *fut.*	audito, auditor.	From the third root,	
Inf. pres.	audire, audiri.	*Inf. fut.* auditurus esse, auditum iri.	
Part. pres.	audiens,	*Part. fut.* auditurus.	
—— *fut.*	audiendus.	—— *perf.*	auditus.
Gerund.	audiendi.	*Form. sup.* auditum.	*Lat. sup.* auditu.

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ **161.** Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 3.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mĭ'-rŏr, mĭ-rā'-rī, mĭ-rā'-tŭs, *to admire.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mĭ'-rŏr, mĭ-rā'-rĭs, etc.	*I admire, etc.*
Imperf.	mĭ-rā'-bär, etc.	*I was admiring.*
Fut.	mĭ-rā'-bŏr,	*I shall admire.*
Perf.	mĭ-rā'-tŭs sum *or* fu'-ī,	*I have admired.*
Plup.	mĭ-rā'-tŭs ĕ'-ram *or* fu'-ĕ-ram,	*I had admired.*
Fut. Perf.	mĭ-rā'-tŭs ĕ'-ro *or* fu'-ĕ-ro,	*I shall have admired.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mĭ'-rĕr, mĭ-rē'-rĭs, etc.	*I may admire, etc.*
Imperf.	mĭ-rā'-rĕr,	*I would admire.*
Perf.	mĭ-rā'-tŭs sim *or* fu'-ĕ-rim,	*I may have admired.*
Plup.	mĭ-rā'-tŭs es'-sem *or* fu-is'-sem,	*I would have admired.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mĭ-rā'-rĕ, *admire thou ;*	*P.* mĭ-räm'-ĭ-nī, *admire ye.*
Fut. S. mĭ-rā'-tŏr, *thou shalt admire,*	*P.* (mĭr-ä-bĭm'-ĭ-nī, *ye shall,* etc.)
mĭ-rā'-tŏr, *he shall admire ;*	mĭ-ran'-tŏr, *they shall,* etc.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	mĭ-rā'-rī,	*to admire.*
Perf.	mĭ-rā'-tŭs es'-sĕ *or* fu-is'-sĕ,	*to have admired.*
Fut. Act.	mĭr-ä-tū'-rŭs es'-sĕ,	*to be about to admire.*
Fut. Pass.	mĭ-rā'-tum ĭ'-rī,	*to be about to be admired.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	mĭ'-rans,	*admiring.*
Perf.	mĭ-rā'-tŭs,	*having admired.*
Fut. Act.	mĭr-ä-tū'-rŭs,	*about to admire.*
Fut. Pass.	mĭ-ran'-dŭs,	*to be admired.*

GERUND.

G. mĭ-ran'-dī, *of admiring,* etc.

SUPINES.

Former. mĭ-rā'-tum, *to admire.* | *Latter.* mĭ-rā'-tū, *to be admired.*

REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im*, *is*, *it*, etc.; as, *ĕdim*, *ĕdis*, *ĕdit*, *edimus*; *comĕdim*, *comĕdis*, *comĕdint*; for *edam*, etc. *comĕdam*, etc.; *duim*, *duis*, *duit*, *duint*; and *perduim*, *perduis*, *perduint*; for *dem*, etc. *perdam*, etc. from old forms *duo* and *perduo*, for *do* and *perdo*: so *creduis*, *creduit*, and also *creduam*, *creduas*, *creduat*, for *credam*, etc. from the old form *creduo*, for *credo*. The form in *im*, etc. was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ĭbam* and *ĭbar*, for *iēbam* and *iēbar*, and the future in *ĭbo* and *ĭbor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestibat*, Virg., *largĭbar*, Propert., for *restiēbat*, *largiēbar*; *scibo*, *opperibor*, for *sciam*, *opperiar*. *Ibam* and *ibo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo*, *queo*, and *nequeo*. Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *făcio*, and *fĕro*, are usually written *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *făcio* which change *a* into *i*; as, *effĭce*, *confĭce*; but *calfăce* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dice*, *edice*, *addice*, *indice*, *dŭce*, *abdŭce*, *redŭce*, *tradŭce*, and *făce*. *Inger* for *ingĕre* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci*, but its place is supplied by *scito*, and *scitōte* is preferred to *scite*.

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto*, *amplexāto*, *utito*, *nitito*; for *arbitrātor*, etc.; and *censento*, *utunto*, *tuento*, etc. for *censentor*, etc.—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mino*; as, *hortamino*, *veremino*, *fruimĭno*; for *hortātor*, etc.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amariĕr* for *amāri*, *dicier* for *dici*.

Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.

7. (*a.*) When the second root ends in *v*, a syncopation and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amasti* for *amavisti*, *implērunt* for *implevērunt*, *nōram* and *nosse* for *novēram* and *novisse*.

(*b.*) When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audiĕro* for *audivĕro*; *audiisse* for *audivisse*.

(*c.*) When this root ends in *s* or *x*, especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is*, *iss*, and *sis*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evasisti*, *extinxti* for *extinxisti*, *divisse* for *divisisse*; *extinxem* for *extinxissem*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse*; *accestis* for *accessistis*, *justi* for *jussisti*; *dixti* for *dixisti*. So *faxem* for (*faxissem*, i. e.) *fecissem*.

(*d.*) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *fŭmāt*, *audit*, *cŭpit*; for *fumāvit*, *audivit*, *cupivit*. So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *sepĕli*, *enarrāmus*; for *sepelivi*, *enarrāvimus*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *ēre* is less common than that in *ērunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so,* a perfect and pluperfect subjunctive in *sim* and *sem,* and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepso, emissim, ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi,* from *audeo, confexim* and *promissem: divisse* and *promisse.* But when the root ends in *x,* and frequently when it ends in *s,* only *o, im, em,* and *e,* etc. are added; as, *jusso, dixis ; intellexes, percepset ; surrexe, sumse. V,* at the end of the root, in the first conjugation, is changed into *s ;* as, *levasso, locassim. U,* at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es ;* as, *habesso, licessit.* Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capso, faxo (facso), faxim (facsim).*

NOTE. *Faxo* expresses determination, ʻ I will,' or, ʻ I am resolved, to make, cause,' etc. The subjunctive *faxit,* etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *dii immortāles faxint. Ausim,* etc. express doubt or hesitation, ʻI might venture,' etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quæso uti tu calamitātes prohibessis, defendas, averruncesque.* Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassitur, jussitur,* instead of *turbātum fuĕrit,* and *jussus fuĕrit.*—A future infinitive active in *sĕre* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *v* into *s ;* as, *expugnassĕre, impetrassĕre,* for *expugnatūram esse,* etc.

Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.

11. The supine in *um,* though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amātus, -a, -um, est ; amāti, -æ, -a, sunt,* etc.

(1.) *Fui, fuĕram, fuĕrim, fuissem,* and *fuisse,* are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum,* etc., in those of other verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *fŏrem,* etc., for *essem,* etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22,) if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistŏla scripta est,* when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter *has been* written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is, the letter *is* written, and *epistŏla scripta fuit,* in this case, would signify, the letter *has been* written, or, *has existed* as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amātus, -a, -um, esse* or *fuisse ; amātum, -am, -um, esse* or *fuisse ; amāti, -æ, -a, esse* or *fuisse ; amātos, -as, -a, esse* or *fuisse ;* and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisse, amātus,* etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable ; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias.* Cic. *Ad me, mea Terentia, scribis,* to *vicum* venditurum. Id.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point* of doing something. This form of the verb is called the <u>*active periphrastic conjugation.*</u>

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	amatūrus sum,	*I am about to love.*
Imperf.	amatūrus eram,	*I was about to love.*
Fut.	amatūrus ero,	*I shall be about to love.*
Perf.	amatūrus fui,	*I was or have been about to love.*
Plup.	amatūrus fuĕram,	*I had been about to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	amatūrus sim,	*I may be about to love.*
Imperf.	amatūrus essem,	*I would be about to love.*
Perf.	amatūrus fuĕrim,	*I may have been about to love.*
Plup.	amatūrus fuissem,	*I would have been about to love.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	amatūrus esse,	*to be about to love.*
Perf.	amatūrus fuisse,	*to have been about to love.*

REM. 2. *Fuĕro* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus*.

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo.* The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution; as, *in eo est,* or *futūrum est, ut epistŏla scribātur,* a letter is about to be written. So *in eo erat,* etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum,* I must be loved, *or* deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a <u>*passive*</u> periphrastic conjugation;—thus:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	amandus sum,	*Pres.*	amandus sim,
Imperf.	amandus ĕram,	*Imperf.*	amandus essem,
Fut.	amandus ĕro,	*Perf.*	amandus fuĕrim,
Perf.	amandus fui,	*Plup.*	amandus fuissem,
Plup.	amandus fuĕram,		
Fut. Perf.	amandus fuĕro.		

	INFINITIVE.	
	Pres.	amandus esse,
	Perf.	amandus fuisse.

Rem. 5. The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person; as, *mihi scribendum est*, I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*cœnātus*, having supped; *pōtus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *adultus*, *coalitus*, *conspirātus*, *interitus*, *occāsus*, *obsolītus*, and *crētus*.

For the active meaning of *ōsus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. (*a.*) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense ; as, *adeptus libertātem*, having obtained liberty, *or adeptā libertāte*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (*b.*)

So also *abominātus*, *comitātus*, *commentātus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestātus*, *detestātus*, *dignātus*, *dimensus*, *effātus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecrātus*, *interprētātus*, *largītus*, *machinātus*, *meditātus*, *mercātus*, *metātus*, *oblitus*, *opinātus*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *partītus*, *perfunctus*, *periclitātus*, *pollicītus*, *populātus*, *depopulātus*, *stipulātus*, *testātus*, *ultus*, *venerātus*.

(*b.*) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavisus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futūrus*. *Ventūrōrum* is found in Ovid, *exitūrārum*, *transitūrārum* and *peritūrōrum* in Seneca, and *moritūrōrum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum*, *audiundum*, *scribundus*. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition ; they thus become adjectives; as, *insciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. They sometimes also become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander; *ausum*, an attempt; *commissum*, an offence.

Note. Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus*, *ītus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turritus*, turreted, etc. See § 128, 7.

General Rules of Conjugation.

§ **163.** 1. Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, even when it is changed in the second; as, *facio*, *factum* ; *hăbeo*, *habĭtum*.

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ĕ*; as, *curro, cŭcurri; fallo, fĕfelli.* This prefix is called a *reduplication.*

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *sto* lose *s* in the second syllable, making *spŏpondi* and *stĕti.* For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, R. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, Exc. 1,(*b.*)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio, audīvi, audītum; exaudio, exaudīvi, exaudītum.*

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

EXC. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do, sto, disco, posco,* and some of those of *curro,* retain it.

EXC. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando, scandi, scansum; descendo, descendi, descensum.*

EXC. 3. (*a.*) When *a, æ,* or *e,* in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i,* (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *hăbeo, hăbui, hăbitum; prohĭbeo, prohĭbui, prohĭbĭtum.*

(*b.*) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i,* and the third root has *e;* as, *făcio, fēci, factum; confĭcio, confĭci, confectum; tĕneo, tĕnui, tentum; retĭneo, retĭnui, retentum; răpio, răpui, raptum; abrĭpio, abrĭpui, abreptum.*

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cădo, ăgo, frango, pango,* and *tango,* retain *a* in the third root. See § 172.

EXC. 4. The compounds of *părio,* (*ĕre,*) and some of the compounds of *do* and *cŭbo,* are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do, cŭbo* and *părio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ **164.** In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv,* and the third in *āt;* as, amo, amāvi, amātum.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.

11*

NOTE. In this and subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked * are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash (—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r.*, *d.*, *m.*, and *u*. *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participle in *dus*; but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*. Cf. § 142, 4, (*b.*)

*Abundo, r. *to overflow.*
Accūso, m. r. d. *to accuse.*
†Adumbro, *to delineate.*
Ædifĭco, r. d. *to build.*
Æquo, r. d. *to level.*
Æstĭmo, r. d. *to value.*
*Ambŭlo, m. d. *to walk.*
Amo, r. d. *to love.*
†Amplio, d. *to enlarge.*
Appello, d. *to call.*
Apto, d. *to fit.*
Aro, r. d. *to plough.*
*†Auscŭlto, d. *to listen.*
*†Autŭmo, *to assert.*
†Bāsio, —, d. *to kiss.*
*Bello, m. r. d. *to wage war.*
†Beo, *to bless.*
*Boo, *to bellow.*
†Brevĭo, *to shorten.*
†Cæco, *to blind.*
†Cælo, *to carve.*
†Calceo, d. *to shoe.*
*†Calcĭtro, *to kick.*
Canto, m. *to sing.*
Capto, m. r. d. *to seize.*
†Castīgo, m. d. *to chastise.*
Celĕbro, d. *to celebrate.*
Cēlo, d. *to conceal.*
Cesso, d. *to cease.*
Certo, r. d. *to strive.*
Clāmo, *to shout.*
Cogĭto, d. *to think.*
Concilio, r. d. *to conciliate.*
Consĭdĕro, r. d. *to consider.*
Crĕmo, d. *to burn.*—concrĕmo, r.
Creo, r. d. *to create.*
Crucio, d. *to torment.*
Culpo, r. d. *to blame.*
†Cŭneo, d. *to wedge in.*
Cūro, r. d. *to care for.*
Damno, m. r. d. *to condemn.*
Decōro, d. *to adorn.*
*†Delĭneo, d. *to delineate.*
Desĭdĕro, r. d. *to desire.*

Destĭno, d. *to design.*
Dĭco, m. r. d. *to dedicate.*
Dicto, d. *to dictate.*
†Dōlo, r. d. *to hew.*
Dōno, r. d. *to bestow.*
Duplĭco, r. d. *to double.*
Dūro, r. d. *to harden.*
†Effĭgio, d. *to portray.*
†Enucleo, *to explain.*
Equĭto, *to ride.*
Erro, *to wander.*
Existĭmo, u. r. d. *to think.*
Explōro, m. d. *to search.*
Exsŭlo, m. r. *to be banished.*
Fabrĭco, d. *to frame.*
†Fatīgo, r. d. *to weary.*
Festīno, r. *to hasten.*
Firmo, r. d. *to strengthen.*
Flagĭto, m. d. *to demand.*
*Flagro, r. *to be on fire.*—conflagro, r.—deflagro.
Flo, d. *to blow.*
Formo, r. d. *to form.*
Fōro, d. *to bore.*
†Fraudo, d. *to defraud.*
†Frēno, m. d. *to bridle.*
†Frio, —, d. *to crumble.*
Fūgo, r. d. *to put to flight.*
†Fundo, r. *to found.*
†Fūrio, —, *to madden.*
†Gāleo, —, *to put on a helmet.*
Gesto, d. *to bear.*
Glācio, —, *to congeal.*
Grăvo, d. *to weigh down.*
Gusto, d. *to taste.*
Habĭto, m. d. *to dwell.*
*Hālo, —, *to breathe.*
Hiĕmo, m. *to winter.*
*Hio, d. *to gape.*
†Hūmo, r. d. *to bury.*
Ignōro, r. d. *to be ignorant of.*
Impĕro, r. d. *to command.*
†Impĕtro, r. d. *to obtain.*
Inchoo, r. *to begin.*
Indĭgo, r. d. *to trace out.*

Indĭco, m. r. d. *to show.*
†Inēbrio,—, *to inebriate.*
Initio, *to initiate.*
Inquīno, *to pollute.*
Instauro, d. *to renew.*
Intro, r. d. *to enter.*
Invīto, d. *to invite.*
Irrīto, r. d. *to irritate.*
Itĕro, u. d. *to do again.*
Jacto, r. d. *to throw.*
Judĭco, r. d. *to judge.*
Jŭgo, d. *to couple.*
Jŭgŭlo, m. d. *to butcher.*
Jūro, r. d. *to swear.*
Labōro, r. d. *to labor.*
Lacĕro, r. d. *to tear.*
*Lacto, *to suckle.*
†Lānio, d. *to tear in pieces.*
Lātro, r. d. *to bark.*
Laudo, r. d. *to praise.*
Laxo, d. *to loose.*
†Lēgo, d. *to depute.*
Lēvo, r. d. *to lighten.*
Lībĕro, r. d. *to free.*
Lībo, d. *to pour out.*
Lĭgo, d. *to bind.*
†Lĭquo, d. *to melt.*
Līto, d. *to appease.*
Lōco, r. d. *to place.*
Lustro, d. *to survey.*
Luxŭrio, *to be luxuriant.*
Macto, d. *to sacrifice.*
Macŭlo, *to spot, stain.*
Mando, r. d. *to command.*
Mandūco, *to chew.*
*Māno, *to flow.*
Matūro, d. *to ripen.*
Memōro, u. d. *to tell.*
*Meo, *to go.*
*Migro, u. r. d. *to depart.*
*Milĭto, m. r. *to serve as a soldier.*
†Minio, d. *to paint red.*
Ministro, d. *to serve.*
Mitĭgo, d. *to pacify.*
Monstro, r. *to show.*—†demonstro, d.
Mūto, r. d. *to change.*

Narro, r. d. *to tell.*
Năto, m. r. *to swim.*
*Nauseo, *to be sea-sick.*
†Navĭgo, r. d. *to sail.*
Năvo, r. d. *to perform.*
Nĕgo, m. r. d. *to deny.*
*No, *to swim.*
Nomĭno, r. d. *to name.*
Nŏto, d. *to mark.*
Nŏvo, r. d. *to renew.*
Nŭdo, d. *to make bare.*
Nuncŭpo, r. d. *to name.*
Nuntĭo, m. r. *to tell.*—
　　renuntio, d.
*Nŭto, r. *to nod.*
Obsĕcro, m. r. d. *to be-seech.*
Obtrunco, r. *to kill.*
Onĕro, r. d. *to load.*
Opto, d. *to wish.*
†Orbo, r. *to bereave.*
Orno, r. d. *to adorn.*
Oro, m. r. d. *to beg.*
Pāco, d. *to subdue.*
Păro, r. d. *to prepare.*
　　compăro, d. *to compare.*
Patro, r. d. *to perform.*
*Pecco, r. d. *to sin.*
†Pio, d. *to propitiate.*
Plāco, r. d. *to appease.*
Plŏro, m. d. *to bewail.*
Porto, u. r. d. *to carry.*
Postŭlo, m. r. d. *to de-mand.*
Prīvo, d. *to deprive.*
Prŏbo, m. u. r. d. *to ap-prove*—comprŏbo, ín.
Profligo, d. *to rout.*
Propĕro, d. *to hasten.*
*†Propĭno, *to drink to.*
Propitio, d. *to appease.*
Pugno, r. d. *to fight.*
Pulso, d. *to beat.*
Purgo, u. r. d. *to cleanse.*

Pŭto, d. *to reckon.*
Quasso, d. *to shake.*
Rădĭo, *to emit rays.*
Rapto, d. *to drag away.*
Recupĕro, m. r. d. *to re-cover.*
Recūso, r. d. *to refuse.*
Redundo, *to overflow.*
Regno, r. d. *to rule.*
†Repŭdĭo, r. d. *to reject.*
Resĕro, d. *to unlock.*
*†Retālĭo, —, *to retaliate.*
Rĭgo, *to water.*
Rŏgo, m. r. d. *to ask.*
Rŏto, *to whirl around.*
Sacrifĭco, m. *to sacrifice.*
Sacro, d. *to consecrate.*
†Sagĭno, d. *to fatten.*
Salto, r. *to dance.*
Salūto, m. r. d. *to salute.*
Sāno, r. d. *to heal.*
Sātĭo, *to satiate.*
†Satŭro, *to fill.*
Saucĭo, d. *to wound.*
*Secundo, d. *to prosper.*
Sēdo, m. d. *to allay.*
Servo, r. d. *to keep.*
*†Sibĭlo, r. *to hiss.*
Sicco, d. *to dry.*
Signo, r. d. *to mark out.*—
　　assigno, m.
Simŭlo, r. d. *to pretend.*
Sŏcĭo, d. *to associate.*
*Somnĭo, *to dream.*
Specto, m. r. d. *to behold.*
Spēro, r. d. *to hope.*
*Spīro, *to breathe*—con-spīro. — exspīro, r.—
　　suspīro, d.
Spŏlĭo, m. d. *to rob.*
Spūmo, *to foam.*
Stillo, *to drop.*
Stimŭlo, *to goad.*
Stĭpo, *to stuff.*

Sūdo, *to sweat.*
Suffōco, *to strangle.*
Sugillo, d. *to taunt.*
Supĕro, r. d. *to overcome.*
Suppedĭto, d. *to afford.*
*Supplĭco, m. *to suppli-cate.*
*Susurro, *to whisper.*
Tardo, d. *to delay.*
Taxo, d. *to rate.*
Temĕro, r. d. *to defile.*
Tempĕro, r. d. *to temper.*
　　—obtempĕro, r. *to obey.*
Tento, m. r. d. *to try.*
Terebro, *to bore.*
Termĭno, r. d. *to limit.*
Titŭbo, *to stagger.*
Tolĕro, u. r. d. *to bear.*
Tracto, u. d. *to handle.*
*†Trĭpŭdĭo, *to dance.*
Triumpho, r. *to triumph.*
Trucĭdo, r. d. *to kill.*
Turbo, d. *to disturb.*
*Văco, *to be at leisure.*
*Văpŭlo, m. d. *to be beat-en.* Cf. § 142, 3.
Vărĭo, *to diversify.*
Vasto, d. *to lay waste.*
Vellĭco, *to pluck.*
Verbĕro, r. d. *to beat.*
*Vestīgo, r. *to search for.*
Vexo, d. *to tease.*
Vibro, d. *to brandish.*
Vigĭlo, *to watch.*
Vĭŏlo, m. r. d. *to violate.*
Vitĭo, d. *to vitiate.*
Vĭto, u. d. *to shun.*
Ulŭlo, *to howl.*
Umbro, r. *to shade.*
Vŏco, r. d. *to call.*
*Vŏlo, r. *to fly.*
Vŏro, r. *to devour.*
Vulgo, r. *to publish.*
Vulnĕro, d. *to wound.*

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are either irregular or defective.

*Crĕpo, crepui, *to make a noise.*
　crĕpo, -ui, *or* -āvi. increpo, -ui *or* -āvi, -Itum *or* -ātum.
　*†recrĕpo, —.
*Cŭbo, cubui, (*perf. subj.* cubāris; *inf.* cubasse), cubitum (*sup.*), *to recline.* incŭbo, -ui *or* āvi, d. *Those com-pounds of* cubo *which take* m *before* b, *are of the third conjugation.*
Do, dĕdi, dātum, m. r. d. *to give.*—
　So circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo, *and*

*disc-crēpo, -ui, *or* -āvi.
*†percrĕpo, —.

venumdo; *the other compounds of* do *are of the third conjugation. See* § 163, Exc. 1.
Dŏmo, domui, domĭtum, r. d. *to tame.*
Frico, fricui, frictum *or* fricātum, d. *to rub.* confrīco, —, -ātum. *So* infrĭ-co. defrĭco, —, -ātum *or* -ctum.
Jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, r. d., *also* juvatū-rus, *to help.* adjŭvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, m. r. d. *also* adjuvatūrus.
*Lābo, labasse, *to totter.*

Lăvo, lāvi, *rar.* lăvāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum; (*sup.*) lautum or lăvātum, lavātūrus, d. *to wash.* Lăvo is also *sometimes of the third conjugation.*

*Mĭco, mĭcui, d. *to glitter.* dimĭco, -āvi or -ui, -ātūrus, d. emĭco, -ui, -ātūrus. *intermĭco, —. *promĭco, —, d.

Nēco, nĕcāvi or necui, nĕcātum, r. d. *to kill.* enēco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum, or -ctum, d. †internēco, —, -ātum.

*†Nexo, —, *to tie.*

Plĭco, —, plicātum, *to fold.* duplĭco, -āvi, -ātum, r. d. multiplĭco *and* replĭco *have* -āvi, -ātum. *supplĭco, -āvi, m. r. applĭco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -ĭtum, -ĭtūrus. So implĭco. —complĭco, -ui, -ĭtum or ātum. explĭco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -ĭtum, -ātūrus or -ĭtūrus.

Pŏto, potāvi, potātum or pōtum, r. r. m. m. d. *to drink.* †epōto, -āvi, -um. —*perpōto, -āvi.

Sĕco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. *to cut.*—*circumsĕco, —. *intersĕco, —, d. *persĕco, -ui. præsĕco, -ui, -tum or -ātum. So resĕco, d.

*Sŏno, sonui, -ātūrus, d. *to sound.* *consŏno, -ui, -ātūrus, d. So ex-, in-, per-, præ-sŏno. *resŏno, -ui. *assŏno, —. So circumsŏno *and* dissŏno.

*Sto, stĕti, stātūrus, *to stand.* *antesto, -stĕti. So circumsto, intersto, supersto.—*Its compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have* stĭti; as, *consto, -stĭti, -stātūrus. So exsto, insto, obsto, persto. *præsto, -stĭti, -stātūrus, d. *adsto or asto, -stĭti, -stĭtūrus. *prosto, -stĭti. So resto, restĭti: *but subj. perf.* restăvĕrit, Propert. 2, 34, 53. *disto, —. So substo *and* supersto.

*Tŏno, tonui, *to thunder.* So circumtŏno. attŏno, -ui, -ĭtum. intŏno, -ui, -ātum. *retŏno, —.

Vĕto, vetui, *rarely* āvi, vetĭtum, *to forbid.*

REMARK 1. The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second conjugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root, and the change of the long vowels *ā* and *ē* in the third root into *t*. The *v* remaining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pronounced as *u*; as, *cubo,* (*cubāvi,* by syncope *cubvi*), i. e. *cubui;* (*cubātum,* by change of the connecting vowel,) *cubĭtum.* Sometimes in the first conjugation, and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third root also; as, *juvo,* (*āre*) *jūvi, jūtum; tēneo,* (*ēre*) *tēnui, tentum.* In the second conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g,* and a few others of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s;* as, *rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum.*

REM. 2. The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a reduplication are *do, sto,* and their compounds.

REM. 3. The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *beo, calceo, creo, cūneo, enucleo, illăqueo, collineo, delineo, meo, nauseo, screo; eo* and its compounds of the fourth.

§ 166.

All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *mīror,* § 161; as,

Abomĭnor, d. *to abhor.*	Causor, *to allege.*	*†Diglădior, d. *to fence.*
Adūlor, d. *to flatter.*	*Comissor, m. *to revel.*	Dignor, d. p. *to deem worthy.*
Æmŭlor, d. *to rival.*	Comĭtor, p. *to accompany.*	
Ancillor, *to be a handmaid.*	Concĭōnor, *to harangue.*	Domĭnor, p. *to rule.*
*Aprĭcor, *to bask in the sun.*	*Confabŭlor, m. *to converse together.*	Epŭlor, r. d. *to feast.*
		*Famŭlor, m. *to wait on.*
Arbĭtror, r. d. *to think.*	Cōnor, p. *to endeavor.*	Fātur, (defect.) u. d. p. *to speak.* See § 183, 6.
Aspernor, d. p. *to despise.*	†Conspĭcor, *to see.*	
Aucŭpor, r. p. *to hunt after.*	Contemplor, d. p. *to view attentively.*	†Fērior, r. *to keep holiday.*
Auxĭlior, p. *to help.*		*Frumentor, m. *to forage.*
Aversor, d. *to dislike.*	Crimĭnor, m. p. *to complain of.*	Fūror, m. *to steal.*
Bacchor, p. *to revel.*		Glōrior, r. d. *to boast.*
Calumnior, *to censure unfairly.*	Cunctor, d. p. *to delay.*	Gratŭlor, m. d. *to congratulate.*
	Deprĕcor, m. r. d. p. *to deprecate.*	

Hariŏlor, *to practise sooth-saying.*
Hortor, d. *to encourage.*
Imĭtor, u. r. d. *to imitate.*
Indignor, d. *to disdain.*
Infĭtior, m. *to deny.*
Insector, *to pursue.*
Insidĭor, r. d. *to lie in wait for.*
Interprĕtor, p. *to explain.*
Jacŭlor, p. *to hurl.*
Jŏcor, p. *to jest.*
Lætor, r. d. p. *to rejoice.*
Lamentor, d. p. *to bewail.*
*†Lignor, m.   *to gather wood.*
Luctor, d. *to wrestle.*
Medĭcor, r. d. p. *to heal.*
Medĭtor, p. *to meditate.*
Mercor, m. r. d. p. *to buy.*
Minor, *to threaten.*
Miror, u. r. d. *to admire.*
Misĕror, d. *to pity.*
Modĕror, u. d. *to govern.*

Modŭlor, d. p. *to modulate.*
Mōror, r. d. *to delay.*
†Mūtuor, p. *to borrow.*
Negōtior, r. *to traffic.*
*†Nūgor, p. *to trifle.*
Obsōnor, m. *to cater.*
Obtestor, p. *to beseech.*
Opĕror, *to work.*
Opīnor, u. r. d. *to think.*
Opĭtŭlor, m. *to help.*
†Otĭor, *to be at leisure.*
Pabŭlor, m. d. *to graze.*
Pālor, *to wander about.*
Percontor, m. *to inquire.*
Periclĭtor, d. *to try.*
*†Piscor, m. *to fish.*
Popŭlor, r. d. p. *to lay waste.*
Prædor, m. p. *to plunder.*
Prĕcor, m. u. r. d. *to pray.*
Prœlior, *to fight.*
Recordor, d. *to recollect.*
Rīmor, d. *to search.*
Rixor, *to quarrel.*

*Rustĭcor, *to live in the country.*
Sciscĭtor, m. p. *to inquire.*
*Scĭtor, m. *to ask.*
Scrūtor, p. *to search.*
Sōlor, d. *to comfort.*
Spātior, *to walk about.*
Specŭlor, m. r. d. *to spy out.*
†Stipŭlor, p. *to bargain, stipulate.*
†Suāvior, d. *to kiss.*
Suspĭcor, *to suspect.*
Testĭficor, p. *to testify.*
Testor, d. p. *to testify.* So detestor.
Tūtor, *to defend.*
Vāgor, *to wander.*
Venĕror, d. p. *to venerate, worship.*
Vēnor, m. p. *to hunt.*
Versor, *to be employed.*
Vocĭfĕror, *to bawl.*

NOTE. Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify *being* or *practising* that which the noun denotes; as, *ancillāri*, **to be a handmaid**; *hariolāri*, **to practise soothsaying**; from *ancilla* and *hariŏlus*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ **167.** Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *ĭt*; as, moneo, monui, monĭtum.

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

*Aceo, *to be sour.*
*Ægreo, —, *to be sick.*
*Albeo, —, *to be white.*
*Arceo, d. *to drive away; part. adj.* arctus *or* artus. *The compounds change* a *into* e; as, coerceo, d. *to restrain.* exerceo, r. d. *to exercise.*
Areo, *to be dry.*
*Aveo, —, *to covet.*
*Cāleo, r. *to be warm.*
*Calleo, —, *to be hardened.* *percalleo, *to know well.*
*Calveo, —, *to be bald.*
*Candeo, *to be white.*
*Cāneo, *to be hoary.*
*Cāreo, r. d. *to want.*
*Cāveo, —, *to fawn.*

*Clāreo, —, *to be bright.*
*Clueo, —, *to be famous.*
*Denseo, —, *to thicken.*
*Dirĭbeo, —, *to sort the voting tablets.*
*Dōleo, r. d. *to grieve.*
*Egeo, r. *to want.*
*Emĭueo, *to rise above.*
*Flacceo, —, *to droop.*
*Flāveo, —, *to be yellow.*
*Flōreo, *to blossom.*
*Fœteo, —, *to be fetid.*
*Frīgeo, —, *to be cold.*
*Frondeo, —, *to bear leaves.*
Hābeo, r. d. *to have. The compounds, except* posthābeo, *change* a *into* i; as, ad-, ex-, pro-hĭbeo. cohĭbeo, d. *to restrain.* inhĭbeo, d. *to hinder.*

*†perhĭbeo, d. *to report.*
†posthābeo, *to postpone.* præbeo, *(for* præhĭbeo)*, r. d. *to afford.* *præhĭbeo, —. dĕbeo, *(for* dehābeo)*, r. d. *to owe.*
*Hēbeo, —, *to be dull.*
*Horreo, —, *to be rough.*
*Hūmeo, —. *to be moist.*
*Jāceo, r. *to lie.*
*Lacteo, —, *to suck.*
*Langueo, —, *to be faint.*
*Lāteo, d. *to lie hid.*
*Lenteo, —, *to be slow.*
*Līceo, *to be valued.*
*Līveo, —, *to be livid.*
*Māceo, —, *to be lean.*
*Mādeo, *to be wet.*
*Mæreo, —, *to grieve.*
Mĕreo, r. *to deserve.*

†commēreo, *to fully deserve.* †dēmēreo, d, *to earn.* †emēreo, *to serve out one's time.* *†permēreo, —, to go through service.* promēreo. *to deserve.*

Mŏneo, r. d. *to advise.* admŏneo, m. r. d. *to remind.* commŏneo, d. *to impress upon.* praemŏneo, *to forewarn.*

Mūceo, —, to be mouldy.
Nigreo, —, to be black.
Nĭteo, to shine.
Nŏceo, m. r. *to hurt.*
Oleo, to smell.
Palleo, to be pale.

Pāreo, m. r. d. to obey.
Pāteo, to be open.
Plăceo, *to please.*
Polleo, —, to be able.
Pūteo, to stink.
Putreo, to be putrid.
Renīdeo, —, to glitter.
Rĭgeo, to be stiff.
Rŭbeo, to be red.
Scăteo, —, to gush forth.
Sēneo, —, to be old.
Sĭleo, d. to be silent.
Sordeo, —, to be filthy.
Splendeo, —, to shine.
Squăleo, —, to be foul.
Strĭdeo, —, to creak.
Stŭdeo, d. to study.
Stŭpeo, to be amazed.

Sueo, —, to be wont.
Tăceo, r. d. *to be silent.*
Tĕpeo, to be warm.
Terreo, d. *to terrify. So* deterreo, *to deter.* †absterreo, *to deter.* †conterreo, †exterreo, †perterreo, *to frighten.*
Tĭmeo, to fear.
Torpeo, —, to be stiff.
Tŭmeo, to swell.
Văleo, r. to be able.
Vĕgeo, —, to arouse.
Vieo, —, to plait. Pa. viētus, *shriveled.*
Vĭgeo, to flourish.
Vĭreo, to be green.
Uveo, —, to be moist.

§ **168.** The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is, *o, āvi, ātum,* of the fourth *io, īvi, ītum,* so that of the second would be *eo, ēvi, ētum.* Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, *ĕ,* and those in *veo* drop *vĕ;* as, *(cāreo, (cāvēri) cāvi, (cāvĕtum or cārĭtum) cautum.* Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and §171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo, pendeo, spondeo,* and *tondeo.* See § 163, Rem.

Abŏleo, -ēvi, -ĭtum, r. d. *to efface.*
Algeo, alsi, to be cold.
Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. *to burn.*
Audeo, ausus sum, *(rarely* ausi, *whence* ausim, § 183, R. 1,) r. d. *to dare.*
Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. *to increase.*
Căveo, cāvi, cautum, m. d. *to beware.*
Censeo, censui, censum, d. *to think.* recenseo, -ui, -um *or* -ĭtum. *per-* censeo, -ui. *succenseo, -ui, d.*
Cieo, cīvi, cītum, d. *to excite. There is a cognate form,* cio, *of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles* excitus *and* concitus *is common, and that of* accitus *is always long.*
Connīveo, -nīvi, to wink at.
Dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. *to blot out.*
Dŏceo, docui, doctum, d. *to teach.*
Făveo, fāvi, fautūrus, to favor.
Ferveo, ferbui, to boil. Sometimes fervo, vi, *of the third conjugation.*
Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. *to weep.*
Fŏveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. *to cherish.*

Fulgeo, fulsi, to shine. Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use.
Gaudeo, gavīsus sum, r. *to rejoice.* § 142, 2.
Haereo, haesi, haesūrus, to stick. So ad-, co-, in-, ob- haereo; *but* *subhaereo, —.
Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. *to indulge.*
Jŭbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. *to order.*
*Lūceo, luxi, to shine. pollūceo, -luxi, -luctum.
Lūgeo, luxi, d. to mourn.
Măneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. to remain.
Misceo, miscui, mistum *or* mixtum, mistūrus, d. *to mix.*
Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. *to bite.* remordeo, -di, -morsum, r.
Mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, d. *to move.*
Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. *to soothe.* permŭlceo, permulsi, permulsum and perrulctum, *to rub gently.*
*Mulgeo, mulsi *or* mulxi, to milk.* emulgeo, —, emulsum, *to milk out.*

Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.*
*Păveo, păvi, d. *to fear.*
*Pendeo, pependi, d. *to hang.* *impendeo, —. propendeo, —, propensum.
Pleo, (*obsolete*). compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, *to fill. So the other compounds.*
Prandeo, prandi, pransum, r. *to dine.*
Rideo, risi, risum, m. r. d. *to laugh.*
*Sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum, m. r. *to sit. The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ĕ into ĭ, in the first root; as,* insĭdeo, insēdi, insessum. *dissĭdeo, -sēdi. *So* præsĭdeo, *and rarely* circumsĭdeo.
Sŭleo, solitus sum *and rarely* solui, *to be accustomed.* § 142, 2.
*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in. So* *exsorbeo: *but* *resorbeo, —. *absorbeo, -sorbui *or* -sorpsi.

Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, *to promise.* See § 162, Rem.
*Strideo, īdi, *to whiz.*
Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, r. d. *to advise.*
Tĕneo, tĕnui, tentum, r. d. *to hold. The compounds change ĕ into ĭ in the first and second roots; as,* detĭneo, detĭnui, detentum. *attĭneo, -tĭnui. *So* pertĭneo.
Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.* Tergo, *of the third conjugation, is also in use.*
Tondeo, tŏtondi, tonsum, *to shear. The compounds have the perfect* tondi.
Torqueo, torsi, tortum, d. *to twist.*
Torreo, torrui, tostum, *to roast.*
*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*
*Urgeo *or* urgueo, ursi, d. *to urge.*
Video, vidi, visum, m. u. r. d. *to see.*
Vŏveo, vōvi, vōtum, d. *to vow.*

§ 169. *Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

Dĕcet, decuit, *it becomes.*
Libet, libuit *or* libitum est, *it pleases, is agreeable.*
Licet, licuit *or* licitum est, *it is lawful, or permitted.*
Liquet, liquit, *it is clear, evident.*
Misĕret, miseruit *or* miseritum est, *it moves to pity;* miserēt me, *I pity.*
Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Piget, piguit *or* pigitum est, d. *it troubles, grieves.*
Pœnĭtet, pœnituit, pœnitūrus, d. *it repents;* pœnitet me, *I regret.*
Pŭdet, puduit *or* puditum est, d.; *it shames;* pudet me, *I am ashamed.*
Tædet, tæduit *or* tæsum est, *it disgusts or wearies.* pertædet, pertæsum est.

NOTE. *Lŭbet* is sometimes written for *libet*, especially in the comic writers.

§ 170. *Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

Făteor, fassus, r. d. p. *to confess. The compounds change ă into ĭ in the first root, and into* e *in the third; as,* confĭteor, confessus, d. p. *to acknowledge.* *†diffĭteor, *to deny.* profĭteor, professus, d. p. *to declare.*
Liceor, licitus, *to bid a price.*

*Mĕdeor, d. *to cure.*
Mĕreor, merĭtus, d. *to deserve.*
Misĕreor, miseritus *or* misertus, *to pity.*
Pollĭceor, pollicĭtus, p. *to promise.*
Reor, rătus, d. *to think, suppose.*
Tueor, tuĭtus, d. p. *to protect.*
Vĕreor, verĭtus, d. p. *to fear.*

THIRD CONJUGATION

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s ;* when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t ;* as, carpo, carps*i*, carpt*um ;* arguo, argu*i*, argūt*um.*

In annexing *s* and *t*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root :—

1. The palatals *c, g, qu,* and also *h,* at the end of the first root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t ;* as, dico, (*dicsi,* i. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (*regsi,* i. e.), rexi, rectum; vĕho, vexi, vectum; cŏquo, coxi, coctum.

Note. *Fluo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo, scripsi, scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudo, clausi; cēdo, cessi; mitto, misi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gĕro* and *ūro*.

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

Exc. 1. Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(*a.*) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long:

Bĭbo,	Excūdo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scăbo,	Solvo,	Verro,
Edo,	Fŏdio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strīdo,	Verto,
Emo,	Fŭgio,	Lĕgo,	Psallo,	Sīdo,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando, fendo,* and *nuo.*

(*b.*) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

Ago, ēgi.	Căpio, cēpi.	Făcio, fēci.
Findo, fīdi.	Frango, frēgi.	Fundo, fūdi.
Jăcio, jēci.	Linquo, līqui.	Rumpo, rūpi.
Scindo, scĭdi.	Sisto, stĭti.	Vinco, vīci.

Those which have a reduplication are

Cădo, cĕcĭdi.	Cædo, cĕcīdi.	Căno, cĕcĭni.
Curro, cŭcurri.	Disco, dĭdici.	Fallo, fĕfelli.
Păgo, (*obs.*) pĕpĭgi	Parco, pĕperci.	Pārio, pĕpĕri.
and pēgi.	Pēdo, pĕpēdi.	Pello, pĕpŭli.
Pendo, pĕpendi.	Posco, pŏposci.	Pungo, pŭpūgi.
Tango, tĕtĭgi.	Tendo, tĕtendi.	Tundo, tŭtŭdi.

Exc. 2. Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

Alo, alui, etc.	Consŭlo,	Gĕmo,	Răpio,	Trĕmo,
Cŏlo,	Depso,	Gĕno, (*obs.*)	Strĕpo,	Vŏlo,
Compesco,	Frĕmo,	Mŏlo,	Texo,	Vŏmo.

Mĕto, messui; and *pōno, pŏsui;* add *su*, with a change in the root.

Exc. 3. The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *īv* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Căpio,	Lăcesso,	Rŭdo,	Tēro, *dropping* ĕ.
Căpesso,	Incesso,	Pĕto,	Quæro, *with a change of* r *into* s.

Exc. 4. The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *sco* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing it to *rē* or *ra*:—

Cresco,	Pasco,	Scisco,	Sperno,	Līno,	Sĕro,
Nosco,	Quiesco,	Cerno,	Sterno,	Sīno,	*to sow.*

Exc. 5. (*a.*) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d, t,* and *g*; or changing them into *s*; as, *claudo, clausum; dēfendo, dēfensum; cēdo, cessum; flecto, flexum; figo, fixum.* But the compounds of *do* add *it*; as, *perdo, perditum.*

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root:—

| Excello, | Fallo, | Pello, | Spargo, | Verro. |
| Percello, | Merge, | Prĕmo, | Vello, | |

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *nq*, *ngu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

| Cerno, | Fingo, | Gĕro, | Sĕro, | Sperno, | Stringo, | Uro, |
| Cŏlo, | Frango, | Rumpo, | Sisto, | Sternŏ, | Tĕro, | Vinco; |

to which add the compounds of *linquo*, and verbs in *sco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco, nŏvi, nŏtum*; except *pasco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *ĭt*:—

| Bĭbo, | Elĭcio, | Mŏlo, | Pōno, *with a change of* ōn *into* ōs. |
| Gĕno, (*obs. form of* gigne,) | Vŏmo, | Sĭno, *dropping* n. |

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *ĭt* to the first root:—

| Arcesso, | Cŭpio, | Pĕto, | Tĕro, *dropping* ĕ. |
| Făcesso, | Lăcesso, | Quæro, *with a change of* r *into* s. |

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172–174.

§ **172.** The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

Acuo, ăcui, ăcūtum, d. *to sharpen.*

Ago, ēgi, actum, r. d. *to drive.* So *circumăgo, cōgo, and* pĕrăgo. *ambĭgo, —, to doubt.* So *satăgo. The other compounds change* ă *into* ĭ, *in the first root; as,* exĭgo, exēgi, exactum, *to drive out.* *prōdĭgo, -ēgi, *to squander.* See § 189, 2.

Alo, ălui, altum, *and later* ălĭtum, d. *to nourish.*

*Ango, anxi, *to strangle.*

Arguo, argui, argūtum, d. *to convict.*

Arcesso, -cessīvi, -cessītum, r. d. *to call for.* Pass. inf: arcessīri *or* arcessi.

*Bātuo, bătui, d. *to beat.*

Bibo, bibi, bĭbĭtum, d. *to drink.*

*Cădo, cĕcĭdi, căsūrus, d. *to fall. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ, *in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as,* occĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāsum, r. *to set.*

Cædo, cĕcīdi, cæsum, r. d. *to cut. The compounds change* æ *into* ĭ, *and drop the reduplication; as,* occīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum.

Cando, (*obsolete,) synonymous with* candeo *of the second conjugation. Hence* accendo, -cendi, -censum, d. *to kindle.* So *incendo, succendo.*

*Căno, cĕcĭni, d. *to sing. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ; *as,* concĭno,

-cĭnui. So *occĭno, præcĭno.* *accĭno, —.* So *inctno, intercĭno, succĭno, recĭno.*

*Capesso, -īvi, r. d. *to undertake.*

Căpio, cēpi, captum, r. d. *to take.* So *antecăpio. The other compounds change* ă *into* ĭ, *in the first root, and into* e *in the third; as,* dĕcĭpio, dēcēpi, dēceptum.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, d. *to pluck. The compounds change* a *into* e; *as,* dēcerpo, dēcerpsi, dēcerptum.

Cĕdo, cessi, cessum, r. *to yield.*

Cello, (*obsolete.*) excello, -cellui, -celsum, *to excel.* *antēcello, —.* So *præcello, recello.* percello, -cŭli, -culsum, *to strike.*

Cerno, crēvi, crētum, d. *to decree.*

Cerno, —, to see.

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, d. *to gird.*

Clango, —, to clang.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, d. *to shut. The compounds change* au *into* ū; *as,* occlūdo, occlūsi, occlūsum, *to shut up.*

†Claudo, —, to limp.

†Clĕpo, clepsi, rarely clēpi, to steal.

Cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum, d. *to till.* †occŭlo, -cŭlui, -cultum, d. *to hide.*

Como, compsi, comptum, *to deck.*

*Compesco, -pescui, *to restrain.*

Consŭlo, -sŭlui, -sultum, m. r. d. *to consult.*

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, m. d. *to cook.*

Crēdo, crēdĭdi, crēdĭtum, r. d. *to believe.*

*Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.* concresco, -crēvi, -crētum.

Cūbo *is of the first conjugation. Cf.* § 165. *accumbo, -cŭbui, *to lie down. So the other compounds which insert* m.

*Cūdo, —, *to forge.* excūdo, -cūdi, -cūsum, d. *to stamp.*

Cŭpio, cŭpīvi, cŭpītum, d. *to desire. Subj. imperf.* cŭpīret. *Lucr.* 1, 72.

*Curro, cŭcurri, cursūrus, *to run.* concurro, succurro, *and* transcurro, *drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as,* dēcurro, dēcurri, *and* dēcŭcurri, dēcursum. *antĕcurro, —. So* circumcurro.

*Dēgo, dēgi, d. *to live.*

Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, r. d. *to take away.*

†Depso, depsui, depstum, *to knead.*

Dīco, dixi, dictum, u. r. d. *to say.*

*Disco, dĭdĭci, discĭtūrus, d. *to learn.*

*Dispesco, —, *to separate.*

Dīvĭdo, dīvīsi, dīvīsum, r. d. *to divide.*

Do *is of the first conjugation.* abdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, d. *to hide. So* condo, indo. addo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, r. d. *to add. So* dēdo, ēdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo. †dīdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *to distribute. So* abdo, subdo. perdo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, m. r. d. abscondo, -di *or* -dĭdi, -dĭtum *or* -sum.

Dūco, duxi, ductum, m. r. d. *to lead.*

Edo, ēdi, ēsum, m. u. r. d. *to eat.*

Exuo, exui, exūtum, d. *to strip off.*

Emo, ēmi, emptum, r. d. *to buy. So* coēmo. *The other compounds change* ē *to* ĭ; as, exĭmo, -ēmi, -emptum.

Făcesso, -cessi, -cessĭtum, r. d. *to execute.*

Făcio, fēci, factum, m. r. d. *to do. Compounded with a preposition, it changes* ă *into* ĭ *in the first root, and into* e *in the third, makes* -ficē *in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains ā when or this conjugation, makes* făc *in the imperative, and has the passive,* fīo, factum. *See* § 180.

Fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, d. *to deceive.* *refello, -felli, d. *to refute.*

Fendo, (*obsolete.*) dēfendo, -fendi, -fensum, m. u. r. d. *to defend.* offendo, -fendi, -fensum, d. *to offend.*

Fĕro, tŭli, lātum, r. d. *to bear. See* § 179. *A perfect* tŭtŭli *is rare. Its compounds are* affĕro, attŭli, allātum; aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum; diffĕro, distŭli, dīlātum; confĕro, contŭli, collātum; infĕro, intŭli, illātum; offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum; effĕro, extŭli, elātum; suffĕro, sustŭli, sublātum; *and* circum-, per-, trans-, dē-, prō-, antĕ-, præfĕro, -tŭli, -lātum.

*Fervo, vi, *to boil. Cf.* ferveo, 2d conj.

Fīdo, —, fīsus, d. *to trust. See* § 162, 18. confīdo, confīsus sum *or* confīdi, *to rely on.* diffīdo, diffīsus sum, *to distrust.*

Fīgo, fixi, fixum, r. *rarely* fictum, *to fix.*

Findo, fĭdi, fissum, d. *to cleave.*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, d. *to feign.*

Flecto, flexi, flexum, r. d. *to bend.*

*Flīgo, flixi, d. *to dash. So* conflīgo. afflīgo, -flixi, -flictum, d. *to afflict. So* inflīgo. prōflīgo *is of the first conjugation.*

Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (fluctum, *obs.*) r. d. *to flow.*

Fŏdio, fŏdi, fossum, d. *to dig. Old pres. inf. pass.* fŏdīri: *so also* effŏdīri.

Frango, frēgi, fractum, r. d. *to break. The compounds change* a *into* i, *in the first root; as,* infringo, infrēgi, infractum, *to break in upon.*

*Frēmo, frēmui, d. *to roar, howl.*

Frendo, —, frēsum *or* fressum, d. *to gnash.*

Frīgo, frixi, frictum, *rarely* frixum, *to roast.*

*Fŭgio, fŭgi, fŭgĭtūrus, d. *to flee.*

*Fulgo, —, *to flash.*

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, r. d. *to pour.*

*Fūro, —, *to rage.*

*Gĕmo, gĕmui, d. *to groan.*

Gĕro, gessi, gestum, r. d. *to bear.*

Gigno, (*obsolete* gĕno,) gĕnui, genĭtum, r. d. *to beget.*

*Glisco, —, *to grow.*

*Glūbo, —, *to peel.* deglūbo, —, -gluptum.

Gruo, (*obsolete.*) *congruo, -grui, *to agree. So* ingruo.

Ico, īci, ictum, r. d. *to strike.*

Imbuo, imbui, imbūtum, d. *to imbue.*

*Incesso, -cessīvi *or* -cessi, *to attack.*

†Induo, indui, indūtum, *to put on.*

Jăcio, jēci, jactum, d. *to cast. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ *in the first root, and into* e *in the third.* (§ 163, *Exc.* 2;) *as,* rejĭcio, rejēci, rejectum.

Jungo, junxi, junctum, r. d. *to join.*

Lăcesso, -cessīvi, -cessĭtum, r. d. *to provoke.*

Lăcio, (*obsolete.*) *The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ; *as,* allĭcio, -lexi, -lectum, d. *to allure. So* illĭcio, pellĭcio. ēlĭcio, -lĭcui, -lĭcĭtum, *to draw out.*

Lædo, læsi, læsum, m. r. *to hurt. The compounds change æ into ī; as, illīdo, illīsi, illīsum, to dash against.*

*Lambo, lambi, to lick.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, r. d. *to read. So* allēgo, perlēgo, prælēgo, relēgo, sublēgo, *and* translēgo; *the other compounds change ĕ into ī; as,* collĭgo, collēgi, collectum, *to collect. But the following add* s *to form the second root;* § 171, 1; dilĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, *to love.* intellĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, u. r. d. *to understand.* neglĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, r. d. *to neglect.*

Lingo, -linctum, d. *to lick.* *delingo, —, *to lick up.*

Lino, līvi *or* lēvi, lītum, d. *to daub.*

*Linquo, līqui, d. *to leave.* relinquo, -līqui, -lictum, r. d. delinquo, -līqui, -lictum. *So* derelinquo.

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, m. r. d. *to play.*

*Luo, lui, luitūrus, d. *to atone.* ablŭo, -lŭi, -lūtum, r. d. dilŭo, -lŭi, -lūtum, d. *So* elŭo.

Mando, mandi, mansum, d. *to chew.*

Mergo, mersi, mersum, r. d. *to dip. So* immergo; *but pres. inf. pass.* immergĕri, Col. 5, 9, 3.

Mĕto, messui, messum, d. *to reap.*

Mĕtuo, metui, metūtum, d. *to fear.*

*Mingo, minxi, mictum, (*sup.*) *to make water.*

Mĭnuo, mĭnui, mĭnūtum, d. *to lessen.*

Mitto, mīsi, missum, r. d. *to send.*

Mŏlo, mŏlui, mŏlītum, r. d. *to grind.*

Mungo, (*obsolete.*) emungo, -munxi, -munctum, *to wipe the nose.*

Necto, nexi, nexum, d. *to knit.* innecto, -nexui, -nexum. *So* annecto, connecto.

*Ningo *or* -guo, ninxi, *to snow.*

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, d. *to learn.* agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, d. *to recognize.* cognosco, -nōvi, -nītum, u. r. d. *to know. So* recognosco. *internosco, nōvi, to distinguish between.* præcognosco, —, præcognĭtum, *to fore-know.* *dignosco, —. *So* prænosco. ignosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, d. *to pardon.*

Nūbo, nupsi, *or* nupta sum, nuptum, m. r. *to marry.*

Nuo, (*obsolete.*) *to nod.* *abnuo, -nui, -nuitūrus, d. *to refuse.* *annuo, -nui. *So* innuo, renuo.

*Olo, ōlui, *to smell.*

Pando, —, passum *or* pansum, d. *to open. So* expando. dispando, —, -pansum.

Pago, (*obs. the same as* paco *whence* pāciscor,*) pēpĭgi, pactum, *to bargain: hence*

Pango, panxi *or* pēgi, pactum, panctūrus, d. *to drive in.* compingo, -pēgi, -pactum. *So* impingo. *oppango, -pēgi. *depango, —. *So* repango, suppingo.

*Parco, pĕperci *rarely* parsi, parsūrus, *to spare. Some of the compounds change* a *to* e; as, *comparco *or* comperco.* *imperco, —.

Pario, pĕpĕri, partum, parĭtūrus, d. *to bring forth. The compounds are of the fourth conjugation.*

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, m. r. d. *to feed.*

Pecto, —, pexum, *and* pectĭtum, d. *to comb. So* depecto. repecto.

*Pēdo, pĕpēdi. *oppēdo, —.

Pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, d. *to drive. Its compounds are not reduplicated.*

Pendo, pĕpĕndi, pensum, r. *to weigh. The compounds drop the reduplication. See* § 163, Exc. 1.

Pĕto, pĕtīvi, pĕtītum, m. u. r. d. *to ask.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, d. *to paint.*

Pinso, pinsi, pinsĭtum, pinsum *or* pistum, *to pound.*

*Plango, planxi, planctūrus, *to lament.*

Plaudo, plausi, plausum, d. *to clap, applaud. So* applaudo. *†circumplaudo, —. *The other compounds change* au *into* ō.

Plecto, —, plexum d. *to twine.*

*Pluo, plui *or* plŭvi, *to rain.*

Pōno, pŏsui, (*anciently* posīvi), pŏsĭtum, r. d. *to place.*

*†Porrĭcio, —, *to offer sacrifice.*

*Posco, pŏposci, d. *to demand.*

Prehendo, } -di, -sum, r. d. *to seize.*
Prendo,   }

Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, r. d. *to press. The compounds change* ĕ *into* ī, *in the first root; as,* imprĭmo, impressi, impressum, *to impress.*

Prōmo, prompsi, promptum, r. d. *to bring out.*

*Psallo, psalli, *to play on a stringed instrument.*

Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum, d. *to prick.* compungo, -punxi, -punctum. *So* dispungo, expungo. interpungo, —, -punctum. *repungo, —.

Quæro, quæsīvi, quæsītum, m. r. d. *to seek. The compounds change* æ *into* ī; *as,* requīro, requisīvi, requisītum, *to seek again.*

Quătio, —, quassum, *to shake. The compounds change* quă *into* cŭ; *as,* concŭtio, -cussi, -cussum, d. discŭtio, -cussi, -cussum, u. r. d.

Quiesco, quiēvi, quiētum, r. d. *to rest.*

Rado, rāsi, rāsum, d. *to shave.*

Răpio, răpui, raptum, r. d. *to snatch. The compounds change* ă *into* ĭ *in the*

first and second roots, and into e in the third; as, diripio, -ripui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and præripio.

Rĕgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. *to rule. The compounds change ĕ into ĭ, in the first root; as,* dirĭgo, direxi, directum. *pergo, (for* perrigo*)* perrexi, r. *to go forward.* surgo *(for* surrigo*),* surrexi, surrectum. r. *to rise. So* porrigo *(for* prorigo*) to stretch out.*

Rĕpo, repsi, to creep.

Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, r. *to gnaw.* ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rōdo, *want the perfect.*

Rŭdo, rudīvi, to bray.

Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, r. d. *to break.*

Ruo, rui, rŭtum, ruitūrus, r. d. *to fall.* dīruo, -rui, -rŭtum, d. *So* obruo. *corruo, -rui. So* irruo.

Sāpio, sapīvi, to be wise. The compounds change ă into ĭ; as, *resipio, -sĭpīvi or -sĭpui.* *desipio, —, to be silly.*

†Scăbo, scābi, to scratch.

Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, *to engrave.*

Salo *or* sallo, — salsum, *to salt.*

Scando, —, d. to climb. The compounds change ă into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendo, descendi, (*anciently* descendīdi,) descensum.

Scindo, scĭdi, (*anciently* sciscīdi,) scissum, d. *to cut.*

Scisco, scīvi, scītum, d. *to ordain.*

Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. *to write.*

Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. *to carve.*

Sĕro, sēvi, sătum, r. d. *to sow.* consĕro, -sēvi, -sĭtum. *So* insĕro, r. *and* obsĕro.

Sĕro, —, sertum, *to entwine. Its compounds have* -sĕrui; *as,* assĕro, -sĕrui, -sertum, r. d.

Serpo, serpsi, to creep.

Sīdo, sēdi, to settle. Its compounds have generally sēdi, sessum, *from* sedeo.

Sino, sīvi, sĭtum, to permit. desino, desīvi, desītum, r. §284, R. 3, Exc. 2.

Sisto, stĭti, stătum, *to stop.* *absisto, -stĭti. So the other compounds; but* circumsisto *wants the perfect.*

Solvo, solvi, solūtum, r. d. *to loose.*

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. *to spread. The compounds change ă into e; as,* respergo, -spersi, -spersum; *but with* circum *and* in, a, *sometimes remains.*

Spĕcio, (*obsolete*,) *The compounds change ĕ into ĭ, in the first root; as,* aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. *to look at.* inspicio, inspexi, inspectum. r. d.

Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, d. *to despise.*

†Spuo, spui, to spit. *respuo, respui, d.*

Stătuo, stătui, stătūtum, d. *to place. The compounds change ă into ĭ; as,* institŭo, institŭi, institūtum, *to institute.*

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, d. *to strew.*

Sternuo, sternui, to sneeze.

Sterto, —, to snore. *†desterto, desterui.*

Stinguo, —, to extinguish. distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. *So* exstinguo, r. d.

Strĕpo, strĕpui, to make a noise.

Strīdo, strīdi, to creak.

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, r. d. *to bind or tie tight.*

Struo, struxi, structum, d. *to build.*

Sūgo, suxi, suctum, *to suck.*

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. *to take.*

Sno, —, sūtum, d. *to sew. So* consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sūtum. *assuo, — .*

Tăgo, (*very rare*) *to touch. Hence*

Tango, tĕtĭgi, tactum, r. d. *to touch. The compounds change a into ĭ in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as,* contingo, contigi, contactum, r.

Tĕgo, texi, tectum, r. d. *to cover.*

Tĕmno, —, d. to despise. contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.

Tendo, tĕtendi, tentum *or* tensum, *to stretch. The compounds drop the reduplication; as,* extendo, -tendi, -tentum *or* -tensum. *So* in-, os-, *and* retendo. detendo *has* tensum. *The other compounds have* tentum.

†Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. Tergeo, *of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.*

Tĕro, trīvi, trītum, d. *to rub.*

Texo, texui, textum, d. *to weave.*

Tingo *or* tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. *to moisten, tinge.*

Tollo, anciently tĕtŭli, *rarely* tolli, d. *to raise. The perfect and supine* sustŭli *and* sublātum *from* sufféro *take the place of the perfect and supine of* tollo *and* sustollo. *sustollo, —, r. to raise up, to take away.* *attollo, —, . So* extollo.

Trăho, traxi, tractum, r. d. *to draw.*

Trĕmo, trĕmui, d. *to tremble.*

Trĭbuo, trĭbui, trĭbūtum, r. d. *to ascribe.*

Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, d. *to thrust.*

Tundo, tŭtŭdi, tunsum *or* tūsum, d. *to beat. The compounds drop the reduplication, and have* tūsum. *Yet* contunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, *and* retunsum, *are also found.*

Ungo, (*or* -guo), unxi, unctum, d. *to anoint.*

Uro, ussi, ustum, d. *to burn.*
*Vādo, —, *to go.* So supervādo. *The other compounds have* vāsi; *as,* *evādo, evāsi, r. *So* pervādo; *also* invādo, r. d.
Věho, vexi, vectum, r. *to carry.*
Vello, velli *or* vulsi, vulsum, d. *to pluck. So* avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. *The other compounds have* velli *only, except intervello, which has* vulsi.

*Vergo, versi, *to incline.*
Verro, —, versum, d. *to brush.*
Verto, verti, versum, r. d. *to turn.* See § 174, *Note.*
Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. *to conquer.*
*Viso, —, d. *to visit.*
*Vivo, vixi, victūrus, d. *to live.*
*Vŏlo, vŏlui, velle (*for* vŏlēre), *to be willing.* See § 178.
Volvo, volvi, vŏlūtum, d. *to roll.*
Vŏmo, vŏmui, vŏmĭtum, r. d. *to vomit.*

REMARK. Those verbs in *io* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like capio (page 115) are, cǎpio, cŭpio, fǎcio, fŏdio, fŭgio, jǎcio, pǎrio, quǎtio, rǎpio, sǎpio, compounds of *lǎcio* and *spĕcio*, and grǎdior, mŏrior, pǎtior, and mŏrior: but compare mŏrior in § 174, and ŏrior, and pŏtior in § 177.

Inceptive Verbs.

§ **173.** Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

*Acesco, ǎcui, s. *to grow sour.*
*Ægresco, *to grow sick.*
*Albesco, —, s. *to grow white.*
*Alesco, —, s. *to grow.* coalesco, -alui, -alitum, *to grow together.*
*Ardesco, arsi, s. *to take fire.*
*Aresco, —, s. *to grow dry.* *exaresco, -arui. *So* inaresco, peraresco.
*Augesco, auxi, s. *to increase.*
*Cǎlesco, cǎlui, s. *to grow warm.*
*Calvesco, —, s. *to become bald.*
*Candesco, candui, s. *to grow white.*
*Cānesco, cānui, s. *to become hoary.*
*Clāresco, clārui, s. *to become bright.*
*Condormisco, -dormīvi, s. *to go to sleep.*
*Conticesco, -tĭcui, *to become silent.*
*Crebresco, crēbui *and* crebrui, *to increase.*
*Crūdesco, crūdui, *to become violent.*
*Dītesco, —, *to grow rich.*
*Dulcesco, —, *to become sweet.*
*Dūresco, dūrui, *to grow hard.*
*Evīlesco, evīlui, *to become worthless.*
*Extimesco, -tĭmui, *to fear greatly.*
*Fātisco, —, *to gape.*
*Flaccesco, flaccui, s. *to wilt.*
*Fervesco, ferbui, s. *to grow hot.*
*Flōresco, flōrui, s. *to begin to flourish.*
*Frācesco, frācui, *to grow rancid.*
*Frīgesco, —, s. *to grow cold.* *perfrīgesco, -frixi. *So* refrīgesco.

*Frondesco, —, s. *to put forth leaves.*
*Frūticesco, —, s. *to put forth shoots.*
*Gĕlasco, —, s. *to freeze.* So *congĕlasco, s. *to congeal.*
*Gĕmisco, —, s. *to begin to sigh.*
*Gemmasco, —, *to begin to bud.*
*Gĕnĕrasco, —, s. *to be produced.*
*Grandesco, —, s. *to grow large.*
*Grăvesco, —, *to grow heavy.*
*Hæresco, —, s. *to adhere.*
*Hĕbesco, —, s. *to grow dull.*
*Horresco, horrui, s. *to grow rough.*
*Hūmesco, —, s. *to grow moist.*
*Ignesco, —, *to become inflamed.*
*Indōlesco, -dōlui, s. *to be grieved.*
*Insōlesco, —, *to become haughty.*
*Intĕgrasco, —, *to be renewed.*
*Jŭvenesco, —, *to grow young.*
*Languesco, langui, s. *to grow languid.*
*Lăpĭdesco, —, *to become stone.*
*Lātesco, —, *to grow broad.*
*Lătesco, *to be concealed.* s. *delĭtesco, -lĭtui; *oblĭtesco, -lĭtui.
*Lentesco, —, *to become soft.*
*Liquesco, —, s. *to become liquid.* *dēliquesco, -lĭcui.
*Lūcesco, —, s. *to grow light, to dawn.*
*Lŭtesco, —, s. *to grow muddy.*
*Măcesco, —, s. } *to grow lean.*
*Macresco, —, s. }
*remacresco, -macrui.
*Mădesco, mădui, s. *to grow moist.*

*Marcesco, —, s. *to pine away.*
*Mātūresco, mātūrui, *to ripen.*
*Misĕresco, misĕrui, s. *to pity.*
*Mītesco, —, *to grow mild.*
*Mollesco, —, *to grow soft.*
*Mūtesco, —, *to become dumb.* *obmūtesco, obmūtui.
*Nigresco, nigrui, s. *to grow black.*
*Nitesco, nĭtui, s. *to grow bright.*
*Nōtesco, nōtui, *to become known.*
*Obbrūtesco, —, *to become brutish.*
*Obdormisco, —, s. *to fall asleep.*
*Obsurdesco, -surdui, *to grow deaf.*
*Occallesco, -callui, *to become callous.*
*Olesco, (*scarcely used.*) *ăbŏlesco, -ōlēvi, s. *to cease.* ădŏlesco, -ōlēvi, -ultum, s. *to grow up.* exŏlesco, -ōlēvi, -ōlētum, *to grow out of date.* So obsōlesco. inŏlesco, -ōlēvi, -ōlĭtum, d. *to grow in or on.*
*Pallesco, pallui, s. *to grow pale.*
*Pătesco, pătui, s. *to be opened.*
*Pāvesco, pāvi, s. *to grow fearful.*
*Pertĭmesco, -tĭmui, d. *to fear greatly.*
*Pinguesco, —, *to grow fat.*
*Pūbesco, —, *to come to maturity.*
*Puĕrasco, —, *to become a boy.*
*Pŭtesco, —, s. } *to become putrid.*
*Putresco, —, s. }
*Rāresco, —, *to become thin.*
*Rĕsĭpisco, -sĭpui, s. *to recover one's senses.*
*Rĭgesco, rĭgui, s. *to grow cold.*
*Rŭbesco, rŭbui, s. *to grow red.* *ērŭbesco, -rŭbui, d.

*Sānesco, —, *to become sound.* *consānesco, -sānui.
*Sĕnesco, sĕnui, s. d. *to grow old.* So consĕnesco.
*Sentisco, —, s. *to perceive.*
*Siccesco, —, s. *to become dry.*
*Silesco, sĭlui, s. *to grow silent.*
*Sŏlidesco, —, s. *to become solid.*
*Sordesco, sordui, s. *to become filthy.*
*Splendesco, splendui, s. *to become bright.*
*Spūmesco, —, *to begin to foam.*
*Stĕrĭlesco, —, *to become barren.*
*Stŭpesco, stŭpui, s. *to become astonished.*
Suesco, suēvi, suētum, s. *to become accustomed.*
*Tābesco, tābui, s. *to waste away.*
*Tĕnĕresco *and* -asco, —, *to become tender.*
*Tĕpesco, tĕpui, s. *to grow warm.*
*Torpesco, torpui, s. *to grow torpid.*
*Trĕmisco, —, s. *to begin to tremble.*
*Tŭmesco, tŭmui, s. } *to begin to swell.*
*Turgesco, —, s. }
*Uvesco, —, *to become moist.*
*Vălesco, —, *to become strong.*
*Vānesco, —, *to vanish.* *ēvānesco, ēvānui.
*Vĕtĕrasco, vĕtĕrāvi, *to grow old.*
*Vīresco, virui, s. *to grow green.*
*Vīvesco, vixi, s. *to come to life.* *rĕvivisco, -vixi.

Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

Apiscor, aptus, *to get. The compounds change* ă *into* I *in the first root, and into* e *in the third; as,* ădipiscor, adeptus. *So* indĭpiscor.
Expergiscor, experrectus, *to awake.*
*Fātiscor, *to gape or crack open. The compounds change* ă *into* ē; *as,* dēfĕtiscor, -fessus.
Fruor, fruĭtus *or* frūctus, frūiturus, d. *to enjoy.*
Fungor, functus, r. d. *to perform.*
Grādior, gressus, *to walk. The compounds change* ā *into* ĕ; *as,* aggrĕdior, aggressus, r. d. *Inf. pres.* aggrĕdi *and* aggrĕdiri; *so,* progrĕdi *and* progrĕdiri; *and pres. ind.* ēgrĕditur, *Plaut.*
*Irascor, *to be angry.*
Lābor, lapsus, r. *to fall.*
*Lĭquor, *to melt, flow.*
Lŏquor, lŏcūtus, r. d. *to speak.*
Mĭniscor, (*obsolete.*) commĭniscor, commentus, p. *to invent.* *rĕmĭniscor, *to remember.*

Mŏrior, (mŏri, *rarely* mŏrīri,) mortuus, mŏrĭtūrus, d. *to die.* So ēmŏrīri, *Plaut. for* ēmŏri.
Nanciscor, nactus *or* nanctus *to obtain.*
Nascor, nātus, nascĭtūrus, u. *to be born.*
Nītor, nixus *or* nīsus, nīsūrus, r. *to lean upon.*
Obliviscor, oblītus, d. p. *to forget.*
Pāciscor, pactus, d. *to bargain.* So dēpāciscor.
Pătior, passus, r. d. *to suffer.* perpĕtior, -pessus.
From plecto, *to twine, come,* amplector, amplexus, d. p. complector, complexus, p. *So* circumplector.
Prŏficiscor, prŏfectus, r. *to depart.*
Quĕror, questus, m. u. d. *to complain.*
*Ringor, *to snarl.*
Sĕquor, sĕcūtus, r. d. *to follow.*
Tŭor, tūtus, *to protect.*
*Vescor, d. *to eat.*
Ulciscor, ultus, m. d. p. *to avenge.*
Utor, ūsus, r. d. *to use.*

Note. *Dēvertor, prævertor, rēvertor,* compounds of *verto,* are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *rēvertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 175.   Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *īv,* and their third in *īt ;* as, aud*io,* audi*vi,* audī*tum.*

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation :—

Audio, -īvi or -ii, m. u. r. d. *to hear.*
Cio, cīvi, to excite. Cf. cieo, § 168.
Condio, -īvi or -ii, d. *to season.*
Custōdio, - īvi or -ii, d. *to guard.*
Dormio, -īvi or -ii, m. r. d. to sleep.
Erŭdio, -īvi or -ii, d. *to instruct.*
Expĕdio, -īvi or -ii, d. *to disentangle.*
Fīnio, -īvi or -ii, r. d. *to finish.*
Gestio, -īvi or -ii, to exult; desire.
Impĕdio, -īvi or -ii, r. d. *to entangle.*
Insānio, -īvi or -ii, *to be mad.*
Irrētio, -īvi or ii, *to ensnare.*
Lēnio, -īvi or ii, d. *to mitigate.*
Mollio, -īvi or -ii, d. *to soften.*

Mūgio, -īvi or -ii, to bellow.
Mūnio, -īvi or -ii, r. d. *to fortify.*
Mūtio, -īvi or -ii, *to mutter.*
Nūtrio, -īvi or -ii, d. *to nourish.*
Partio, -īvi or -ii, r. *to divide.*
Pōlio, -īvi, d. *to polish.*
Pūnio, -īvi or -ii, d. *to punish.*
Rĕdīmio, -īvi, *to crown.*
Scio, -īvi, u. r. *to know.*
Servio, -īvi or -ii, m. r. d. *to serve.*
Sōpio, -īvi or -ii, *to lull asleep.*
Stăbilio, -īvi or -ii, *to establish.*
Tinnio, -īvi or -ii, *to tinkle.*
Vestio, -īvi or -ii, *to clothe.*

§ 176.   The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them.

Remark. The principal irregularity in verbs of the fourth conjugation arises from following the analogy of those verbs of the third conjugation whose first root ends in a consonant; as, *sĕpio, sepsi, septum.* A few become irregular by syncope; as, *vĕnio, vēni, ventum.*

Amĭcio, -ui or -xi, amictum, d. *to clothe.*
Balbūtio, —, to stammer.
Bullio, ii, ītum, *to bubble.*
Cæcūtio, —, to be dim-sighted.
Cambio, —, to exchange.
Dementio, —, to be mad.
Effūtio, —, *to babble.*
Eo, īvi or ii, ītum, r. d. *to go. The compounds have only ii in the perfect, except* ŏbeo, præeo, *and* sŭbeo, *which have* īvi *or* ii. *All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except* ădeo, ambio, ineo, ŏbeo, prætēreo, sŭbeo, circŭmeo *or* circueo, rĕdeo, transeo, *and* *†vēneo, vēnii, r. (from* vēnum eo,) *to be sold.*
Farcio, farsi, fartum *or* fartum, *to cram. The compounds generally change* a *to* e; *as,* rĕfercio, -fersi, -fertum, *but* con- *and* ef-, -farcio *and* -fercio.
Fastīdio, -ii, -itum, d. *to loathe.*
Fĕrio, —, d. to strike.

Fĕrōcio, —, to be fierce.
Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. *to prop up.*
Gannio, —, to yelp, bark.
Glōcio, —, to cluck as a hen.
Glūtio, īvi, or glūtii, to swallow.
Grandio, —, *to make great.*
Grunnio, grunnii, to grunt.
Haurio, hausi, *rar.* haurii, haustum, *rar.* haustum, haustūrus, haustūrus, n. d. *to draw.*
Hinnio, —, to neigh.
Ineptio, —, to trifle.
Lascīvio, lascīvii, to be wanton.
Līgurio, līgurii, to feed delicately.
Lippio, —, r. to be blear-eyed.
Obēdio, obēdii, r. to obey.
Pārio *is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth, changing* ă *to* ē; *as,* ăpĕrio, ăpĕrui, ăpertum, r. d. *to open. So* ŏpĕrio, d. compĕrio, compĕri, compertum, *rarely dep.* compĕrior, *to find out. So* rĕpĕrio, r. d.

Păvio, —, păvītum, *to beat.*
*Prūrio, —, *to itch.*
Queo, quīvi *or* quii, quītum, *to be able.*
    So *nĕqueo.*
*Raucio, —, r. *to be hoarse.*
*Rŭgio, —, *to roar as a lion.*
Sævio, sævii, ītum, r. *to rage.*
*Săgio, —, *to perceive keenly.*
*Sălio, sălui *or* sălii, *to leap. The
    compounds change ă into ĭ; as,* *absĭ-
    lio, —. So circumsĭlio. *assĭlio, -ui.
    So* dissĭlio, insĭlio. *desĭlio, -ui *or* -ii.
    So* exsĭlio, resĭlio, subsĭlio. *translĭ-
    io, -ui *or* -ivi, d. *So* prōsĭlio.
Sălio, —, ītum, r. d. *to salt.*
Sancio, sanxi, sancītum *or* sanctum, d.
    to ratify, sanction.

Sarcio, sarsi, sartum, d. *to patch.*
Sarrio, -īvi *or* -ui, sarrītum, d. *to weed,
    hoe.*
*Scătŭrio, —, *to gush out.*
Sentio, sensi, sensum, r. *to feel.*
Sĕpēlio, sĕpēlīvi *or* -ii, *rar.* sĕpēli, sĕ-
    pultum, r. d. *to bury.*
Sēpio, sepsi, septum, d. *to hedge in.*
*Singultio, —, *to sob, hiccup.*
*Sitio, sitii, —, d. *to thirst.*
Suffio, -ii, -itum, d. *to fumigate.*
*Tussio, —, r. *to cough.*
*Vāgio, vāgii, *to cry.*
Vĕnio, vĕni, ventum, r. *to come.*
Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, r. d. *to bind.*

NOTE. Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three;—*ĕsŭrio, —, ĕsŭritus, r. *to desire to eat;* *nuptŭrio, -ivi, *to desire to marry;* *partŭrio, -ivi, *to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.*

§ **177.**   *Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.*

Assentior, assensus, r. d. p. *to assent.*
Blandior, blandītus, *to flatter.*
Largior, largītus, d. p. *to give, bestow.*
Mentior, mentītus, r. p. *to lie.*
Mētior, mensus *or* mētītus, d. p. *to
    measure.*
Mōlior, mōlītus, d. *to strive, toil.*
Ordior, orsus, d. p. *to begin.*
Orior, ortus, orītūrus, d. *to spring up.
    Except in the present infinitive, this
    verb seems to be of the third conjuga-
    tion.*

Pĕrior, (*obs. whence* pĕrītus.) ex-
    pĕrior, expertus, r. d. *to try.* oppĕ-
    rior, oppertus *or* oppĕrītus, d. *to
    wait for.*
Partior, partītus, d. *to divide.*
Pŏtior, pŏtītus, r. d. *to obtain, enjoy.
    In the poets the present indicative and
    imperfect subjunctive are sometimes
    of the third conjugation.*
Sortior, sortītus, r. *to cast lots.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ **178.**   Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum, vŏlo, fĕro, ĕdo, fĭo, eo, queo,* and their compounds.

Sum and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, but a synopsis only, of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and of its compounds are wanting.

1. *Vŏlo* is irregular only in the present of the indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect of the subjunctive.

REMARK. It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive also and in the imperfect subjunctive, after *ĕ* was dropped, *r* following *l* was changed into *l*; as, *velĕre* (velre) *velle*; *velĕrem* (velrem) *vellem.*

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
vŏl′-lŏ,	vel′-lĕ,	vŏl′-u-i,	*to be willing, to wish.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. vŏ'-lŏ, vīs, vult;	*Perf.* vŏl'-u-ī.
P. vŏl'-ŭ-mŭs, vul'-tĭs, vŏ'-lunt.	*Plup.* vŏ-lu'-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. vŏ-lē'-bam, vŏ-lē'-bās, *etc.*	*Fut. perf.* vŏ-lu'-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut. vŏ'-lam, vŏ'-lēs, *etc.*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. S. vĕ'-lim, vĕ'-līs, vĕ'-lĭt;	*Perf.* vŏ-lu'-ĕ-rim,
P. vĕ-lī'-mŭs, vĕ-lī'-tĭs, vĕ'-lint.	*Plup.* vŏl-u-is'-sem.
Imperf. S. vel'-lem, vel'-lēs, vel'-lĕt;	
P. vel-lē'-mŭs, vel-lē'-tĭs, vel'-lent.	

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. vel'-lĕ.	*Pres.* vŏ'-lens.
Perf. vŏl-u-is'-sĕ.	

NOTE. *Volt* and *voltis*, for *vult* and *vultis*, and *vin'*, for *visne* are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nōlo* is compounded of the obsolete *nē* (for *non*) and *vŏlo*. The *v* of *vŏlo* after *nē* is dropped, and the vowels (*ē ŏ*) are contracted into *ō*.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
nō'-lŏ,	nol'-lĕ,	nōl'-u-ī,	*to be unwilling.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. nō'-lŏ, non'-vīs, non'-vult;	*Perf.* nōl'-u-ī.
P. nōl'-ŭ-mŭs, non-vul'-tĭs, nō'-lunt.	*Plup.* nōl-lu'-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. nō-lē'-bam, -bās, -băt, *etc.*	*Fut. perf.* nō-lu'-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut. nō'-lam, -lēs, -lĕt, *etc.*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. S. nō'-lim, nō'-līs, nō'-lĭt;	*Perf.* nō-lu'-ĕ-rim,
P. nō-lī'-mŭs, nō-lī'-tĭs, nō'-lint.	*Plup.* nōl-u-is'-sem.
Imperf. S. nol'-lem, nol'-lēs, nol'-lĕt;	
P. nol-lē'-mŭs, nol-lē'-tĭs, nol'-lent.	

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	*Future.*
Sing. 2. nō'-lī; *Plur.* nō-lī-tĕ.	*Sing.* 2. nō-lī-tŏ', *Plur.* nōl-ī-tō'-tĕ,
	3. nō-lī'-tŏ; nō-lun'-tŏ.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. nol'-lĕ.	*Pres.* nō'-lens.
Perf. nōl-u-is'-sĕ.	

NOTE. In *non-vis, non-vult*, etc. of the present, *non* takes the place of *ne*, but *nēvis* and *nēvolt* also occur in Plautus.

3. *Mālo* is compounded of *măgis* and *vŏlo*. In composition *măgis* drops its final syllable, and *vŏlo* its *v*. The vowels (*ă ŏ*) are then contracted into *ā*.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
mā'-lŏ,	mal'-lĕ,	māl'-u-ī,	*to prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. mā'-lŏ, mā'-vis, mā'-vult;	*Perf.*	māl'-u-ī.
P. mā'-ŭ-mŭs, mā-vul'-tīs, mā'-lunt.	*Plup.*	mā-lu'-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. mā-lē'-bam, -bās, *etc.*	*Fut. perf.* mā-lu'-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut. mā'-lam, -lēs, *etc.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. S. mā'-lim, mā'-līs, mā'-lĭt;	*Perf.* mā-lu'-ĕ-rim.
P. mā-lī'-mŭs, mā-lī'-tīs, mā'-lint.	*Plup.* māl-u-is'-sem.
Imperf. S. mal'-lem, mal'-lēs, mal'-lĕt;	
P. mal-lē'-mŭs, mal-lē'-tīs, mal'-lent.	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. mal'-lĕ.	*Perf.* māl-u-is'-sĕ.

NOTE. *Māvŏlo, māvŏlunt; māvŏlet; māvĕlim, māvĕlis, māvĕlit;* and *māvĕllem;* for *mālo, mālunt,* etc., occur in Plautus.

§ **179.** *Fĕro* is irregular in two respects:—1. Its second and third roots are not derived from the first, but from otherwise obsolete verbs, viz. *tŭlo* for *tollo,* and *tlao,* sup. *tlātum,* by aphæresis, *lātum* :— 2. In the present infinitive active, in the imperfect subjunctive, and in certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Pres. Indic. fĕ'-rŏ, (*to bear.*)	*Pres. Indic.* fĕ'-rŏr, (*to be borne.*)
Pres. Infin. fer'-rĕ,	*Pres. Infin.* fer'-ri,
Perf. Indic. tŭ'-li,	*Perf. Part.* lā'-tŭs.
Supine. lā'-tum.	

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S. fĕ'-rŏ, fers, fert;	fĕ'-rŏr, fer'-rīs or -rĕ, fer'-tŭr;
P. fĕr'-ī-mŭs, fer'-tis, fĕ'-runt.	fĕr'-ī-mŭr, fĕ-rim'-ī-nī, fĕ-run'-tŭr.

Imperf. fĕ-rē'-bam.	*Imperf.* fĕ-rē'-băr.
Fut. fĕ'-ram, -rēs, *etc.*	*Fut.* fĕ'-rār, -rē'-rīs or -rē'-rĕ, *etc.*
Perf. tŭ'-li.	*Perf.* lā'-tŭs sum or fu'-ī.
Plup. tŭ'-lĕ-ram.	*Plup.* lā'-tŭs ĕ'-ram or fu'-ĕ-ram.
Fut. perf. tŭ'-lĕ-rŏ	*Fut. perf.* lā'-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ or fu -ĕ-rŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	fĕ'-ram, -rās, *etc.*	*Pres.*	fĕ'-rắr, -rā'-rĭs or -rā'-rĕ, *etc.*
Imperf.	fer'-rem, -rēs, *etc.*	*Imperf.*	fer'-rĕr, -rē'-rĭs, *etc.*
Perf.	tŭ'-lĕ-rim.	*Perf.*	lā'-tŭs sim or fu'-ĕ-rim.
Plup.	tŭ-lĭs'-sem.	*Plup.*	lā'-tŭs es'-sem or fu-ĭs'-sem.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. S. fĕr,　P. fer'-tĕ.　　*Pres.* S. fer'-rĕ,　P. fĕ-rĭm'-ĭ-nī.
Fut. S. fer'-tŏ, P. fer'-tŏ-tĕ,
　　　 fer'-tŏ;　　fĕ-run'-tŏ.　*Fut.* S. fer'-tŏr, P. (fĕ-rēm'-ĭ-nī.)
　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　　 fer'-tŏr.　fĕ-run'-tŏr.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	fer'-rĕ.	*Pres.*	fer'-rī.
Perf.	tŭ-lĭs'-sĕ.	*Perf.*	lā'-tus es'-sĕ or fu-is'-sĕ.
Fut.	lā-tū'-rŭs es'-sĕ.	*Fut.*	lā'-tum ĭ'-rī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	fĕ'-rens.	*Perf.*	lā'-tŭs.
Fut.	lā-tū'-rŭs.	*Fut.*	fĕ-ren'-dŭs.

GERUND.

fĕ-ren'-dī, *etc.*

SUPINES.

Former. lā'-tum.　　　　*Latter.* lā'-tū.

NOTE. In the comic writers the following reduplicated forms are found in parts derived from the second root, viz. *tetŭli, tetulĭsti, tetŭlit, tetŭlērunt; tetŭlĕro, tetŭlĕrit; tetulissem,* and *tetulisse.*

§ **180.** *Fīo,* 'to become,' is properly a neuter verb of the third conjugation, having only the parts derived from the first root; but it is used also as a passive of *făcĭo,* from which it takes those parts of the passive which are derived from the third root, together with the participle in *dus.* The infinitive present has been changed from the regular form *fĭĕrĕ* to *fĭĕrī.*

Pres. Indic. Pres. Infin. Perf. Part.
　fĭ'-ŏ,　　fĭ'-ĕ-rī,　　făc'-tŭs,　*to be made* or *to become.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. fĭ'-ŏ, fīs, fĭt;　　　 *Perf.*　făc'-tŭs sum or fu'-ī.
　P. fĭ-mŭs, fĭ-tĭs, fĭ'-unt.　 *Plup.*　făc'-tŭs ĕ'-ram or fu'-ĕ-ram.
Imperf. fī-ē'-bam, fī-ē'-bās, *etc. Fut. perf.* făc'-tŭs ĕ'-rŏ or fu'-ĕ-rŏ.
Fut.　fĭ'-am, fĭ'-ēs, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. fĭ'-am, fĭ'-ās, *etc.*　　　 *Perf.* făc'-tŭs sim or fu'-ĕ-rim.
Imp. fĭ'-ĕ-rem, -ĕ'-rēs, *etc.*　 *Plup.* făc'-tŭs es'-sem or fu-ĭs'-sem.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. fī; *Plur.* fī'-tĕ.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fī'-ĕ-rī.
Perf. fac'-tŭs es'-sĕ or fu-is'-sĕ.
Fut. fac'-tum ī'-rī.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. fac'-tŭs.
Fut. fă-ci-en'-dŭs.

SUPINE.

Latter. fac'-tū.

NOTE. The compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive; as, *calefàcio*, to warm; passive, *calefio*; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. (Cf. *facio* in the list, § 172.) Yet *confit*, *défit*, and *infit*, occur. See § 183, 12, 13, 14.

§ **181.** *Edo*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it has also forms similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *sum:*—Thus.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S. ĕ'-dŏ,   ĕ'-dĭs,   ĕ'-dĭt,
      (*or* ēs,   est);
P. ĕd-ĭ-mŭs,   ĕd-ĭ-tĭs,   ĕ'-dunt.
      (*or* es'-tĭs),

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

S. ĕd'-ĕ-rem,   ĕd'-ĕ-rēs,   ĕd'-ĕ-rĕt,
(*or* es'-sem,   es'-sēs,   es'-sĕt);
P. ĕd-ĕ-rē'-mŭs, ĕd-ĕ-rē'-tĭs, ĕd'-ĕ-rent,
(*or* es-sē'-mŭs, es-sē'-tĭs,   es'-sent).

IMPERATIVE.

Pres, S. ĕ'-dĕ,   P. ĕd'-ĭ-tĕ,
      (*or* ēs;   es'-tĕ).
Fut. S. ĕd'-ĭ-tŏ,   P. ĕd-ĭ-tō'-tĕ, ĕ-dun'-tŏ.
      (*or* es'-tŏ,   es-tō'-tĕ).

INFINITIVE.

Pres. ĕd'-ĕ-rĕ, (*or* es'-sĕ).

PASSIVE.

Pres.   ĕd'-ĭ-tŭr,   (*or* es'-tŭr).
Imperf. ĕd-ĕ-rē'-tŭr, (*or* es-sē'-tŭr).

NOTE. (*a*.) In the present subjunctive, *ĕdim*, *ĕdis*, etc., are found, for *ĕdam*, *ĕdās*, etc.

(*b*.) In the compounds of *ĕdo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur. *Ambĕdo* has the participles *ambens* and *ambĕsus*; *comĕdo* has *comēsus, comesūrus*, and rarely *comestus*; and *adĕdo* and *exĕdo* have *adēsus* and *exēsus*.

§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive. In all the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Part.	
e′-ŏ,	ĭ′-rĕ,	ĭ′-vī,	ĭ′-tum,	*to go.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. S. e′-ŏ, īs, ĭt;　　　*Fut.* ĭ′-bŏ, ĭ′-bĭs, ĭ′-bĭt, etc.
　　 P. ĭ′-mŭs, ĭ′-tĭs, e′-unt.　　*Perf.* ĭ′-vī, ĭ-vis′-tī, ĭ′-vĭt, etc.
Imperf. S. ĭ′-bam, ĭ′-bās, ĭ′-băt;　*Plup.* ĭv′-ĕ-ram, ĭv′-ĕ-rās, etc.
　　 P. ĭ-bā′-mŭs, etc.　　　*Fut. perf.* ĭv′-ĕ-rŏ, ĭv′-ĕ-rĭs, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. e′-am, e′-ās, e′-ăt, etc.　*Perf.* ĭv′-ĕ-rim, ĭv′-ĕ-rĭs, etc.
Imperf. ĭ′-rem, ĭ′-rēs, ĭ′-rĕt, etc.　*Plup.* ĭ-vis′-sem, ĭ-vis′-sēs, etc.

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.
Pres. S. ī, 　 P. ĭ′-tĕ.		*Pres.* ĭ′-rĕ.
Fut. 2. ĭ′-tŏ, 　 ĭ-tō′-tĕ,		*Perf.* ĭ-vis′-sĕ.
3. ĭ′-tŏ; 　 e-un′-tŏ.		*Fut.* ĭ-tū′-rŭs es′-sĕ.

PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
Pres. ĭ′-ens, (*gen.* e-un′-tĭs.)	e-un′-dī,
Fut. ĭ-tū′-rŭs, a, um.	e-un′-dō, etc.

REMARK 1. In some of the compounds the forms *eam, ies, iet* occur, though rarely, in the future; as, *redeam, redies, abiet, exiet, prodient*. *Istis, issem,* and *isse,* are formed by contraction for *ivistis, ivissem,* and *ivisse*. See § 162, 7.

REM. 2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *iri*, and the third persons singular *itur, ibatur, ibitur, itum est,* etc.; *eatur, iretur, eundum est,* etc., which are used impersonally. See § 184, 2, (*a*.)

REM. 3. The compounds of *eo*, including *veneo*, are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ii* in the perfect rather than *ivi*. See under *eo* in § 176. *Adeo, anteeo, ineo, prætereo, sūbeo,* and *transeo,* being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Inëitur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo*. *Ambio,* is regular, like *audio,* but has either *ambibat* or *ambiebat*.

NOTE. *Queo,* I can, and *nequeo,* I cannot, are conjugated like *eo,* but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur. They are sometimes found in the passive voice, before an infinitive passive.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. (1.) Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

REMARK. There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are accounted so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of the passive voice must be wanting in many verbs, from the nature of their signification.

(2.) The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts:—

1. Odi, *I hate.*
2. Cœpi, *I have begun.*
3. Memini, *I remember.*
4. Aio, } *I say.*
5. Inquam, } *I say.*
6. Fāri, *to speak.*
7. Quæso, *I pray.*
8. Ave, } *hail, or*
9. Salve, } *farewell.*
10. Apāge, *begone.*
11. Cĕdo, *tell, or give me.*
12. Confit, *it is done.*
13. Dēfit, *it is wanting.*
14. Infit, *he begins.*
15. Ovat, *he rejoices.*

1. Odi, *cœpi,* and *memini* are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive* verbs. Odi has also a deponent form in the perfect:—Thus,

IND. *perf.* ō'-di *or* ō'-sus sum; *plup.* ŏd'-ĕ-ram; *fut. perf.* ōd'-ĕ-ro.
SUBJ. *perf.* ŏd'-ĕ-rim; *plup.* ō-dis'-sem.
INF. *perf.* ō-dis'-se; *fut.* ō-sū'-rum es'-se.
PART. *fut.* ō-sū'-rus; *perf.* ō'-sus.

NOTE 1. *Exōsus* and *pērōsus,* like *ōsus,* are used actively. *Odīvit,* for *ŏdīt,* occurs, M. Anton. in Cic. Phil. 13, 19: and *odiendi* in Appuleius.

2. IND. *perf.* cœ'-pi; *plup.* cœp'-ĕ-ram; *fut. perf.* cœp'-ĕ-ro.
SUBJ. *perf.* cœp'-ĕ-rim; *plup.* cœ-pis'-sem.
INF. *perf.* cœ-pis'-se; *fut.* cœp-tū'-rum es'-se.
PART. *fut.* cœp-tū'-rus; *perf.* cœp-tus.

NOTE 2. In Plautus are found a present, *cœpio,* present subjunctive, *cœpiam,* and infinitive, *cœpĕre.* Before an infinitive passive, *cœptus est,* etc., rather than *cœp,* etc., are commonly used.

3. IND. *perf.* mĕm'-ĭ-ni; *plup.* mĕ-mĭn'-ĕ-ram; *fut. perf.* mĕ-mĭn'-ĕ-ro.
SUBJ. *perf.* mĕ-mĭn'-ĕ-rim; *plup.* mēm-ĭ-nis'-sem.
INF. *perf.* mĕm-ĭ-nis'-sĕ.
IMPERAT. 2 *pers. S.* mĕ-men'-to; *P.* mĕm-en-tō'-tĕ.

NOTE 3. *Odi* and *memini* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future; as, *fugiet atque oderit.* Cic. In this respect, *nŏvi,* I know, the perfect of *nosco,* to learn, and *consuēvi,* I am wont, the perfect of *consuesco,* I accustom myself, agree with *ŏdi* and *memini.*

4. IND. *pres.* ai'-o,* ——, a'-it; ——, ——, ai'-unt.*
—— *imp.* ai-ē'-bam, ai-ē'-bās, ai-ē'-bāt; ai-ē-bā'-mŭs, ai-ē-bā'-tis, ai-ē-bant.
SUBJ. *pres.* ——, ai'-ās, ai'-āt; ——, ——, ai'-ant.
IMPERAT. *pres.* a'-i. PART. *pres.* ai'-ens.

NOTE 4. *Ais* with *ne* is contracted to *ain'* like *viden', abin';* for *videsne, abisne.* The comic writers use the imperfect *aibas, aibat* and *aibant,* which are dissyllabic.

5. IND. *pres.* in'-quam, in'-quis, in'-quit; in'-qui-mŭs, in'-qui-tis, in'-qui-unt.
—— *imp.* ——, in-qui-ē'-bat, *and* in-qui-bāt; ——, ——, in-qui-ē'-bant.
—— *fut.* ——, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-et; ——, ——, ——.
—— *perf.* ——, in-quis'-ti, in-quit; ——, ——, ——.
SUBJ. *pres.* ——, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; ——, in-qui-ā'-tis, in'-qui-ant.
IMPERAT. *pres.* in'-quĕ, in'-qui-to.

6. IND. *pres.* ——, ——, fā'-tūr; *fut.* fā'-bŏr, ——, fāb'-ĭ-tūr.
—— *perf.* fātus est; *plup.* fātus ĕram.
IMPERAT. fā'-re. PART. *pres.* fans; *perf.* fā'-tŭs; *fut.* fan'-dŭs.
INFIN. *pres.* fā'-ri *or* fā'-ri-ŭr. GERUND. *gen.* fan'-dī; *abl.* fan'-dō.
SUPINE, fā'-tū.

_____

* Pronounced a'-yo, a'-yunt, etc., wherever the diphthong *ai* is followed by a vowel. See § 9, 1.

Interfāri has the forms *interfātur, interfāta est, interfāri, interfans,* and *interfātus.*—*Effāri* has *effābor, effābere, effātus est, effāti sunt;* imperat. *effāre; effāri, effātus, effundus, effando; effātu.*—*Præfāri* occurs in the following forms, *præfātur, præfāmur; præfabuntur; præfārer; præfarentur; præfāti sumus; præfātus fuēro;* imperat. *præfāto, præfā-mino; præfans, præfātus, præfandus; præfando.*—*Prōfāri* has *profātur, profāta est, profāta sunt, profātus* and *prōfans.*

7. IND. *pres.* quæ'-so, —, quæ'-sit; quæs'-ŭ-mŭs, —, —.
   INF. *pres.* quæs'-ĕ-rĕ.

8. IMPERAT. ă'-vē, ă-vē'-to; ă-vē'-to. INF. ă-vē'-rĕ.
   NOTE. *Avēre* and *salvēre* are often used with *jubeo.*

9. IND. *pres.* sal've-o; *fut.* sal-vē'-bĭs. INF. *pres.* sal-vē'-rĕ.
   IMPERAT. sal'-vē, sal-vē'-tĕ; sal-vē'-to.

10. IMPERAT. ăp'-ă-gĕ. So *age* with a subject either singular or plural.

11. IMPERAT. *sing.* cĕ'-do; *pl.* cet'-tĕ for cĕd'-ĭ-tĕ. Hence cĕdodum.

12. IND. *pres.* con'-fĭt; *fut.* con-fī'-et.
    SUBJ. *pres.* con-fī'-ăt; *imperf.* con-fī'-ĕ-rĕt. INF. *pres.* con-fī'-ĕ-rī.

13. IND. *pres.* dē'-fĭt; *pl.* dē-fī'-unt; *fut.* dē-fī'-ĕt. SUBJ. *pres.* dē-fī'-ăt.
    INF. *pres.* dē-fī'-ĕ-rī. So ef-fī'-ĕ-rī, *and* in-ter-fī'-ĕ-rī. *Plaut.; and* in-ter-fī'-at. *Lucr.*

14. IND. *pres.* in'-fĭt; *pl.* in-fī'-unt.

15. IND. *pres.* ŏ'-văt. SUBJ. *pres.* ŏ'-vĕt; *imperf.* ŏ-vā'-rĕt.
    PART. *pres.* ŏ'-vans; *perf.* ŏ-vā'-tŭs; *fut.* ŏv-ā-tū'-rŭs. GERUND, ŏ-van'-dī.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Fōrem, fōres,* etc., *f rē,* (see § 154, R. 3.) *Ausim, ausis, ausit; ausint. Faxo* and *faxim, faxis, faxit; faximus, faxitis, faxint.* *Faxem.* The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect subjunctive. See § 162, 7, (c.), and 9.

REM. 2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *fūro,* to be mad, and *dor* and *der,* from *do,* to give, are not used. So in the imperative *sci, cūpe* and *polle,* from *scio, cūpio,* and *polleo,* do not occur.

REM. 3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si;* as, *sis* for *si vis, sultis* for *si vultis, sōdes* for *si audes* (for *audies.*)

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ **184.** (*a.*) Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *personal* subject.

(*b.*) The subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice is, for the most part, either an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause; but in English the neuter pronoun, *it,* commonly stands before the verb, and represents such clause; as, *me delectat* scribere, *it* delights me *to write.* Sometimes an accusative depending on an impersonal verb takes, in English, the place of a subject; as, *me misĕret tui,* I pity thee.

1. Impersonal verbs in the active voice are conjugated in the several conjugations like *delectat,* it delights; *dĕcet,* it becomes; *contingit,* it happens; *evēnit,* it happens; thus:—

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
IND. Pres.	delectat,	děcet,	contingit,	evěnit,
Imp.	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	eveniēbat,
Fut.	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	eveniet,
Perf.	delectāvit,	decuit,	contigit,	evēnit,
Plup.	delectāvěrat,	decuěrat,	contigěrat,	eveněrat,
Fut. perf.	delectāvěrit,	decuěrit,	contigěrit,	eveněrit.
SUB. Pres.	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
Imp.	delectāret,	decēret,	contingěret,	evenīret,
Perf.	delectāvěrit,	decuěrit,	contigěrit,	eveněrit,
Plup.	delectavisset,	decuisset,	contigisset.	evenisset.
INF. Pres.	delectāre,	decēre,	contingěre,	evenīre,
Perf.	delectavisse.	decuisse.	contigisse.	evenuisse.

2. (a.) Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as,

Illi pugnant; or *pugnātur ab illis,* they fight. *Illi quærunt,* or *quæritur ab illis,* they ask. Cf. § 141, Rem. 2.

(b.) In the passive form, the subject in English is, commonly, either the *agent,* expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

Pugnātum est, we, they, etc. fought; or, the *battle* was fought. *Concurritur,* the *people* run together; or, there is a *concourse.*

(c.) Sometimes the English subject in the passive form is, in Latin, an oblique case dependent on the verb; as, *favētur tibi,* thou art favored.

The following are the forms of impersonal verbs in the several conjugations of the passive voice:—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnātur,	favētur,	curritur,	venītur,
Imp.	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
Fut.	pugnabītur,	favebītur,	currētur,	veniētur,
Perf.	pugnātum est *or* fuit,	fautum est *or* fuit,	cursum est *or* fuit,	ventum est *or* fuit,
Plup.	pugnātum ěrat *or* fuěrat,	fautum ěrat *or* fuěrat,	cursum ěrat *or* fuěrat,	ventum ěrat *or* fuěrat,
Fut. p.	pugnātum ěrit *or* fuěrit.	fautum ěrit *or* fuěrit.	cursum ěrit *or* fuěrit.	ventum ěrit *or* fuěrit.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnētur,	faveātur,	currātur,	veniātur,
Imp.	pugnarētur,	faverētur,	currerētur,	venirētur,
Perf.	pugnātum sit *or* fuěrit,	fautum sit *or* fuěrit,	cursum sit *or* fuěrit,	ventum sit *or* fuěrit,
Plup.	pugnātum esset *or* fuisset.	fautum esset *or* fuisset.	cursum esset *or* fuisset.	ventum esset *or* fuisset.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnāri,	favēri,	curri,	venīri,
Perf.	pugnātum esse *or* fuisse,	fautum esse *or* fuisse,	cursum esse *or* fuisse,	ventum esse *or* fuisse,
Fut.	pugnātum īri.	fautum īri.	cursum īri.	ventum īri.

3. In like manner, in the periphrastic conjugation, the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, of both active and neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, etc., and the *dative* of the person; as, *mihi scribendum fuit*, I have been obliged to write; *moriendum est omnĭbus*, all must die. See § 162, 15, R. 5.

REMARK 1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation, viz. *dĕcet, libet, licet, liquet, misĕret, oportet, pĭget, pænĭtet, pŭdet*, and *tædet*. (See § 169.) Four of these, *dĕcet, libet, licet*, and *liquet* occur also in the third person plural, but without personal subjects. There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing the verbs above enumerated from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

(*a*.) In the first conjugation:—

Constat, *it is evident.*	Văcat, *there is leisure.*	Pugnātur, *a battle is fought.*
Jŭvat, *it delights.*	Certātur, *there is a contention.*	Stātur, *they stand firm.*
Præstat, *it is better.*	Peccātur, *a fault is committed.*	
Restat, *it remains.*		
Stat, *it is resolved.*		

(*b*.) In the second conjugation:—

Appāret, *it appears.*	Pertĭnet, *it pertains.*	Persuadētur, *he, they, etc. are persuaded.*
Attĭnet, *it belongs to.*	Plăcet, *it pleases.*	Pertæsum est, *he, they, etc. are disgusted with.*
Displĭcet, *it displeases.*	Flētur, *we, etc. weep,* or, *there is weeping.*	Silētur, *silence is maintained.*
Dŏlet, *it grieves.*	Nocētur, *injury is inflicted.*	
Miserētur, *it distresses.*		
Pătet, *it is plain.*		

(*c*.) In the third conjugation:—

Accĭdit, *it happens.*	Miserescit, *it distresses.*	Desĭnitur, *there is an end.*
Condūcit, *it is useful.*	Suffĭcit, *it suffices.*	Scribĭtur, *it is written.*
Contingit, *it happens.*	Credĭtur, *it is believed.*	Vivĭtur, *we, etc. live.*
Fallit, *or* } *it escapes me;*	Currĭtur, *people run.*	
Fŭgit me, } *I do not know.*		

(*d*.) In the fourth conjugation:—

Convĕnit, *it is agreed upon; it is fit.*	Expĕdit, *it is expedient.*	Scītur, *it is known.*
Evĕnit, *it happens.*	Dormītur, *we, they, etc. sleep.*	Itur, *they, etc. go.*
		Venītur, *they, etc. come.*

(*e*.) Among irregular verbs:—

Fit, *it happens.*	Prætĕrit me, *it is unknown to me.*	Rēfert, *it concerns.*
Intĕrest, *it concerns.*	Prōdest, *it avails.*	Sŭbit, *it occurs.*
Obest, *it is hurtful.*		Supĕrest, *it remains.*

(*f*.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature. The subject of these may be *Jupiter, deus,* or *cœlum,* which are sometimes expressed. Of this kind are the following:—

Fulget, }	Lapĭdat, *it rains stones.*	Tŏnat, *it thunders.*
Fulgŭrat, } *it lightens.*	Lucescit, } *it grows light.*	Vesperascit, } *evening approaches.*
Fulmĭnat, }	Illucescit, }	Advesperascit, }
Gĕlat, *it freezes.*	Ningit, *it snows.*	Invesperascit, }
Grandĭnat, *it hails.*	Pluit, *it rains.*	

Lapĭdat, ningit, and *pluit* are also used impersonally in the passive voice.

13*

REM. 2. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

REM. 3. Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds, and supines; but *pœnitet* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *dus*, and the gerund. *Pudet* and *piget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

REM. 4. Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tiberis inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

§ 185. Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same meaning.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination ;* as, *fabrico* and *fabricor*, to frame ;—in conjugation ; as, *lāro, -āre*, and *lăvo, -ĕre*, to wash ;— or in certain tenses ; as, *ōdi* and *ōsus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active form in *o*, of the same meaning, but which is, in general, rarely used. A few, however, which are marked r., occur more rarely than the corresponding forms in *o*.

Abomĭnor, *to abhor.*	Fabrĭcor, *to frame.*	Oscĭtor, *to gape.*
Adūlor, *to flatter.*	Fenēror, *to lend on interest.*	Pacifĭcor, r. *to make a peace.*
Altercor, *to dispute.*	Fluctuor, *to fluctuate.*	Palpor, *to caress.*
Amplexor, *to embrace.*	Frustror, *to disappoint.*	Partior, *to divide.*
Arbĭtror, *to suppose.*	Frutĭcor, *to sprout.*	Popŭlor, *to lay waste.*
Argūtor, *to prate.*	Impertĭor, r. *to impart.*	Pūnĭor, *to punish.*
Assentior, *to assent.*	Jurgor, *to quarrel.*	Rumĭnor, *to ruminate.*
Aucūpor, *to hunt after.*	Lacrĭmor, r. *to weep.*	Sciscĭtor, *to inquire.*
Augŭror, *to foretell.*	Ludifĭcor, *to ridicule.*	Sortior, *to cast lots.*
Aurigor, *to drive a chariot.*	Luxūrior, r. *to be rank.*	Stabŭlor, *to stable.*
Auspĭcor, *to take the auspices.*	Medĭcor, *to heal.*	Tueor, *to defend.*
Cachĭnnor, r. *to laugh aloud.*	Mereor, *to deserve.*	Tumultuor, *to be in confusion.*
	Metor, *to measure.*	
Comĭtor, *to accompany.*	Misĕror, *to commiserate.*	Tūtor, *to defend.*
Commentor, *to deliberate.*	Modĕror, *to moderate.*	Utor, *to use.*
Convīvor, *to feast together.*	Munĕror, r. *to bestow.*	Urīnor, *to dive.*
Cunctor, (cont.), *to delay.*	Nictor, r. *to wink.*	Velifĭcor, *to set sail.*
Dignor, *to deem worthy.*	Nutrĭor, r. *to nourish.*	Venēror, *to reverence.*
Depascor, *to feed upon.*	Obsōnor, *to cater.*	Vocifĕror, *to bawl.*
Elucŭbror, *to elaborate.*	Opīnor, *to suppose.*	

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation :—

Boo, -āre, } *to roar.* Boo, -ĕre, r. }	Fulgeo, -ēre, } *to shine.* Fulgo, -ĕre, r. }	Sŏno, -āre, } *to sound.* Sŏno, -ĕre, }
Bullo, -āre, } *to boil.* Bullio, -īre, }	Lāvo, -āre, } *to wash.* Lāvo, -ĕre, r. }	Strīdeo, -ēre, } *to creak.* Strīdo, -ĕre, }
Cieo, -ēre, } *to excite.* Cio, -īre, r. }	Lĭno, -ĕre, } *to anoint.* Lĭnio, -īre, }	Tergeo, -ēre, } *to wipe.* Tergo, -ĕre, }
Denso, -āre, } *to thicken.* Denseo, -ēre, }	Nicto, -āre, } *to wink.* Nicto, -ĕre, }	Tueor, -ēri, } *to protect.* Tuor, -i, r. }
Ferveo, -ēre, } *to boil.* Fervo, -ĕre, }	Sālo, -ĕre, } *to salt.* Sālio, -īre, }	*Those marked* r. *are rarely used.*
Fŏdio, -ĕre, } *to dig.* Fŏdio, -īre, }	Scăteo, -ēre, } *to abound.* Scăto, -ĕre, r. }	

Mŏrior, ŏrior, and *pŏtior*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts.
See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but
differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in
two or more of these respects.

Such are the following :—

Abdīco, -āre, *to abdicate.*
Abdūco, -ĕre, *to refuse.*
Accīdo, -ĕre, *to fall upon.*
Accīdo, -ĕre, *to cut down.*
Addo, -ĕre, *to add.*
Adeo, -īre, *to go to.*
Aggēro, -āre, *to heap up.*
Aggĕro, -ĕre, *to heap upon.*
Allēgo, -āre, *to depute.*
Allēgo, -ĕre, *to choose.*
Appello, -āre, *to call.*
Appello, -ĕre, *to drive to.*
Cādo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Cædo, -ĕre, *to cut.*
Cēdo, -ĕre, *to yield.*
Cālĕo, -ēre, *to be hot.*
Calleo, -ēre, *to be hard.*
Cāno, -ĕre, *to sing.*
Cānĕo, -ēre, *to be gray.*
Cārĕo, -ēre, *to want.*
Cāro, -ĕre, *to card wool.*
Cēlo, -āre, *to conceal.*
Cælo, -āre, *to carve.*
Censĕo, -ēre, *to think.*
Sentio, -īre, *to feel.*
Claudo, - re, *to shut.*
Claudo, -ĕre, *to be lame.*
Collīgo, -āre, *to bind together.*
Collīgo, -ĕre, *to collect.*
Cōlo, -āre, *to strain.*
Cŏlo, -ĕre, *to cultivate.*
Compello, āre, *to accost.*
Compello, -ĕre, *to force.*
Concīdo, -ĕre, *to cut to pieces.*
Concīdo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Conscendo, -ĕre, *to embark.*
Conscindo, -ĕre, *to tear to pieces.*
Consterno, -āre, *to terrify.*
Consterno, -ĕre, *to strew over.*
Decīdo, -ĕre, *to fall down.*
Decīdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Decīpio, -ĕre, *to deceive.*
Desīpio, -ĕre, *to dote.*
Delīgo, -āre, *to tie up.*
Delīgo, -ĕre, *to choose.*
Dilīgo, -ĕre, *to love.*
Dīco, -ĕre, *to say.*
Dīco, -āre, *to dedicate.*

Ēdo, -ĕre, *to eat.*
Ēdo, -ĕre, *to publish.*
Ēdūco, -āre, *to educate.*
Ēdūco, -ĕre, *to draw out.*
Effĕro, -āre, *to make wild.*
Effĕro, -re, *to carry out.*
Excīdo, -ĕre, *to fall out.*
Excīdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Fĕrio, -īre, *to strike.*
Fĕro, -re, *to bear.*
Fērĭor, -āri, *to keep holiday.*
Frīgĕo, -ēre, *to be cold.*
Frīgo, -ĕre, *to fry.*
Fŭgo, -āre, *to put to flight.*
Fŭgĭo, -ĕre, *to fly.*
Fundo, -āre, *to found.*
Fundo, -ĕre, *to pour out.*
Incīdo, -ĕre, *to fall into.*
Incīdo, -ĕre, *to cut into.*
Indĭco, -āre, *to show.*
Indĭco, -ĕre, *to proclaim.*
Inficio, -ĕre, *to stain.*
Infitior, -āri, *to deny.*
Intercĭdo, -ĕre, *to happen.*
Intercīdo, -ĕre, *to cut asunder.*
Jācĕo, -ēre, *to lie.*
Jācĭo, -ĕre, *to throw.*
Lābo, -āre, *to totter.*
Lābor, -i, *to glide.*
Lacto, -āre, *to suckle.*
Lacto, -āre, *to deceive.*
Lēgo, -āre, *to depute.*
Lĕgo, -ĕre, *to read.*
Lĭcĕo, -ēre, *to be lawful.*
Lĭcĕor, -ēri, *to bid for.*
Lĭquo, -āre, *to melt.*
Lĭquĕo, -ēre, *to be manifest.*
Lĭquor, -i, *to melt.*
Māno, -āre, *to flow.*
Mānĕo, -ēre, *to stay.*
Mando, -āre, *to command.*
Mando, -ĕre, *to eat.*
Mēto, -ĕre, *to reap.*
Mētĭor, -āri, *to measure.*
Mētĭor, -īri, *to measure.*
Mĕtŭo, -ĕre, *to fear.*
Mĭsĕror, -āri, *to pity.*
Mĭsĕrĕor, -ēri, *to pity.*
Mŏror, -āri, *to delay.*
Mŏrĭor, -i, *to die.*
Nĭtĕo, -ēre, *to glitter.*

Nītor, -i, *to strive.*
Obsēro, -āre, *to lock up.*
Obsĕro, -ĕre, *to sow.*
Occīdo, -ĕre, *to fall.*
Occīdo, -ĕre, *to kill.*
Opĕrĭo, -īre, *to cover.*
Opĕror, -āri, *to work.*
Oppĕrior, -īri, *to wait for.*
Pando, -āre, *to bend.*
Pando, -ĕre, *to extend.*
Pāro, -āre, *to prepare.*
Pārĕo, -ēre, *to appear.*
Pārĭo, -ĕre, *to bring forth.*
Pārĭo, -āre, *to balance.*
Pendĕo, -ēre, *to hang.*
Pendo, -ĕre, *to weigh.*
Percōlo, -āre, *to filter.*
Percŏlo, -ĕre, *to adorn.*
Permānĕo, -ēre, *to remain.*
Permāno, -āre, *to flow through.*
Prædĭco, -āre, *to publish.*
Prædīco, -ĕre, *to foretell.*
Prōdo, -ĕre, *to betray.*
Prōdĕo, -īre, *to come forth.*
Recēdo, -ĕre, *to retire.*
Recĭdo, -ĕre, *to fall back.*
Recīdo, -ĕre, *to cut off.*
Reddo, -ĕre, *to restore.*
Rĕdĕo, -īre, *to return.*
Rĕfĕro, -re, *to bring back.*
Rĕfĕrĭo, -īre, *to strike back.*
Rĕlēgo, -āre, *to remove.*
Rĕlĕgo, -ĕre, *to read over.*
Sēdo, -āre, *to allay.*
Sĕdĕo, -ēre, *to sit.*
Sīdo, -ĕre, *to sink.*
Sēro, -ĕre, *to sow.*
Sēro, -ĕre, *to entwine.*
Succīdo, -ĕre, *to fall under.*
Succīdo, -ĕre, *to cut down.*
Vādo, -ĕre, *to go.*
Vādor, -āri, *to bind over by bail.*
Vĕnĕo, -īre, *to be sold.*
Vĕnĭo, -īre, *to come.*
Vēnor, -āri, *to hunt.*
Vincĭo, -īre, *to bind.*
Vinco, -ĕre, *to conquer.*
Vŏlo, -āre, *to fly.*
Vŏlo, velle, *to be willing.*

2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect; as,

Aceo, acui, *to be sour.*	Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*	Păveo, pāvi, *to fear.*
Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*	Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*	Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*
Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.*	Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*	Pendeo, pēpendi, *to hang.*
Cerno, crēvi, *to decree.*	Mulceo, mulsi, *to soothe.*	Pendo, pēpendi, *to weigh.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*	Mulgeo, mulsi, *to milk.*	

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto.*

3. Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle; as,

Frīco, frictum, *to rub.*	Pango, pactum, *to drive*	Pătior, passus, *to suffer.*
Frīgo, frictum, *to roast.*		Tēneo, tentum, *to hold.*
Măneo, mansum, *to remain.*	Paciscor, pactus, *to bargain.*	Tendo, tentum, *to stretch.*
Mando, mansum, *to chew.*	Pando, passum, *to extend.*	Verro, versum, *to brush.*
		Verto, versum, *to turn.*

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, from adjectives, or from other verbs.

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives.*

1. (*a.*) Active denominatives are generally of the first conjugation; those which are neuter, of the second. They are usually formed by adding respectively *o* and *eo* to the root; as,

FROM NOUNS.

Actives.	*Neuters.*
Armo, *to arm,* (arma.)	Flōreo, *to bloom,* (flos.)
Fraudo, *to defraud,* (fraus.)	Frondeo, *to produce leaves,* (frons.)
Nomĭno, *to name,* (nomen.)	Lūceo, *to shine,* (lux.)
Numĕro, *to number,* (numĕrus.)	Vireo, *to flourish,* (vis.)

FROM ADJECTIVES.

Albo, *to whiten,* (albus.)	Albeo, *to be white,* (albus.)
Celebro, *to frequent,* (celĕber.)	Calveo, *to be bald,* (calvus.)
Libĕro, *to free,* (liber.)	Flāveo, *to be yellow,* (flāvus.)

(*b.*) Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative; as,

Coacervo, *to heap together,* (acervus.)	Exstirpo, *to extirpate,* (stirps.)
Excăvo, *to excavate,* (căvus.)	Illāqueo, *to insnare,* (lāqueus.)

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, etc., denoted by the primitive; as, *architector,* to build; *comitor,* to accompany; *fūror,* to steal; from *architectus, cōmes,* and *fūr.*

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives*; as, *cornĭcor,* to imitate a crow, from *cornix*; *Græcor,* to imitate the Greeks. Some of these end in *isso*; as, *patrisso,* to imitate a father.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives, inceptives, desideratives, diminutives,* or *intensives.*

1. *Frequentatives* express a repetition, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive.

(*a.*) They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *o* to the third root; as, *dŏmo*, (*dŏmĭt-*) *dŏmĭto*. So *adjŭvo, adjŭto; dīco, dicto; gĕro, gesto*. In verbs of the first conjugation, *ăt* of the root is often changed into *ĭt*; as, *clāmo*, to cry, (*clāmāt-*) *clāmĭto*, to cry frequently.

(*b.*) A few frequentatives are formed by adding *ĭto* to the first root of the primitive; as, *ăgo* (*ăg-*) *ăgĭto*. So *lātĕo, lātĭto; nosco, noscĭto; quæro, quærĭto*.

(*c.*) Frequentatives, from primitives of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, sometimes serve again as primitives, from which new frequentatives are formed; as, *dico, dicto, dictĭto; curro, curso, cursĭto; vĕnio, vento, ventĭto*. Sometimes the second or intermediate form is not in use.

(*d.*) Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *minĭtor*, from *mĭnor* (*mĭnāt-*); *versor*, from *verto* (*vers-*). So *amplexor, sector, lŏquitor*, from *amplector, sĕquor*, and *lŏquor*.

(*e.*) When verbs of this class express simply an *increase* of the action denoted by the primitive, they are, by some grammarians, called *intensives*.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives* mark the beginning of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

(*a.*) They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *căleo*, to be hot; *călesco*, to grow hot.

So *lăbo*, (*āre*), *lăbasco: ingĕmo*, (*ĕre*), *ingĕmisco: obdormio*, (*īre*), *obdormisco*. *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*, (*āre*).

(*b.*) Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

(*c.*) Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *pŭerasco*, from *puer; jŭvĕnesco*, from *jŭvĕnis*.

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 173. Some verbs in *sco*, which are not inceptives, are active; as, *disco, posco*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

(*a.*) They are formed from the third root, by adding *ūrio*; as, *cœno*, to sup, (*cœnāt-*) *cœnātŭrio*, to desire to sup.

(*b.*) Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

(*c.*) Verbs in *ūrio*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prūrio, ligūrio*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *conscrībillo*, to scribble, from *conscrībo*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *so, esso*, or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *făcesso*, to act earnestly—from *făcio*.

So *căpesso, incesso*, from *căpio* and *incēdo. Concŭpisco*, to desire greatly, though in form an inceptive, is, in its signification, an intensive.

NOTE. Verbs of all these classes have sometimes simply the meaning of their primitives.

COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

§ **188.**   Verbs are compounded variously :—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *ædĭfĭco, bellĭgĕro, lucrĭfăcĭo.* See § 103, R. 1.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplĭfĭco, multĭplĭco.*
3. Of two verbs; as, *calĕfăcĭo, madĕfăcĭo, patĕfăcĭo.*

REM. In verbs of this class, the first part, which is a verb of the second conjugation, loses its final *o*; the second part is always the verb *făcĭo.*

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *bĕnĕfăcĭo, mălĕdĭco, sătĭsfĭo, nōlo, neglĭgo.*
5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *addūco, excŏlo, prōdo, subrēpo, discerno, sējungo.*
6. Of a preposition and a noun, as, *pernocto, irrĕtĭo.*

§ **189.**   In composition with particles, the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *æ* in the radical syllable of the simple verb are often changed in the compound.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e* :—

Arceo,   Carpo,   Farcio,   Jacto,   Pārĭo,   Patro,   Spargo,
Candeo,   Damno,   Fătĕscor,   Lacto,   Partĭo,   Sacro,   Tracto.
Capto,   Fallo,   Grădĭor,   Mando,   Pătĭor,   Scando,

EXC. *A* is retained in *amando, præmando, desacro,* and *retracto*; *prædamno,* and *pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *occento* from *canto,* and *anhēlo* from *hālo*; *comperco* also is found.

2. The following, in the first root, change *ă* and *ĕ* into *ĭ*; viz.

ăgo, cădo, ĕgeo, ĕmo, frango, pango, prĕmo, rĕgo, sĕdeo, spĕcio, tango.

3. These change *ă* and *ĕ*, in the first and second roots, into *ĭ*; viz.

sălĭo, *to leap,* săpĭo, tăceo, *and* tĕneo.

4. These change *ă* into *ĭ*, and *æ* into *ī*, in all the roots; viz.

hăbeo, lăcĭo, lăteo, plăceo, stătŭo; cædo, lædo, *and* quæro.

5. The following change *ă*, in the first root, into *ĭ*, and in the third root into *e*; viz.

căno, căpio, făteor, jăcio, răpio, *and* ăpiscor.

EXC. (a.) *A* is retained in *circumăgo, perăgo, satăgo; antĕhăbeo, posthăbeo, dēpango, rĕpango, complăceo,* and *perplăceo.* *Occăno* and *rĕcăno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *cŏēmo, circumsĕdeo,* and *supersĕdeo.* *Antĕcăpio* and *antĭcĭpo* are both used; so also are *sŭperjăcio* and *sŭperjĭcio.*

(b.) *Cōgo* and *dēgo* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de,* and *ăgo; dēmo, prōmo* and *sūmo,* from *de, pro, sub,* and *ĕmo; præbeo,* and perhaps *dēbeo,* from *præ, de,* and *hăbeo; pergo* and *surgo,* from *per, sub,* and *rĕgo.*

NOTE 1. *Făcĭo,* compounded with a preposition, changes *ă* into *ĭ* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *afficio, affĕci, affĕctum.* Some compounds of *făcĭo* with nouns and adjectives, change *ă* into *ĭ,* and also drop *ĭ* before *o,* and are of the first conjugation; as, *significo, maudĭfĭco, magnĭfĭco.* *Spĕcio* forms some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspĭcor* and *suspĭcor.*

NOTE 2. *Lĕgo,* compounded with *con, de, di, e, inter, nec,* and *se,* changes *ĕ* into *ĭ,* in the first root; as, *collĭgo, neglĭgo,* etc.; but with *ad, præ, per, re, sub,* and *trans,* it retains *ĕ*; as, *allĕgo.*

NOTE 3. *Calco* and *salto,* in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco, insulto.* *Plaudo* changes *au* into *ō*; as, *explōdo*; except *applaudo.* *Audĭo* changes *au* into *ō* in *obēdio.* *Causo, claudo,* and *quatĭo,* drop *a*; as, *accūso, rēclūdo, percŭtĭo.* *Jūro* changes *ū* into *ĕ* in *dējĕro* and *pējĕro,* but *dējŭro,* also, is in use.

NOTE 4. In the compounds of *căreo*, *măneo*, and *trăho*, *ă* remains unchanged, and so also does *æ* in the compounds of *hæreo*.

NOTE 5. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used :—

Dēfendo,	Impĕdio,	Confūto,	Instigo,	Conniveo,
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Rēfūto,	Impleo,	Percello,
Expĕrior,	Compello, (-āre,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo,	and some
Expĕdio,	Appello, (-āre,)	Congruo,	Rēnĭdeo,	Exuo,	others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 196.

PARTICLES.

§ **190.** 1. *Particles* are those parts of speech which are neither declined nor conjugated. They are divided into four classes—*adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions,* and *interjections.*

NOTE. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb ; as,

Bĕne et sapienter *dixit,* he spoke *well* and *wisely; Cănis* ēgrĕgie *fidēlis,* a *remarkably* faithful dog; Nimis *valde laudāre,* to praise *too* much. Compare § 277, R. 1.

3. Adverbs, in regard to their *signification,* are divided into various classes ; as, adverbs of *place, time, manner,* etc., and some belong to either class according to their connection.

4. In regard to their *etymology,* adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative.*

REMARK. Among primitive adverbs are here classed not only such as cannot be traced to any more remote root, but also all which are not included in the regular classes of derivative adverbs hereafter mentioned.

PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

§ **191.** The primitive adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, and most of them are contained in the following lists marked I, II, and III.

I. Adverbs of *Place* and *Order.*

ădeo, *so far, as far.*	ălĭcŭbi, *somewhere.*	ălĭquōversum, *toward some place.*
ădhūc, *to this place.*	ălĭcunde, *from some place.*	ălĭunde, *from another place.*
adversŭs, ⎫ *opposite,*	ăliŏ, *to another place.*	
adversum, ⎬ *over against,*	ăliquā, *in some way.*	circā, ⎫ *around.*
exadversŭs,–um, ⎭ *toward.*	ăliorsum, *toward another place.*	circum, ⎬
ăliā, *by another way.*		circĭter, *on every side.*
ăliās, *in another place.*	ălĭquŏ, *to some place.*	circumcircā, *all around.*
ălĭbi, *elsewhere.*		

citrā, *on this side.*
citro, *hither.*
contrā, *over against.*
cōram, *before.*
dēhinc, *henceforth.*
deinceps, *successively.*
deinde, *after that.*
dēnīquě, *finally.*
dēnuo, *again.*
deorsum, *downward.*
dextěr-um, *toward the right.*
eā, *that way.*
eādem, *the same way.*
eō, *to that place, thither.*
eōdem, *to the same place.*
exinde, *after that.*
extrā, *without.*
extrīnsěcūs, *from without.*
fŏrās, *out of doors.*
fŏris, *without.*
hāc, *this way.*
hactěnūs, *thus far.*
hīc, *here.*
hinc, *hence.*
hūc, *hither.*
hūcusquě, *thus far.*
horsum, *hitherward.*
ibi, *there.*
ibidem, *in the same place.*
illāc, *that way.*
illic, *there.*
illinc, *thence.*
illō, *thither.*
illorsum, *thitherward.*
illūc, *thither.*
inde, *thence.*
indidem, *from the same place.*

infrā, *below, beneath.*
ĭnĭbi, *in that place.*
intrinsěcūs, *from within.*
intrā, intro, } *within.*
introrsum, }
intūs, }
istāc, *that way.*
istic, *there.*
istinc, *thence.*
istō, istūc, *thither.*
juxtā, *near, alike.*
nēcūbi, *lest any where.*
neutro, *to neither side.*
neutrūbi, *to neither place, to neither side.*
nullĭbi, } *no where.*
nusquam, }
pěnītūs, *within.*
pōně, post, *behind, back.*
porro, *onward.*
prŏcūl, *far.*
prŏpe, proptěr, *near.*
prorsum, *forward.*
prōtīnūs, *onward.*
quā? *in which way?*
quāquā, } *what way*
quācumque, } *soever.*
quāquě, *wheresoever.*
quālibet, } *in every way.*
quāvis, }
quō? *whither?*
quoad, } *how far.*
quousquě, }
quōpiam, } *to some place.*
quōquam, }
quōquō, } *whither-*
quōcumquě, } *soever.*
quōquōvěrsūs, *toward every side.*

quorsum? *whitherward?*
quōvis, } *to every place.*
quŏlibet, }
retro, } *backward,*
retrorsum, } *back.*
rursum, }
sīcūbi, *if any where.*
sīcunde, *if from any place.*
sinistrorsum, *toward the left.*
subtěr, *beneath.*
sūper, suprā, *above, on top.*
sursum, *upward.*
tum, *then,* in the next place.
ŭbi? *where?*
ŭbĭcumque, } *wherever,*
ŭbĭvis, } *wheresoever.*
ŭbĭlĭbět, } *any where,*
ŭbĭque, } *every where.*
ŭbĭvīs, }
ultrā, ultro, *beyond.*
und·? *whence?*
undēlĭbět, } *from every*
undēvīs, } *where.*
undĭquě, }
undeundě, } *whence-*
undēcumquě, } *soever.*
uspiam, } *somewhere.*
usquam, } *any where.*
usquě, *all the way.*
usquěquāquě, *in all ways.*
utrimquě, *on both sides.*
utrō? *which way?*
utrōbi? *in which place?*
utrōbĭquě, *in both places.*
utrōquě, *to both sides.*
utrōquĭversum, *toward both sides.*

REMARK 1. (*a.*) The interrogative adverbs of place, *ŭbi?* where? *undě?* whence? *quō?* whither? and *quā?* in what way? have relation to other adverbs formed in a similar manner, thus constituting a system of *adverbial correlatives* similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. See § 139, 5, (3.)

(*b.*) As in the case of the pronominal correlatives, the *interrogative* and *relative* forms are alike, beginning with *u* or *qu*. The *demonstratives* are formed from *is*, which is strengthened by *dem*, and the *indefinite* from *aliquis*. The *general relatives* and the *general indefinites* or *universals*, like those of the pronominal adjectives, are made, the former by doubling the simple relatives or by appending to them the termination *cumque*, 'soever,' and the latter by adding *quě*, *vis*, or *libět*. Thus:

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Gen. Relat.	Indefin.	Gen. Indefin.
ŭbi?	Ibi, Ibidem,	ŭbi,	ŭbĭĭbi, ŭbĭcumquě,	ălĭcūbi,	ŭbĭquě, ŭbĭvīs, ŭbĭlĭbět.
undě?	indě, indĭdem,	undě,	undeundě, undēcumquě,	ălĭcundě,	undĭquě, undēvīs, undēlĭbět.
quō?	eō, eōdem,	quō,	quōquō, quōcumquě,	ălĭquō,	quōvīs, quŏlĭbět.
quā?	eā, eādem,	quā,	quāquā, quācumque,	ălĭquā,	quāvīs, quālĭbět.

(c.) To those answering to *ŭbi?* may be added *ălĭbi*, *nullĭbi*, and *ĭbĭbi*, the latter being a strengthened form of *ĭbi*. In like manner *ăliundĕ*, *utrimquĕ*, *intrinsĕcŭs*, and *extrinsĕcŭs* may be added to those answering to *undĕ?* and *ălĭo* to those answering to *quŏ?* So also to *utro?* answer *utrōquĕ* and *neutro*.

(d.) The demonstratives *ĭbi*, *indĕ*, and *ĕo* are used only in reference to relative sentences which precede; but more definite demonstratives are formed from the pronouns *hĭc*, *istĕ*, and *illĕ*, answering in like manner to *ŭbi?* *undĕ?* and *quŏ?* These together with the preceding correlatives are, in the following table, arranged respectively under their several interrogatives *ŭbi?* *undĕ?* *quŏ?* *quā?* and *quorsum?*—Thus :

ŭbi?	undĕ?	quŏ?	quā?	quorsum?
hīc,	hinc,	hūc,	hāc,	horsum,
istīc,	istinc,	istūc,	istāc,	istorsum,
illīc,	illinc,	illūc,	illāc,	illorsum,
ĭbi,	indĕ,	ĕo,	eā,	———,
ĭbĭdem,	indĭdem,	eōdem,	eādem,	———,
ălĭbi,	ăliundĕ,	ălĭo,	ălĭā,	aliorsum,
ălĭcŭbi.	ălĭcundĕ.	ălĭquŏ.	ălĭquā.	ălĭquŏversum.

(e.) *Hĭc*, *hinc*, *hūc*, refer to the place of the speaker; *istīc*, *istinc*, *istūc*, to the place of the second person or person addressed; and *illīc*, *illinc*, *illāc*, to that of the third person or the person or thing spoken of. Cf. § 207, R. 23, (a.) and (d.)

(f.) The interrogative adverbs *ŭbi*, *undĕ*, *quŏ*, *quā*, etc. are often used without a question, simply as adverbs of place; as, *In eam partem ĭtŭros, atque* ĭbi *fŭtŭros Helvetios*, ŭbi *eos Cæsar constituisset.*

(g.) In consequence of a transfer of their meaning, some of the adverbs of place, as, *hĭc*, *ĭbi*, *ŭbi*, *hinc*, *indĕ*, *hactĕnŭs*, etc., become also adverbs of time, and some of them are used also as conjunctions.

II. Adverbs of *Time*.

actŭtum, *immediately.*
abhinc, *from this time.*
ădĕo, *so long (as).*
ădhūc, *until now, still.*
ăliās, *at another time.*
ăliquamdiū, *for awhile.*
ăliquandŏ, *at some time.*
ăliquŏtiēs, *several times.*
antĕ, *before,* }
anteā, *previously.* }
antĕhāc, *formerly.*
bis, *twice.* (see § 119.)
circĭtĕr, *about, near.*
crās, *tomorrow.*
cum or quum, *when.*
deinceps, *in succession.*
deinde or deīn, } *thereupon,*
exinde or exīn, } *afterward.*
dēhinc, *from this time.*
dēmum, *at length.*
dēnĭque, *lastly.*
diū, *long.*
dūdum, *previously.*
eousque, *so long.*
hĕrĕ or hĕrī, *yesterday.*
hīc, *here, hereupon.*
hinc, *from this time, since.*
hŏdĭe, *to-day.*
ĭbi, *then, thereupon.*
ĭdentĭdem, *now and then, repeatedly.*

illĭcō, *immediately.*
indĕ, *after that, then.*
interdum, *sometimes.*
intĕrim, *meanwhile.*
ĭtĕrum, *again.*
jam, *now, already.*
jamdīn, } *long ago.*
jamdūdum, } *long ago.*
jamjam, *presently.*
jampridem, *long since.*
mŏdo, *just now.*
mox, *soon after.*
nondum, *not yet.*
nonnumquam, *sometimes.*
nūdĭus tertĭŭs, *three days ago.*
nunc, *now.*
numquam, *never.*
nūpĕr, *lately.*
ōlim, *formerly.*
pārumpĕr, } *for a short*
paulispĕr, } *time.*
pĕrendĭē, *two days hence.*
porro, *hereafter, in future.*
post, posteā, *afterwards.*
posthāc, *hereafter.*
postrīdĭē, *the day after.*
prīdem, *long since.*
prīdĭē, *the day before.*
prōtĭnŭs, *instantly.*

quamdiū? *how long?*
quandō? *when?*
quandōcumque, *whenever.*
quandŏque, *at some time.*
quătĕr, *four times.*
quoād? } *how long?*
quousque? } *how long?*
quondam, *formerly.*
quŏtĭdĭē, *daily.*
quŏtĭēs? *how often?*
quum or cum, *when.*
rursŭs, *again.*
sæpĕ, *often.*
sĕmĕl, *once.*
semper, *always.*
stătim, *immediately.*
sŭbindĕ, *immediately, now and then.*
tamdiū, *so long.*
tandem, *at length.*
tantispĕr, *for so long.*
tĕr, *thrice.*
tŏtĭēs, *so often.*
tum, tunc, *then.*
ŭbi, *when, as soon as.*
umquam, *ever.*
usque, *until, ever.*
ŭt or ŭti, *as, as soon as, when.*

14

III. Adverbs of *Manner, Quality, Degree*, etc,

ădĕō, *so, to that degree.*
admŏdŭm, *very much.*
ălĭtĕr, *otherwise.*
ceu, *as, like as.*
cūr? *why?*
duntăxăt, *only, at least.*
ĕtĭam, *also, truly, yes.*
ĕtĭamnunc, } *also, besides.*
ĕtĭamtum, }
fĕrē, } *almost, nearly.*
fermē, }
fortassĕ, *perhaps.*
frustrā, *in vain.*
grātīs, *freely.*
haud, *not.*
haudquāquam, *by no means.*
hūcusquĕ, *so far.*
ĭdentĭdem, *constantly.*
immō, *nay, on the contrary.*
ĭtā, *so.*
ĭtem, *just so, also.*
ĭtĭdem, *in like manner.*
juxtā, *equally, alike.*
măgis, *more.*
mŏdŏ, *only.*
næ or nē, *truly, verily.*
nē, *not.*
nēdum, *much less.*
nempĕ, *truly, forsooth.*
nēquāquam, } *by no*
neutĭquam, } *means.*
nīmīrum, *certainly, to be sure.*

nĭmĭs, } *too much.*
nĭmĭum, }
nōn, *not.*
omnīnō, *altogether, only.*
pænĕ, *almost.*
pălam, *openly.*
părĭtĕr, *equally.*
părum, *too little.*
paullātim, *by degrees.*
pĕnĭtŭs, *wholly.*
pĕrindĕ, } *just as,*
proindĕ, } *as though.*
perquam, *very much.*
plērumquĕ, *for the most part, commonly.*
pŏtĭŭs, *rather.*
porro, *moreover, then.*
prætĕr, *beyond, except.*
præsertim, *particularly.*
prŏfectō, *truly.*
prŏpĕ, *almost, near.*
prŏpĕmŏdum, *almost.*
prorsŭs, *wholly.*
quam, *how much, as.*
quamobrem, *wherefore.*
quārĕ? *why? wherefore?*
quăsi, *as if, as it were.*
quĕmadmŏdum, *as.*
quĭdem, } *indeed.*
ĕquĭdem, }
quōmŏdŏ? *how? in what manner?*
quŏquĕ, *also.*
rītĕ, *duly.*
saltem, *at least.*

sānē, *truly.*
săt, } *enough.*
sătĭs, }
sătĭŭs, *rather.*
scīlĭcet, *truly, to wit.*
sĕcŭs, *otherwise.*
seorsum, } *separately.*
seorsŭs, }
sīc, *so.*
sīcŭt, } *so as, as.*
sīcŭtĭ, }
sĭmŭl, *together.*
sĭngillātim, *one by one.*
sōlŭm, *only, alone.*
tam, *so, so much.*
tamquam, *like, as if.*
tantŏpĕrē, *so greatly.*
tantum, *so much, only.*
tantummŏdŏ, *only.*
tĕmĕrē, *at random.*
ūnā, *together.*
usquĕquāquĕ, *in all points, in all ways.*
ŭt, } *as.*
ŭtĭ, }
ŭtĭquĕ, *at any rate, certainly.*
utpŏtĕ, *inasmuch as.*
valdē, *very much.*
vel, *even.*
vĕlŭt, } *as, like as, for*
vĕlŭtĭ, } *example.*
vĭcissim, *in turn, again.*
vĭdĕlĭcet, *clearly, to wit.*
vix, *scarcely.*

REM. 2. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, etc., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *bĕnĕ, mălĕ.* 2. Certainty; as, *certĕ, plānĕ.* 3. Contingence; as, *fortĕ.* 4. Negation; as, *haud, nōn, nĕ, immŏ.* 5. Affirmation; as, *næ, quĭdem, ŭtĭquĕ, nempĕ.* 6. Swearing; as, *herclĕ.* 7. Explaining; as, *vĭdĕlĭcĕt, utpŏtĕ.* 8. Separation; as, *seorsum.* 9. Joining together; as, *sĭmŭl, ūnā.* 10. Interrogation; as, *cūr? quārĕ?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *sătĭs, ădĕō.* 12. Excess; as, *perquam, maxĭmē.* 13. Defect; as, *părum, pænĕ.* 14. Preference; as, *pŏtĭŭs, sătĭŭs.* 15. Likeness; as, *ĭtā, sīc.* 16. Unlikeness; as, *ălĭtĕr.* 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum, sōlum.*

REM. 3. *Nōn* is the ordinary Latin negation. *Haud* signifies either 'not at all,' or 'not exactly.' It is used by the comic and later writers in all combinations, but in the authors of the best age its use is more especially limited to its connection with adjectives and adverbs denoting a measure; as, *haud multum, haud magnum, haud parvus, haud mediocris, haud paulo, haud procul, haud longe,* especially *haud sānē* in connection with other words; as, *haud sānē făcĭle, res haud sānē difficilis, haud sānē intellĭgo:* also *haud quĭsquam, haud umquam, haud quāquam.* With verbs *haud* is scarcely used until Livy and Tacitus, except in the common phrase *haud scĭo an,* which is equivalent to *nescĭo an.—Nē,* (or *nĭ*) is the primitive Latin negative particle, signifying *no* or *not.* It is used in this sense and as an adverb, (*a*) with *quĭdem* to make an emphatic negation of the word standing between them; as, *nē in oppĭdis quĭdem.* not even in the towns; (*b*) in composition as in *nescĭo, nĕfas, neutĕr,* etc.; (*c*) with imperatives and

subjunctives used as imperatives; as, *Nē puĕri, nĕ tanta animis assuescite bella.*
Virg. So, also, in wishes and asseverations; as, *Nē id Jupiter sinēret,* may Jupiter forbid it. Liv. *Ne vivam, si scio,* may I die, if I know. Cic.; and in concessive and restrictive clauses; as, *Ne fuĕrit,* suppose there was not. Cic.
Sint misericordes in furibus ærarii, ne illis sanguinem nostram largiantur, only let them not, etc. Cic. So *dum ne, dummŏdo ne, mŏdo ne, dum quidem ne* ; and in intentional clauses with *ut*—*Immo,* as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of the preceding statement, which is denied; as, *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, sed,* etc. Cic. It may often be translated by 'nay,' or 'nay even.'

REM. 4. *Quĭdem* gives particular emphasis to a word or an idea, and then answers to our 'certainly' or 'indeed,' but frequently, especially with a pronoun, it merely adds emphasis. *Equĭdem,* which is considered as a compound of *ego* and *quidem,* is used exclusively in this sense by Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, but by other and particularly by later writers it is used like *quidem.*—*Nempe,* 'surely,' is often used ironically, when we refute a person by concessions which he is obliged to make, or by deductions. In other connections it may be translated 'namely.'

REM. 5. *Sīc, ĭtā, tam,* as also *tantŏpĕre,* and *ădĕō* signify 'so.'
Sīc is more particularly the demonstrative 'so,' or 'thus'; as, *sic se res hăbet.*
Ita defines or limits more accurately, and is equivalent to our 'in such a manner,' or 'only in so far'; as, *ita defendito, ut neminem lædas.* Frequently, however, *ita* has the signification of *sic,* but *sic* has not the limiting sense of *ita.*—
Tam, 'so much,' generally stands before adjectives and adverbs, and increases the degree; before vowels *tantopĕre* is generally used instead of *tam.*—
Adĕo, 'to that degree' or 'point,' increases the expression to a certain end or result. Hence it forms the transition to the conclusion of an argument or to the essential part of a thing; and Cicero employs it to introduce the proofs of what he has previously alleged; as, *Id adeo ex ipso senātus consulto cognoscite,* and always in such case puts *adeo* after a pronoun.

REM. 6. *Umquam,* 'ever,' and *'usquam,* 'somewhere,' like *quisquam,* require a negation in the sentence, and thus become equivalent to *nunquam* and *nusquam.* A negative question, however, may supply the place of a negative proposition; as, *num tu eum umquam vidisti?*—*Uspiam,* like *quispiam,* is not negative, but is the same as *ălĭcŭbi,* but strengthened, just as *quispiam* is the same as *aliquis.* So, also, *quŏpiam* is used affirmatively, and *quŏquam* negatively.—*Jam,* with a negative, answers to our 'longer'; as, *Nihil jam spēro,*
I no longer hope for any thing. When used to connect sentences it signifies 'further,' or 'now.'—*Usque* is commonly accompanied by the prepositions *ad, in, ab,* or *ex.* It rarely signifies 'ever and anon'; as, *Natūram expellas furcā, tămen usque recurret.* Hor.—*Nūpĕr, mŏdo,* and *mox* are relative and indefinite.—*Dŭdum,* 'previously,' or 'before,' in relation to a time which has just passed away, may often be translated 'just before.'—*Jamdūdum* signifies 'long before,' or 'long since.' With the poets *jamdūdum* contains the idea of impatience, and signifies 'without delay,' 'forthwith'; as, *Jamdūdum sumite pœnas.* Virg.—*Tandem,* 'at length,' also expresses the impatience with which a question is put.

REM. 7. *Tunc* is 'then,' 'at that time,' in opposition to *nunc,* 'now':
Tum is 'then,' as the correlative of *quum,* 'when'; as, *quum omnes adessent, tum ille exorsus est dicĕre,* when all were present, then he began to speak.
Without a relative sentence *tum* signifies 'hereupon,' or 'thereupon'; but a relative sentence may always be supplied. The same difference exists between *etiam nunc* and *etiam tum,* 'still,' or 'yet'; and between *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum; quummaxime* and *tummaxime,* 'just,' or 'even then'; for *etiam nunc, nunc ipsum* and *quum maxime* refer to the present; but *etiamtum, tum ipsum,* and *tummaxime,* to the past.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 192. Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

I. From Nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im* (generally *ātim*), and denote manner; as,

grĕgātim, in herds; *membrātim*, limb by limb; *vĭcissātim*, or more frequently, *vĭcissim*, by turns; from *grex, membrum*, and *vĭcis*.

2. Some end in *ĭtus*, and denote origin or manner; as,

cœlĭtus, from heaven; *fundĭtus*, from the bottom; *rādīcĭtus*, by the roots; from *cœlum, fundus*, and *rādix*.

3. Some are merely the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as,

(*a.*) Some adverbs of time; as, *mānĕ, noctū, dĭū, tempŏre* or *tempŏri, initĭō, princĭpĭō, mŏdō.*—(*b.*) Adverbs of place; as, *fŏris, fŏrās.*—(*c.*) Adverbs of manner; as, *spontĕ, fortĕ, grātīs* or *grātĭis, ingrātĭis, vulgō, partim.*

II. From Adjectives and Participles.

By far the greater number of derivative adverbs come from adjectives and participles (present and perfect), and end in *ē* and *ĭter*.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, are formed by adding *ē* to the root; as,

ægrē, scarcely; *altē*, high; *lībĕrē*, freely; *longē*, far; *mĭsĕrē*, miserably; *plēnē*, fully; *doctē*, learnedly; *ornātē*, elegantly; from *ægĕr, altus, lībĕr, longus, mĭsĕr, plēnus, doctus*, and *ornātus. Bĕnē*, well, is from *bŏnus*, or an older form *bĕnus.*

REMARK. A few adverbs in *e* differ in meaning from their adjectives; as, *sānē*, certainly; *valdē*, very; from *sānus*, sound, well; and *vălĭdus*, strong.

EXC. 1. A few adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, add *ĭter, ĭus, im*, or *ātim* to the root; as,

nāvĭter, actively; *antīquĭtus*, anciently; *dīvīnĭtus*, divinely; *prīvātim*, privately; *tuātim*, after your manner; *singŭlātim, singillātim, sigillātim*, or *singullim*, severally; *casim, carptim, sensim, statim*, etc. from *nāvus, antīquus, dīvīnus, prīvātus, tuus, singŭli, cæsus, carptus*, etc.

EXC. 2. Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *dūrĕ, dūrĭter; firmē, firmĭter; nāvē, nāvĭter; largē, largĭter; lūcŭlentē, lūcŭlentĕr; turbŭlentē, turbŭlentĕr;* so *cautē* and *cautim; hūmānē, hūmānĭter;* and *hūmānĭtus; pūblĭcē* and *pūblĭcĭtus.*

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the third declension, are formed by adding *ĭter* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *ĕr* only is added; as,

ācrĭter, sharply; *fēlīcĭter*, happily; *turpĭter*, basely;—*ēlĕgantĕr*, elegantly; *prūdentĕr*, prudently; *ămantĕr*, lovingly; *prŏpĕrantĕr*, hastily; from *ācĕr, fēlix, turpis, ēlĕgans, prūdens, ămans*, and *prŏpĕrans.* So also from the obsolete *ălis* for *ălius*, and *prŏpis*, (neuter *prŏpĕ*), come *ălĭter* and *prŏpĭter* for *prŏpĭtĕr.*

EXC. From *audax* comes by syncope *audāctĕr:* from *fortis* comes *fortĭtĕr:* from *omnis, omnīno;* from *ūbĕr, ūbertim;* and from *nēquam, nēquĭtĕr.*

3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *tēs;* as,

quinquiēs, dĕciēs, from *quinquĕ* and *dĕcem.* So *tŏtiēs* and *quŏtiēs,* from *tŏt* and *quŏt.* See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(a.) Ablatives in *ō,* from adjectives and participles of the second declension; as, *cĭtō,* quickly; *continŭō,* immediately; *falsō,* falsely; *crēbrō,* frequently; *mērĭtō,* deservedly; *nĕcŏpīnātō,* unexpectedly; *fortŭītō,* by chance; *auspĭcātō,* auspiciously; *consultō,* designedly; and a few in *ā* from adjectives of the first declension; as, *rectā,* straight on; *ūnā,* together. In like manner, *rĕpentĕ,* suddenly, from *rēpens;* and *pĕrĕgrē* or *pĕrĕgrī,* from *pĕrĕgĕr.*

(b.) Nominatives or accusatives of the third declension in the neuter singular; as, *făcĭlĕ, diffĭcĭlĕ, rĕcens, sublīmĕ,* and *impūnĕ;* and some also of the second declension; as, *cētĕrum, plērumquĕ, multum, plūrĭmum, pŏtissĭmum, paulum, nĭmĭum, pārum,* and the numeral adverbs, *prīmum, ĭtĕrum, tertĭum, quartum,* etc. which have also the termination in *ō,* and so also *postrēmum (ō),* and *ultĭmum (ō).* The neuter plural sometimes occurs also, especially in poetry; as, *multă gĕmĕrĕ; tristĭă ŭlŭlārĕ; crēbră fĕrīrĕ.*

(c.) Accusatives of the first declension; as, *bĭfărĭam, trĭfărĭam, multĭfărĭam, omnĭfărĭam,* etc. scil. *partem.*

NOTE 1. The forms in *ē* and *ō* from adjectives of the second declension have generally the same meaning, but *vērē* and *vēro* have a somewhat different sense. *Vērē,* truly, is the regular adverb of *vērŭs,* true; but *vēro* is used in answers, in the sense of 'in truth,' or 'certainly.' In this use it is added to the verb used in the question; as, *adfŭistĭnē hĕri in convīvio?* The affirmative answer is *ego vēro adfŭi,* or without the verb, *ego vēro,* and negatively, *mĭnĭmē vēro;* and as *vēro* thus merely indicates a reply, it is often untranslatable into English.— *Certō,* on the other hand, usually takes the meaning of the adjective *certŭs,* while *certē* often signifies 'at least'; as, *victi sŭmus, aut, si dignĭtas vinci non pŏtest, fractī certē;* but *certē* is frequently used in the sense of 'certainly,' especially in the phrase *certē scio.*

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics. Such are *āmens, dīrus, discors, gnārŭs, rŭdis, trux, imbellis, immŏbĭlis,* and similar compounds. In place of the adverbs formed from *vĕtŭs* and *fĭdŭs, vĕtustē* and *antīquē* are used for the former, and *fĭdēlĭtĕr* for the latter, from *vĕtustŭs, antīquŭs,* and *fĭdēlis.*

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, etc. (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

REMARK. The terminations *ō* and *ŭc* denote the place *whither,* instead of the accusative of the pronoun with a preposition; as, *eō* for *ad ĕum lŏcum;* *hūc* for *ad hunc lŏcum;* the terminations *dĕ* and *inc* denote the place *from which;* *ĭ* and *ĭc,* the place *in which;* and *ā* and *āc,* the place *by* or *through which;* as, *eā; viā* or *partĕ* being understood.

IV. (a.) A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *subtŭs,* beneath; from *sŭb; proptĕr,* near; from *prŏpĕ.* (b.) *Mordĭcŭs* and *versŭs* are derived from the verbs *mordeo* and *verto.*

REMARK. Diminutives are formed from a few adverbs; as, *clam, clanculum; prīmum, prīmŭlum; cēlĕrĭus, cēlĕrĭuscŭlē; sæpĭus, sæpĭuscŭlē; bĕnĕ, bellĕ, bellissĭmē,*

COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

§ **193.**   Adverbs are compounded variously :—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *postrīdĭē, quŏtīdĭē, magnŏpērĕ, maxĭmŏpērĕ, summŏpērĕ, quantŏpērĕ, tantŏpērĕ, tantummŏdŏ, solummŏdŏ, multĭmŏdĭs, quŏtannīs*—of *postĕrō dĭē, magnō ŏpĕrē*, etc.

2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hŏdĭē, quārē, quōmŏdŏ*—of *hōc dĭē, quā rē*, etc.

3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nūdĭus, sæpĕnămērō*—of *nunc dies*, etc.

4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *commĭnūs, ēmĭnūs, illĭco, obĭter, extemplŏ, obvĭam, postmŏdŏ, admŏdum, prŏpĕdiem*—of *con, e*, and *mănūs ; in* and *lŏcūs ;* etc.

5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *ălĭŏquī* or *ălĭŏquīn, cētĕrŏquī* or *cētĕrŏquīn*—of *ălĭūs* and *quī*, i. e. *ălĭō quŏ* (*mŏdŏ*), etc.

6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *ălĭquamdĭū, ălĭcŭbi*—of *ălĭquĭs, dĭū*, and *ŭbĭ ; nēquāquam* and *nēquĭcquam*—of *nē* and *quĭcquam*.

7. Of two verbs; as, *īlĭcĕt, scīlĭcĕt vĭdĕlĭcĕt*—of *īrĕ, scīrĕ, vĭdērĕ*, and *lĭcĕt*.

8. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *quŏlĭbĕt, ŭbĭvīs, undēlĭbĕt.* So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *cāpĭo ; duntaxat*—from *dum* and *taxo.*

9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum, dextrorsum, horsum, retrorsum, sursum*—of *dexĕr, hĭc, retro, sŭpĕr*, and *vorsŭs* or *versūs.*

10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdūdum, quamdĭū, tamdĭū, cummaxĭmē, tummaxĭmē, quousquĕ, sĭcŭt.*

11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *dēnuo, imprīmĭs, cumprīmĭs, apprīmē, incassum*—of *dē nōvō, in prīmĭs*, etc.

12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quaproptĕr, posteā, intereā, prætĕreā, hactĕnūs, quātĕnūs, ălĭquătĕnūs, eātĕnūs*—of *proptĕr quæ, post ea* or *eam*, etc.

13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *abhinc, ādhūc, dērĕpentĕ, intĕrĭbi, intĕrdĭū, interdum, persæpĕ.*

14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insŭpĕr, prōtĭnūs, indĕ, dein, deindĕ, pĕrindĕ.*

15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *nĕcŭbi, sĭcŭbi*—of *nē, sī*, and *ălĭcŭbi.*

16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition; as, *ĭbĭdem, pārumpĕr, quandōcumquĕ, ŭbĭquĕ, utcumquĕ.*

17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *forsĭtan*—of *fors, sĭt, ăn, quemadmŏdum, quamobrem*, etc.

18. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *nīmīrum, utpŏtĕ.*

19. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *quantumvīs, quantumlĭbĕt.*

Signification of certain Compound and Derivative Adverbs.

1. The adverbs *continuo, prōtĭnus, stătim, confestim, sŭbĭto, rĕpente* and *dērĕpente, actūtum, illĭco, īlĭcet, extemplo*, signify in general 'directly' or 'immediately'; but, strictly, *continuo* means, 'immediately after'; *stătim*, 'without delay'; *confestim*, 'directly'; *sŭbĭto*, 'suddenly, unexpectedly'; *prōtĭnus*, 'farther,' viz. in the same direction, and hence, 'without interruption'; *rĕpente* and *dērĕpente*, 'at once,' opposed to *sensim*, 'gradually,' (see Cic. Off. 1, 33); *actūtum*, 'instantaneously,' i. q. *eōdem actū ; illĭco*, and more rarely *īlĭcet*, 'forthwith, the instant,' (Virg. Æn. 2, 424, Cic. Mur. 10); so also *extemplo*, (Liv. 41, 1).

2. *Præsertim, præcĭpue, imprimis, cumprimis, apprime*, are generally translated 'principally,' but, properly, *præsertim* is 'particularly,' and sets forth a particular circumstance with emphasis; *præcĭpue*, from *præcăpio*, has reference to privilege, and signifies 'especially'; *imprimis* and *cumprimis*, signify 'principally,' or 'in preference to others'; and *apprime*, 'before all,' 'very,' is used

in pure Latin to qualify and strengthen only adjectives. *Admŏdum* properly signifies 'according to measure,' that is, 'in as great a measure as can be,' 'very, exceedingly.' With numerals it denotes approximation, 'about.' *Admŏdum nihil* and *admŏdum nullus* signify 'nothing at all' and 'no one at all.'

3. *Mŏdo* is the usual equivalent for 'only.' *Sōlum,* 'alone,' 'merely,' points to something higher or greater. *Tantum,* 'only,' 'merely,' intimates that something else was expected. The significations of *sōlum* and *tantum* are strengthened by *mŏdo,* forming *sōlummŏdo* and *tantummŏdo.* *Duntaxat,* 'only, solely,' is not joined with verbs. It also signifies 'at least,' denoting a limitation to a particular point. *Saltem* also signifies 'at least,' but denotes the reduction of a demand to a minimum; as, *Eripe mihi hunc dolōrem, aut minue saltem.*

4. *Frustrā* implies a disappointed expectation; as in *frustra suscipĕre labōres.* *Nēquicquam* denotes the absence of success, as in Hor. Carm. 1, 3, 21. *Incassum,* composed of *in* and *cassum,* 'hollow' or 'empty,' signifies 'to no purpose'; as, *tēla incassum jacĕre.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. 1. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *ē* and *tĕr,* and most of those in *o,* are compared like their primitives.

2. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *iŭs;* the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ŭs* into *e ;* as,

dārē, dārĭŭs, dārissĭmē ; făcĭlē, făcĭlĭŭs, făcĭllĭmē ; ācrĭtēr, ācrĭŭs, ācerrĭmē ; rārō, rārĭŭs, rārissĭmē ; mātūrē, mātūrĭŭs, mātūrissĭmē or *mātūrrĭme.*

3. Some adverbs have superlatives in *ō* or *um;* as, *mĕritissĭmō, plūrĭmum, prīmō* or *prīmum, pŏtissĭmum.*

4. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, (see §§ 125, 126), that of the adverb is so likewise ; as,

bĕnē, mĕlĭŭs, optĭmē ; mălē, pĕjŭs, pessĭmē ; părum, mĭnŭs, mĭnĭmē ; multum, plūs, plūrĭmum ; —, prĭŭs, prīmō or *prīmum ; —, ōcĭŭs, ŏcissĭme ; —, dĕtērĭŭs, dĕterrĭme ; —, pŏtĭŭs, pŏtissĭme* or *pŏtissĭmum ; mĕritō, —, mĕritissĭmo ; sătĭs, sătĭŭs, —. Măgĭs, maxĭmē,* (from *magnŭs,*) has no positive ; *nŭpēr, nŭperrĭme,* has no comparative. *Prŏpē, prŏpĭŭs, proxĭme :* the adjective *prŏpĭŏr* has no positive in use. The regular adverb in the positive degree from *ŭbēr* is wanting, its place being supplied by *ŭbertĭm,* but *ŭbērĭŭs* and *ŭbertĭmē* are used. So instead of *tristĭtēr, tristē,* the neuter of *tristis,* is used, but the comparative *tristĭŭs* is regular ; and from *sŏcors* only *sŏcordĭŭs,* the comparative, is in use.

5. *Dĭū* and *saepē,* though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared ;— *dĭū, dĭūtĭŭs, dĭūtissĭme ; saepē, saepĭŭs, saepissĭme.* A comparative *tempĕrĭŭs,* from *tempĕrī* or *tempŏrī,* also sometimes occurs. So *sēcŭs, sēcĭŭs.*

6. Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *măgĭs* and *maxĭmē ;* as, *măgĭs ăpertē, maxĭmē accommŏdātē.*

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. 1. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

2. Prepositions express the relations of persons or things, either to one another, or to actions and conditions; as, *ămor meus erga te,* my love toward thee ; *eo ad te,* I go to thee.

3. Some prepositions have the noun or pronoun which follows them in the accusative, some, in the ablative, and some, in either the accusative or the ablative.

4. Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them :—

ăd, *to, towards, at, for.*
adversŭs, } *against,*
adversum, } *towards.*
antĕ, *before.*
ăpŭd, *at, with, near, before, in presence of.*
circā, } *around, about.*
circum, } *around, about.*
circĭtĕr, *about, near.*
cĭs, } *on this side, within.*
citrā, } *on this side, within.*
contrā, *against, opposite.*
ergā, *towards, opposite.*

extrā, *without, beyond.*
infrā, *under, beneath.*
intĕr, *between, among, during.*
intrā, *within.*
juxtā, *near to, next to.*
ŏb, *for, on account of, before.*
pĕnĕs, *in the power of, with.*
pĕr, *through, throughout, by, during.*
pōne, *behind.*

post, *after, since, behind.*
praetĕr, *past, before, against, beyond, besides.*
prŏpĕ, *near by, nigh.*
proptĕr, *near, on account of.*
sĕcundum, *after, behind, along, next to, according to.*
suprā, *above, over.*
trans, *over, beyond.*
ultrā, *beyond.*

5. Eleven prepositions have after them an ablative :—

ā, } *from, after, by.*
ăb, } *from, after, by.*
abs,
absquĕ, *without, but for.*
cōram, *before, in presence of.*
cum, *with.*

dē, *from, down from, after, of, concerning.*
ē, } *out of, from, of, by,*
ex, } *after.*
pălam, *before, in presence of.*

prae, *before, for, on account of, in comparison with.*
prō, *before, for, instead of, according to.*
sĭnĕ, *without.*
tĕnŭs, *as far as, up to.*

6. Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative :—

clam, *without the knowledge of.*
In, *in, on; to, into, against.*

sŭb, *under, about, near.*
subtĕr, *under, beneath.*

sŭpĕr, *above, over; upon, concerning.*

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally *placed before* the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it. Cf. § 279, 10.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants: *ăb* before vowels, and frequently before consonants, though rarely before labials: *abs* is obsolete, except in the phrase *abs te.*
E is used only before consonants, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

REM. 3. *Versŭs,* which follows its noun, (cf. § 235, R. 3,) *usquĕ,* and *exadversŭs (-um),* sometimes take an accusative, *sĭmŭl* and *prŏcŭl,* an ablative, and are then by some called prepositions. *Sĕcŭs,* with an accusative, occurs in Pliny and Cato.

REM. 4. Many of the prepositions, especially those which denote place, are also used as adverbs. Cf. § 191.

Signification and Use of certain Prepositions.

REM. 5. (*a.*) *Ad* denotes direction, and answers to the questions Whither? and Till when? as, *Venio ăd te. Sophŏcles ăd summam senectūtem tragaedias fēcit.* Cic. It also denotes a fixed time; as, *ăd hōram,* at the hour; *ăd tempus aliquid făcĕre,*—at the right time. But sometimes *ăd tempus* denotes 'for a time.' Sometimes, also, *ăd* denotes the approach of time; as, *ăd lūcem, ăd vespĕram, ăd extrēmam,* towards day-break, etc.; and also the actual arrival of a time; as, *ăd prīma signa vēris prŏfectus,* at the first sign of Spring.

(*b*.) In answer to the question Where? *ăd* signifies 'near' a place; as, *ăd urbem esse* ; *ăd portas urbis* ; *pugna navālis ăd Tenēdum*. It is used like *in*, 'at,' in such phrases as *ăd œdem Bellōnœ*, or, without *œdem*, *ăd Opis* ; *negotium habēre ăd portum*.—With numerals it may be rendered 'to the amount of' or 'nearly'; as, *ăd ducentos*. It is also used like *circĭter* without any case; as, *Occīsis ăd homĭnum millĭbus quatuor*.—The phrase *omnes ăd ūnum* signifies, 'all without exception,' 'every one.'

(*c*.) *Ad* often denotes an object or purpose, and hence comes its signification of 'in respect to'; as, *hŏmo ăd labōres belli impĭger*. It is also used in figurative relations to denote a model, standard, or object of comparison, where we say 'according to,' or 'in comparison with'; as, *ăd mŏdum, ăd effĭgiem, ăd simĭlitudĭnem, ăd speciem alicŭjus rei* ; *ăd normam*, etc. *ăd voluntātem alicŭjus facĕre alĭquid*. *Ad verbum* signifies, 'word for word'; *nihil ăd hanc rem*, 'nothing in comparison with this thing.'

REM. 6. *Ăpŭd* expresses nearness to, and was primarily used of persons as *ăd* was applied to things. *Apŭd* also denotes rest, and *ăd* direction, motion, etc. Hence it signifies 'with,' both literally and figuratively. With names of places it signifies 'near,' like *ăd* ; as, *Măle pugnātum est ăpŭd Caudium*. But in early writers, *ăpŭd* is used for *in* ; as, *Augustus ăpŭd urbem Nŏlam extinctus est*,—at Nola.—With *me, te, se*, or the name of a person, it signifies 'at the house' or 'dwelling of'; as, *Fuisti ăpŭd Lœcam illā nocte*.—Before appellatives of persons having authority in regard to any matter, it is translated 'before,' 'in the presence of'; as, *ăpŭd judĭces, ăpŭd prætōrem, ăpŭd popŭlum*.—It is also used with names of authors, instead of *in* with the name of their works; as, *Apŭd Xenophontem*, but we cannot say *in Xenophonte*.

REM. 7. *Adversŭs, contrā*, and *ergā* signify 'opposite to.' *Contrā* denotes hostility, like our 'against'; *ergā*, a friendly disposition, 'towards'; and *adversŭs* is used in either sense. But *ergā* sometimes occurs in a hostile sense.

REM. 8. *Intrā* signifies 'within,' in regard both to time and place. In regard to place it is used in answer to both questions Where? and Whither? It denotes time either as an entire period, when it is equivalent to 'during,' or as 'unfinished,' when it corresponds with 'under,' or 'before the expiration of.'

REM. 9. *Pĕr*, denoting place, signifies, 'through,' and also 'in,' in the sense of 'throughout.'—With the accusative of persons it signifies 'through,' 'by the instrumentality of.' It often expresses the manner; as, *pĕr lĭtĕras*, by letter; *pĕr injuriam, pĕr scĕlus*, with injustice, criminally; *pĕr īram*, from or in anger; *pĕr simulatiōnem, pĕr speciem, pĕr causam*, under the pretext; *pĕr occasiōnem*, on the occasion; *pĕr ridĭcŭlum*, in a ridiculous manner.—It sometimes signifies 'on account of'; as, *pĕr valetudĭnem*, on account of illness.—*Pĕr me licet*,—so far as I am concerned.

REM. 10. *A* or *ăb*, denoting time, is used with nouns, both abstract and concrete, with the same general meaning; as, *ā prīmā œtāte, ăb ineunte œtāte, ăb initio œtātis, ăb infantiā, ā puerĭtiā, ăb adolescentiā* ; and, *ā puĕro, ā puĕris, ăb adolescentŭlo, ăb infante*, all of which signify 'from an early age.' So also, *ā parvis, ā parvŭlo, ā tenĕro, ā tenĕris unguicŭlis*, which expressions are of Greek origin.—*Ab initio, ā principio, ā primo*, properly denote the space of time from the beginning down to a certain point; as, *Urbem Rŏmam ā principio rĕges habuēre*, i. e. for a certain period after its foundation. But frequently *ăb initio* is equivalent to *inĭtio*, in the beginning.—The adherents or followers of a school are often named from its head; as, *ā Plătōne, ăb Aristotĕle*, etc.—In comic writers *ăb* is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *ancilla ăb Andriā*.—In a figurative sense it signifies 'with regard to'; as, *ăb equĭtātu firmus*.—With names of persons it also denotes relationship, and signifies 'on the side of'; as, *Augustus ā matre Măgnum Pompeium artissĭmo contingēbat grădu*,—on his mother's side.—*Stătim, confestim, rĕcens ăb alĭquā re*, 'immediately after.'—*Ab itinĕre alĭquid facĕre*, to do a thing while on a journey.

REM. 11. *Cum* is used not only to designate accompanying persons but also accompanying circumstances; as, *cum alĭquo īre* ; *hostes cum detrimento sunt*

depulsi. It signifies also 'in,' i. e. 'dressed in'; as, *cum tunicā pullā sedēre.* With verbs implying hostility, *dē* signifies 'with,' in the sense of 'against'; as, *cum aliquo bellum gerēre; cum aliquo quǣri,* to complain of or against.

REM. 12. *Dē* commonly signifies 'concerning,' 'about.' Hence *traditur dē Homēro* is very different from *traditur ab Homēro*; in the former, Homer is the object, in the latter the agent.—In the epistolary style, when a new subject is touched upon, *dē* signifies 'in regard to,' 'as respects'; as, *dē frātre, confīdo ita esse, ut semper volui.*—It often signifies 'down from'; and also 'of,' in a partitive sense; as, *hŏmo dē plēbe, unus ŭb populo.*—From its partitive signification arises its use in denoting time; as, *in comitium dē noctĕ ventre,* i. e. even by night, or spending a part of the night in coming; hence *multā dē noctĕ, mediā dē nocte,* 'in the depth of night,' 'in the middle of the night.'—In other cases, also, it is used for *ex* or *ab*; as, *Audīvi hoc dē parente meo puer.* Cic.: especially in connection with *emēre, mercāri, conducĕre. Triumphum agĕre dē Gallis* and *ex Gallis* are used indiscriminately—Sometimes, like *secundum,* it signifies ' in accordance with,' 'after'; as, *dē consilio meo*:—sometimes it denotes the manner of an action; as, *dēnuo, dē integro,* afresh; *dē improviso,* unexpectedly; *dē industriā,* purposely:—*quā dē re, quā dē causā, quibus dē causis,* for which reason or reasons.

REM. 13. *Ex,* 'from,' 'out of.' *Ex ǣquo pugnāre,* to fight on horseback; so *ex itinĕre scribĕre: ex adverso, ē regiōne,* opposite: *ex omni parte,* in or from all parts.—*Ex vino* or *ex aquā coquĕre* or *bibĕre,* i. e. 'with wine,' etc. are medical expressions.—It sometimes denotes manner; as, *ex animo laudāre,* to praise heartily; *ex sententiā* and *ex voluntāte,* according to one's wish.—It is also, like *dē,* used in a partitive sense; as, *unus ē plēbe, unus ē multis.*

REM. 14. *In,* with the accusative, signifying 'to' or 'into,' denotes the point towards which motion proceeds; as, *in ǣdem īre;* or the direction in which a thing extends; as, *dēcem pĕdes in altitudinem,* in height; so, also, it denotes figuratively the object towards which an action is directed, either with a friendly or a hostile design; as, *amor in patriam, odium in malos cives, in milites liberālis : oratio in aliquem,* a speech against some one.—It also denotes a purpose; as, *pecunia dāta est in rem militārem. Pax dāta Philippo in has leges est,* on these conditions.—With words denoting time, it expresses a predetermination of that time, like 'for'; as, *invitāre aliquem in postērum diem,* for the following day. *In diem vivĕre,* to live only for the day; *in futūrum, in postērum, in reliquum,* for the future; *in ǣternum, in perpetuum,* forever; *in prǣsens,* for the present: with all these adjectives *tempus* may be supplied. *In* with *singŭli,* expressed or understood, denotes a distribution, and may be translated 'to,' 'for,' 'on,' 'over.'—*In singŭlos dies,* or simply *in dies,* with comparatives and verbs denoting increase, signifies 'from day to day.'— In some phrases it denotes the manner of an action; as, *servīlem in mŏdum, mīrum in mŏdum ;* so *in univcrsum,* in general; *in commūne,* in common; *in vicem,* alternately, or, instead of ; *in alicūjus locum aliquid petĕre,* in the place, or instead of.

REM. 15. *In,* with the ablative, signifies 'in,' 'on,' 'upon,' and answers to the question, Where? When a number or quantity is indicated, it signifies 'among,' and is equivalent to *intĕr.* It may sometimes be translated 'with,' or 'notwithstanding'; as, *In summā copiā oratōrum, nēmo tamen Cicerōnis laudem ǣquāvit.*—With nouns which by themselves denote time, such as *secŭlum, annus, mensis, dies, nox, vesper,* etc., the time, in answer to the question When? is expressed by the simple ablative; but *in* is used with words which acquire the signification of time only by such connection; as, *in consŭlātu, in principio, in bello;* but even with these *in* is sometimes omitted, but is usually retained in connection with the gerund or gerundive; as, *in legendo, in legendis libris. In prǣsenti,* or *in prǣsentiā,* signifies 'at the present moment,' 'for the present.'—*Est in eo, ut aliquid fiat* signifies that something is on the point of happening.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ **196.** Most of the prepositions are used also in forming compound words. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. (*a*.) Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sounds of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used before *m* and *v*; as, *āmŏveo, ārello*, and sometimes before *f* in *āfui* and *āfŏre*, for *abfui* and *abfŏre*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d, f, h, j, l, n, r,* and *s*; as, *abjūro, abrŏgo,* etc. *Abs* occurs only before *c, q,* and *t*; as, *abscondo, absque, abstineo.* In *aspello, aspernor,* and *asporto,* the *b* of *abs* is dropped; in *aufĕro* and *aufugio,* it is changed into *u.*

2. *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels and before *b, d, h, m, v.* It often changes *d* into *c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s, t,* before those letters respectively; as, *accēdo, affĕro, aggrĕdior, allīgo, annītor, appŏno, arrīgo, assĕquor, attollo.* Its *d* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn*; as, *aspergo, aspicio, agnosco, agnātus.* Before *q,* the *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquīro.*

3. *Ante* remains unchanged, except in *anticĭpo* and *antisto,* where it changes *e* to *i*; but *antesto* also occurs.

4. *Circum* in composition remains unchanged, only in *circŭmeo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped; as, *circueo, circuïtus,* etc.

5. *Cum* (in composition, *com*), retains *m* before *b, m, p*; as, *combibo, committo, compōno*: before *l, n, r,* its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *colligo, connītor, corrĭpio*: before other letters, it becomes *n*; as, *condūco, conjungo.* Before a vowel, *gn* or *h, m* is commonly omitted; as, *coëo, coöpto, cognosco, cohăbito*; but it is sometimes retained; as, *comēdo, cōmes, cōmitor.* In *cōgo* and *cōgito* a contraction also takes place; as, *coăgo, cŏgo,* etc. In *combūro, b* is inserted.

6. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c, h, p, q, s, t*; as, *exeo, exīgo, excurro, exhĭbeo, expēdio.* Before *f, x* is assimilated, and also rarely becomes *ec*; as, *effĕro,* or *ecfĕro.* *S* after *x* is often omitted; as, *exĕquor,* for *exsĕquor*: in *excĭdium* (from *exscindo*), *s* is regularly dropped. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ēbĭlo, ēdīco,* except in *eclex.* Before these however, with the exception of *n* and *r, ex* is sometimes used; as, *exmŏveo.* *E* is sometimes used before *p*; as, *ēpōto.*

7. *In* remains unchanged before a vowel. Before *b, m, p,* it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbuo, immitto, impōno*: before *l* and *r, n* is assimilated; as, *illīgo, irrēto*: before *gn, n* is omitted; as, *ignārus.* Before the other consonants *in* is unchanged. In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu*; as, *indigĕna, indigeo, indolesco.* So anciently *indupĕrātor,* for *impĕrātor.*

8. *Inter* remains unchanged, except in *intellīgo* and its derivatives, in which *r* before *l* is assimilated.

9. *Ob* remains unchanged before vowels and generally before consonants. Its *b* is assimilated before *c, f, g, p*; as, *occurro, offīcio, oggannio, oppĕto.* In *ŏmitto, b* is dropped. An ancient form *obs,* analogous to *abs* for *ab,* is implied in *obsolesco,* from the simple verb *oleo,* and in *ostendo,* for *obstendo.*

10. *Per* is unchanged in composition, except in *pellicio* and sometimes in *pelliceo,* in which *r* is assimilated before *l.* In *pējēro, r* is dropped.

11. *Post* remains unchanged, except in *pōmœrium* and *pōmĕrĭdĭānus,* in which *st* is dropped.

12. *Præ* and *præter* in composition remain unchanged, except that *præ* is shortened before a vowel. Cf. § 283, II. Exc. 1.

13. *Prō* has sometimes its vowel shortened, (cf. § 285, 2, Exc. 5) and, to avoid hiatus, it sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *pródeo, pródesse, pródigo*. Before verbs beginning with *r* and *l*, *pro* sometimes becomes *por* and *pol*; as, *porrigo, polliceor*.

14. *Sŭb* in composition remains unchanged before a vowel and before *b, d, j, l, n, s, t, v*. Before *c, f, g, m, p, r*, its *b* is regularly assimilated; as, *succēdo, suffĕro, suggĕro, summŏveo, supplĭco, surripio*. Before *c, p,* and *t,* it sometimes takes the form *sus* from *subs*, analogous to *abs* and *obs*; as, *suscipio, suspendo, sustollo: b* is omitted before *s,* followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio*.

15. *Subter* and *sŭper* in composition remain unchanged.

16. *Trans* remains unchanged before a vowel. It omits *s* before *s*; as, *transcendo:* in *trādo, trādūco, trājicio,* and *trāno, ns* is commonly omitted.

(b.) The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition:—

Ambī or amb, (Greek ἀμφί), *around, about.*　　Rĕd or rĕ, *again, back.*　　Vē, *not.*
Dis or dī, *asunder.*　　　　　　　　　　Sē, *apart, aside.*

1. *Amb* is always used before a vowel; as, *ambāges, ambarvālis, ambēdo, ambigo, ambio, ambūro:* except *ampulla, āmico,* and *ānhēlo.* Before consonants it has the forms *ambi;* as, *ambīdens, ambifārium, ambicium: am;* as, *amplector, ampūto:* or *an;* as, *anceps, anfractus, anquiro.*

2. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c, p, q, s* before a vowel, *t,* and *h;* as, *discūtio, dispōno, disquīro, distendo, dishiasco:* but *disertus* is formed from *dissēro;* before *f,* it is changed into *f;* as, *diffĕro:* in *dirimo,* and *diribeo* (from *dis hibeo*), *s* becomes *r. Dī* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *didūco, dimitto, distinguo, dispicio.* But both *dis* and *dī* are used before *j;* as, *disjungo, dijūdico,* and before *r* in *rumpo.*

3. *Rĕd* is used before a vowel or *h:* rĕ before a consonant; as, *rĕdāmo, rĕdeo, rĕdhibeo, rĕdigo, rĕdileo, rĕdundo;—rĕjicio, rĕpōno, rĕvertor.* But *rĕd* is used before *do;* as, *reddo.* The connecting vowel *l* is found in *rĕdhiruus;* and in the poetical forms *relligio, rellĭquiæ,* and sometimes in *reccĭdo* the *d* is assimilated. In later writers *re* is sometimes found before a vowel or *h.*

4. *Sē* and *vē* are prefixed without change; as, *sēcēdo, sēcūrus; vēgrandis, vēcors.*

§ **197.** Π. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples. The following are their most common significations:—

1. *A, ab,* or *abs, away, from, down; entirely;* un-. With verbs it denotes removal, disappearance, absence; as, *aufĕro, abitur, absum.* With adjectives it denotes absence, privation; as, *āmens, absōnus.*

2. *Ad, to, toward; at, by.* In composition with verbs *ăd* denotes (*a*) *motion to,* (not *into,*) as, *accēdo;* (*b*) *addition,* as, *ascribo;* (*c*) *nearness,* as, *assideo;* (*d*) *assent, favor,* as, *annuo, arrideo;* (*e*) *repetition* and hence *intensity,* as, *accēdo;* (*f*) *at, in consequence of,* as, *arrigo.* It is sometimes augmentative, rarely inchoative.

3. *Ambi, around, about,* on both sides.

4. *Circum, around, about,* on all sides.

5. *Cŏm* or *cŏn, together, entirely.* In composition with verbs it denotes (*a*) *union,* as, *concurro, consūlo;* (*b*) *completeness,* as, *combūro, confĭcio;* (*c*) *with effort,* as, *confĭcio, conclāmo;* (*d*) *in harmony,* as, *consōno, consentio;* (*e*) *on* or *over,* like the English *be-,* as, *collīno,* to besmear.

6. *Contra*, against, opposite.

7. *Dē*, off, away, through, over, down; entirely; very, extremely. With verbs *dē* denotes (*a*) *down*; as, dēmitto; (*b*) *removal*; as, dētondeo; (*c*) *absence*; as, dēsum, dēhābeo; (*d*) *prevention*; as, dēhortor; (*e*) *unfriendly feeling*; as, despicio, dērideo.—With adjectives *dē* denotes (*a*) *down*; as, dēclīvis; (*b*) *without*; as, dēmens.

8. *Dis*, asunder, apart, in pieces, in two; dis-, un-; very greatly. With verbs *dis* denotes (*a*) *division*; as, divīdo, dilābor; (*b*) *difference*; as, discrēpo, dissentio; (*c*) *the reverse of the simple notion*; as, displiceo, diffīdo; (*d*) *intensity*; as, dīlaudo.—With adjectives *dis* denotes *difference*; as, discolor, discors.

9. *E*, or *ex*, out, forth, away, upward, without, -less, un-; utterly, completely, very. With verbs it denotes (*a*) *out*; as, exeo, eximo, ēlābōro; (*b*) *removal of something*; as, ēdormio; (*c*) *publicity*; as, ēdīco; (*d*) *ascent*; as, exsisto; (*e*) *completeness*; as, ēdisco, exūro; (*f*) with denominative verbs, *change of character*; as, expio, effēro (āre); (*g*) *removal of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is derived*; as ēnōdo; (*h*) *the reversal of the fundamental idea*; as, explico; (*i*) *distance*; as, exaudio.—With adjectives formed from substantives it denotes *absence*; as, exsomnis.

10. *In*, with verbs, signifies in, on, at; into, against; as, inhābĭto, induo, ingĕmo, ĭneo, illīdo. With adjectives, un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, not; as, ignōtus, inhospĭtālis, immortālis. Some of its compounds have contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, intectus, part., covered, adj., uncovered.

11. *Inter*, between, among, at intervals.

12. *Ob*, with verbs, signifies to, towards; as, ŏbeo, ostendo; against; as, obluctor, obnuntio; at, before; as, ŏbambŭlo, obversor; upon; as, occulco; over; as, obdūo.

13. *Per*, with verbs, denotes, through, thoroughly, perfectly, quite; as, perdūco, perfĭcio, perdo; with adjectives, through, very; as, pernox, perlēvis.

14. *Post*, after, behind.

15. *Prae* in composition with verbs denotes (*a*) *before* in place; as, praemitto; (*b*) *by* or *past*; as, praefluo; (*c*) *in command*; as, praesum, praefīcio; (*d*) *superiority*; as, praesto; (*e*) *before* in time; as, praedico, praecerpo; *at the extremity*; as, praefuro.—With adjectives, (*a*) *before* in place or time; as, praeceps, praescius; (*b*) *very*; as, praealtus, praeclārus.

16. *Praeter*, past, by, beyond, besides.

17. *Prō*, before, forward, forth, away, down; for; openly; as, prōlūdo, porrĭgo, prōterreo, prōfŭro, prōŭro, prōfĭteor.

18. *Rē*, again, against, back, re-, un-, away; greatly; as, rēflōresco, rĕpendo, rēfērio, rēfŭgio, rēcondo.

19. *Sē*, without, aside, apart; as, sēcāro, sēpōno, sēcēdo, sēcūrus.

20. *Sub*, up, from below upwards, under. With verbs *sub* also signifies (*a*) *assistance*; as, subvenio; (*b*) *succession*; as, succēdo; (*c*) *in place of*; as, suffīcio; (*d*) *near*; as, subsum; (*e*) *secretly, clandestinely*; as, surrĭpio, subdūco; (*f*) *somewhat, a little*; as, subrīdeo, sūbaccūso.—With adjectives, it signifies, *slightly, rather*; as, sŭbobscūrus, sŭbabsurdus, sŭbācĭdus.

21. *Subter*, beneath, under, from under, secretly, privately.

22. *Sŭper*, above, over, left over, remaining, super-; as, sŭpersēdeo, sŭpersum, sŭperstes, sŭpervācāneus.

23. *Trans*, over, across, through; beyond; as, trādo, transeo, transfĭgo, transalpīnus.

24. *Vē*, not, without; very; as, vēgrandis, vēcors; vēpallĭdus.

REMARK. In composition the preposition seems often to add nothing to the signification of the word with which it is compounded.

15

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

ātque, } *and, as ; than.*
āc, }

āc si, *as if.*
ādeo, *so that, so.*
ān, } *whether.*
anne, }
annon, *whether or not.*
antĕquam, *before.*
āt, ast, *but.*
āt ĕnim, *but indeed.*
atquī, *but.*
attāmĕn, *but yet.*
aut, *either, or.*
aut...aut, *either...or.*
autem, *but.*
cētĕrum, *but, however.*
ceu, *as, like as, as if.*
cum or quum, *since.*
dōnĕc, *as long as, until.*
dum, *provided, while, as long as, until.*
dummŏdo, *if but, if only.*
ĕnimvēro, *in very deed.*
ĕnim, } *for.*
ĕtĕnim, }
ĕō, *therefore.*
ĕquidem, *indeed.*
ergo, *therefore.*
ĕt, *and.*
ĕt...ĕt, } *both...and ;*
ĕt...quĕ, } *as well as..as.*
ĕt...nĕque or nĕc, *on the one hand, but not on the other.*
ĕtiam, *also.*
ĕtiamsi, } *although,*
etsī, } *though.*
iccirco, }
ideo. }
igĭtŭr, } *therefore.*
ĭtăque, }
lĭcĕt, *though, although.*
mŏdo, *provided.*
nam, namquĕ, *for.*

nē, *lest, that not.*
-nē, *whether.*
nĕque or nĕc, *neither, nor.*
nĭque...nĭque, }
nĕc...nĕc, } *neither,*
nĕque...nĕc, } *...nor.*
nĕc...nĭque, }
necnĕ, *or not.*
nĕque, *neither, nor.*
nĕque or nĕc...ĕt, } *not the one hand, but on the other.*
nĕque or nĕc...quĕ, }
nēve or neu, *nor, and not.*
nēve...nēve, } *neither...*
neu...neu, } *nor.*
nĭ, nĭsi, *unless.*
num, *whether.*
praĕut, *in comparison with.*
prŏut, *according as, just as.*
prŏinde, *hence, therefore.*
proptĕrĕā, *therefore, for that reason.*
postquam, *after, since.*
priusquam, *before.*
quam, *as, than.*
quamvis, *although.*
quando, quandŏquidem, *whereas, since.*
quamquam, *although.*
quāpropter, }
quārĕ, }
quamobrem, } *wherefore.*
quōcircā, }
quantumvis, } *although,*
quamlibet, } *however.*
quāsi, *as if, just as.*
-quĕ, *and.*
-quĕ...ĕt, } *both...and ;*
-quĕ...quĕ, } *as well as..as.*
quĭa, *because.*
quĭn, *but that, that not.*
quippĕ, *because.*

quŏ, *in order that.*
quŏad, *as long as, until.*
quŏd, *because, but.*
quodsī, *but if.*
quŏminus, *that not.*
quŏniam, *since, because.*
quĕquĕ, *also.*
quum or cum, *when, since, because.*
quum...tum, *both...and.*
sĕd, *but.*
sīeut, } *so as, just as, as.*
sīcŭtī, }
sī, *if.*
sī mŏdo, *if only.*
sĭmŭl, } *as soon*
sĭmŭlĕc (-atquĕ) } *as.*
sin, *but if, if however.*
sīve or seu, *or if.*
sīve...sīve, } *whether...or.*
seu...seu, }
sĭquidem, *if indeed, since.*
tāmĕn, *however, still.*
tāmetsī, *although.*
tamquam, *as if.*
tum...tum, *both...and.*
undĕ, *whence.*
ŭt, } *that, as that, so that,*
ŭtī, } *to the end that.*
ŭt sĭ, *as if.*
utrum, *whether.*
-vĕ, } *either, or.*
vĕl, }
vĕl...vĕl, *either...or.*
vĕlūt, } *even as, just as,*
vĕlŭtī, } *like as.*
vēro, *truly, but indeed.*
vērum, *but.*
vēruntāmĕn, *yet, notwithstanding.*
vērum-ĕnim vēro, *but indeed.*

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, are divided into two general classes,—coördinate and subordinate.

I. Coördinate conjunctions, are such as join coördinate or similar constructions ; as,

Luna et *stellæ fulgēbant,* The moon *and* the stars were shining. *Concĭdunt venti, fŭgiuntque nubes,* The winds subside, *and* the clouds disperse. *Difficile factu est,* sed *cŏnābor tamen,* It is difficult to accomplish, *but still* I will try.

Coördinate conjunctions include the following subdivisions, viz. *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and most of the *causal* conjunctions.

II. Subordinate conjunctions are such as join dissimilar constructions; as,

Edo, *ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. Pyrrhus rex in itinĕre incĭdit in canem, *qui interfecti homĭnis corpus custodiēbat. Mergi pullos in aquam jussit, ut bibĕrent,* quoniam *esse nollent.*

Subordinate conjunctions include all those connectives which unite subordinate or dependent clauses. These are the *concessive, illative, final, conditional, interrogative,* and *temporal* conjunctions, and the causals *quod, quum, quoniam,* etc. To these may be added also the relatives whether pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

The following paragraphs contain a specification of the several conjunctions comprised in each of the preceding subdivisions, and remarks respecting their particular import and use as connectives.

1. COPULATIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *ĕt, ăc, atquĕ,* the enclitic *quĕ,* which, combined with the negation belonging to the verb, becomes *nĕquĕ* or *nĕc,* and, the negation being doubled, *nĕc nŏn* or *nĕquĕ nŏn,* it becomes again affirmative and equivalent to *ĕt.* To these are to be added *ĕtiam* and *quŏquĕ,* with the adverbials *item* and *itidem.*

REMARK. (*a.*) Et and *quĕ* differ in this, *ĕt* connects things which are conceived as different, and *quĕ* adds what belongs to, or naturally flows from them. *Et,* therefore, is copulative and *quĕ* adjunctive. Hence, in an enumeration of words, *quĕ* frequently connects the last of the series, and by its means the preceding idea is extended without the addition of any thing which is generically different. In connecting propositions *quĕ* denotes a consequence, and is equivalent to 'and therefore.'

(*b.*) Ac never stands before vowels, *atquĕ* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.—*Atquĕ,* being formed of *ăd* and *quĕ,* properly signifies 'and also,' 'and in addition,' thus putting things on an equality, but giving emphasis to the latter. In the beginning of a proposition, which is explanatory of that which precedes, *atquĕ* or *ăc* introduces a thing with great weight, and may be rendered 'now'; and in answers; as, *Cognostĭne hos versus? Ac memorĭter,* it is rendered 'yes, and that.' Ac being an abridged form of *atquĕ* loses somewhat of its power in connecting single words, and its use alternates with that of *ĕt*; it is preferred in subdivisions, whereas the main propositions are connected by *ĕt.*

(*c.*) Nĕquĕ, compounded of the ancient *nē* for *nŏn* and *quĕ,* is used for *ĕt nŏn. Et nŏn* itself is used, when only one idea or one word of a proposition is to be negatived; as, *patior* et non *molestĕ fĕro*; and also when our 'and not' is used for 'and not rather' to correct an improper supposition; as, *Si quam Rubrius injuriam suo nomĭne* ac non *impulsu tuo fĕcisset.* Cic. *Et nŏn* is commonly found also in the second clause of a sentence when *ĕt* precedes, but *nĕquĕ,* also, is often used in this case. *Nĕc nŏn* or *nĕquĕ nŏn,* in classical prose, is not used like *ĕt* to connect nouns, but only to join propositions, and the two words are separated. In later writers, however, they are not separated and are equivalent to *ĕt.*

(*d.*) Etiam has a wider extent than *quŏquĕ,* for it contains the idea of our 'even,' and it also adds a new circumstance, whereas *quŏquĕ* denotes the addition of a thing of a similar kind. Hence *ĕtiam* is properly used to connect sentences, while *quŏquĕ* refers to a single word. *Etiam* signifies 'and further,' *quŏquĕ,* 'and so,' 'also.' *Quŏquĕ* always follows the word to which it refers, *ĕtiam* in similar cases is usually placed before it, but when it connects propositions its place is arbitrary. *Et,* too, in classical prose, is sometimes used in the sense of 'also.' So often is *nŏn mŏdo—sĕd ĕt,* 'not only—but also,' or 'but even.'

(*e.*) Copulative conjunctions are often repeated in the sense of 'both—and,'
'as well—as,' 'not only—but also.' *Et—ēt* is of common occurrence; so. in
later writers, but rarely in Cicero, *ĕt—quĕ; quē—ēt* connect single words, but
not in Cicero; *quē—quē,* occur for the most part only in poetry, or in connec-
tion with the relative.—Negative propositions are connected in English by
'neither—nor,' and in Latin by *nēquē—nēquĕ, nēc—nēc, nēquĕ—nĕc,* and rarely
by *nĕc—nēquĕ.* Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirma-
tive 'on the one hand—but not on the other,' or, 'not on the one hand—but on
the other,' are connected by *ēt—nēquĕ* or *nĕc, nēquĕ* or *nĕc—ēt,* and occasionally
by *nĕc* or *nēquĕ—quĕ.*

2. DISJUNCTIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered sepa-
rately; as, *aut, vĕl,* the enclitic *vĕ,* and *sīvĕ* or *sĕu.*

REMARK. (*a.*) *Aut* and *vĕl* differ in this; *aut* indicates a difference of the
object, *vĕl,* a difference of expression, i. e. *aut* is objective, *vĕl,* subjective.
Vĕl is connected with the verb *velle,* and is generally repeated, *vĕl—vĕl,* 'choose
this or choose this,' and the single *vĕl* is used by Cicero only to correct a pre-
ceding expression, and commonly combined with *dicam, pŏtĭus,* or *ĕtĭam.*—
Hence by ellipsis *vĕl* has acquired the signification of the adverb, 'even,' and
so enhances the signification of the word modified by it; as, *Quum Sŏphŏcles
vel optimē scripsĕrit Electram,* where *bĕnē* is to be supplied before *vel,* and the
latter is used for the purpose of correcting the preceding expression. Cf. § 127, 4.
By means of its derivation from *velle* it has, also, the signification of ' for ex-
ample ' or ' to take a case,' for which *vĕlŭt* is more frequently used.—(*b.*) *Vĕ,*
the apocopated *vĕl,* leaves the choice free between two or more things, and in
later but good prose *vĕl* is used in the same manner.

(*c.*) *Sīvĕ* commonly retains the meaning of *si,* and is then the same as *vĕl si,*
but sometimes loses it, and is then equivalent to *vĕl,* denoting a difference of
name; as, *Vŏcābŭlum sīvĕ appellātĭo.* Quint. The form *seu* is rarely used by
Cicero except in the combination *seu pŏtĭus.*—(*d.*) *Aut* and *vĕ* serve to continue
the negation in negative sentences, where we use 'nor;' as, *nōn—aut,* where
nōn—nēquĕ also may be used. They are used also in negative questions; as,
Num leges nostras morestĕ nŏvĕt? Cic.; and after comparatives; as, *Doctrīna
paulo aspĕrĭor, quam veritas aut nātūra patiātur.* Cic. It is only when both
ideas are to be united into one that a copulative is used instead of *aut* and *vĕ.*—
(*e.*) ' Either—or ' is expressed in Latin by *aut—aut,* denoting an opposition be-
tween two things, one of which excludes the other, or by *vĕl—vĕl,* denoting
that the opposition is immaterial in respect to the result, so that the one need
not exclude the other; as, *Vĕi imperātŏre vel milite me utimini.* Sall.—*Sīvĕ—
sivĕ* is the same as *vĕl si—vĕi si,* and retains the meaning of *vĕl—vĕl.* If nouns
only are opposed to each other, an uncertainty is expressed as to how a thing
is to be called; as, *Crĭtum lēges, quas* sive *Jŭpĭter* sive *Mĭnos sanxit;* i. e. I do
not know whether I am to say Jupiter or Minos.

3. COMPARATIVE conjunctions express a comparison. These are, *ŭt* or *ŭtĭ,
sīcŭt, vĕlŭt, proŭt, praeŭt,* the poetical *cĕu, quam, tamquam,* (with
and without *sī,) quāsĭ, ŭt sī, āc sī,* with *āc* and *ătquĕ,* when they sig-
nify 'as.'

REMARK. *Ac* and *atquĕ* signify 'as' or 'than' after adverbs and adjectives
which denote similarity or dissimilarity; as, *aequĕ, juxtā, pār* and *parĭtĕr,
pĕrindĕ* and *proindĕ, prŏ ĕŏ, sĭmĭlis* and *sĭmĭlĭtĕr, dissĭmĭlis, tālĭs, tŏtĭdem, ālĭus*
and *ālĭtĕr, contrā, sĕcŭs, contrārĭus.*—*Quam* is rarely used after these words,
except when a negative particle is joined with *alĭus;* as, *Virtus nihil alĭud est,*
quam, etc.; and *ĕt* and *quē* do not occur in this connection.—*Ac* is used for
quam, after comparatives, in poetry and occasionally by late prose writers; as,
Artĭus atque *hedĕra.* Hor. *Insānĭus* ac *si.* Id.

4. CONCESSIVE conjunctions express a concession, with the general signifi-
cation 'although.' These are *etsī, ĕtĭamsī, tămetsī,* or *tămĕnetsī,
quamquam, quamvĭs, quantumvĭs, quamlĭbĕt, lĭcĕt, ŭt* in the
sense of 'even if' or 'although,' and *quum* when it signifies 'although.'

REMARK. *Tămĕn* and other particles signifying 'yet,' 'still,' are the correl-
atives of the concessive conjunctions; as, *Ut desint vires,* tămen *est laudanda*

voluntas. Ovid. The adverb *quĭdem* becomes a concessive conjunction, when it is used to connect propositions and is followed by *sĕd.*— *Quamquam,* in absolute sentences, sometimes refers to something preceding, which it limits and partly nullifies; as, Quamquam *quid loquor?* Yet why do I speak?

5. CONDITIONAL conjunctions express a condition, their fundamental signification being 'if.' These are *sī, sīn, nĭsī* or *nī, sī mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ,* 'if only,' 'if but,' (for which *dum* and *mŏdŏ* are also used alone), *dummŏdŏ nē,* or simply *mŏdŏ nē* or *dumnē.*

REMARK. (a.) In order to indicate the connection with a preceding proposition, the relative *quŏd,* which in such case loses its signification as a pronoun, and may be rendered, 'nay,' 'now,' 'and,' or 'then,' is frequently put before *sī* and sometimes before *nĭsī* and *etsī,* so that *quodsī* may be regarded as one word, signifying 'now if,' 'but if,' or 'if then.' It serves especially to introduce something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. It sometimes signifies 'although.' *Quodnĭsī* signifies 'if then—not,' and *quodetsī,* 'nay, even if.' *Quŏd* is found also before *quum, ŭbĭ, quĭā, quŏnĭam, nē, ŭtĭnam,* and even before the relative pronoun.

(b.) *Nī* and *nĭsī* limit a statement by introducing an exception, and thus differ from *sī nōn,* which introduces a negative case. It is often immaterial whether *nĭsī* or *sī nōn* is used, but the difference is still essential. *Sī nōn* is used when single words are opposed to one another, and in this case *sī mĭnŭs* may be used instead of *sī nōn.*—If after an affirmative proposition its negative opposite is added without a verb, our 'but if not' is commonly expressed in prose by *sī mĭnŭs* or *sīn mĭnŭs* or *sīn ălĭter;* as, *Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos;* sī minus, quam plurimos. Cic.; rarely by *sī nōn.*

6. ILLATIVE conjunctions express an inference or conclusion, with the general signification of 'therefore,' 'consequently.' These are *ergŏ, igĭtŭr, ĭtăquĕ, eŏ, ideo, iccircŏ, proindĕ, proptĕreā,* and the relative conjunctions, *quaproptĕr, quārĕ, quamobrem, quōcirca, undĕ,* 'wherefore.'

REMARK. *Ergŏ* and *igĭtŭr* denote a logical inference.—*Ităquĕ,* 'and thus,' expresses the relation of cause in facts.—*Ideo, iccirco,* and *proptĕreā,* 'on this account,' express the agreement between intention and action.—*Eŏ,* 'on this account,' or 'for this purpose,' is more frequently an adverb of place.—*Proindĕ,* 'consequently,' implies an exhortation.—*Undĕ,* 'whence,' is properly an adverb of place.—*Adeo,* 'so that,' or simply 'so,' is also properly an adverb. *Hinc,* 'hence,' and *indĕ,* 'thence,' continue to be adverbs.

7. CAUSAL conjunctions express a cause or reason, with the general signification of 'for' and 'because.' These are *nam, namquĕ, ĕnĭm, ĕtĕnĭm, quĭā, quŏd, quŏnĭam, quippĕ, quum, quando, quandŏquidem, sĭquidem;* and the adverbs *nīmīrum, nempĕ, scĭlĭcĕt,* and *vĭdĕlĭcĕt.*

REMARK. (a.) *Nam* is used at the beginning of a proposition, *ĕnĭm,* after the first or second word. *Nam* introduces an objective reason, and *ĕnĭm* merely a subjective one. There is the same difference between *namquĕ* and *ĕtĕnĭm. Namquĕ,* however, though constantly standing at the beginning of a proposition in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, is in later writers often put after the beginning. *Enim* in the sense of *ăt ĕnĭm* or *sĕd ĕnĭm* is sometimes, by comic writers, put at the beginning of a proposition.—*Nam, ĕnĭm,* and *ĕtĕnĭm* are often used in the sense of 'namely,' or 'to wit,' to introduce an explanation of something going before. *Nīmīrum, vĭdĕlĭcĕt,* and *scĭlĭcĕt* likewise answer to our 'namely' or 'viz.' *Nīmīrum,* compounded of *nī* and *mīrum,* and signifying 'a wonder if not,' is used as a connective in the sense of 'undoubtedly' or 'surely,' and implies strong confidence in the truth of the proposition with which it is connected.—*Vĭdĕlĭcĕt* and *scĭlĭcĕt* introduce an explanation, with this difference that *vĭdĕlĭcĕt* generally indicates the true, and *scĭlĭcĕt* a wrong explanation. Sometimes, however, *nam, ĕnĭm, ĕtĕnĭm, nīmīrum,* and *vĭdĕlĭcĕt* are used in an ironical sense, and *scĭlĭcĕt* introduces a true reason.—*Nempĕ,* 'surely,' often assumes a sarcastic meaning when another person's concession is taken for the purpose of refuting him.—(b.) *Quĭā* and *quŏd* indicate a defi-

nite and conclusive reason, *quŏniam*, (i. e. *quum jam*), a motive.—*Ideo, iccirco, proptĕrĕa quŏd*, and *quĭa*, are used without any essential difference, except that *quĭa* introduces a more strict and logical reason, whereas *quŏniam*, signifying 'now as,' introduces important circumstances.—*Quando, quandŏquĭdem*, and *sĭquĭdem* approach nearer to *quŏniam* than to *quĭa*, as they introduce only subjective reasons. *Quandŏquĭdem* denotes a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned; *sĭquĭdem*, a reason implied in a concession. In *sĭquĭdem* the meaning of *si* is generally dropped, but it sometimes remains, and then *si* and *quĭdem* should be written as separate words; as, *O fortūnātam rempublĭcam*, *si quĭdem hanc sentīnam ejēcĕrit.* Cic.— *Quĭppē*, with the relative pronoun or with *quum*, introduces a subjective reason. When used elliptically without a verb it signifies 'forsooth' or 'indeed.' Sometimes it is followed by a sentence with *ĕnim*, and in this way gradually acquires the signification of *nam*.

8. FINAL conjunctions express a purpose, object, or result, with the signification of 'in order that,' or 'in order that not.' These are *ŭt* or *ŭtī, quŏ, nē* or *ŭt nē, nēvē* or *neu, quin* and *quŏmĭnŭs.*

REMARK. *Ut*, as a conjunction, indicates either a result or a purpose, 'so that,' and 'in order that.' When indicating a result, if a negative is added to it, it becomes *ut nŏn*; when indicating a purpose, if the negative is added, it becomes *nē* or *ŭt nē*, but *ŭt nŏn* also is very rarely used for *nē.—Nēvē* (i. e. *vĕl nē*) signifies either 'or in order that not,' or 'and in order that not.' *Ut nē* is a pleonasm, not differing perceptibly from *nē*. It is used more frequently by Cicero than by other writers. *Quŏ nē* for *nē* occurs once in Horace.

9. ADVERSATIVE conjunctions, express opposition, with the signification of 'but.' These are *sĕd, autem, vērum, vēro, ăt* (poetical *ast*), *ăt ĕnim, atquī, tămen, attămen, sedtămen, vēruntămen, ăt vēro, (ĕnĭmvēro), vērumĕnim, vērum, vēro, cĕtĕrum.*

REMARK. (*a.*) *Sĕd* denotes a direct opposition, and interrupts the narrative or argument; *autem* marks a transition, and denotes at once a connection and an opposition. *Porro*, 'further,' denotes progression and transition but not opposition, except in later authors.— *Vērum* has a similar relation to *vēro* as *sĕd* to *autem*. *Vērum*, while it denotes opposition, contains also an explanation. *Vēro* connects things which are different, but denotes the point in favor of which the decision should be. It thus forms the transition to something more important, as in the phrase, *Illud vēro plānē nōn est fĕrendum*, i. e. that which I am about to mention. In affirmative answers *vēro* is often added to the verb; as, *Dasne? Do vēro.* Hence, when the protasis supplies the place of a question, it is sometimes introduced into the apodosis merely to show that it contains an answer. Hence also *vēro* alone signifies 'yes,' like *sānē, ĭtă*, and *ĕtĭm.—Enĭmvēro*, 'yes, truly,' 'in truth,' does not denote opposition. It sometimes, like *vēro*, forms the transition to that which is most important. The compound *vērum ĕnĭmvēro* denotes the most emphatic opposition.

(*b.*) *Ăt* denotes that that which is opposed is equivalent to that which precedes. It frequently follows *si*, in the sense of 'yet,' or 'at least'; as, *etsi nōn sāpientissĭmus, ăt amīcissĭmus.* It is especially used to denote objections whether of the speaker himself or of others. *At ĕnim* introduces a reason for the objection implied in *at.*—By *atquī*, 'but still,' 'but yet,' or 'nevertheless,' we admit what precedes, but oppose something else to it; as, *Magnum narras, vix credĭbile. Atquī sic habet.* Hor. So, also, when that which is admitted, is made use of to prove the contrary. Finally, *atquī* is used in syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided; in this case it does not denote a direct opposition of facts, and may be translated by 'now,' 'but,' 'but now.'— *Cētĕrum*, properly 'as for the rest,' is often used by later writers for *sĕd.— Contra eā*, in the sense of 'on the other hand,' is used as a conjunction. So *ădeo* with a pronoun, when it may be translated 'just,' 'precisely,' 'even,' 'indeed,' or an intensive 'and.'

10. TEMPORAL conjunctions, express time. These are *quum, quum prīmum, ŭt, ŭt prīmum, ŭbĭ, postquam, antĕquam*, and *prĭusquam, quando, sĭmŭlāc* or *sĭmŭlatque*, or *sĭmŭl* alone, *dum, vsquĕ dum, dōnĕc, quoad.*

REMARK. *Ut* and *ŭbĭ*, as particles of time, signify 'when.' *Dum*, *dōnĕc*, and *quoad* signify either 'as long as,' or 'until.' *Dum* often precedes *intĕrea* or *intĕrim*, and both *dum* and *dōnĕc* are often preceded by the adverbs *usquĕ*, *usquĕ eō* or *usquĕ ădeō*.

11. INTERROGATIVE conjunctions indicate a question. These are, *num*, *ŭtrum*, *ăn*, and the enclitic *nĕ*. This, when attached to the three preceding particles, forming *numnĕ*, *utrumnĕ*, and *annĕ*, does not affect their meaning. With *nōn* it forms a special interrogative particle *nonnĕ*. To these add *ec* and *ēn*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando*, and *ēnumquam*, and *numquid* and *ecquid*, when used simply as interrogative particles.

REMARK. (*a.*) The interrogative particles have no distinct meaning by themselves in direct questions, but only serve to give to a proposition the form of a question. In direct speech the interrogative particles are sometimes omitted, but in indirect questions they are indispensable, except in the case of a double question, where the first particle is sometimes omitted.—*Ecquid* and *numquid*, as interrogative particles, have the meaning of *num*, *quid* in this case having no meaning, but they must be carefully distinguished from the interrogative pronouns *ecquid* and *numquid*. *En*, or when followed by a *q*, *ec* is, like *num*, *nĕ*, and *ăn*, an interrogative particle, but is always prefixed to some other interrogative word.

(*b.*) In direct questions, *num* and its compounds *numnĕ*, *numnam*, *numquid*, *numquidnam*, and the compounds with *ĕn* or *ec* suppose that the answer will be 'no'; as, *Num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* But *ecquid* is sometimes used in an affirmative sense. In general the negative sense of these particles does not appear in indirect questions.

(*c.*) *Nĕ* properly denotes simply a question, but it is used sometimes affirmatively and sometimes negatively. When *nĕ* is attached, not to the principal verb but to some other word, a negative sense is produced; as, *mene istud potuisse fŭcĕre putas?* Do you believe that I would have done that? The answer expected is 'no.' When attached to the principal verb *nĕ* often gives the affirmative meaning, and the answer expected is 'yes.'—*Nonnĕ* is the sign of an affirmative question; as, *Canis nonne lupo similis est?*—*Utrum*, in accordance with its derivation from *ŭter*, which of two, is used only in double questions whether consisting of two or more. It is sometimes accompanied by *nĕ*, which is usually separated from it by one or more words; as, *Utrum*, *taceamne an prædicem?* In later writers, however, *utrumnĕ* is united into one word. *Nĕ* is rarely attached to interrogative adjectives, but examples of such use are sometimes found in poetry; as, *uternĕ*; *quonĕ malo*; *quandanĕ*. In a few passages it is even attached to the relative pronoun.

(*d.*) *An* is not used as a sign of an indirect question before the silver age; when so used it answers to 'whether.' It is used by Cicero exclusively in a second or opposite question, where we use 'or'; as, *Si sitis*, *nihil intĕrest utrum aqua sit*, *an vinum*; *nec refert*, *utrum sit aureum pōcŭlum*, *an vitreum*, *an manus concava*. Sen. In direct interrogations, when no interrogative clause precedes, *ăn*, *annĕ*, *ăn vēro* are likewise used in the sense of 'or,' that is in such a manner that a preceding interrogation is supplied by the mind; as, *Invītus te offendi*, *an putas me delectāri tenendis hominibus?* Here we may supply before *an putas*, etc. the sentence, 'Do you believe this?'—*An*, after a preceding question, is rendered by 'not,' and it then indicates that the answer cannot be doubtful; as, *A rebus gerendis senectus abstrāhit*. *Quibus?* *An his*, *quæ geruntur juventūte ac viribus?* Is it not from those kinds of business, which? Here we may suppose *aliisne?* to be supplied before *an his?* Is it from other kinds of business, or from those? etc. Such questions may be introduced by *nonnĕ*, but without allusion to an opposite question, which is implied in *ăn*.

(*e.*) To the rule that *ăn*, in indirect questions, is used exclusively to indicate a second or opposite question, there is one great exception, for it is employed in single indirect questions after such expressions as *dubito*, *dubium est*, *incertum est*; *delibĕro*, *hæsito*, and especially after *nescio* or *haud scio*, all of which denote uncertainty, but with an inclination to the affirmative; as, *Si per se virtus sine*

fortūna ponderanda sit, dubito an hunc primum omnium *ponam,* If virtue is to be estimated without reference to its success, I am not certain whether I should not prefer this man to all others. Nep. It is not Latin to say *dubito annon* for *dubito an.*—*Nescio an,* or *haud scio an* are used quite in the sense of 'perhaps,' so that they are followed by the negatives *nullus, nēmo, nunquam,* instead of *ullus, quisquam* and *unquam.* When the principal verb is omitted, *an* is often used in the sense of *aut;* as, *Themistoclēs, quum ei Simonidēs,* an *quis alius, artem memoriae pollicerētur,* etc. In such cases *incertum est* is understood, and in Tacitus is often supplied.—The conjunction *si* is sometimes used in indirect interrogations instead of *num,* like the Greek *εἰ,* and it is so used by Cicero after the verb *experior.*

NOTE 1. The conjunctions *-ne, -que, -ve,* are not used alone, but are always affixed to some other word, and are hence called *enclitica.*

NOTE 2. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as adverbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, etc., and connect propositions; as, *Cetēris in rebus,* quum *venit calamitas,* tum *detrimentum accipitur,* In other concerns, *when* misfortune comes, *then* damage is received.

NOTE 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque,* (i. e. *adque*,) *iccirco* or *ibirco,* (i. e. *id-circa,*) *ideo, namque,* etc. In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simple words retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam (et jam)* and now; *itáque,* and so; *neque* or *nec,* and not.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ **199.** An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

āh! *ah! alas!*
āha! *aha! oh! haha!*
āpăgē! *away! begone!*
ătăt! or atatte! *oh! ah! alas! lo!*
au! or hau! *oh! ah!*
eccē! *lo! see! behold!*
ĕhem! *ha! what!*
ĕheu! *ah! alas!*
ĕho! ehodum! *ho! soho!*
eiă! or heiă! *ah! ah ha! indeed!*
ēn! *lo! see! behold!*
eu! *well done! bravo!*
eugĕ! *well done! good!*
euax! } *huzzah! hurrah!*
euoe! }
ha! *hold! ho!*
ha! ha! he! *la! ha!*
hei! *ah! wo! alas!*

hem! *oho! indeed! well! hah! alas! alack!*
heu! *oh! ah! alas!*
heus! *ho! ho there! hark! halloa!*
hui! *hah! ho! oh!*
iō! *ho! hurrah! huzzah!*
ō! *o! oh! ah!*
ōh! *oh! o! ah!*
ōhē! *ho! halloo! ho there!*
oho! *oho! aha!*
oi! *hoy! alas!*
păpæ! *strange! wonderful!*
phui! *fah! fugh!*
phy! *pish! tush!*
prō! or prōh! *oh! ah!*
st! *hist! whist! hush!*
tatae! *so! strange!*
væ! *oh! alas! woe!*
vah! vaha! *ah! alas! oh!*

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus *vah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *pax!* be still! So *indignum, infandum, malum, misĕrum, miserabile, nēfas,* when used as expressions of astonishment, grief, or horror; and *macte* and *macti,* as expressions of approbation. In like manner the adverbs *æ, praefecto, cito, bene, belle;* the verbs *quæso, prĕcor, ōro, obsĕcro, amabo, āge, āyite, cĕdo, sōdes,* (for *si audes,*) *sis, sultis,* (for *si vis* and *si vultis,*) *āgĕsis, āgĕdum,* and *āyite dum,* and the interrogative *quid?* what? used as exclamations.

REM. 2. With the interjections may also be classed the following invocations of the gods : *hercŭles, hercŭle, hercle ;* or *mehercŭles, mehercŭle, mehercle ; medius fidius, mecastor, ecastor, ecēre, pol, edepol, equĭrine, per deum, per deum immortălem, per deos, per Jōvem, prŏ* (or *prŏh*) *Jŭpĭter, prŏ dii immortāles, prŏ deum fidem, prŏ deum atque hŏmĭnum fidem, prŏ deum immortālĭum* (scil. *fidem*), etc.

SYNTAX.

§ **200.** 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words ; as, *Cănes latrant,* The dogs bark.

3. All sentences are either

(1.) DECLARATIVE ; as, *Venti spirant,* The winds blow :—

(2.) INTERROGATIVE ; as, *Spirantne venti ?* Do the winds blow ?—

(3.) EXCLAMATORY ; as, *Quam vehĕmenter spirant venti !* How fiercely the winds blow !—or

(4.) IMPERATIVE ; as, *Venti, spirāte,* Blow, winds.

4. The mood of the verb in the first three classes of sentences is either the indicative or the subjunctive ; in imperative sentences it is either the imperative or the subjunctive.

5. A sentence may consist either of one proposition or of two or more propositions connected together.

PROPOSITIONS.

§ **201.** 1. A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate.*

2. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, in the proposition, *Equus currit,* The horse runs, *ĕquus* is the subject and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm,* as here used, includes all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the several moods.

4. Propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate.*

5. A principal proposition is one which makes complete sense by itself ; as,

Phōcion fuit perpĕtuo pauper, *quum ditissimus esse posset,* Phocion *was always poor,* though he might have been very rich.

6. A subordinate proposition is one which, by means of a subordinate conjunction, is made to depend upon or limit some part of
another proposition ; as,

Phōcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quam *ditissĭmus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*

7. Subordinate propositions are used either as *substantives, adjectives, or adverbs,* and are accordingly called *substantive, adjective or
adverbial propositions or clauses.*

8. Substantive clauses are connected with the propositions on which they
depend by means of the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quin,* etc., sometimes by
quod, and, in clauses containing an indirect question, by interrogative pronouns,
adjectives, adverbs and conjunctions. See §§ 262 and 265.

REMARK. A dependent substantive clause often takes the form of the accusative with
the infinitive, and in that case has no connective; as, *Gaudeo te valēre.*

9. Adjective clauses are connected by means of relatives, both pronouns and
pronominal adjectives ; as, *qui, quālis, quantus,* etc. Adverbial clauses are connected either by relative adverbs of place and time, (§ 192, R. 1, (b.),) or by
temporal, conditional, concessive, comparative, and sometimes by causal conjunctions.

10. A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple* sentence ; as,

Cădunt fŏlia, The leaves fall. *Semĭrămis Babylōnem condĭdit.*

11. A sentence consisting of a principal and one or more subordinate propositions is called a *complex* sentence ; as,

Qui fit, ut nēmo contentus vivat ? How happens it, that no one lives content ?
Quis ĕgo sim, me rogĭtas, You ask me, who I am.

12. A sentence consisting of two or more principal propositions,
either alone or in connection with one or more subordinate propositions, is called a *compound* sentence ; as,

Spirant venti et cădunt fŏlia, The winds blow, and the leaves fall.

13. The propositions composing a complex or a compound sentence are called its *members* or *clauses ;* the principal proposition is
called the *leading clause,* its subject, the *leading subject,* and its verb,
the *leading verb.*

SUBJECT.

§ 202. 1. The subject also is either *simple, complex, or
compound.*

2. The simple subject, which is also called the *grammatical* subject, is either a noun or some word standing for a noun ; as,

Aves volant, Birds fly. Tu *legis,* Thou readest. *A est vocālis, A* is a vowel.
Mentīri est turpe, To lie is base.

3. The complex subject, called also the *logical* subject, consists of
the simple subject with its modifications ; as,

*Conscientia bĕne actæ vitæ est jūcundissĭma, The consciousness of a well spent
life is* very pleasant. Here *conscientia* is the grammatical, and *conscientia bĕne
actæ vitæ* the complex, subject.

4. The compound subject consists of two or more simple or complex subjects to which a single predicate belongs; as,

Lūna *et* stellæ *fulgēbant*, The moon and stars were shining. Grammātĭce *ac* mūsĭcæ *junctæ fuērunt*, *Grammar* and *music* were united. *Semper* hŏnos nō-menque tuum laudēsque *manēbunt*.

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* other words, when they serve to explain, describe, define, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

5. Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, called its *principal* or *essential* parts: any sentence may also receive additions to these, called its *subordinate* parts.

Complex or Modified Subject.

6. The complex subject is formed by adding other words to the simple subject. All additions to the subject, like the subject itself, are either *simple, complex,* or *compound.*

I. *Simple additions.* The subject may be modified by adding:—

1. *A single word:*—

(1.) A noun in the same case; as,

Nos consŭles *dēsĭmus*, We consuls are remiss. *Mūcius* augur *multa narrāvit*, Mucius *the augur* related many things.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case, modifying or limiting the subject; as,

Amor multitūdĭnis *commŏvētur*, The love of the multitude is excited. *Cura* mei, Care *for me*. *Vīrĭbus usus*, Need *of strength*.

(3.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

Fŭgit invĭda *ætas*, Envious time flies. Mea *māter est bĕnigna. Dūcit agmĭna* Penthĕsilēa *fŭrens. Lĭtĕra* scripta *mănet.*

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

Sŏpor in grāmĭne. *Oppĭda* sĭne præsĭdio. *Receptio* ad te.

3. A dependent adjective *clause* introduced by *qui, quālis, quan-tus,* etc.; as,

Lĕve fit, quod bĕne fertur, *ŏnus,* The burden, *which is borne well,* becomes light. *Lĭtĕræ,* quas scripsisti, *accēptæ sunt. Ut,* quālis (ille) hăbēri vellet, *tālis esset. Tanta est inter eos,* quanta maxĭma esse pŏtest, *mōrum distantia.*

II. *Complex additions.* The subject may be modified:—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

(1.) When the word to which other words are added is a noun or pronoun, it may be modified in any of the ways above mentioned.

(2.) When it is an adjective it may be modified:—

(*a.*) By an adverb either simple or modified; as,

Erat exspectātĭo valde *magna. Præsĭdium* non nĭmis *firmum.*

(*b.*) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

Major piĕtāte, Superior *in piety. Contentĭōnis cŭpĭdus,* Fond *of contention.* Patri *simĭlis,* Like his father. *Nūdus* membra. *Jŭvĕnes* patre *digni.*

(*c.*) By an infinitive, a gerund, or a supine; as,

Insuētus vinci, Not accustomed *to be conquered*. Vēnandi *stŭdiōsus*, Fond *of hunting*. *Mīrābile* dictu, Wonderful *to tell*.

(*d.*) By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

Rŭdis in rēpŭblĭcā, Unskilled *in civil affairs*. Ab ĕquĭtātu *firmus*. *Cĕler* in pugnam. *Prōnus* ad fĭdem.

(*e.*) By a subordinate clause; as,

Mĕlior est certa pax, quam spērāta victŏria, A certain peace is better *than an expected victory*. *Dŭbius* sum, quid făciam.

(3.) When it is a participle, it may be modified like a verb. See § 203.

2. By a *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case to which other words are added; as,

De victōria Cæsăris *fāma perfertur*, A report *concerning Cæsar's victory* is brought.

REMARK 1. As the case following the preposition is that of a noun or pronoun, it may be modified like the subject in any of the foregoing ways.

REM. 2. The preposition itself may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun or adjective in an oblique case; as,

Longe *ultra*, Far beyond. Multo *ante noctem*, Long before night. Sexennio *post Vēios captos*, Six years after the capture of Veii.

3. By a *subordinate clause*, to whose subject or predicate other words are added.

REMARK. These additions may be of the same form as those added to the principal subject or predicate of the sentence.

III. *Compound additions.* The subject may be modified:—

1. By two or more nouns in the same case as the subject, connected by a coördinate conjunction; as,

Consŭles, Brūtus *et* Collatīnus, The consuls, *Brutus* and *Collatinus*.

2. By two or more oblique cases of a noun or pronoun connected coördinately; as,

Vītæque nĕcisque *pŏtestas*. Pĕrĭcŭlōrum et lăbōrum *incĭtāmentum*.

3. By two or more adjectives, adjective pronouns, or participles, connected coördinately; as,

Grăve *bellum* perdĭŭturnumque. Anĭmi tĕnĕri *atque* molles.

4. By two or more adjective clauses connected coördinately; as,

Et qui fēcēre, *et qui facta aliōrum scripsēre*, *multi laudantur*. Sall.

5. By two or more of the preceding modifications connected coördinately; as,

Genus homĭnum agreste, sine legĭbus, sine imperio, lĭbērum, *atque* solūtum.

REM. 1. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified;

Omnia *tua consilia*, All thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea expressed by *tua consilia*. So Trĭginta *nāves longæ*. Præpŏtens *fĭnitĭmus rex*.

Rem. 2. An infinitive, with the words connected with it, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

Virtus est vĭtium fŭgĕre, *To shun vice is a virtue.*

Rem. 3. A clause, or any member consisting of two or more clauses, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

E cœlo descendit 'Nosce te ipsum.' *Æquum est*, ut hoc făcias.

Rem. 4. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition is put in the nominative, when the verb of the predicate is a finite verb; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is put in the accusative.

Note 1. A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite* verb.

Note 2. In the following pages, when the term *subject* or *predicate* is used alone, the grammatical subject or predicate is intended.

PREDICATE.

§ 203. 1. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple, complex,* or *compound.*

2. The simple predicate, which is also called the *grammatical* predicate, is either a single finite verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun, adjective, and rarely with an adverb; as,

Sol lūcet, The sun *shines. Multa ănĭmālia* rēpunt, Many animals *creep.* Brĕvis est *rŏluptas,* Pleasure *is brief. Eurōpa* est pĕnīnsŭla, Europe *is a pe-nīnsŭla.* Rectissīme sunt *apud te omnia.*

3. The complex predicate, called also the *logical* predicate, consists of the simple predicate with its modifications; as,

Scipio fūdit Annĭbălis cōpias, Scipio *routed the forces of Hannibal.* Here *fūdit* is the grammatical, and *fūdit Annĭbălis cōpias* the logical predicate.— So, *Rōmŭlus* Rōmānæ conditor urbis fuit.

4. The compound predicate consists of two or more simple or complex predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

Prŏbitas laudātur *et* alget, Honesty *is praised* and *neglected.* Lēti vis răpuit, răpietque gentes. *Lucius Catilīna* fŭit magnā vi et anīmi et corpŏris, *sed* ingenio malo pravŏque.

Complex or Modified Predicate.

5. The complex predicate is formed by adding other words to the simple predicate. All additions to the predicate, like the predicate itself, are either simple, complex, or compound.

I. *Simple additions.* The predicate may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word;*—

(1.) A noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs and passive verbs of naming, calling, etc. (See § 210, R. 3.); as,

Servus fĭt lĭbertīnus, The slave becomes a *freedman. Servius Tullius* rex *est dēclārātus. Aristides* justus est *appellātus. Incēdo* regīna.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case; as,

Spe *vĭvimus,* We live *by hope. Deus* rĕgit mundum, God rules *the world.*

16

(3.) An adverb either simple or modified; as,

Sæpe *vēnit*, He came *often*. Festīna lente, Hasten *slowly*. Lĭtĕræ făcĭle *dis-cuntur*. Chrēmes nĭmis grăvĭter crŭcĭat ădŏlescentŭlum.

(4.) An infinitive mood; as,

Cŭpit discĕre, He desires *to learn*. Audĕo dicĕre. Ver esse cœpĕrat.

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as, *Vēnit* ad urbem, He came *to the city*.

3. A dependent substantive or adverbial *clause*; as,

Vĕrĕor ne rep"rĕhendar, I fear *that I shall be blamed*. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, *audiēbam frĕquenter*. Făc cōgĭtes.

II. *Complex addĭtions.* The predicate may be modified:—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

REMARK. These words are the same as in the corresponding cases of complex additions to the subject. See § 202, II.

2. By a *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case, to which other words are added. See complex additions to the subject, § 202.

3. By a subordinate *clause*, to whose subject or predicate other words are added. See complex subject, § 202, II, 3.

REM. 2. Each of the words constituting a proposition may be modified by two or more additions not dependent on, nor connected with each other, and consisting either of single words, phrases, or dependent clauses; as, Agamemnōnis belli *glōria*. Păternum *ŏdĭum* ergā Rōmānos. *Mens* sibi *conscia* recti. Mea maxĭme *intĕrest*, te *vălĕre*. Ago tibi grātias. Meipsum inertĭæ *condemno*. Eos hoc *mŏneo*. In quo te accūso. *Mŏnet* eum, ut suspĭciōnes vītet.

III. *Compound addĭtions.* 1. The predicate may be modified by two or more words, phrases, or clauses, joined together by a coördinate conjunction. See Compound additions to the subject, § 202, III.

2. The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive or the historical infinitive.

3. The members of a compound sentence are connected by coördinate conjunctions; those of a complex sentence by some relative word, or by a subordinate conjunction.

4. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition; as,

Bello confecto *discessit*, i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit*, The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil dēspērandum*, Teucro dŭce.

5. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to *depend* on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to *follow* another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the sentence.

APPOSITION.

§ 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

Urbs Rōma, The city *Rome*. *Nos* consūles, We *consuls*. So *Apud Herodŏtum*, *patrem histŏriæ, sunt innumerabiles fabŭlæ*, In Herodotus, the *father* of history, etc. Cic. *Lapides* silices, *flint* stones. Liv. *Ante me* consūlem, Before I was consul. *Fons cui nōmen* Arethūsa *est*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* to it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation, identification, or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fŭgæ comitem me adjunxi*, I added myself, *as a companion* of his flight; and sometimes the time, cause, reason, etc., of an action; as, *Alexander puer*, Alexander *when a boy*. *Cato senex scribĕre histŏriam instituit*. Suet.

(*b.*) A noun in apposition, like an adjective used as an epithet, (§ 205, N. 2,) *assumes* the attribute denoted by it as belonging to the noun which it limits, while the predicate-nominative *affirms* it. Hence both nouns belong to the same part of the sentence, whether subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocātur*, who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Usus* magister *egregius*. Plin. *Philosŏphia* magistra *vitæ*. Cic. If the annexed noun is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the preceding noun; as, *Laurus* fidissima custos.

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender or in number; as, *Duo* fulmina *belli*, *Scipiădas*, clādem *Libyæ*. Virg. *Mitylēnæ*, urbs *nobilis*. Cic. *Tulliŏla*, delīciæ *nostræ*. Id.;—and sometimes in both; as, *Nāte*, *meæ* vires. Virg. *Nos*, animæ *viles*, *inhumāta infletăque* turba. Id.

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the word in apposition to it; as, Consul *dixi*, scil. *ego*; (I) the consul said. And instead of the substantive pronoun, a possessive adjective pronoun is sometimes used; as, Tua *dŏmus*, *tālis viri*. Cic. See § 211, R. 3, (*b.*)

REM. 5. A noun may be in apposition to two or more nouns, and, in such case, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribūni *plēbis*, M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribunes of the people. Cæs. *Publius et Servius* Sullæ, *Servi filii*. Sall. *Tib. et Gaius* Gracchi. Cic. *Oratiōnes L. et C.* Aureliŏrum Orestārum. Id. But sometimes in the singular; as, Cn. et L. Domitius. Cic.

(1.) So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum vēro cum Aristoxĕno, doctos sāne* homĭnes, *omittāmus*. Cic.

(2.) If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine noun is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque* rēges *legāti missi sunt*. Liv.

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbem* Patāvi *locāvit*, The city of Patavium. Virg. *Plurimus* Eridāni *amnis*. Id. *Arbŏrem fici numquam vidĕrat*. Cic. *In oppĭdo* Antiochīæ. Id. Rupili et Persi *par*. Hor.

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition to it; as, *Corinthi Achaiæ* urbe; At Corinth, a city of Achaia. Tac. *Antiochīæ*, *celēbri* urbe. Cic. See § 221, Note, and § 254, Rem. 3.

REM. 8. (*a.*) A proper name, after *nōmen* or *cognōmen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is put in apposition either to *nōmen*, etc., or to the dative, the latter by a species of attraction; as, *Fons, cui nōmen* Arethūsa *est*. Cic. *Stirps virīlis, cui* Ascanium *parentes dixēre* nōmen. Liv. *Nōmen* Arctūro *est mihi*, I have the

name Arcturus. Plaut. *Cui nunc cognōmen* Iūlo *additur.* Virg. *Cui Egerio indi-tum nōmen.* Liv.—(*b.*) The name may also be put in the genitive; as, *Nōmen* Mercúrii *est mihi.* Plaut. Q. *Metellus, cui* Macedonici *nōmen inditum črat.* Vell. Cf. R. 6.—(*c.*) In *Illa ætas, cui fećimus* Aurea *nōmen,* Ov. Met. 15, 96, *Aurea* is used as an indeclinable noun, instead of *Auream* (scil. *ætātem*); or *Aureæ,* dat. (scil. *ætāti.*)

Rem. 9. A *clause* may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Cogitet* ora-tōrem institui—*rem arduam,* Let him reflect that an orator is training—a diffi-cult thing. Qnint.—So also a neuter adjective used substantively; as, Triste *lúpus stabúlis,* The wolf, a sad thing to the folds. Virg. Várium *et* mutabile *semper femina.* Id.

Rem. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are ex-pressed by nouns in apposition to it; as, *Onerāriae, pars maxima ad Ægimūrum,* —aliæ *adversus urbem ipsam delātæ sunt,* The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Ægimurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et pŏëtæ suum* quisque *ŏpus a vulgo considerāri vult.* Cic. In the construction of the ablative absolute, *quisque* remains in the nominative. though the word to which it is in apposition is in the ablative; as, *Multis sibi* quisque *impĕrium petentĭbus.* Sall. J. 18. So also, in Liv. 26, 29, *quisque* remains in the nomina-tive although the word to which it is in apposition is in the accusative with the infinitive.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of inter-rogative and responsive words.

Rem. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a ques-tion, must be in the same case as the corresponding interrogative word; as,

Quis *hĕrus est tibi ?* Amphitrno, scil. *est.* Who is your master? Amphitrno (is.) Plaut. Quid *quœris ?* Librum, scil. *quœro.* What are you looking for? A book. Quŏtā *hŏrā vĕnisti ?* Sextā. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

Note 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, Cūjus *est liber ?* Meus, (not *Mei.*) (See § 211, Rem. 3, (*b.*) So *cūjum* for genitive *cūjus ?* **Cūjum** *pĕcus ? an Melibœi ? Non; virum Ægōnis.* Virg.

Note 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, Quanti *emisti ?* Viginti mĭnis. *Damnatusne ēs furti ?* Imo *ŏlio crimine.* See §§ 214, R. 1, and 217, R. 2.

ADJECTIVES.

§ **205.** Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case ; as,

Bŏnus vir, A good man.	*Bŏnos viros,* Good men.
Benigna māter, A kind mother.	*Vāna lēges,* Useless laws.
Triste bellum, A sad war.	*Minācia verba,* Threatening words.
Spe amissā, Hope being lost.	*Hæc res,* This thing.

So, *Mea māter est benigna.*
Hæc lēges vānæ sunt.

Note 1. Adjectives, according to their meaning, (§ 104,) are divided into two classes—*qualifying* and *limiting*—the former denoting *property* or *quality* of a noun; as, a *wise* man, lead is *heavy*; the latter *defining* or *restricting* its meaning; as, *this* man, *ten* cities. To the former class belong such adjec-tives as denote a property or quality, including all participles and participial adjectives; to the latter, the adjective pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and numerals.

NOTE 2. An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either be used as an epithet to modify a noun, or, with the copula *sum*, may constitute a predicate. In the former case the quality is *assumed*, in the latter it is *asserted*. In both cases, the rule for their agreement is, in general, the same. See § 210, R. 1.

NOTE 3. Any word or combination of words added to a noun to modify or limit its meaning is of the nature of an adjective.

NOTE 4. In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles, either alone or combined with the auxiliary *sum*, and also adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

REMARK 1. An adjective agrees also with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas æger ăgo*, scil. *ĕgo*, *Melibœus*; Virg. *Fortŭnāte puer, tu nunc eris alter ab illo.* Id. *Ut se tōtum ei trādĕret.* Nep. *O me misĕrum* (spoken by a man), *misĕram me* (spoken by a woman). So *salvi sŭmus, salvœ sŭmus,* scil. *nos,* masculine or feminine.—In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos frāges cōnsūmĕre nāti.* Hor.

REM. 2. An adjective may belong to each of two or more nouns, and in such case is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective agrees with them in gender, as well as in number; as,

Lŭpus et agnus siti compulsi, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd. *Sicilia Sardiniăque* amissæ. Liv.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

Păter mihi et māter mortui *sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter. So also *uterque* in the singular. *Procumbit* uterque, scil. *Deucălion et Pyrrha.* Ovid.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

His gĕnus, œtas, eloquentia prŏpe æqualia *fuĕre*, Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, imperĭa, nobilĭtātes, honōres, dirītiæ in cāsu* sita *sunt.* Cic. *Huic bella, rapīnæ, discordia civilis,* grāta *fuĕre.* Sall. *Anĭma atque anĭmus, quamvis integra rĕcens in corpus eunt.* Lucr.

NOTE. When nouns denoting things without life are of the *same* gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Crœso et vita et patrimōnii partes, et urbs Barce* concessa *sunt.* Just.; sometimes also when both nouns are in the singular number; as, *Plerosque velocitas et regio hostibus ignāra* tutāta *sunt.* Sall. *Nox atque præda* remorāta *sunt.* Id.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of that which has life; as,

Nunĭdæ atque signa militārĭa obscurāti *sunt*, The Numidians and the military standards were concealed. Sall. *Romāni rĕgem regnumque Macedōniæ* sua futūra *sciunt.* Liv. *Jāne, fác æternos pácem pacisque ministros.* Ovid.

EXC. to REM. 2. The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

Sŏciis et rĕge recepto, Our companions and king having been recovered. Virg. *Agri* omnes *et mária.* Cic. *Cognĭtum est salŭtem, libĕros, fămam, fortŭnas esse* cārissĭmas. Cic.

Note. A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective, the gender being the same as if the nouns were connected by *et*; as, *Filiam cum filio* accitos. Liv. *Ilia cum Lauso de Numitōre* sāti. Ovid. *Filium Alexandri cum mātre in arcem* custōdiendos *mittit.* Just.

Rem. 3. (1.) An adjective qualifying a collective noun is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

Pars certāre părāti, A part, prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agros* dīlapsi. .... *suam quisque spem* exsēquentes. Liv. *Supplex turba ērant sine jūdice* tūti. Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb. See § 209, R. 11.

(2.) Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the *singular* takes the gender of the individuals; as, *Pars* arduus *altis* pulvērulentus *ĕquis fūrit.* Virg. *Pars* ūna dūcum—fractus morbo. Ovid.

(3.) Sometimes other nouns, which only in a figurative sense denote human beings, have by *synēsis* an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include; as, *Lātium Capuāque agro* mulctāti, Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Capita conjūrātiōnis vir-gis* cæsi *ac secāri* percussi *sunt.* Id. *Auxilia* irāti. Id. So after *millia*; as, *Duo millia Tyriōrum, crŭcibus* affixi. Curt. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

Rem. 4. Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun; as, *Mária Tyrrhēnum atque* Adriāticum, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. *Cum legiōnibus* secundā *et* tertiā. Liv. *Circa portas* Collinam Esquilīnamque. Id. But sometimes the noun is in the singular; as, *Inter Esquilīnam Collinamque* portam. Id. *Legio Martia et quarta.* In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as, *Nōbis præsente.* Plaut. *Absente nōbis.* Ter.

Rem. 5. A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, (*a*) sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est* dicenda, Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens universa Vēnēti* appellāti. Liv. (*b.*) Sometimes also it agrees with a noun following the subject and in apposition to it; as, *Corinthum, patres vestri, tōtius Græciæ* lūmen, exstinctum *esse vŏluērunt.* Cic.; or (*c*) with the noun of a subordinate-sentence; as, *Illōrum urbem ut* prōpugnācŭlum oppŏsitum *esse barbaris.* Nep.

Rem. 6. When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, (§ 239, R. 1,) an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mihi* negligenti *esse non licuit,* i. e. *ne negligentem esse mihi non licuit.* Cic. *Da mihi justo sanctōque vidēri.* Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vōbis necesse est* fortibus *esse* vīris. Liv. But the adjective often agrees with the omitted subject; as, *Expedit* bŏnas *esse* vōbis, scil. *vos.* Ter. *Si cīri Rōmāno licet esse* Gāditānum. Cic.

Rem. 7. (1.) An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

Bŏni sunt rāri, scil. *hŏmines,* Good (men) are rare. *Cæsar suos mīsit,* scil. *mīlites,* Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra,* scil. *mănus,* The right (hand). *Implentur pinguis* fĕrīnæ, scil. *carnis.* Virg. *Hībernæ,* scil. *castra.* Altum, scil. *măre. Quartāna,* scil. *febris. Immortāles,* scil. *Dii.* Lucr. *Amantium,* scil. *hŏmi-num.* Ter. *Illum* indignanti *similem, similemque* minanti aspĭcēres, scil. *hŏmini.* Virg. *Tibi* prīmas *dĕfĕro,* scil. *partes.* Cic. *Respice* prætĕritum, scil. *tempus,* which is often omitted, as in *ex quo, ex eo,* and *ex illo,* scil. *tempŏre. Cognōri ex* meōrum *omnium* lĭtĕris, scil. *ămĭcōrum.* Cic. So patrial adjectives; as, *Missi ad* Parthum Arměniumque *lēgāti,* scil. *rēgem. In Tuscŭlāno,* scil. *prædio.*

NOTE 1. The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *hŏmĭnes*, but when they are posessives, it is oftener *ămīci*, *milĭtes*, *cīves*, or *prŏpinqui*.

NOTE 2. The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, where, in English, the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied; as,

Bŏnum, a good thing; *mălum*, a bad thing, or, an evil. So *hŏnestum*, *vērum*, *turpe*; and in the plural, *bŏna*, *măla*, *turpĭa*, *lēvĭa*, *cœlestia*, etc. *Labor omnia vincit*, Labor overcomes all things. Virg.

NOTE 1. The Latins generally preferred adding *res* to an adjective, to using its neuter as a substantive. But sometimes, when *res* is used, an adjective or pronoun referring to it is put in the neuter instead of the feminine; as, *Eārum rērum utrumque.* Cic. *Hūmānārum rērum fortūna* plēraque *rēgit.* Sall. *Illud te rŏgo, sumptui ne parcas ullā in re, quod ad vălētūdinem ŏpus sit.* Cic. *Omnium rērum mors est* extrēmum. Cic.

NOTE 2. Instead of *thing* or *things*, other words may sometimes be supplied, as the sense requires. With a preposition, neuter adjectives form adverbial phrases; as, *A prīmo*, At first. Plaut. *Per mūtua*, Mutually. Virg. *In prīmis*, In the first place. *Ad hoc*, or *Ad hæc*, Moreover, besides.

(3.) Adjectives used substantively often have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia omnia*, All other (things.) Plin. *Inĭquissĭmi mei*, My greatest enemies. *Fămĭliāris* meus. Cic. *Inĭquus noster.* Id. *Justa fūnebria.* Liv. *Jŏvis omnia* plēna. scil. sunt. Virg.

REM. 8. (*a.*) Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, Suprēmum *văle dĭxit*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. *Dulce et dĕcōrum est pro patriā mōri.* Hor. *Velle suum cuique est.* Pers. *Cras istud quando rēnit?* Mart. J. *Rēdĭbo* actūtum. A. Id actūtum *diu est.* Plaut. *Excepto quod non sīmul esses, cētera lœtus.* Hor. (*b.*) In the poets and later prose writers the adjective, as in Greek, is sometimes in the neuter plural; as, *Ut Æneas pĕlăgo jactātur*—nōta tibi. Virg.

REM. 9. (*a.*) Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, *Multum tempŏris*, for *multum tempus*; much time. *Id rei*, for *ea res*; that thing. So, *plus ēlŏquentiæ*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (§ 110, (*b.*) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, *Vāna rērum*, for *vānæ res.* Hor. *Plēraque hūmānārum rērum.* Sall. Cf. § 212, R. 3, N. 4. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used substantively, according to Rem. 7, (2); as, Acūta *belli.* Hor. *Tellūris* ŏperta. Virg. Summa *pectŏris.*

NOTE. The adjectives thus used partitively in the singular, for the most part, signify quantity. See § 212, Rem. 3, Note 1.

REM. 10. A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, Dulce *rūdentem Lālăgen ămābo*, dulce *lŏquentem.* Hor. Magnum *strīdens.* Virg. *Arma horrendum sŏnuēre.* Id. Multa *deos vēnĕrāti sunt.* Cic. *Hŏdie aut* summum *cras.* Id. See § 192, II. 4, (*b.*)

REM. 11. (*a.*) A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, Nēmo miles *Rōmānus*, No Roman soldier. Liv. Nēmo *fēre ădŏlescens.* Cic. *Vir* nēmo *bŏnus.* Id. Cf. § 207, R. 31, (*c.*) *Tibĕrim* accŏlis *flūviis orbātum.* Tac. *Incŏla turba.* Ovid. The poets use in this manner the Greek patronymics in *as* and *is*; as, *Pēlias hasta.* Ovid. *Luarus Parnāsis.* Id. *Ursa Libystis.* Virg. Cf. also § 129, 8.

(*b.*) An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nēque ēnim ignāri sŭmus* ante *mălōrum*; i. e. *antĭquōrum* or *prætĕritōrum.* Virg. Nunc *hŏmĭnum mōres.* Plaut.

Rem. 12. (a.) An adjective or adjective pronoun, used partitively, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elĕphanto belluārum* nulla *est prūdentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium flūmĭnum* maxĭmus. Cic. Vēlocissĭmum *omnium anĭmālium est delphīnus*. Plin. See § 212, Rem. 2.—(b.) So also with *de, ex, in, ăpud, inter*, etc., with the ablative or accusative instead of the partitive genitive. See § 212, R. 2, N. 4.

(c.) When a *collective* noun follows in the genitive singular, (§ 212, R. 2.) the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir fortissĭmus nostrae cīvĭtātis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. Maxĭmus *stirpis*. Liv.

Rem. 13. (a.) When a possessive pronoun or adjective is used instead of the genitive of its primitive or of its corresponding noun (see § 211, R. 3, (b.) and (c.) and R. 4), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, *Sōlius meum peccātum corrĭgi non potest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. Noster duōrum *ēventus*. Liv. Tuum ipsius *stŭdium*. Cic. *Pugna* Rōmāna *stăbilis suo pondĕre* incumbentium *in hostem*. Liv.

(b.) Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition to the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum*, hŏmĭnis *simplĭcis*. Cic.

Rem. 14. An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vĭce versâ;* as, *Aedĭficātiōnis* tuae *consĭlium* for *viŏlātum*. Liv. *Ad* majŏra *initĭa rērum* ducentĭbus *fātis*, for *majōrum*. Id. Iis *nōmĭnĭbus cīvĭtātum, quĭbus ex cīvĭtātĭbus*, etc., for *eārum cīvĭtātum*. Caes.

Rem. 15. (a.) An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce vēnit Tĕlămon prŏpĕrus*, Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. *Laeti pācem* ăgĭtābāmus, for *laete*. Sall. *Aenĕas* se mātūtīnus *ăgēbat*, for *māne*. Virg. *Nec lŭpus* grĕgĭbus nocturnus *ŏbambŭlăt*, i. e. by night. Id.

(b.) So *nullus* is used for *non;* as, *Mĕmĭni tămetsi* nullus *mŏneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Sextus ăb armis* nullus *discēdit*. Cic. *Prior, prīmus, princeps, prŏpior, proxĭmus, sōlus, ūnus, ultĭmus, multus, tōtus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially; as, *Priori Rēmo* augŭrium *vēnisse fertur*. Liv. *Hispānĭa* postrēma *omnĭum prōvinciārum perdŏmĭta est*. Liv. *Scaevŏla* sōlos *nŏvem menses* Asĭae *praefuit*, Only nine months. Cic. *Unum hoc dīco*, This only I say. Id. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, *Prōnus cĕcĭdit*. Ovid. *Frĕquentes convēnerant*. Sall.

(c.) In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vĭce versâ;* as, *Sic vēnias* hŏdierne. Tibull. *Salve*, prīmus *omnium părens patrĭae* appellāte. Plin.

Rem. 16. (a.) A noun is often qualified by two or more adjectives; and sometimes the complex idea, formed by a noun with one or more adjectives, is itself qualified by other adjectives, which agree in gender, etc. with the noun.

(b.) When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multâ et vărĭâ et cŏpiōsâ ōrātiōne*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted; as, *Vir altus et excellens*. Cic. *Actīo, vărĭa, vĕhĕmens, plēna vĕrĭtātis*. Id.

(c.) But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, *Pērĭcŭlōsissĭmum* cīvīle *bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. *Mălum* dŏmestĭcam *disciplīnam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; *Externos multos* clāros *vĭros* nōmĭnārem. Cic. Cf. § 202, III., R. 1.

Rem. 17. The first part, last part, middle part, etc., of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the adjectives *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *intimus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, and *cetera*; as,

Media nox, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The top of a tree. *Supremos montes*, The summits of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extremo complexu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infimo loco natus*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

Rem. 18. The participle of the compound tenses of verbs, used impersonally in the passive voice, is neuter; as, *Ventum est*. Cic. *Itum est in viscera terræ.* Ovid. *Scribendum est mihi.* See § 184, 2 and 3.

RELATIVES.

§ **206.** Rem. 19. (*a*.) Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

Puer qui legit, The boy who reads. *Ædificium quod exstruxit*, The house which he built. *Literæ quas dedi*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum qualis eram*, I am not such as I was. Hor. So *Deus cujus munere vivimus, cui nullus est similis*, quem *colimus, a quo facta sunt omnia, est æternus.* *Addictus Hermippo, et ab hoc ductus est. Aquilo*, quantus *frangit ilices.* Hor.

Note 1. This rule includes all adjectives and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the demonstrative pronouns and the relative *qui*.

Note 2. When a pronoun refers to the mere words of a sentence, it is said to be used *logically*. *Qui* and *is* are so used, and sometimes also *hic* and *ille*.

(*b*.) The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender, number, and person, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

(1.) Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus *itineribus domo exire possent*, There were only two *routes*, by which *routes* they could leave home. Cæs. *Crudelissimo bello*, quale *bellum nulla umquam barbaria gessit.* Cic. But it is most frequent with the word *dies*; as, *Fore in armis certo die*, qui *dies futurus erat*, etc. Cic. The repetition of the substantive is necessary, when, for any reason, it becomes doubtful to which of two or more preceding substantives the relative refers.

(2.) Usually the antecedent noun only is expressed; as,

Animum rege, qui, *nisi paret, imperat*, Govern your passions, which rule unless they obey. Hor. *Tanta multitudinis, quantam capit urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus.* Cic. *Quot capitum vivunt, totidem studiorum millia.* Hor.

(3.) Sometimes the *latter* noun only is expressed, especially when the relative clause, as is frequently the case, precedes that of the antecedent; as,

Quibus *de rebus ad me scripsisti, coram videbimus:* scil. *de rebus*, In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur;* scil. *locus.* Liv. *Quanta vi expetunt, tanta defendunt.* *Qualesque visus eram vidisse viros, ex ordine tales aspicio.* Ovid.

(a.) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun; as, *Ad* quas res *aptissimi érimus,* in iis *pŏtissimum ēlăbōrābimus.* Cic. But the demonstrative is often omitted when its case is the same as that of the relative, and not unfrequently, also, when the cases are different. When the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent, *is* is expressed only for the sake of emphasis. Hence we find such sentences as, *Maximum ornāmentum ămīcĭtiæ tollit, qui ex eā tollit vĕrēcundiam.* Cic. *Terra quod accēpit, numquam sine ūsūrā reddit.* Id.—The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs are in like manner often omitted before their corresponding relatives; *tālis* before *quālis, tantus* before *quantus, inde* before *unde, ibi* before *ŭbi,* etc.

(b.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non mălārum* quas *ămor* cūras *hăbet, hæc inter oblīviscitur?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

Qui bĕne lătuit, bĕne vixit, scil. *hŏmo,* (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt quos currĭcŭlo pulvĕrem Olympĭcum cŏllēgisse jŭvat,* scil. *hŏmines,* There are whom it delights, i. e. Some delight. Hor. *Non hăbeo* quod *te accūsem,* scil. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non sōlum săpiens vidēris, qui hinc absis, sed ētiam bĕātus,* scil. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antīqua fŭit; Tȳrii tĕnŭēre cŏlōni,* scil. *quam* or *eam,* There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed, Virg.; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus* cum *pĕdĭtibus,* quos *fīlius ējus adduxĕrat, nĕque in priōre pugnā adfŭĕrant, Rōmānos invādunt,* for *et* qua *non in priōre,* etc. Sall.

(6.) *(a.)* The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Quum scrības et ăliquid ăgas eōrum,* quōrum *consuēsti,* for *quæ.* Cic. *Raptim* quĭbus *quisque pŏtĕrat ēlātis,* exĭbant, for *iis, quæ quisque efferre pŏtĕrat, ēlātis.* Liv.

(b.) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative, the substantive either preceding or following the pronoun; as, Urbem quam *stătuo vestra est,* for *urbs.* Virg. *Ennūchum* quem *dēdisti nōbis, quas turbas dĕdit!* for *Eunūchus.* Ter. Naucrātem quem *cŏnŭcĕnūre vŏlui, in nāvi non ĕrat.* Plaut. *Atque ālii,* quōrum *cōmœdia prisca virōrum est,* for *atque ālii viri, quōrum est.* Hor. *Illi, scripta* quĭbus *cōmœdia prisca vīris est,* for *illi viri, quĭbus.* Id. Quos puĕros mĭsĕram, ĕpistŏlam mĭhi attŭlērunt. Cic.

These constructions are said to occur by *attraction.*

(7.) *(a.)* An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jŏcos,* quos incondĭtos *jăcĭunt,* for *jŏcos incondĭtos, quos,* etc. Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis,* quæ magna *vŏlant.* Virg. *Cālōre,* quem multum *hăbet.* Cic.

(b.) This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a *numeral,* a *comparative,* or a *superlative;* as, *Nocte* quam *in terris* ultimam *ēgit,* The last night which he spent upon earth. *Æsculāpius,* qui prīmus *vulnus obligăvisse dīcītur.* Cic. *Consiliis* pāre, *quæ nunc* pulcherrĭma *Nautes dat sĕnior,* Listen to the excellent advice, which, etc. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Quum vēnissent ad vāda* Volaterrāna, *quæ nŏmĭnantur,* Which are called Volaterran. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative or demonstrative is joined a noun explanatory of its antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative or demonstrative usually agrees with that noun; as,

Santónes non longe a Tólósátium fínibus absunt, quæ cīvĭtas *est in prōvĭnciā*, The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which *state* is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comĭtia, quod tempus haud longe ăbĕrat.* Sall. *Rōmæ fănum Diǽnæ pŏpŭli Lătīni cum pŏpŭlo Rōmāno fēcērunt:* ea ĕrat confessio *cáput rērum Rōmam esse;* i. e. that thing or that act. Liv. *Si omnia făcienda sunt, quæ amīci rēlint, non amĭcĭtiæ* tāles, sed conjūrātiōnes *pŭtandæ sunt;* i. e. such things or such connections. Cic. So, Ista *quidem* vis, Surely this is force. Ea *ipsa* causa *belli fŭit*, for *id ipsum*. Hither also may be referred such explanatory sentences as, Qui *meus* ămor *in te est*, Such is my love for you. Cic.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

Flūmen est Arar quod *in Rhŏdănum influit.* Cæs. *Ad flūmen Oxum perventum est*, qui *turbĭdus semper est.* Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sum* or a verb of naming, esteeming, etc., a predicate-noun occurs of a different gender from the antecedent, the relative commonly agrees with the latter; but when the preceding noun is to be explained and distinguished from another, the relative agrees with the former; as,

Nātūræ vultus quem *dixēre Chaos*, The appearance of nature which they called chaos. Ovid. Gĕnus *hŏmĭnum* quod *Hĭlōtes vŏcātur.* Nep. *Anĭmal*, quem *vŏcāmus* hŏmĭnem, The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Lŏcus in carcĕre*, quod Tulliānum *appellātur.* Sall. *Pĕcūniārum conquĭsĭtio;* eos esse *belli cīvīlis nervos dictitans Muciānus.* Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equivalent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding clause; as,

Abundantia eārum rērum, quæ mortālēs prima pŭtant, An abundance of those things, which mortals esteem most important. Sall. Cf. § 205, R. 7, (2.) N. 1. But sometimes when a neuter adjective used substantively has preceded, *res* with a relative follows; as, Permulta *sunt, quæ di i possunt*, quæ re *intellĭgătur.* Cic. *Fătāle monstrum*, quæ; etc., scil. *Cleŏpătra.* Hor. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

(*a.*) A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a collective noun, or to a noun which only in a figurative sense denotes a human being, sometimes takes the gender and number of the individuals which the noun implies; as, *Equĭtātum*, quos. Sall. Gĕnus, qui *prēmuntur.* Cic. Sēnātus—ii. Sall.

(*b.*) A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the singular, referring not only to the noun but to the class of persons or things to which it belongs; as, *Dēmŏcrĭtum ŏmittāmus; nihil est enim ăpud istos*, quod, etc. i. e. with Democritus and his followers. Cic. *Dĭonȳsius nēgăvit se jūre illo nigro quod cœna cáput ĕrat, dēlectātum. Tua is, qui illa cœɛrat*, etc. Id.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as, *Omnes laudāre fortūnas* meas, qui *nātum tāli ĭngĕnio prædĭtum hăbērem;* scil. mei, All were extolling *my* fortune, *who*, etc. Ter. *Id* mea *mĭnĭme rēfert*, qui *sum nātu maxĭmus.* Id. Nostrum *consĭlium laudandum est*, qui *nŏbīᴗrum*, etc. Cic.; or in a possessive adjective; as, *Servīli* tŭmultu, quos, etc. Cæs.

(13.) (*a.*) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition; the relative then is commonly neuter; as, *Postrēmo*, quod *difficĭllĭmum inter mortālĕs, glōriā invĭdiam vīcisti*, Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, *which*, among men, is most difficult. Sall. *Equĭdem expectābam jam tuas lĭtĕras, idque cum multis.* Cic.

(*b.*) In such instances, *id* is generally placed before the relative pronoun, referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sīve*, id *quod constat, Plătōnis stŭdiōsus audiendi fŭit.* Cic. *Diem consŭli rŏlĕbunt*, id *quod fēcērunt.* Id.

(*c.*) Sometimes *is*, referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following; as, *Idem velle atque idem nolle, ea dēmum firma amĭcĭtia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod*, relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period, where it may be translated by 'nay,' 'now,' or 'and.' It is thus used especially before *si*, *etsi*, and *nisi*; as, Quodsi *illīnc inānis prōfūgisses, tămen ista tua fūga nēfāria jūdicārētur*, i. e. and even if you had fled without taking any thing with you, still, etc. Cic. Verr. 1, 14. Quodsi, 'if then,' is especially used in introducing something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. Sometimes also it is equivalent to 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not'; as, Quodnīsi *ego meo adventu illius cōnātus ăliquantŭlum repressissem, tam multos*, etc. Quŏdetsi is 'nay, even if'; as, *Quŏdetsi ingĕniis magnis prædĭti quidam dicendi cōpiam sine rătiōne consĕquuntur, ars tămen est dux certior.*—*Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ŭbi*, *quia*, *quŏniam*, *nē* and *ŭtinam*, where the conjunction alone would seem to be sufficient; as, Quod *ŭtinam illam, cūjus impio făcĭnŏre in has mĭsērias prōjectus sum, eādem hæc sĭmŭlantem videam.* Sall. It is so used even before a relative in Cic. Phil. 10, 4, *fin.*—*Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) (*a.*) A relative is always plural, when referring to two or more nouns in the singular. If the nouns are of different genders, the gender of the relative is determined by Rem. 2, page 185; as, *Nīnus et Sĕmĭrămis, qui Bābўlōna condĭdērant*, Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crebro fūnāli et tĭbĭcĭne, quæ sĭbi sumpsĕrat.* Cic. *Ex summā lætītiā atque lascĭvĭā, quæ dĭŭturna quies pĕpĕrĕrat.* Sall. *Nāves et captivos quæ ad Chium capta ĕrant.* Liv. (*b.*) If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative follows the first person rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Tu et păter, qui in convīvio ĕrātis. Ego et tu, qui ĕrāmus.* Cf. § 209, R. 12, (7.)

(16.) The relative adjectives *quŏt*, *quantus*, *quālis*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding demonstrative words, *tŏt*, *tantus*, *tālis*; but these are also often omitted. Frequently also the order of the clauses is reversed, so that the relative clause precedes the demonstrative.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, Quæ *quum ita sint*, Since *these* (things) are so. Cic.

(18.) The relative *qui* with *sum* and either a nominative or the ablative of quality, is used in explanatory clauses, instead of *pro*, 'in accordance with,' or 'according to'; thus, instead of *Tū, pro tuā prŭdentiā, quid optĭmum factu sit, rĭdēbis.* Cic., we may say, *quæ tua est prŭdentia*, or, *quā prŭdentiā ēs.* So, *Vēlis tantummŏdo, quæ tua virtus, expugnābis.* Hor. Quā prūdentiā es, *nĭhĭl te fŭgiet.* Cic.

(19.) A relative clause is sometimes used for the purpose of denoting by circumlocution the person of the agent in a definite but not permanent condition; as, *Ii, qui audiunt*, or *qui adsunt*, i. e. the hearers, the persons present. So, also, a relative clause is used for the English expression 'above mentioned'; as, *Ex librīs quos dixi* or *quos ante* (*supra*) *laudāri*: and the English 'so called,' or 'what is called,' is expressed by *quem*, *quam*, *quod vŏcant*, or by *qui*, *quæ*, *quod vŏcātur*, *dicĭtur*, etc.; as, *Nec Hermas hos, quos vŏcant, impōni* (*Athēnis*) *licēbat.* Cic. *Vestra, quæ dicĭtur, vīta, mors est.* Id.

(20.) Relative and demonstrative adverbs (see § 191, R. 1), are frequently used instead of relative and demonstrative pronouns with prepositions; as, *Is, unde te audisse dicis, i. e. a quo.* Cic. *Dīvĭtiæ ăpud illos sunt, aut ŭbi illi vŏlunt, i. e. ăpud quos.* Sall. *Huic ab ădŏlescentiā bella intestina, cædes, răpīnæ, discordia civĭlis, grāta fuēre, ĭbique jŭventūtem exercuit, i. e. in iis*, in these things. Sall.

(21.) With *quam qui* and the superlative after *tam* the verb of the relative clause is sometimes omitted; a, *Tam mĭhi grātum id ĕrit, quam quod grātissĭmum.* Cic. *Tam ĕnim sum ămĭcus reipublĭcæ, quam qui maxĭme.* Id. *Tam sum mītis, quam qui lēnissĭmus.* Id. So also with *ut qui* without *tam*; as, *Te semper sic cŏlam et tuēbor, ut quem dĭligentissĭme.* Id.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

§ **207.** REM. 20. The oblique cases of the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her,* etc.) are commonly expressed in prose by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id.* *Hic* and *ille,* however, being more emphatic, take the place of *is, ea, id,* in lyric poetry, and occasionally in prose also, when particular emphasis is intended. The cases of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum,* also, are employed for this purpose, when the individuality of the person is to be distinctly expressed. In reflexive sentences, the oblique cases of the pronoun of the third person, are regularly supplied by *sui, sibi, se;* and it is only when the person of the leading subject is to be referred to with particular emphasis, that *ipse* is used instead of *sui.*

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns, *is* and *ille,* are sometimes used, especially with *quidem,* where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Sapientiæ studium vetus* id quidem *in nostris,* sed tamen, etc. Cic. *O hóminem semper* illum quidem *mihi aptum, nunc vero etiam suávem.* Id. *Quem neque fides, neque jusjurandum, neque* illum *misericordia, répressit,* Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter. *Is* when used for the sake of emphasis seems sometimes in English to be superfluous; as, *Mále se res hábet, quum, quod virtúte effici débet,* id *tentátur pecúniâ.* Cic.

REM. 22. *Sic, ita, id, hoc, illud,* are often used redundantly as a preliminary announcement of a subsequent proposition, and are added to the verb on which this proposition depends; as, *Sic a majóribus suis accépérant, tanta pópuli Ró-m*⟨*m⟩ni esse benefícia, ut,* etc. Cic. *Te* illud *admóneo, ut quótidie méditére, resist-endum esse iracundiæ.* Id. *Hoc* tibi persuadeas vélim, me nihil ómisisse,* I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing. These pleonastic additions have generally no influence on the construction of propositions, but in a few instances they are followed by *ut;* as, *De cújus dicendi cópiâ* sic accépi-mus, ut,* etc. Cic. *Ita* énim definit, ut* perturbátio sit,* etc. Id. In the phrase *hoc, illud,* or *id ágére ut,* the pronoun is established by custom and is necessary. See § 273, 1, (*a.*)

REM. 23. (*a.*) *Hic* 'this' refers to what is near to the speaker either in place or time, *ille* 'that' to what is more remote. Hence *hic* sometimes refers to the speaker himself, and *hic hómo* is then the same as *ego.* On this account *hic* is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. When reference is made to two things previously mentioned, *hic* commonly refers to the latter, *ille* to the former, and the pronouns are arranged in the same order, as the objects to which they relate; as, *Ignária corpus hébétat, labor firmat;* illa *mátúrem senectútem,* hæc *longam ádolescentiam réddit,* Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

(*b.*) But the order is often reversed, so that *hic* refers to the object first mentioned, and *ille* to the one mentioned last; as, *Sic deus et virgo est;* hic *spe céler,* illa *timóre.* Ovid. So when *alter...alter,* 'the one...the other,' refer to two things mentioned before, the previous order is sometimes observed and sometimes reversed; but wherever there is ambiguity the order is reversed, so that the first *alter* refers to the last object. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic...ille.* So *ille...ille* sometimes denote 'the one...the other.'

(*c.*) *Hic* and *ille* have the same relation to time present and past as *nunc* and *tunc,* see § 277; and hence whatever, in speaking of present time, is expressed by *hic* and its derivative adverbs, *hic, hinc, huc,* and *adhuc,* is expressed by *ille* and its derivatives, in what is spoken of as belonging to past time.

REM. 24. *Ille,* when not in opposition to *hic,* is often used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno* illi *Alexandro símillimus,* Very like Alexander the Great. Vell. *Médéa* illa,* The celebrated Medea. Cic. Hence *ille* is sometimes added to other pronouns, to refer to something discussed before; as, *Arébant visére, quis* ille *tot per annos ópes nostras sprévisset.* Tac. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this;* as, *Unum* illud *dico,* This only I say. Cic. *Ille*

sometimes marks a change of persons, and may then be translated 'the other'; as, *Vercingétŏrix obriam Cæsări prŏficíscitur.* Ille (scil. *Cæsar*) *oppidum Noviŏdūnum oppugnāre institúĕrat.* Cæs.

REM. 25. *Iste* properly refers to the person addressed, and for this reason is called the demonstrative of the second person.—*Ille* refers to the person spoken of, and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. Thus *iste líber* is thy book, but *ille líber* is the book of which we are speaking. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille,* etc., of some other person or thing. See § 191, R. 1, (*e.*) *Iste* from its frequent forensic use, and its application to the opponent, often denotes contempt.

REM. 26. (*a.*) *Is* does not, like *hic, ille,* and *iste,* denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but either refers without particular emphasis to something already mentioned or to something which is to be defined by the relative *qui. Hic, is,* or *ille,* may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discĭt,* or *hic discĭt,* but not *ille discĭt,* unless some individual is referred to.

(*b.*) *Is* before a relative or *ut* has sometimes the sense of *tális,* such, denoting a class; as, *Nĕque énim tu is es, qui quid sis nescĭas,* Nor are you such a person, as not to know what you are. Cic.; sometimes it has the force of *idem;* as, *vos* —*ii.* Cic. Manil. 12.

(*c.*) If the noun to which *is* refers is to receive some additional predicate, we must use *et is, atque is, isque, et is quidem,* and with a negative *nec is;* as, *Vincŭla vēro,* et ea *sempiterna,* etc. Cic. *Unā in dŏmo,* et ea quidem *angusta,* etc. Id. *Adolescentes aliquot,* nec ii *ténui lŏco orti,* etc. Liv. *Sed* is is used when the additional predicate is opposed to the preceding; as, *Sërēritātem in sĕnectúte probo,* sed eam, *sicut ália, mŏdĭcam.* Cic. The neuter *et id,* or *idque,* serves to introduce an addition to the preceding proposition; as, *Quamquam te, Marce fíli, annum jam audiĕntem Crátippum,* idque *Athénis,* etc.

(*d.*) *Is* is not expressed when it would be in the same oblique case as the preceding noun to which it refers; as, *Pāter ámat libĕros et támen castigat. Multos illustrat fortúna, dum vexat.*

(*e.*) When in English 'that' or 'those' is used instead of the repetition of the preceding substantive, *is* is never used in Latin, and *ille* only in later authors. In such cases the noun is commonly not repeated in Latin, and no pronoun is used in its place; as, *Philippus hostĭum mĭnus sæpe vitávit, suōrum effŭgĕre non valŭit,* those of his own subjects. Curt. Sometimes the substantive is repeated; as, *Jūdĭcia cívitátis cum jūdĭciis princĭpis certant.* Vell. Sometimes a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive depending on the omitted substantive; as, *Térentii fábŭlas stúdiose lego,* Plautinis *mĭnus dĭlector;* and sometimes instead of the genitive or a possessive adjective the name of the person itself is put in the case which the verb governs; as, *Si cum Lycurgo et Dracŏne et Sŏlone nostras léges confĕrre volŭĕritis.* Cic.—In Cicero *hic* and *ille,* when the preceding substantive is understood, retain their demonstrative signification, and therefore do not merely supply the place of the omitted substantive; as, *Nullam énim virtus áliam mercēdem dēsidĕrat, præter hanc,* i. e. the one of which I am speaking.

REM. 27. (*a.*) *Idem,* as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etĭam,* 'also,' 'at the same time,' or of *támen,* 'yet,' if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Músici, qui ĕrant quondam* íidem *poétæ,* Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrātes et Tigris magno áquārum divortĭo iter percurrunt;* íidem (and yet) *paulātim in arctĭus coĕunt.*

(*b.*) *Et ipse,* on the other hand, denotes that the same predicate belongs to two subjects. It is rendered by 'too' or 'also'; as, *Antŏninus Commŏdus nihil pátérnum hábuit, nisi quŏd contra Germānos fēliciter et ipse pugnávit,* for *item* or *ipse quŏque.* Entr.—So, also, *nec ipse* is used in the sense of 'neither'; as, *Prímis répulsis Maharbal cum mājŏre robŏre virōrum missus nec ipse ēruptiōnem cŏhortĭum sustinŭit.* Liv.

(c.) *Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of 'at once,' denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuēre quidam qui* iīdem *ornātē* iīdem *versūtē dīcērent*, There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

(d.) 'The same as' is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui, ac* or *atque, quam, quāsi, ut* or *cum*; as, *Verres* idem *est qui fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vīta est* eādem *ac fuit*. Liv. *Disputātiōnem expōnīmus* fērē *verbis* ut *actum est*. Cic. Eandem constituit *pŏtestātem quam si*, etc. Cic. Eōdem *lŏco res est*, quāsi *ea pecūniā lēgāta nōn esset*. Id. *Hunc ĕgo* eōdem *mēcum patre gĕnitum*. etc. So also poetically with the *dative*; as, Eādem āliis *sōpītu' quiēte est*. Lucr. Cf. § 222, R. 7.

IPSE, Intensive or Adjunctive.

Rem. 28. (a.) *Ip s e*, when used with a substantive pronoun taken reflexively, agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the proposition, according as either is emphatic; as, *Agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself. Cic. *Non ĕgo* mĕdĭcīnā (i. e. *ut ălii me* consōlentur); *me* ipse *consōlor*. Cic. *Accūsando eum, a cūjus crūdēlitāte* vosmet ipsi *armis vindicāstis*. Liv.—*Cn. Pompeium omnibus, Lentŭlum* mihi ipsi *antĕpōno*. Cic. *Fac ut te* ipsum *custōdias*. Id. *Dēforme est dē se* ipsum *praedĭcāre*. Id.—But Cicero often construes *ipse* as the subject, even where the emphasis belongs to the object; as, *Quid est nĕgŏtii continēre eos, quĭbus praesis, si te* ipse *continĕas?*

(b.) When *ipse* is joined with a possessive pronoun used reflexively, it usually takes the case of the subject; as, *Meam* lēgem *nĕgligo*; not *meam ipsius*, according to § 211, R. 3, (a.) So, *Si ex scriptis cognosci* ipsi *suis pŏtuisset*. Cic. *Eam fraudem* vestrā ipsi *virtūte vĭtāstis*. Liv. But the genitive is necessary when the possessive does not refer to the subject; as, *Tuā* ipsius *causā hoc* fēci. And it is sometimes found where the case of the subject should be used; as, *Conjectūram de tuo* ipsius *stŭdio cēpēris*, instead of *ipse*.—(c.) *Ipse* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui*; as, *Omnes bŏni, quantum in* ipsis *fuit, Caesărem occīdērunt*. Cic.

(d.) *Ipse*, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness, and may be rendered, 'just,' 'precisely,' or 'very,' 'only'; as, *Dyrrhăchio sum prŏfectus* ipso illo die, quo lex est dāta de nŏbis, on the very day. Cic. *Trīginta dies ĕrant* ipsi, *quum has dăbam lĭtĕras, per quos nullas a vōbis accēpĕram*, just thirty days. Id. *Et quisquam* dŭbĭtābit—*quam* făcĭle *impĕrio atque exercĭtu sŏcios et rectĭgālia conservātūrus sit, qui ipso nōmine ac rŭmōre dēfendĕrit*, by his very name, or, by his name only. Id.

General Relatives.

Rem. 29. *Quīcumque, quisquis*, and the other general relatives (see § 139, 5, R., are, in classical prose, always connected with a verb, and form the protasis. *Quīcumque* is commonly used as an adjective, and *quisquis* as a substantive; but the neuter *quodcumque* is used as a substantive with a following genitive; as, *Quodcumque* mīlĭtum; and, on the other hand, *quisquis* is rarely an adjective; as, *Quisquis* ĕrit vītae cŏlor. Hor.; and even the neuter *quidquid* is used in the same manner; as, *Quisquis* hŏnos tŭmŭli, quidquid *sōlāmen hūmandi est*. Virg. *Quīcumque* seems sometimes even in Cicero equivalent to *omnis* or *quīvis*; as, *Quae* sānāri *pŏtērunt*, quācumque *rătiōne sănābo*, What can be cured, I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—' in whatever way I can.' But in later writers *quīcumque* is frequently used in the absolute sense for *quīvis* or *quĭlĭbet*; as, *Cĭcĕrōnem cuicumque eōrum fortĭter oppŏsuĕrim*. Quint. *Quāliscumque* and *quantuscumque* are likewise used in an absolute sense by ellipsis; as, *Tu non concŭpisces quantĭcumque ad lībertātem pervēnīre?* At any price, be it ever so high. Sen. So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.—*Siquis* often seems to stand as a relative, like the Greek εἴτις for ὅστις, 'whoever'; but it always contains the idea of ' perhaps'; as, *Nūda* fērē *Alpĭum căcūmina sunt, et si quid est păbŭli, obruunt nives*. Liv.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

REM. 30. (*a.*) *Ălĭquis* and *quispĭam* are particular and affirmative, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hērēdĭtas est pĕcūnia, quæ morte ălĭcūjus ad quempiam pervēnit jūre*, An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sĭne doctrīnā* ăliquid *omnium gĕnĕrum et artium cōnsĕquuntur.* Id.

(*b.*) *Ălĭquis* is more emphatic than the indefinite pronoun *quis*. (See § 137, (3.) Hence *ălĭquis* stands by itself, but *quis* is commonly connected with certain conjunctions or relative words, but these are sometimes separated from it by one or more words. Sometimes, however, *quis* is used without such conjunctions or relatives; as, *Morbus aut ĕgestas aut quid ejusmŏdi.* Cic. *Dētrăhĕre* quid *de ălĭquo.* Id. *Injūriam* cui *făcĕre.* Id. So, *Dixĕrit* quis, Some one might say. But even after those conjunctions which usually require *quis*, *ălĭquis* is used when employed antithetically and of course emphatically; as, *Tĭmēbat Pompeius omnia, ne* ălĭquid *vos tĭmērētis.* Cic. In English the emphasis of *ălĭquis* is sometimes expressed by 'really'; as, *Sensus mŏriendi, si* aliquis *esse pŏtest, is ad exĭguum tempus dūrat.* Cic.—*Quispĭam*, also, is sometimes like *quis* after *si*, etc., and sometimes stands alone; as, *Quæret fortasse quispĭam.*

REM. 31. (*a.*) *Quisquam*,'any one,' and *ullus*,'any,' are universal. Like *umquam* and *usquam* they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sĭne*; as, *Nĕque ex castris Cătĭlīnæ* quisquam *omnium discessĕrat*, Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec* ullo *(căsu pŏtest contingĕre, ut* ulla *intermissio fīat offĭci.* Cic. *An* quisquam *pŏtest sĭne perturbātiōne mentis īrasci?* Id. *Tētrior hic tyrannus Syrăcūsānis fuit, quam* quisquam *sŭperiōrum.* Id. *Vix* quidquam *spei est.* Sen. But after the dependent negative particles *ne*, *nēve*, and the negative interrogative particle *num*, *quis* and not *quisquam* is used.

(*b.*) But *quisquam* and *ullus* after *si* are often used not in a negative sense, but instead of *ălĭquis* or *quis*, serving only to increase the indefiniteness which would be implied in the latter pronouns; as, *Aut ēnim nēmo, quod quĭdem māgis crēdo, aut, si* quisquam, *ille săpiens fuit*, if any man. Cic. Hence, ultimately, even without *si*, where the indefiniteness is to be made emphatic, *quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam* and *usquam* were used; as, *Quamdĭu* quisquam *ĕrit, qui te dēfendĕre audeat, vires.* Cic. *Bellum maxĭme omnium mĕmŏrābĭle, quæ* umquam *gesta sunt, scriptūrus sum.* Tac.

(*c.*) *Ullus* is properly an adjective, but *quisquam* is commonly used without a noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Cuiquam cīvi*, To any citizen. *Cūjusquam ōrātōris ēlŏquentiam.* Hence *quisquam* corresponds to the substantive *nēmo* and *ullus* to the adjective *nullus.* *Nēmo* is often used with other substantives denoting male persons so as to become equivalent to the adjective *nullus*; as, *nēmo pictor*, *nēmo ădŏlescens*, and even *hŏmo nēmo.* Cic. *Quisquam* is sometimes used in a similar manner; as, *quisquam hŏmo, quisquam cīvis.* On the other hand *nullus* and *ullus* are used as substantives instead of *nēmo* and *quisquam*, especially the genitive *nullīus* and the ablative *nullo.*

REM. 32. (*a.*) *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with 'one—another'; as, *Aliud* ăliis *vidētur optĭmum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. *Aliis* ălĭunde *pĕrīcŭlum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; *or*, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Diŏnȳsium* ăliter *cum aliis de nōbis lŏcūtum audiēbam.* Cic.—*Alter* is used in the same manner when only *two* persons are spoken of, but there are no adverbs derived from it; as, Alter *in* alterum *causam cōnfĕrunt*, They accuse each other.

(*b.*) *Alius*, repeated in *different* propositions, is also translated 'one—another'; as, *Aliud* ăgĭtur, aliud *sĭmŭlātur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic. *Aliter* lŏquĭtur, ăliter *scrībit*, like ăliter *ac* or *utque*, He speaks otherwise than he writes. So *Aliud* lŏquĭtur, ăliud *scrībit.*

(c.) *Uterque*, 'each of two,' is always used by Cicero in the singular number, even when only two individuals are spoken of. Its plural, *utrique*, is used only when each of two parties consists of several individuals; as, *Macedónes — Týrii, utrique.* But in other good prose writers the plural *utrique* is occasionally used in speaking of only two; as, *Utrique Diónýsii.* Nep. Cf. § 209, R. 11, (4.)

REM. 33. (a.) *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, Quidam *de collégis nostris,* A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me* quodam *tempŏre Métăpontum vénisse tēcum.* Id.

(b.) *Quidam* is sometimes used for *some,* as opposed to *the whole,* or to *others;* as, *Excessérunt urbe* quidam, alii *mortem sibi consciverunt,* Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used to soften an expression, where in English we say 'so to speak,' etc.; as, *Milvo est* quoddam *bellum nātūrāle cum corvo,* A kind of natural warfare. Cic. *Fuit énim illud* quoddam *cæcum tempus servitûtis.* Id. *Eténim omnes artes quæ ad hūmānitātem pertĭnent,* hăbent *quoddam commūne vin̆culum et quăsi cognātĭŏne* quădam *inter se continentur.* Id.—*Tamquam* is used for the same purpose, and also *ut ita dicam.*

REM. 34. *Quivis* and *quilibet,* 'any one,' and *unusquisque,* 'each,' are universal and absolute; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmŏdi* quivis *ut perspĭcĕre possit,* All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic ăpud mājŏres nostros adhĭbēbātur pĕritus, nunc* quilibet. Id. *Nātūra* ūnumquemque *trăhit ad discendum.* A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non* cuivis *hŏmĭni contĭngit ădĭre Cŏrinthum,* i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. (a.) *Quisque* signifies *each, every one,* distributively or relatively, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod* cuique *obtĭgit, id* quisque *tĕneat,* Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic. Hence it is used particularly after relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs; as, *Scĭpĭo pollicĕtur sibi magnæ cūræ fŏre, ut omnia cīvĭtātĭbus,* quæ *cūjusque fuissent, restitŭĕrentur.* Cic. *Ut prædĭci possit, quid* cuique *ēventūrum, et* quo quisque *fāto nātus esset.* Id. *Cur fĭat* quidque *quæris: recte omnīno.* Id. *Quo quisque est sollertior, hoc dŏcet labŏriōsius.* Id. *Ut* quisque *optĭme dicit, ita maxĭme dicendi difficultātem timet.* Id. And hence the expression *quŏtusquisque* in the sense of ' how few among all.' It is also used distributively after numerals; as, *Dēcĭmus* quisque *sorte lectus,* Every tenth man. *Quinto quōque anno,* In every fifth year. So also after *suus;* as, *Sui* cuique *lībĕri cārissĭmi;* suum cuique *plăcet.* (Respecting the order of the words, cf. § 279, 14: and respecting *quisque* in the nominative in apposition to a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute or in the accusative with the infinitive, see § 204, R. 10.)

(b.) *Quisque* with a superlative, either in the singular or the plural, denotes universality, and is generally equivalent to *omnes* with the positive; as, *doctissimus* quisque, Every learned man, i. e. all the learned; but often, also, in connection with the verb, it retains the idea of a reciprocal comparison, and is to be rendered by the superlative; as, *In omni arte optimum* quidque *rārissimum,* The best is the rarest. Cic. *Altissima quæque flūmĭna minĭmo sŏno lăbuntur,* The deepest rivers flow with the least sound. Curt. With *primus,* it denotes the *first possible;* as, *Primo quōque tempŏre,* As soon as possible. Cic.

POSSESSIVES.

REM. 36. (a.) The possessive pronouns *meus, tuus, suus, noster,* and *vester,* are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tūtus ămor meus est tibi,* My love is secure to you. Ovid. *Tuam vicem dŏlēre sŏleo.* Cic.—These pronouns, as in English, when belonging to two substantives, are generally expressed but once, even when the substantives are of different genders; as, *ămor tuus ac jūdicium de me.*

(b.) But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the *objects* of an action, feeling, etc.; as, *Nam nĕque tuā nĕgligentĭā, nĕque ŏdĭo id fēcit* tuo, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred *of you.* Ter. See § 211, R. 3.

(*c.*) The possessive pronouns, especially when used as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo rĕvertar? in patriam?* scil. *meam*, Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrā mūnĕra porrexit*, scil. *suā*. Id. But they are expressed when emphasis or contrast is intended, where in English 'own' might be added to the pronoun; as, *Ego non dīcam, tămen id pŏtĕritis cum ănĭmis vestris cōgĭtāre.* Cic.

(*d.*) When besides the person of the subject, that of a remote object also occurs in the proposition, the possessive pronoun will refer to the latter; as, *Patris ănĭmum mihi rĕconcĭliasti*, i. e. *patris mei ănĭmum* rather than *tui.*

(*e.*) As reflexives, *meus*, etc., are translated my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their; or my own, thy own, his own, etc.

THE REFLEXIVES *SUI* AND *SUUS.*

§ **208.** REM. 37. (*a.*) *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

Oppĭdāni făcĭnus in se ac suos fœdum conscĭscunt, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

(*b.*) They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as,

Ipse se quisque dĭlĭgit, non ut ălĭquam a se ipse mercēdem exĭgat cārĭtātis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque cārus est. Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives are commonly used in references to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, etc., of that subject are stated; as,

Ariŏvistus prædĭcāvit, non sēse Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intŭlisse, Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Hŏmērum Cŏlŏphŏnii cīvem esse dīcunt* suum, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tўrannus pĕtĭvit ut se ad ămĭcĭtiam tertium ascrībĕrent*. Id. But sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, the cases of *is* or *ille* are used in such clauses in references to the leading subject; as, *Helvĕtii sēse Allŏbrŏges vi coactūros existĭmābant, ut per* suos *fīnes eos īre pătĕrentur.* Cæs. Here *suos* refers to the subject of the dependent clause, and *eos* to *Helvĕtii*, the subject of the leading clause. And sometimes, even in the same dependent clause, two reflexive pronouns are used, referring to different persons; as, *Scўthæ pĕtĭbant, ut rēgis* sui *fīliam mātrĭmōnio sibi jungĕret.* Curt.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, etc., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as,

Mēdēam prædĭcant (scil. *hŏmĭnes*) *in fŭgā frātris* sui *membra in iis lŏcis, quā* se *părens persĕquĕrĭtur, dissĭpāvisse.* Cic. *Ipsum rēgem trādunt ŏpĕrātum* his *sacris se ablŭisse.* Liv.

(3.) (*a.*) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as,

A Cæsăre invītor ut sim sibi lēgātus, i. e. *Cæsar me invītat*, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

(*b.*) So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing having life; as,

Cănum tam fĭda custōdia quid sĭgnĭfĭcat ălĭud, nisi se *ad hŏmĭnum commŏdĭtātes esse gĕnĕrātos?* Cic.

(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subordinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and also to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to whom it relates; as,

Jugurtha lēgātos mīsit, qui ipsi lībērisque vītam pētĕrent, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea mŏlestissimē ferre hŏmines dēbent, quæ ipsōrum culpā contracta sunt.*

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as,

Frātres inter se quum formā, tum mōribus similes, Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Fēras inter sēse conciliat nātūra.* Cic. *Incĭdunt alĭqua a doctis ētiam inter ipsos mūtuo reprehensa.* Quint.

(6.) (*a.*) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as,

Thĕmistŏcles servum ad Xerxem mīsit, ut ei nuntiāret, suis verbis, adversārios ējus in fŭgā esse, Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep.

(*b.*) But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as,

Suam rem sĭbi salvam sistam, I will restore his property entire to him. Plaut.

(*c.*) On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as,

Helvĕtii persuādent Raurācis, ut ūnā cum iis prŏfĭciscantur, The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs.—In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (scil. *Ligārius*) *ut ei pācem esse expedīret.* Cic. *C. Claudii ōrantis per sui frātris pārentisque ējus mānes.* Liv.—Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariŏvistus respondit, nēminem sēcum sĭne suā pernĭcie contendisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *suā* to *nēminem.*

(7.) (*a.*) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as,

Hunc cīves sui ex urbe ējēcērunt, Him his fellow-citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Titūrius quum prŏcul Ambiŏrigem, suos cŏhortantem, conspexisset.* Cæs.

(*b.*) *Suus*, and not *hūjus*, is used when a noun is omitted; as,

Octāvius quem sui (scil. ămĭci) *Cæsārem salūtābant*, Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

(*c.*) *Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *cum* but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as,

Ptŏlēmæus ămīcos Demetrii cum suis rēbus dīmīsit, Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fit*, *favorable*; as,

Sunt et sua dōna pārenti, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Ut lībērātor ille pŏpŭli Rōmāni appĕrīrētur tempŏra sua.* Liv. *Alphēnus ūtēbātur pŏpŭlo sāne suo.* Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar*; as, *Molles sua tūra Sābæi*, scil. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg. *Fessosque sŏpor suus occŭpat artus.* Id.

NOMINATIVE.

SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ 209. (*a.*) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

NOTE I. (*a.*) A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a finite verb. (*b.*) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes joined with the present infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative. Cf. R. 5.

(*b.*) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

Ego lĕgo, I read. *Nos lĕgimus,* We read.
Tu scribis, Thou writest. *Vos scribitis,* You write.
Equus currit, The horse runs. *Equi currunt,* Horses run.

NOTE 2. The imperative singular is sometimes used in addressing several persons; as, *Huc nātus adjice septem,* scil. *vos, Thēbaides.* Ovid. Met. 6, 182. So *Adde dēfectiōnem Ităliæ,* scil. *vos, milites.* Liv. 26, 41.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) The nominatives *ĕgo, tu, nos, vos,* are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as,

Cŭpio, I desire; *vivis,* thou livest; *hăbēmus,* we have. See § 147, 3.

(*b.*) But when emphasis or opposition is intended, the nominatives of the first and second persons are expressed; as, Ego *rēgns ējēci,* vos *tȳrannos intrō-dŭcitis,* I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. Nos, nos, *dico apertē, cõnsules dēsŭmus.* Cic. Tu *es pătrōnus,* tu *păter.* Ter. In indignant questions and addresses *tu* is expressed; as, Tu *in fŏrum prōdire,* tu *lūcem conspĭcĕre,* tu *in hōrum conspectum vĕnire cōnāris?* Auct. ad Her.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(*a.*) As nominative; as, *Mŏsa prōfluit ex monte Vōsēgo, et in Ocĕānum influit.* Cæs.; or (*b*) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem mīsērunt, ut id nuntiāret,* scil. *cursor.* Nep.: or (*c*) in a possessive adjective; as, *Et vēreor quo se Jūnōnia vertant Hospitia;* haud tanto cessābit *cărdine rērum,* scil. *illa,* i. e. *Jūnō.* Virg Æn. I. 672.

(2.) When it is a general word for *person* or *thing:*—

Thus *hŏmĭnes* is often omitted before *aiunt, dicunt, fĕrunt,* etc.; as, Ut aiunt, As they say. Cic. *Maxime admirantur eum, qui pĕcūniā non mŏvētur.* Id.— So *bĕne est, bĕne hăbet* or *bĕne ăgitur,* It is well; as, Si *vales, bĕne est, ego valeo.* Cic. *Quam melius est, grătŭlor dis.* Afran. Optŭme hăbet, Nothing can be better. Plaut. *Bĕne hăbet: jacta sunt fundāmenta dēfensiōnis.* Cic. *Bĕne ăgi-tur pro noxia.* Plaut.

NOTE 3. This omission of the nominative is common in the clause preceding a relative; as, *Qui Bāvium non ŏdit, ămet tua carmina, Mævi,* scil. *hŏmo,* Let him who hates not Bavius, love your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vastātur agri quod inter urbem ac Fīdēnas est,* scil. *id spătium.* Liv. *Sunt quos jŭvat...*scil. *hŏmĭnes,* There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vĕtĕris pōcŭla Massĭci spernit,* scil. *hŏmo.* Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quĭdam, ălĭquis,* or *ălĭqui.* So, *Est quod gaudeas,* There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Nĕque ĕrat cur fallĕre vellent.* Ovid. *Est ubi id văleat.* Cic. *Est, quam non est sătius,* etc. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases, the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo,* scil. *lŏco, tempŏre.*

REM. 3. (1.) The nominative is *wanting* before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as,

Fulgŭrat, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg. *Lūcescĕbat*, It was growing light. Liv. *Jam advesperascit.* Cic.

(2.) The nominative is also wanting before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs, and of active verbs used impersonally; as,

Făvētur tĭbi a me, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus ōrātiōni vĕhĕmenter ab omnĭbus* reclāmātum est. Cic. Proinde ut bĕne vīvĭtur, diu vīvĭtur. Plaut. *Ad exĭtum* ventum est. Sen. Actum est *de impĕrio.* See § 184, 2: and cf. § 229, R. 5, (*b.*)

NOTE 4. A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnāta est.* Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) It is wanting also before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est;* as,

Si vis me flēre dŏlendum est prīmum ipsi tĭbi, If you wish me to weep, you yourself must first grieve. Hor. Orandum est, *ut sit mens sāna in corpŏre sāno.* Juv. *Ad villam* revertendum est. Cic.

(4.) The nominative is also wanting before the impersonal verbs *mĭsĕret, pœnĭtet, pŭdet, tœdet,* and *pĭget;* as,

Eos ineptiārum pœnĭtet, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Mĭsĕret te aliōrum, tui te nec mĭsĕret nec pŭdet.* Plaut. *Me cīvĭtātis mōrum pĭget tœdetque.* Sall.— In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortūna, condĭtio, mĕmŏria,* etc. So in the expression, *Vēnit in mentem*, It came into mind; as, *In mentem vēnit de spĕcŭlo,* scil. *cōgĭtātio,* etc. Plaut.—An infinitive or a subjunctive clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te id nullo mŏdo pŭduit făcĕre*, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pœnĭtet me,* quantum prōfēcĕrim. Cic.

(5.) The subject of the verb is sometimes an infinitive or a neuter participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. (Cf. § 202, R. 2 and 3: and § 274, R. 5, (*b.*) The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

Văcāre culpā magnum est sōlātium, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Nĕque est te fallĕre quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible.) Virg. Mentīri *non est meum.* Plaut. Te non istud audīvisse *mīrum est,* That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. 'Summum jus, summa injūria,' *factum est jam trītum sermōne prŏverbium.* Id. *Nī* dēgĕnĕrātum in āliis *huic quŏque decŏri offēcisset.* Liv. (Cf. § 274, R. 5, (*b.*) Sin est ut vēlis mănēre illam apud te. Ter. *Nec prŏfuit Hydræ* crescĕre per damnum, gĕmĭnasque rĕsūmĕre vires. Ovid. Dic mĭhi, cras *istud, Postĭme, quando vēnit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Pārumne campis atque Neptūno sŭper* fūsum est Lătīni sanguĭnis? Hor.

(*a.*) This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, Orātōrem īrasci *non dĕcet*, That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. Hoc fĭĕri et ŏportet et *ŏpus est.* Id. *Me* pĕdĭbus *dēlectat* claudĕre verba, Hor. Intĕrest *non* recte fǎcĕre. Cic. *Cāsu accĭdit*, ut, id quod Rōmæ audĭĕrat prīmus nuntiāret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Impūne* fǎcĕre *quæ libet*, id *est rēgem esse.* Sall. Cf. § 206, (13,) (*a.*)

(6.) The nominative is also wanting before *pŏtest, cœpit* or *cœptum est, incĭpit, dēsĭnit, dēbet, sŏlet,* and *vĭdētur,* when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,

Pigēre eum facti cœpit, It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Sapientia est ūna, quā præceptrīce, in tranquillitāte vīvi pŏ-test.* Cic. *Tædēre sŏlet ǎvǎros impendii.* Quint.

Rem. 4. The *verb* is sometimes omitted; as,

Di mēliŏra piis, scil. *dent* or *vĕlint,* May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Vērum hœc hactĕnus,* scil. *dīximus.* Cic. *Pertineo* is understood in such expressions as *nihil ad me, nihil ad rem; Quid hoc ad Epĭcūrum?* What does this concern Epicurus? *Quorsus hœc?* i. e. *quorsus hœc pertinent?* What is that for?—*Pārābo* is to be supplied, in *Quo mihi hanc rem?* Of what use is this to me? and, *Unde mihi aliquam rem?* Whence am I to get any thing? as, *Quo mihi bibliŏthēcas?* Sen. *Unde mihi lǎpĭdem?* Hor. A tense of *fǎcio* is often to be supplied, as in *Recte ille, mēlius hī; Bĕne Chrȳsippus, qui dŏcet.* Cic. *Nihil per vim umquam Clŏdius, omnia per vim Milo.* Id. *Quæ quam dīxisset, Cotta fīnem.* Id. So, also in the phrases *nihil aliud quam; quid aliud quam; nihil prætĕrquam,* which signify 'merely'; as, *Tisǎphernes nihil aliud quam bellum compǎrāvit.* Nep. This verb is in like manner omitted with *amplius quam; nihil mĭnus quam,* and in the phrase *si nihil aliud.*—*Ait* or *inquit* is sometimes omitted in introducing the direct words of another, and more frequently in relating a connected conversation; as, *Tum ille; hic ĕgo; huic ĕgo.* *Dicit* is sometimes omitted in quoting a person's words; as, *Scĭte Chrȳsippus: ut glǎdii causā vāginam, sic præter mundum cētĕra omnia ǎliōrum causā esse gĕnĕrāta.* Cic. —After *per* in adjurations *ōro, rŏgo* or *prĕcor* is often omitted; as, *Per ĕgo vos deos patrios, vindĭcāte ab ultimo dĕdĕcŏre nōmen gentemque Persārum;* i. e. *per deos patrios vos ōro, vindĭcāte.* Curt. This omission is most common with the copula *sum;* as, *Nam Pŏlȳdōrus ĕgo,* scil. *sum,* For I am Polydorus. Virg. And so *est* and *sunt* are often omitted with predicate adjectives, and especially in proverbial phrases; as, *Quot hŏmines tot sententiæ.* Ter. *Omnia præclāra rāra,* scil. *sunt.* Cic. So also *est* and *sunt* are often omitted in the compound tenses of the passive voice; as, *Agro mulctāti,* scil. *sunt.* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 3.

Note 5. In Latin, as in English, a verb is often joined to one of two connected nominatives and understood with the other, and that even when the persons are different; as, *mǎgis ĕgo te ǎmo, quam tū me,* scil. *ǎmas.* After a negative verb a corresponding positive verb is sometimes to be supplied; as, after *nĕgo, dico,* after *vĕto, jŭbeo,* and in this case *et* takes the signification of *sed.* Cf. § 323, 1, (2.), (b.)

Note 6. Sometimes, when the verb of an appended proposition is omitted, its subject is attracted to the case of a noun in the leading proposition with which is joined a participle of the omitted verb; as, *Hannĭbal Mĭnŭcium, mǎgistrum ĕquitum, pǎri ac* dictātōrem *dŏlo* prŏductum *in prœlium, fŭgāvit,* i. e. *pǎri ac* dictātor *dŏlo* prŏductus fŭĕrat. Nep. Hamm. 5. So Liv. 34, 32.

Rem. 5. In the historic style the nominative is sometimes found with the present infinitive; as,

Intĕrim quŏtĭdie Cæsar Æduos frūmentum flāgĭtāre, Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Ædui. Cæs. *Nos pǎvĭdi* trĕpĭdāre mĕtu. Virg. *Id horrendum* ferri. Id.

Note 7. The infinitive in this construction is called the *historical infinitive,* and is used instead of the imperfect indicative to express in a lively manner a continued or repeated action or condition.

Rem. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

Ego qui lĕgo, I who read. *Tu qui scrībis,* Thou who *writest.* *Equus qui cur-rit,* The horse which *runs.* *Vos qui quæritis,* You who *ask.*

Rem. 7. (*a.*). Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

Quam multa fácimus causâ ámicôrum ! How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends! Cic. *Si vis me flêre, dölendum est primum ipsi tibi,* Whoever wishes me, etc. Hor.

(*b.*) *Nos* is often used for *êgo,* and *noster* for *meus;* and even when the pronoun is not expressed, the verb is frequently put in the first person plural instead of the first person singular. The genitive *nostri* is used for *mei,* but *nostrûm* always expresses a real plurality.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (*b.*)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative,* especially if it precedes the verb; as, *Amantium iræ ámôris* integrátio est, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Lôca, quæ proxima Carthäginem,* Nûmidia appellâtur. Sall. And sometimes it agrees with the nearest subject of a subordinate sentence; as, *Sed ei cäriôra semper omnia, quam décus atque pûdicitia fuit.* Sall. Cat. 25.

REM. 10. In cases of apposition, the verb commonly agrees with the noun which is to be explained; as, *Tulliöla, déliciæ nostræ, flägitat.* Cic. But sometimes the verb agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with a nearer noun in apposition to it; as, *Tungri,* civitas *Galliæ, fontem* habet *insignem,* The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin. *Côriôli* oppidum captum (est). Liv.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes, especially in poetry, a plural verb; as,

Pars épülis ônêrant *mensas,* Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turba* runt. Ovid. *Atria turba* tênent; vêniunt lêre *vulgus* euntque. Id.

(1.) (*a.*) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, etc., of the *indivíduals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero, Sallust, and Cæsar, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is expressed not in its own, but in a preceding clause; as, *Hoc idem génëri hümáno êvenit, quod in terrâ collöcati sint,* because they (scil. *hómines*) live on earth. Cic. In Livy it occurs more frequently; as, *Locrós omnis multitüdo* abeunt. Liv.

(*b.*) Abstract nouns are sometimes used collectively, instead of their concretes; as, *nóbilitas* for *nôbiles, jûrentus* for *jürĕnes, vicînia* for *vicîni, serrítium* for *serri, lêris urmâtûra* for *lêcĭter armâti,* etc. (*c.*) *Miles, éques, pédes,* and similar words are sometimes used collectively for the soldiery, the cavalry, etc.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in the former, and plural in the latter; as, *Jam ne noête quidem turbâ ex eo dilâbêbâtur, refractârôsque carcêrem minâbantur.* Liv. *Gens eâdem, quæ te crädêli Daunia bello* insĕquitur, *nos si* pellant, *nihil obfôre crêdunt.* Virg.

(3.) *Tantum,* followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun; as, *Quid huc* tantum *hóminum incĭdunt?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, after *ûterque* and *quisque, pars...pars, álius...álium,* and *alter...altĕrum,* on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *Uterque éôrum ex castris exercĭtum* rēdûcunt, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæs. *Intimus quisque libertôrum* vincti abreptĭque (sunt.) Tac. *Alius álium, ut prælium* incipiant, circumspectant. Liv. Cf. § 207, R. 32, (*c.*)

NOTE 8. This construction may be explained by passages like the following, in which the plural is placed first, and then the singular, denoting its parts; *Cêtĕri, suo quisque tempŏre, adĕrunt.* Liv. *Dĕcemvĭri perturbâti álius in áliam partem castrôrum* discurrunt. Id. See § 204, R. 10.

REM. 12. Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

Fŭror īrăque *mentem* præcĭpĭtant, Fury and rage hurry on (my) mind. Virg. *Dum ætas, mētus, măgister,* prohĭbēbant. Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, Grammătĭce *quondam ac* mūsĭce junctæ fŭērunt. Quint.

(2.) A verb in the singular is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

Mens ēnim, et rătio et consĭlium in sĕnibus est. Cic. *Bĕnĕficentia, lĭbĕrālitas, bŏnĭtas, justĭtia funditus* tollĭtur. Id.

NOTE 9. This construction is most common when the several nominatives, as in the preceding examples, constitute, as it were, but one idea. So also the compound subject *Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus* has always a predicate in the singular. The same construction sometimes, especially in the poets, occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrăsymăchus, Prŏtăgŏras, Prŏdĭcus, Hip-pias in hŏnōre* fuit. Cic. *Quin et Prŏmĕthĕus et Pĕlŏpis părens dulci lăbōrum* decĭpitur *sŏno.* Hor. When the nominatives denote both persons and things, the verb is commonly plural; as, *Cŏitio cōnsŭlum et Pompeïus* obsunt. Liv.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, Dii te pĕnātes *pătrĭique, et pătris* Imāgo, *et dŏmus rēgia, et in dŏmo rēgāle* sŏ-lium, *et nŏmen Tarpānium* creat vŏcatque rēgem. Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum,* the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et rătio doctis, et nĕcessĭtas barbāris,* et mos *gentĭbus, et fĕris* nātūra *ipsa* præscripsit, This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et ĕgo, et* Cicĕro *meus* flāgĭtābit. Id. *Tum* ætas viresque, *tum dŏrīta* glōria *ănĭmum* stĭmŭlābat. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et* făcĕre, *et* păti *fortia, Rōmānum* est. Cic. *Ūnus et alter* always takes a singular verb; as, Dĭcit *ūnus et alter brĕvĭter.* Cic. *Ūnus et alter* assŭĭtur *pannus.* Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut,* sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

Si Sŏcrătes *aut* Antisthĕnes dīcĕret, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque stŭdium prīvātim aut grātia* occūpāvērunt. Liv.

(*a.*) The plural is *necessary* with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Dĕcemvirīs nĕque ĕgo nĕque Cæsar* hăbĭti es-sēmus. Cic.—(*b.*) With *aut...aut* and *nec...nec* the singular is preferred, but with *seu...seu* and *tam...quam* the verb is in the plural.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum,* sometimes has a singular but more frequently a plural verb; as, Dōmĭtius *cum* Messălā *certus esse* vĭdēbātur. Cic. Bocchus, *cum* pĕdĭtibus, *postrēmam* Rō-mānōrum *aciem* invādunt, Bocchus, with his foot-soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipse* dux, *cum ălĭquot* princĭpĭbus, căpiuntur. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as,

Si tu et Tullia *vălētis, ĕgo et* Cicĕro *vălēmus,* If you and Tullia *are well,* Cicero and I *are well.* Cic. *Hæc nĕque ĕgo nĕque tu* fēcĭmus. Ter. *Ĕgo pŏpŭ-lusque Rōmānus* bellum jūdĭco făcĭoque. Liv.

(*a.*) Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et sĕnātus frĕquens* restĭtit. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, Ĕgo *mĭsĕre* tu *fēlĭciter vīvis.*

REM. 13. The interjections *en*, *ecce*, and *O*, are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

En Priămus! Lo Priam! Virg. *En ĕgo, vester Ascānius.* Id. *Ecce hŏmo Catiēnus!* Cic. *Ecce tuæ litĕræ.* Id. *O vir fortis atque amīcus!* Ter.

PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ **210.**—A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

(*a.*) When the subject is in the nominative; *Ira fŭror brĕvis est,* Anger is a short madness. Hor. *Ego vŏcor Lyconīdes,* I am called Lyconides. Plaut. *Ego incēdo regīna,* I walk a queen. Virg. *Caius et Lūcius* frātres *fuērunt.* Cic.— So (*b.*) when the subject is in the accusative with the infinitive; *Jūdicem me esse volo.* Cic.

(*c.*) Sometimes also a *datīve*, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a verb neuter or passive. See § 227, N.—And (*d.*) a predicate ablative sometimes follows passive participles of *choosing*, *naming*, etc.; as, *Consŭlĭbus* certiŏribus *factis.* Liv. See § 257, R. 11.

(*e.*) If the predicate noun has a form of the same gender as the subject, it takes that form; as, *Licentia* corruptrix *est mōrum.* Cf. § 204, R. 2.—(*f.*) But if the subject is neuter, the noun of the predicate, if it has both a masculine and a feminine form, takes the former; as, *Tempus vītæ* măgister *est.*

(*g.*) An infinitive may supply the place of a predicate nominative. See § 269, R. 4.

R̃EM̃ARK 1. (*a.*) Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in gender, number, and case.

(*b.*) When the subject consists of two or more nouns, the gender and number of such predicate adjectives are determined by § 205, R. 2.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The noun in the predicate sometimes differs in gender and number from the subject; as, Sanguis *ĕrant lăcrĭmæ,* Her tears were blood. Ovid. *Captīvi mīlitum* præda *fuērunt.* Liv.

(*b.*) So when a subject in the singular is followed by an ablative with *cum*, the predicate is plural; as, Exsŭles *esse jŭbet L. Tarquinium cum conjŭge et lĭbĕris.* Liv.

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, etc., in the predicate agreeing in case, etc., with their subject, are:—

(1.) The *copula sum*; as, Ego Jŏvis sum fīlius. Plaut. *Disce esse pāter.* Ter. The predicate with *sum* may be an adverb of place, manner, etc.; as, *Quod est* longe *ălĭter.* Cic. Rectissime *sunt ăpud te omnia,* Every thing with you is in a very good condition. Id.; or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Nūmen* sine tūre *est.* Ovid. *Sunt nōbis mĭtia pōma.* Virg.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs denoting *existence*, *position*, *motion*, etc.; as, *vīvo*, *exsisto*, *appāreo*, *cădo*, *eo*, *erādo*, *fŭgio*, *incēdo*, *jăceo*, *mănĕo*, *sĕdĕo*, *sto*, *vĕnio*, etc. Thus, *Rex circuĭbat* pĕdes, The king went round on foot. Plin. *Quos jŭdĭcābat non posse* orātōres *erādĕre.* Cic. *Ego huic causæ* patrōnus *exstĭti.* Cic. *Qui fit, ut nēmo* contentus *vīvat?*

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting,

(*a.*) To *name* or *call*; as, *appellor*, *dīcor*, *nōmĭnor*, *nuncŭpor*, *perhĭbeor*, *sălūtor*, *scrībor*, *inscrībor*, *vŏcor.* Thus, *Cognōmĭne* Justus *est appellātus,* He was called by the surname Just. Nep. *Aristæus ŏlīvæ dīcĭtur inventor.* Cic.

(*b.*) To *choose, render, appoint,* or *constitute;* as, *constituor, creor, dēclāror, dēsignor, ēligor, fio, reddor, rēnuncior.* Thus, Dux *a Rōmānis electus est Q. Fābius. Postquam* ēphēbus *factus est.* Nep. Certior *factus sum.*

(*c.*) To *esteem* or *reckon;* as, *censeor, cognoscor, crēdor, dēprēhendor, existimor, dūcor, fēror, hăbeor, jūdicor, mēmŏror, nŭmĕror, pŭtor, rĕpĕrior, vĭdeor.* Thus, *Crēdēbar sanguinis* auctor *ĕgo.* Ovid. *Mālim vĭdēri* tĭmĭdus *quam părum* prūdens. Cic.

Note 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mĭhi* fuisse *vĭdeor,* I think I was beside myself. Cic. But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *vĭdeor;* as, *Sătis dŏcuisse vĭdeor.* Id.—*Atīlius* prūdens esse *pŭtābātur.* Id. So with *dĭcor* (to be said), and *perhĭbeor;* as, *Vērus patriæ dĭcēris* esse *păter.* Mart. *Hoc me* lŏcūtus *sine mercēde existimer.* Phæd.

Note 2. *Audio* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor;* as, *Tu* rexque *păterque audisti cōram.* Hor.

Rem. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a *purpose, time,* or *circumstance* of the action; as, *Cŏmes additus Æŏlides,* Æolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lŭpus ŏbambŭlat* nocturnus. Id. *Appārēt liquĭdo* sublimis *in æthĕre Nĭsus.* Id. So with an active verb; *Audīri hoc* puer. Cic. *Săpiens nil făcit* invītus. Id. *Rempūblicam dēfendi* ădŏlescens. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.

Note 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro;* as, *audācia* pro mūro *est;* and sometimes the ablatives *lŏco* or *in nŭmĕro* with a genitive; as, *ille est mĭhi* părentis lŏco; *in* hostium nŭmĕro *hăbētur.*

Rem. 5. The noun *ŏpus,* signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum.* It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary,* etc.; as, *Dux nōbis et* auctor ŏpus *est.* Cic. *Multī* ŏpus *sunt bŏves.* Varr. (*Dixit*) *aurum et ancillas* ŏpus *esse.* Ter. *Usus* also is occasionally so construed.

Rem. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, *attracted* into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, Uxor *invĭti Jŏvis* esse *nescis,* i. e. *te* esse uxōrem. Hor. *Rētŭlit Ajax* esse *Jŏvis* prōnepos. Ovid.

GENITIVE.

GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ **211.** A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

Amor glŏriæ, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis,* The arms of Achilles; *Păter patriæ,* The father of the country; *Vĭtium īræ,* The vice of anger; *Nēmŏrum custos,* The guardian of the groves; *Amor hăbendi,* Love of possessing.

Note 1. In the first example, *ămor* denotes love in general; *glŏriæ* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

Remark 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source;* as, *Rădii sōlis,* The rays of the sun;—*Cause;* as, *Dŏlor pŏdagræ,* The pain of the gout;—*Effect;* as, *Artifex mundi,* The Creator of the world;—*Connection;* as, *Păter consŭlis,* The father of the consul:—*Possession;* as, *Dŏmus Cæsăris,* The house of Cæsar;—*Object;* as, *Cōgĭtātio ălĭcujus rei,* A thought of something;—*Purpose;* as, *Appărātus triumphi,* Preparation for a triumph;— *A whole;* as, *Pars hŏminum,* A part

of men; this is called the *partitive genitive;—Character* or *Quality;* as, *Adōlescens summæ audāciæ,* A youth of the greatest boldness;—*Material* or *Component Parts;* as, *Montes auri,* Mountains of gold; *Acervus scūtōrum,* A heap of shields;—*Time;* as, *Frūmentum diērum děcem,* Corn for ten days. Sall.

REM. 2. The genitive is called *subjective* or *active,* when it denotes either that *to which a thing belongs,* or the *subject* of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive,* when it denotes the *object* affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

Subjective.	Objective.
Facta virōrum, Deeds of men.	*Odium vitii,* Hatred of vice.
Dŏlor ănĭmi, Grief of mind.	*Amor virtūtis,* Love of virtue.
Junōnis īra, The anger of Juno.	*Dēsidērium ōtii,* Desire of leisure.

(*a.*) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective, is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *prōvidentia Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him; *timor Dei,* the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *mētus hostium,* fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. Æn. 2, 436.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Æneæ,* (Id. Æn. 12, 323.) that which Æneas had received.

(*b.*) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(*c.*) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(*d.*) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Amor in rempūblicam,* for *reipūblicæ,* Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Rōmānos,* for *Rōmānōrum.* Nep. *Cūra de salūte patriæ,* for *salūtis.* Cic. *Prædātor ex sŏciis,* for *sŏciōrum.* Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Rěvěrentia adversus hŏmines et optĭmi cūjusque et rěliquōrum.* Cic. Off. 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox, nōmen, verbum,* etc.; as, *vox vŏluptātis,* the word pleasure; *nōmen āmīcitiæ,* the word *āmīcitia; dŏmĭni appellātio.* This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fīci,* a fig-tree; *flos viŏlæ,* a violet; *virtus continentiæ,* the virtue of abstinence: and in geographical names; as, *oppĭdum* Antiŏchiæ. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *gĕnus* and *causa;* as, *Ūnum gĕnus est eōrum, qui,* etc. *Duæ sunt causæ, ūna pŭdōris, altēra scĕlĕris.*—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nŏmen ipsum cārendi,* The very word *to want* is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (*a.*) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

Cūra mei, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui,* Part of thee. Id. *Vestri cūram ăgĭte.* Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or, ix* and *io;* as, *Accūsātor mei.* Cic. *Nīmia æstimātio sui.* Id. *Rătiōnem et sui et ăliōrum hăbēre.* Id.

(*b.*) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

Liber meus, not *liber mei,* my book. *Cūra mea,* My care, *i. e.* the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas litĕras expecto.* Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui ūnius stŭdio,* By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injúria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invídia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fidúcia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plaut. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causá* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used; as, *Meá causá*, For my sake. Plaut.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the subjective genitive of a *noun*, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa régia*, for *causa régis*. Cic. *Herílis fílius*, for *héri fílius*. Id. Evandrius ensis, for *Evandri*. Virg. Herculeus *libor*, for *Hercúlis*. Hor. Cívilis *furor*, for *cívium*. Hor. So, also, for the *objective* genitive, *Métus hostilis*, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestrá ipsórum causá hoc féci*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo récitáre timentis*. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 13.

REM. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the objective genitive; as,

Idem ámor exítium pécóri (est), *pécórisque mágistro*. Virg. *Vitis ut arbóribus décóri est, ut vitibus úve—Tu décus omne tuis*. Virg. In this passage the dative *décóri* and the nominative *décus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor fui* sénátni. Cic. *Murœna légátus* Lúcullo fuit. Id. *Erit ille mihi semper deus*. Virg. *Huic* causæ *patrónus exstiti*. Cic. *Huic égo me bello dúcem prófíteor*. Id. *Se tertium* (esse) cui *fátum fóret urbis pótíri*. Id.—*Cum P. Africáno sénátus éyit, ut légatus* frátri *prófíciscécrétur*. Id. *Cæsar tégimenta* gáleis *milites ex víminibus* fácére *júbet*. Cæs. *Trinóbantibus Cæsar* imperát—*frúmentum exercitui*. Id. *Quod neque insídiæ* consúli *prócédébant*. Sall. *Quem exítium tantis mális sperárent*? Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententia ambóbus*, scil. *qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

NOTE. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exítium, décus, auctor, légátus, deus, patrónus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the *possessive* genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person ; as,

Síse omnes flentes Cæsári ad pédes prójecérunt, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrígitur*, For whom the body, i. e. whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum véro exarsit* júveni *dólor ossibus ingens*. Id. *Transfigitur scútum Pulfióni*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property, character, or quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative ; as,

Vir exempli recti, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adólescens summæ audácie*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pédum vigínti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hamilcar sécum duxit fílium Hannibálem* annórum *nóvem*. Nep. *Athénienses díligunt Péríclem*, spectáto virtútis *vírum*. Just. *Quinquagínta annórum impérium*. Id. *Iter unius dici*. Cic. *Pulchri*túdíne ex-ímiá *fémina*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maximo natú fílius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Catilína fuit* magná vi *et ánimi et córporis, sed ingénio* malo *právoque*. Sall. *Spelunca infinítá altitúdine*. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition ; as, *Lentúlum nostrum, eximiá spe, summæ virtútis ádólescentem*. Cic.

(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figūrā,*...of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Urī spĕcie et cŏlore tauri.* Id. *Frūtex palmi altitūdĭne.* Plin. *Clāvi digĭti pollicis crassitūdĭne.* Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are *immediately* connected; as, *fossa quindĕcim pĕdum; hŏmo antiquā virtūte.* It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quindĕcim pĕdes lāta: puer dĕcem annos nātus.* Cf. § 236.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used; as, *Magno timōre sum,* I am in great fear. Cic. *Bŏno ănĭmo sum.* Id. *Quanto fuĕrim dŏlōre mĕmĭnisti.* Id. *Maxĭmo hŏnōre Servius Tullius ĕrat.* Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *sĕcus* (sex), *gĕnus* and *pondo;* as, *Libĕrōrum cāpĭtum* virīle *sĕcus ad dĕcem millĭa capta,* i. e. of the male sex, instead of *sexūs virīlis.* Liv. So *gĕnus,* when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc, id, illud, quod,* or with *omne,* is used for *hūjus, ĕjus, omnis,* etc., *gĕnĕris;* as, *Orātĭones aut ălĭquid id gĕnus scrībĕre,*—of that kind. Cic. *Concrēdĕre nūgas* hoc gĕnus. Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras;* as, *Dictātor cŏrōnam auream* libram pondo *in Cāpĭtŏlĭo Jŏvi dōnum pŏsuit,*...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 236, R. 7.

(5.) The genitive *mŏdi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cūjusmŏdi libri,* the same as *quāles libri,* what kind of books; *hūjusmŏdi libri,* i. e. *tāles libri,* such books. So, also, *gĕnĕris* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitūdĭne, lātĭtūdĭne,* etc., or *in longitūdĭnem,* etc.; as, *fossa dĕcem pĕdum lātĭtūdĭne;* but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *hŏmo, res, nĕgŏtĭum, prŏprium* or *prŏprius,* etc., and with the ablative, *præditus, instructus, ornātus,* etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, I..

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O misĕræ sortis!* scil. *hŏmĭnes;* O (men) of wretched fortune! Lucan. *Ad Diānæ,* scil. *ædem.* Ter. *Hectŏris Andrŏmăche,* scil. *uxor.* Virg. *Suspicĭōnis vĭtandæ,* scil. *causā.* Tac. So *fīlius* or *fīlia;* as, *Hannĭbal Gisgŏnis.*

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cūjum pĕcus? an Mēlĭbœi? Non ; vērum Ægŏnis,* scil. *pĕcus.* Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted; as, *Nullam virtus ălĭam mercēdem desīderat, præter* hanc (scil. *mercēdem*) *laudis.* Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum.* This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

Hæc dŏmus est Cæsăris, This house is Cæsar's. *Nōmen auræ tam sæpe vŏcātum esse pŭtans Nymphæ.* Ovid. *Nāres ŏnĕrārĭas, quārum mĭnor nulla ĕrat duum millĭum amphŏrum,* i. e. *quārum mĭnor nulla ĕrat quam* nāvis duum, etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc.; as,

Thūcȳdĭdes, quī ejusdem ætātis fuit, scil. *hŏmo,* Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Multum ei dētraxit, quod aliēnæ erat cīvĭtātis,* scil. *hŏmo* or *cīvis.* Id. *Prīmum stĭpendĭum mĕruit annōrum dĕcem septemque,* scil. *ădŏlescens.* Id. *Summi ut sint lăbōris efficiunt,* scil. *ănĭmālĭa.* Cæs. *(Claudĭus) somni brĕvissĭmi ĕrat.* Suet. *Mīrā sum ălăcrĭtāte.* Cic. *Vulgus ingĕnĭo mōbĭli ĕrat.* Sall. *Non est jūris sui,* He is not his own master. Lucan. *Pŏtestātis suæ esse.* Liv. *Suārumque rērum ĕrant.* Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing,* for which, in English, the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic,* etc., are commonly supplied; as,

Tĕmĕrĭtas est flōrentis ætātis, prūdentia sĕnectātis, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallĭcæ consuĕtūdĭnis.* Cæs. So, *stultĭtiæ est; est lĕvĭtātis,* etc., which are equivalent to *stultĭtia est, lĕvĭtas est.* *Omnia hostĭum ĕrant. A paucis ēmi, quod multōrum esset.* Sall.

(*a.*) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui,* etc., the neuters of the possessives, *meum, tuum,* etc., are used; as, *Ădŏlescentis est mājōres nātu rĕvĕrēri,* It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cūjusvis hŏmĭnis est errāre, nullīus nisi insĭpientis in errōre persĕvĕrāre.* Cic. *Pauperis est nŭmĕrāre pĕcus.* Ovid. So especially *mōris est;* as, *Nĕgārit mōris esse Græcōrum, ut in convīvĭo vĭrōrum accumbĕrent mŭlĭĕres,* the same as *mōrem esse Græcōrum.* Cic. *Nĭhil tam æquandæ lībertātis est.* Liv. So when the verb is omitted; *Tămen officĭi dŭxit, exōrāre pătrem,* scil. *esse.* Suet. *Non est mentīri* meum. Ter. *Tuum est, M. Cāto, vĭdēre quid ăgātur.*

(*b.*) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Hūmānum est errāre,* To err is human. Ter. *Et făcĕre et păti fortia Rōmānum est.* Liv.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *făcĭo,* and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asĭa Rōmānōrum facta est,* Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Agrum suæ dĭtĭōnis fēcisse.* Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum;* as, *Magni formīca lăbōris,* scil. *ănĭmal,* The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. So *Ei vēnit in mentem pŏtestātis tuæ,* scil. *mĕmŏria,* or the like. Cic.

NOTE. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing,* grammarians sometimes supply *nĕgōtĭum, officĭum, mūnus, ŏpus, res, causa,* etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 205, Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The *limiting* noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

Tria millia, scil. *passuum.* In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

Agămemnŏnis belli glōria, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius admĭnistrātĭo prōvincĭæ.* Cic. *Eōrum dĭērum consuĕtūdĭne itĭnĕris nostri exspectāta perspectā.* Cæs. *Orbĭtas reipublĭcæ tālĭum vĭrōrum.* Cic. *Pro vĕtĕrĭbus Helvĕtĭōrum injūrĭis pŏpŭli Rōmāni.* Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *ūsus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

Argenti ŏpus fuit, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consĭlĭum pensandum tempŏris ŏpus esse.* Id. *Prœmĭi non semper ūsus est.* Quint. *Si quo ŏpĕræ eōrum ūsus est.* Liv. *Puĕro ŏpus est cĭbum.* Plaut. *Ūsus est hŏmĭnem astūtum.* Id. See § 243.

REM. 12. The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (*b.*) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as,

Rĕmĕdĭum dŏlōris, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Pŏtestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition, and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVES.

§ **212.** Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs, denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

Pars cīvītātis, A part of the state. *Nulla sŏrōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis phĭlŏsŏphōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortālium?* Who of mortals? *Mājor jŭvĕnum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissĭmus Rōmānōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pĕcūnĭæ*, Much (of) money. *Sătis ĕlŏquentĭæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubīnam gentĭum sŭmus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure; as, *mĕdimnum trĭtĭci*, a bushel of wheat; *lĭbra farris; jūgĕrum agri; magna vis auri.*

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars*, *nēmo*, *nĭhil*, etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc.; as, *mŏdĭus*, *mĕdimnum*, and *lĭbra*; as,

Nēmo nostrum, No one of us. *Maxĭma pars hŏmĭnum. Nĭhil hūmānārun* rērum. *Cic. Dīmĭdĭum* mĭlĭtum. *Liv. Mĕdimnum* trĭtĭci. *Cic.*

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§104, 9,); as, *ullus, nullus, sōlus, ālius, ūter, ūterque, ūtercumque, ūterris, ūterlibet, neuter, alter, altĕrūter, 'ălĭquis, quĭdam, quispnam, quisquis, quisque, quispnam, quācumque, ūnusquisque, quis? qui? quot? quŏtus? quŏtusquisque? tot, ălĭquŏt, nonnulli, plērĭque, multi, prŭci, mĕdĭus.* Thus, *Quisquis deōrum,* Whoever of the gods. *Ovid. Consŭlum alter,* One of the consuls. *Liv. Multi hŏmĭnum,* Many men. *Plin. Et mĕdĭus jŭvĕnum ĭbat;* i. e. between. *Ovid.* For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expĕdĭti mĭlĭtum,* The light-armed (of the) soldiers. *Liv. Dēlecti ĕquĭtum.* Id. *Vĕtĕres Rōmānōrum dūcum.* Vell. *Sŭpĕri deōrum,* The gods above. *Hor. Sancte deōrum.* Virg. *Dĕgĕnĕres cānum.* Plin. *Piscium fēmĭnæ.* Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctĭor jŭvĕnum. Orātōrum præstantissĭmus. Ēlŏquentissĭmus Rōmānōrum. Optĭmus omnĭum.*

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal; also the distributive *singŭli;* as, *Equĭtum centum quinquāgĭnta interfecti,* A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. *Curt. Săpĭentum octāvus.* Hor. *Singŭlos vestrum.* Curt.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it in the genitive; as, *Doctissĭmus Rōmānōrum*, or, *doctissĭmus Rōmānus: Alter consŭlum*, or *alter consul*. But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consists; as, *Vēniāmus ad vivos*, qui duo *sŭpersunt*; not *quōrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, '*of whom two survive.*'

NOTE 1. (*a.*) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of *two* individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a *number* greater than two; as, *Mājor frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Maxĭmus frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(*b.*) In like manner, *ŭter, alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis, ălius*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Uter nostrum?* Which of us (two?) *Quis vestrum?* Which of you (three or more?)

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostri* and *vestri*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ commūnis est* omnium nostrum *părens.* Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis ĕrit tam căpĭdus vestrum.* Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fīes nōbĭlium tu quŏque fontium*, scil. *ūnus.* Hor. *Centies sestertĭum*, scil. *centēna millia.*

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de, e, ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *ăpŭd* or *intĕr* ; as, *Nēmo* de iis. *Alter* ex censōribus. Liv. *Unus* ex multis. Cic. *Acerrĭmus* ex sensĭbus. Id. *Thăles, qui săpĭentissĭmus* in septem *fuit.* Id. *Primus* inter omnes. Virg *Crœsus* inter rēges ŏpŭlentissĭmus. Sen. Apud Helvētios *nōbĭlissĭmus.*

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, Interfectōres, pars *in fŏrum*, pars *Syrācūsas pergunt.* Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attălus Măcĕdŏnum fĕre omnibus persuāsit*, Attălus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos* hōmĭnum. Ovid. *Cunctas* prōvinciārum. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Tōtius autem* injustitiæ *nulla căpĭtālior est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo mŏdo prŏbăbĭlem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium mŏdōrum prŏbăbĭlem.*

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

Plus ēlŏquentĭæ, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fĭdei*, So much fidelity. *Id tempŏris*, That time. *Ad hoc ætātis.* Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id mĭsĕriārum.* Ter. *Armōrum quantum.* Cæs.

NOTE 1. (*a.*) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum, quantum, ălĭquantum, plūs, minus, mĭnĭmum, dĭmĭdĭum, multum, nĭmĭum, paulum, plūrĭmum, rĕlĭquum* ; with the compounds and diminutives, *tantŭlum, tantumdem, quantŭlum, quantŭlumcumque*, etc.; to which add *mĕdĭum, summum, ultĭmum, ălĭud*, etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc, id, illud, istud, idem, quod*, and *quid*, with their compounds, *ălĭquid, quidquid, quippĭam, quidquam, quodcumque.*

(*b.*) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum, quantum, ălĭquantum*, and *plūs*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quŏd* in the sense of *quantum.* Thus, *Quantum crēvit Nīlus*, *tantum* spei in *annum est.* Sen. *Quid mŭlĭĕris uxōrem hăbes?* What kind of a woman... Ter.

Aliquid formæ. Cic. *Quid hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentōrum fuit, id Verres abstŭlit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum bŏni,* So much good. *Si quid hăbes nŏvi,* If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid rĕliqui est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sincēri,* No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *ĕ* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed hūmāni esset.* Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the *plural* number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extrēma impĕri,* The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viārum angusta,* The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opāca lŏcōrum.* Virg. *Antīqua fœdĕrum.* Liv. *Cuncta campōrum.* Tac. *Exercent colles, atque hōrum asperrima pascunt.* Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *săt, sătis, părum, nĭmis, ăbunde, largĭter, affătim,* and *partim,* used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

Sat ratiōnis, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sătis ēloquentiæ, părum săpientiæ,* Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nĭmis insidiārum.* Cic. *Terrōris et fraudis ăbunde est.* Virg. *Auri et argenti largĭter.* Plaut. *Cōpiārum affătim.* Liv. *Quum partim illōrum mihi fămiliārissimi essent.* Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (*α.*) The genitives *gentium, terrārum, lŏci,* and *lŏcōrum,* with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrārum.* Just. *Usquam gentium,* Any where whatever. Cic. *Abīre quo terrārum possent.* Liv. *Ubi sit lŏci.* Plin. *Eo lŏci,* equivalent to *eo lŏco,* In that place. Ter. *Eōdem lŏci res est.* Cic. *Nescire quo lŏci esset.* Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(*b.*) The adverbs of place thus used are *ŭbi, ŭbĭnam, ŭbĭcumque, ŭbĭăbi, ŭbĭvis, ŭbĭque, unde, usquam, nusquam, quo, quōcumque, quōris, quōpuo, ăliquo, hic, huc, eo, eōdem.* *Lŏci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem; gentium* after *longe;* as, *Ibi lŏci,* In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium.* Cic. So, *minime gentium,* By no means. Ter. *Vicīniæ* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc;* as, *Hic proxime vicīniæ.* Plaut. *Huc vicīniæ.* Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc, eo, quo,* when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentiæ furōrisque prōcessit,* He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc ēnim mălōrum ventum est.* Curt. *Huccine rērum vēnimus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo misĕriārum rēnīre,* To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo āmentiæ prōgressi sitis.* Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *lŏci, lŏcōrum,* and *tempŏris,* appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc, inde, intĕrea, postea, tum,* and *tunc,* in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc lŏcōrum,* Till now. Plaut. *Inde lŏci,* After that. Lucr. *Intĕrea lŏci,* In the mean time. Ter. *Postea lŏci,* Afterwards. Sall. *Tum tempŏris,* and *tunc tempŏris,* At that time. Just. *Lŏcōrum* also occurs after *id,* denoting time; as, *Ad id lŏcōrum,* Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

NOTE 5. When the genitive *ējus* occurs after *quoad,* in such connections as the following: *Quoad ējus făcĕre potĕris.* Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ējus fiĕri possit,* As far as may be. Cic.; the *ējus* refers to the preceding clause; literally, as much of it as possible.

NOTE 6. *Prĭdĭe* and *postrĭdĭe*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dĭes* contained in them; as, *Prĭdĭe ĕjus dĭĕi*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic. *Prĭdĭe insĭdĭārum*, The day before the ambush. Tac. *Postrĭdĭe ĕjus dĭĕi*, The next day. Cæs. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood. Cf. § 238, 1, (*b.*)

NOTE 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optĭme omnĭum*, Best of all. Cic.

GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to* ; as,

Arĭdus laudis, Desirous *of praise.*	*Plēna* tĭmōris, Full *of fear.*
Appĕtens glōrĭæ, Eager *for glory.*	*Egēnus* ăquæ, Destitute *of water.*
Mĕmor virtūtis, Mindful *of virtue.*	*Doctus* fandi, Skilful *in speaking.*

So, *Nescĭa* mens fāti, The mind ignorant *in regard to fate.* Virg. *Impŏtens* iræ, it. Powerless *in respect to anger*, i. e. unable to control it. Liv. *Hŏmines expertes* vĕritātis, Men destitute *of truth.* Cic. Lactis *ăbundans*, Abounding *in milk.* Virg. *Terra fērax* arbŏrum, Land productive *of trees.* Plin. *Tēnax* prŏpŏsĭti vir, A man tenacious *of his purpose.* Hor. *Æger* ănĭmi, Sick *in mind.* Liv. *Lŏcus* mĕdĭus jŭgŭli summĭque lăcerti, i. e. between. Ovid. *Mōrum diversus.* Tac. *Opĕrum sŏlātus.* Hor. *Lĭber* labōrum. Id. *Intĕger* vitæ scĕlĕrisque *pūrus*, Upright *in life*, and free *from wickedness.* Hor. *Vini* pŏtens *Lĭber.* Plaut.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

REMARK 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 13), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *V e r b a l s* in *ax*; as, *căpax*, *ĕdax*, *fērax*, *fŭgax*, *pervĭcax*, *tēnax*, etc.—(2.) *P a r t i c i p i a l s* in *us*, and a few in *t u s*, with their compounds; as, *ămans*, *appĕtens*, *căpĭens*, *effĭcĭens*, *pătĭens*, *impătĭens*, *sĭtĭens*:—*consultus*, *doctus*, *sŏlātus.*—(3.) Adjectives denoting *d e s i r e* or *a v e r s i o n*; as, *ăvārus*, *ărĭdus*, *căpĭdus*, *stŭdĭōsus* : *fastĭdĭōsus*:—*p a r t i c i p a t i o n*; as, *particeps*, *affĭnis*, *consors*, *exsors*, *expers*, *ĭnops* :—*k n o w l e d g e*, *e x p e r i e n c e*, *c a p a c-i t y*, and their contraries; as, *callĭdus*, *compos*, *conscĭus*, *gnārus*, *ignārus*, *pērĭtus*, *imperĭtus*, *impos*, *pŏtens*, *impŏtens*, *prūdens*, *imprūdens*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *conscĭus*, *inscĭus*, *nescĭus*, *insŏlens*, *insŏlĭtus*, *insuētus*, *rŭdis*, *sollers* :—*m e m o r y* and *f o r g e t f u l n e s s*; as, *mĕmor*, *immĕmor*, etc.:—*c e r t a i n t y* and *d o u b t*; as, *certus*, *incertus*, *ambĭguus*, *dŭbĭus*, *suspensus* :—*c a r e* and *n e g l i g e n c e*; as, *anxĭus*, *sollĭcĭtus*, *prŏvĭdus*, *imprŏvĭdus*, *sēcūrus* :—*f e a r* and *c o n f i d e n c e*; as, *păvĭdus*, *tĭmĭdus*, *trĕpĭdus*, *impăvĭdus*, *fĭdens*, *interrĭtus* :—*g u i l t* and *i n n o-c e n c e*; as, *noxĭus*, *rĕus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*, *mănĭfestus*, *innoxĭus*, *innŏcens*, *insons* :—*p l e n t y* and *w a n t*; as, *ăbundans*, *plēnus*, *dĭves*, *sătus*, *largus*, *ĭnops*, *ĕgēnus*, *ĭnānis*, *pauper*, *parcus*, *sŏlātus*, *văcuus.*

(*a.*) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *ănĭmi*, *ingĕnii*, *mentis*, *īræ*, *mĭlĭtĭæ*, *belli*, *lăbōris*, *rērum*, *æri*, *f ūtūri*, *mōrum*, and *fĭdei.*

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a *cause* or *source*, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus* măris, *et* vĭārum, mĭlĭtĭæque. Hor. *Fessus* rŭæ. Stat. *Fessus* măris. Hor. *Attŏnĭtus* serpentis. Sil. *Mens interrĭtæ* lēti. Ovid.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, *when used as such*, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, Se *ămans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Mare* terram *appĕtens.* Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus* īre, Determined *to go*. Ovid. *Cantāre perīti*. Virg. *Fēlicior unguēre ūtla*. Id. *Anxius* quid facto ōpus sit. Sall. *Vīve mēmor* quam sis ævi brĕvis. Hor.—So *aliēnus*, *ăvĭdus*, *callĭdus*, *cŭpĭdus*, *firmus*, *frēquens*, *gnārus*, *impŏtens*, *inops*, *lætus*, *largus*, *liber*, *pollens*, *mēmor*, *dŭbius*, etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, Ad rem *ăcĭdior*. Ter. *Avĭdus* in dīreptiōnes. Liv. *Animus căpax* ad præcepta. Ovid. Ad cāsum fortūnamque *fēlix*. Cic. Ad fraudem *callĭdus*. Id. *Dīligens* ad custōdiendum. Id. *Negligentior* in patrem. Just. *Vir* ad disciplīnam *pērĭtus*. Cic. Ad bella *rŭdis*. Liv. *Pŏtens* in res bellĭcas. Id. *Alăcer* ad malĕficia. Cic. Inter bellum *et* pācem *nihil mĕdium* est. Id.—So with *ad*, *fĕrtĭlis*, *firmus*, *infirmus*, *pŏtens*, *stĕrilis*, etc.—with *in*, *cŭpĭdus*, *parcus*, *pŏtens*, *prōdĭgus*, etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition; as, *Nūdus* membra, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. So, hūmĕrosque *deo sĭmĭlis*. Id. Cētĕra *fulvus*. Hor. Cuncta *pollens*. Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avĭdus* in pĕcūniis, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius* de fāmā. Quint. *Rŭdis* in jūre civīli. Cic. *Pērĭtus* de agricultūrā Varr. *Prūdens* in jūre civīli. Cic. *Reus* de vi. Id. *Pūrus* ab cultu hūmāno. Liv. *Certior factus* de re. Cic. *Sollicitus* de Id. *Sŭper* scĕlĕre suspectus. Sall. *Inops* ab āmīcis. Cic. *Pauper* in ære. Hor. *Mŏdĭcus* in cultu. Plin. Ab āquis *stĕrĭlis*. Apul. *Cōpiōsus* a frūmento. Cic. Ab ĕquĭtātu *firmus*. Id. So with *in*, *immŏdĭcus*, *parcus*, *ūber*:—with *ab*, *aliēnus*, *beātus*, *extorris*, *immūnis*, *inops*, *liber*, *nūdus*, *orbus*, *văcuus*.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, Arte *rŭdis*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni* crīmĭne *insons*. Liv. *Compos* mente. Virg. *Prūdens* consĭlio. Just. *Æger* pĕdĭbus. Sall. *Præstans* ingĕnio. Cic. *Mŏdĭcus* sĕvērĭtāte. Tac. *Nĭhil* insĭdiis *văcuum*. Cic. *Amor* et melle et felle est *fēcundissimus*. Plaut. *Mĕdius* Pollūce *et* Castōre. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *bĕnignus*, *căpax*, *exsors*, *impos*, *impŏtens*, *insătiābilis*, *irrĭtus*, *lībĕrālis*, *mŏdĭcus*, *mūnĭfĭcus*, *prælargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos*, *consors*, *ĕgēnus*, *exhēres*, *expers*, *fertĭlis*, *indĭgus*, *inops*, *parcus*, *partĭceps*, *pauper*, *prōdĭgus*, *prosper*, *stĕrĭlis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dīres*, *fēcundus*, *fĕrax*, *immūnis*, *inānis*, *immŏdĭcus*, *jĕjūnus*, *largus*, *nĭmius*, *ŏpŭlentus*, *pērĭtus*, *plēnus*, *pŏtens*, *pārus*, *rĭfertus*, *sătur*, *ūber*, *văcuus*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *ăbundans*, *aliēnus*, *cassus*, *cōpiōsus*, *extorris*, *firmus*, *fĕtus*, *frēquens*, *grăvĭdus*, *grāvis*, *infirmus*, *liber*, *lŏcŭples*, *lætus*, *mactus*, *nūdus*, *onustus*, *orbus*, *pollens*, *sătiātus*, *truncus*, *văĭdus*, *vĭdŭus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beātus*, *crēber*, *densus*, *mŭtĭlus*, *tŭmĭdus*, *turgĭdus*.

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *sĭmĭlis*, *dissĭmĭlis*, etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to*, take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens sĭbi conscia* recti. Cf. § 222, R. 3. *Conscius* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the *thing*; as, *conscius* huic fācĭnŏri. Cic.

GENITIVE AFTER VERBS

§ 214. *Sum,* and verbs of *valuing,* are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation ;* as,

A me argentum, quanti *est, sūmito,* Take me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter.   Magni *æstimābat pecūniam,* He valued money greatly. Cic.   *Ager nunc plūris est, quam tunc fuit.* Id.   Tanti est, It is worth so much ; and, absolutely, It is worth while.   Cic.   *Hūjus non facio,* I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in *a general* or *indefinite* manner by :—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, magni, permagni, plūrimi, maximi, minimi, parvi, tantidem, quanticumque, quantivis, quantilibet,* but only very rarely *multi* and *mājōris.*

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, terūncii,* and also *pensi* and *us.*

(3.) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive,* other than *assis, flocci,* etc., it is put in the ablative.   Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *æstimo, existimo, dūco, facio, fio, hăbeo, pendo, pŭto, depŭto, taxo.*   Thus, *Ut quanti* quisque *se ipse faciat,* tanti *fiat ab amīcis,* That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic.   *Sed quia parvi id dücēret.* Id.   *Honōres si* magni *non pŭtēmus.* Id.   *Non* assis *facis?* Catull.   *Neque quod dixi, flocci existimat.* Plaut.

NOTE 1. (*a.*) The phrase *æqui bŏni,* or *æqui bŏnique facio,* or *consŭlo,* I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos* æqui bŏnique *facimus.* Liv.   So, *Bŏni consŭlit* Plin.—(*b.*) A genitive of price is joined also to *cœno, hăbito, dōreo,* etc.; as, *quanti hăbitas?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging?   *quanti dŏcet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *æstimo,* the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo,* are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dita magno æstimas, accepta* parvo. Sen.   *Pro nihilo,* also, occurs after *dūco, hăbeo,* and *pŭto ;* and *nihil* with *æstimo* and *minor.*   Cf. § 231, R. 5.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus,* may be referred to a noun understood, as *prētii, æris, pondēris, mōmenti ;* and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing ; as, *Æstimo te magni,* i. e. *hŏminem magni prētii.   Scio ejus ordinis auctōritātem semper apud te magni fuisse,* i. e. *rem magni mōmenti.*   The words *assis,* etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun ; as, *prētio, rem,* etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price,* also, *when general* or *indefinite,* are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting,* and *hiring ;* as,

Mercātōres non tantidem *vendunt,* quanti *ēmērunt.* Cic.   *Nulla pestis hūmāno gĕnēri* plūris *stĕtit, quam ira.* Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *ĕmo, vendo,* the neutral passive, *vēneo, consto, prōsto,* and *liceo,* to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, plūrimo, parvo, minimo,* and *nihilo* are often used instead of the genitive; as, *Non pŏtest* parvo *res magna constāre.* Sen.   *Quanti ēmĕre possum* minimo? What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut.   Sometimes also the adverbs *cāre, bĕne,* and *măle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.

§ **215.**   (1.) *Mĭsĕreor*, *mĭsĕresco*, and the impersonals *mĭsĕ-ret*, *pœnĭtet*, *pŭdet*, *tædet*, and *pĭget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

Mĭsĕrēmĭni sŏcĭōrum, Pity the allies. Cic. *Mĭsĕrescĭte rēgis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea māter*, tui *me mĭsĕret*, mei *pĭget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos* ineptiārum *pœnĭtet*. Cic. Frātris *me pŭdet pĭgetque*. Ter. *Me cīvĭtātis* mōrum *pĭget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *dĭstædet; Haud quod* tui *me*, *nĕque* dōmi *dĭstædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Nunquam suscepti* negōtii *eum pertæsum est*. Nep. Lentitūdinis *eōrum pertæsa*. Tac. *Mĭsĕri-tum est me tuārum* fortūnārum. Ter. *Cāve te* frātrum *mĭsĕreātur*. Cic. *Pŭdet (me)* deōrum hŏminumque, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Mĭsĕrescit* is sometimes used in the same manner as *mĭsĕret*; as, *Nunc te mĭsĕrescat* mei. Ter. *Mĭsĕreo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse* sui *mĭsĕret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signify-ing, *matter*, *business*, *fact*, *case*, *circumstances*, *conduct*, *character*, etc., cf § 211, R. 8, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non* me hoc jam dīcĕre *pŭdēbit*. Cic. *Non pœnĭtet me* quantum prŏfēcĕrim, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quidem hæc* condĭtio *non pœnĭtet*. Plaut. *Non te* hæc *pŭdent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Mĭsĕret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a geni-tive; as, *Mĕnædēmi* vicem *mĭsĕret* me. Ter. So, also, *Pertæsus* ignāviam *suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (*a.*) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(*b.*) And sometimes also the accusative of the *neuter pronouns* and of *nihil*, denoting *to what degree* the feelings are exercised; as, *Sĕquĭtur ut* nihil (*săpien-tem*,) *pœnĭtet*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sătăgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting *in what respect*; as,

Is sătăgit rērum *suārum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sat*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agĭto*, with *săt*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc ăgĭtas sat tŭte tuārum* rērum. Plaut.

§ **216.**   *Rĕcordor*, *mĕmĭni*, *rĕmĭniscor*, and *oblīviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

Flāgĭtiōrum suōrum rĕcordābĭtur. Cic. *Omnes* grădus *ætātis rĕcordor tuæ*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mĕmĭni* vīvōrum, I am mindful of the living. Id. Nŭmĕros *mĕmĭni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rĕmĭniscī vĕtĕris* fāmæ. Nep. *Dulces* mŏriens *rĕmĭniscĭtur* Argos. Virg. *Rĕmĭniscī* āmī-cos. Ovid. *Oblītus* sui. Virg. Injūriārum *oblīviscĭtur*. Nep. *Oblīviscor* injūrias. Cic. *Oblīviscĕre* Graios. Virg.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusa-tive of the *person* with these verbs is unusual, except that *mĕmĭni*, when re-ferring to a contemporary, always takes an accusative of the person; as, Cin-nam *mĕmĭni*. Cic.

(*b.*) An infinitive or a dependent clause sometimes follows these verbs; as, *Mĕmento mihi suppĕtias ferre.* Plaut.   Esse *quŏque in fātis rēminiscĭtur*, affore tempus, *quo mārē*, etc. Ovid. *Oblīti* quid dēceat. Hor. *Mĕmĭni* te scrībĕre. Cic.   Quæ sum passūra rĕcordor. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Rĕcordor* and *mĕmĭni*, *to remember*, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Pĕtimus ut suis lībĕris rĕcordentur.* Cic.   De pallā *mĕmento.* Plaut.

REM. 3. *Mĕmĭni*, signifying *to make mention of*, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Nŏque hūjus* rei *mĕminit pŏēta.* Quint.   *Mĕministi* de exsilĭbus. Cic.   With *vēnit mihi in mentĕm*, the person or thing may be made the subject of *vēnit*; as, *Mĭsĕræ ŭbi vēnit in mentem mortis* mĕtus. Plaut.   *Vēnit hoc mihi in mentem*; or an infinitive or subjunctive clause may supply the place of the subject:—for the genitive with this phrase, as in *Sŏlet mihi in mentem vĕnīre illius tempŏris*, see § 211, R. 8, (5.)   The genitive with *rĕcordor* is very rare.

§ 217. Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning*, and *acquitting*, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the *crime*; as,

Arguit me furti, He charges me *with theft*. *Altĕrum accūsat probri*, He accuses another *of villany*. *Meipsum* inertĭæ *condemno.* Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) To this rule belong the verbs of

Accusing; *accūso, ăgo, arcesso, arguo, cito, dēfĕro, increpo, incŭso, insĭmŭlo, postŭlo*, and more rarely *alligo, anquĭro, astringo, capto, increpĭto, urgeo, interrŏgo, reum ăgo or fācĭo, alicui diem dico, cum alĭquo ăgo.*—Convicting; *convinco, coarguo, prēhendo, tĕneo, obstringo, oblĭgo.*—Condemning; *damno, condemno, infāmo*, and more rarely *jŭdĭco, nŏto, plector.*—Acquitting; *absolvo, lībĕro, purgo*, and rarely *solvo.*   To the verbs of accusing, etc., may be added the adjectives denoting *guilt* and *innocence*, which likewise take a genitive. Cf. § 213, R. 1, (3.)

(*b.*) The genitives which follow these verbs are, *audācĭæ, ărărĭtĭæ, cædis, falsi, furti, ignāvĭæ, impĭetātis, injūrĭārum, lĕvitātis, mājestātis, mālĕfĭcĭi, mendācĭi, parrĭcĭdĭi, peccāti, pĕcŭlātūs, probri, prōditiōnis, rei cāpĭtālis, rĕpĕtundārum, scĕlĕris, stultĭtĭæ, tĕmĕrĭtātis, tĭmōris, vānĭtātis, vĕnĕfĭcĭi*, etc.

REM. 2. (*a.*) Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used after *accūso, dēfĕro, anquĭro, arguo, postŭlo, damno, condemno, absolvo*, and *purgo*; as, *Accūsāre* de negligentiā. Cic.   De vi *condemnāti sunt.* Id.   De rĕpĕtundis *est* postŭlātus. Id.   Sometimes with *in*, after *accūso, coarguo, convinco, tĕneo*, and *dēprēhendo*; as, In quo *te accūso* (Cic.); and after *lībĕro*, with *a* or *ab*; as, A scĕlĕre *lībĕrāti sŭmus.* Cic.   *Accūso* and *damno* with *inter* occur in the phrases *inter sicārĭos accusāre*, etc., to charge with assassination.

(*b.*) With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Lībĕrāre* culpā. Cic.   *Crīmen* quo *argui* posset. Nep.   *Prōconsŭlem* postŭlārĕrat rĕpĕtundis. Tac.   This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scĕlus, mālĕfĭcĭum, peccātum*, etc.; as, *Me* peccāto *solvo.* Liv.   The ablatives *crīmine* and *nōmĭne*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessĕre alĭquem crīmine ambĭtūs.* Liv.   Nōmĭne *scĕlĕris conjūrātĭonisque damnāti.* Cic.; and when not so inserted they are to be understood.

(*c.*) Sometimes a clause takes the place of the genitive; as, *Eum accūsābant* quod scĕlĕrāte fēcisset. Nep.   So the infinitive with the accusative. *Quid? quod me—arguit sērum accessisse?* Ovid.

REM. 3. (*a.*) The *punishment* is commonly expressed by the genitive; as, *cāpĭtis, mortis, multæ, pĕcūnĭæ, quadrŭpli, octŭpli*; but sometimes by the ablative; as, *cāpĭte, morte, multā, pĕcūnĭā*: and always by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quindĕcim mīllibus æris* : or the accusative with *ad* or *in*;

as, *ad pœnam, ad bestias, ad mětallo, in mětallum, in expensas;*—sometimes, though rarely, in the poets, by the dative; as, *Damnātus morti. Lucr.*—
(*b.*) *Vōti* or *vōtōrum,* and less frequently *vōto* or *vōtis damnāri,* signifies 'to be condemned to fulfil one's vow;' and is consequently equivalent to 'to obtain what one wishes.' So also in the active voice, *Damnābis tu quŏque* vōtis. Virg. *Perdo* is used by Plautus as a verb of accusing, with *cāpitis; Quem ĕgo cāpitis perdam,* will charge with a capital offence. So *cāpite* or *cāpitis* perīclĭtāri, Plaut., signifies 'to be in peril of one's life.' With *plecto* and *plector, cāput* is used in the ablative only.—(*c.*) *Damni infecti* is put in the genitive (depending upon *nōmine* understood) after *satisdo, prōmitto, stipŭlari, rēprōmitto,* and *cāveo;* as, *Si quis in parĭēte dēmŏliendo* damni infecti *prōmīsĕrit.* Cic.

REM. 4. *Accūso, incūso,* and *insimŭlo,* instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si id me non accūsas.* Plaut. *Quæ me incūsāvēras.* Ter. *Sic me insimŭlāre falsum* fācinus. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The following verbs of accusing, etc., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*călumnior, carpo, corrĭpio, crīminor, culpo, excūso, multo, pūnio, rēprĕhendo, sugillo, taxo, trădūco, vitŭpĕro;* as, *Culpāre infēcundĭtātem agrōrum.* Colum.   *Excūsāre errōrem et ădolescentiam.* Liv.

(*b.*) This construction also sometimes occurs with *accūso, incūso, arguo,* and *inarguo;* as, *Ejus ărărĭtiam perfĭdiamque accūsārat.* Nep. *Culpam arguo.* Liv. With *multo,* the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsilĭis, morte* multantur. Cic.

§ **218.** Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given; as,

> *Mīlĭtes* tempŏris *mŏnet,* He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admŏnēbat ălium* egestātis, *ălium* cŭpĭdĭtātis *suœ.* Sall.

NOTE. The verbs of admonishing are *mŏneo, admŏneo, commŏneo,* and *commŏnĕfācio.*

REMARK I. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing sometimes have an ablative with *de;* as, *De æde Tellūris* me *admŏnes.* Cic.—sometimes an accusative of a pronoun or adjective in the neuter gender; as, *Eos hoc mŏneo* Cic. *Illud me admŏneo.* Id.; and in the passive, Multa *admŏnēmur.* Id.—rarely also a noun in the accusative; as, *Eam rem nos lŏcus admŏnuit.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing are also often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sŏror alma mŏnet* succēdĕre Lauso *Turnum,* His sister admonishes Turnus to take the place of Lausus. Cæs. *Sed eos hoc mŏneo,* dĕsĭnant fŭrĕre. Cic. *Mŏnet,* ut suspicĭōnes vītet. Cæs. *Sed eos hoc mŏneo,* dĕsĭnant fŭrĕre. Cic. *Mŏnet* rătiōnem frū menti esse hăbendam. Hirt. Immortālĭa ne spĕres mŏnet annus. Hor. *Discĭpŭlos* id ūnum *mŏneo,* ut, etc. Quint. *Mŏneo* quid facto ŏpus sit. Ter. See § 273, 2.

§ **219.** *Rēfert* and *intĕrest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

> *Hūmānĭtātis rēfert,* It concerns human nature. Plin. *Rēfert* omnium *ânt madvertī in mălos.* Tac. *Intĕrest* omnium *recte făcĕre,* It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea, tua, sua, nostra,* and *vestra,* are used; as,

> *Mea nĭhil rēfert,* It does not concern me. Ter. *Illud mea magni intĕrest,* That greatly concerns me. Cic. *Tua et mea maxime intĕrest, te vălēre.* Cic. *Măgis* reīpublĭcæ *intĕrest quam* mea. Id. *Magni intĕrest* Cicerōnis, *vel mea pŏtius, vel mehercŭle* utriusque, me intervĕnīre dĭcenti. Id.

NOTE. *Rēfert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the pronouns *mea, tua,* etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a genitive; as, *quid rēfert? magni* or *magnŏpēre rēfert.*

REM. 2. In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammarians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with *commŏda* or the like understood; as, *Intĕrest mea,* i. e. *est inter mea,* It is among my concerns. *Rēfert tua,* i. e. *rēfert se ad tua,* It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re, causā,* etc., understood, or in the dative. The better opinion seems to be, that they are in the accusative feminine for *meam, tuam, suam,* etc., that *rēfert* was originally *rem fert,* and that hence the *e* of *rēfert* is long.

REM. 3. Instead of the genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad hŏnōrem meum intĕrest quam prīmum urbem me vēnīre.* Cic. *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem rēfert.* Plaut.—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid te igitur rĕtŭlit?* Plaut—or a dative; as, *Dic quid rēfĕrat intra nātūrae fīnes vīventi.* Hor.

REM. 4. The subject of these verbs, or the thing which is of interest or importance, is sometimes expressed by a neuter pronoun; as, Id *mea mĭnĭme rēfert.* Ter. *Hoc vĕhĕmenter intĕrest reipŭblĭcae.* Cic.; and sometimes by an infinitive with its accusative, or *ut,* or an interrogative particle with a subjunctive clause; as, *multum mea intĕrest te esse dīligentem,* or *ut dīligens sis,* or *utrum dīligens sis nec ne.* When the infinitive alone is used with *rēfert* or *intĕrest,* the preceding subject is understood; as, *omnium intĕrest recte fă-cĕre,* scil. *se.*

REM. 5. The degree of interest or importance is expressed by adverbs or by neuter adjectives, etc., in the accusative or genitive; as, *măgis, magnŏpēre, vĕhĕmenter, părum, mĭnĭme,* etc.; *multum, plūs, plūrĭmum, nĭhil, ălĭquid,* etc.; *tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, plūris.* But *minĭmo discrĭmĭne rēfert* is found in Juv. 5, 123.

§ 220. Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango, discrūcior, excrū-cio, fallo, pendeo,* which are followed by *ănĭmi; dēcĭpior, dēsĭpio, fallor, fastīdio, invĭdeo, mĭror, vĕreor;* as, *Absurde fācis, qui angas te* ănĭmi. Plaut. - *Me* ănĭmi *fallit.* Lucr. *Dēcĭpĭtur labōrum.* Hor. *Dēsĭpĭēbam* mentis. Plaut. *Justĭtiaene prius miver belline* labōrum. Virg.

2. The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstĭneo, dēsĭno, purgo.* Hor.; *dēsisto.* Virg.; *laudo, prŏhĭbeo.* Sil.; *lēvo, partĭcĭpo.* Plaut.; *lībĕro.* Liv.; *dissolvo.* Tibull.: compare *liber* labōrum; *ŏpĕrum* văcuus; *pūrus scĕlĕris.* § 213.

3. Some verbs denoting *to fill, to abound, to want or need, to free,* which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *ăbundo, cāreo, complĕo, explĕo, implĕo, ĕgeo, indĭgeo, sătūro, obsătūro, scăteo;* as, *Adŏlescentem suae* tĕmĕrĭtātis *implet,* He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Ănĭmum explesse* flam-mae. Virg. *Ĕgeo* consilii. Cic. *Non tam artis indĭgent quam* labōris. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Pŏtior,* which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis pŏtīri,* To make oneself master of the city. Sall. *Pŏtīri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *rerum,* To make oneself master of the world. Cic. *Pŏtio* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc pŏtīvit* servĭtūtis, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *pŏtītus est hostium* signifies, 'he fell into the hands of the enemy.' So, also, *Alĭquem compŏtīre* praedae *or* vŏti. App. So, Rērum *adĕptus est.* Tac. Dōmĭnātiōnis *apīsci.* Id. *Regnārit* pŏpŭlōrum. Hor.

GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. 1. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said *to be*, or *to be done*, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

Hábitat Miléti, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Rómæ fáciam?* What can I do at Rome? Juv. *Hércúles Týri máximè cólitur.* Cic.

NOTE. For the construction of nouns of the third declension or plural number, see § 254. The following appears to be the best explanation that has been given of this diversity of construction, depending solely on the number or declension of the noun. The name of the town 'where' or 'in which' is probably neither in the genitive nor the ablative, but always, as in Greek, in the dative. Since the genitive and dative are alike in the singular of the first declension and the dative and ablative plural are the same in all declensions, such examples as *Rómæ* and *Athénis* present no difficulty. In the third declension the dative and ablative singular were anciently alike, and in such ablatives as *Anxúri, Carthágini, Lácedæmóni,* the old form remains, see § 82, Exc. 5, (c.) In the second declension there was an old dative in *oi,* as in Greek, which was commonly changed to *o,* but sometimes to *i:* and the latter is still found in *nulli, uni,* etc., see § 107, and in the adjective pronouns; as, *illi,* etc.

REMARK 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Rháce vivíre,* To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcýræ fúimus.* Id. *Cónon plúrimum* Cypri *víxit, Timótheus* Lesbi. Nep. *Quum Miltíades dómum* Chersónési *hábuit.* Id. *Uríte jussit consídere* Apollo. Virg. *Rómæ Númidíæque fácinóra éjus mémorat.* Sall.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Rex* Týro *decédit,* The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et* Coríntho *et* Athénis *et* Lácedæmóne *nunciáta est victória.* Id. *Pons quem ille* Abýdo *fécerat.* Id. *Hujus exemplar* Rómæ *nullum hábemus.* Vitruv. *Non* Libyæ, *non ante* Týro. Virg. For the explanation of this apparent anomaly, see the preceding note; in accordance with which it may be remarked, that the adverbs of place, *úbi, ibi, ibídem, álibi, alicúbi, hic, illíc, istíc,* etc., appear from their form to be ancient datives.—(b.) When the noun is qualified by an adjective, it is put, not in the genitive, but in the ablative with *in;* as, *In ipsá* Alexandría. Cic. And poetically without *in,* *Génus* Longá *nostrum dóminábitur* Albá. Virg.—(c.) When *urbs, oppidum, lócus,* etc., follow the genitive of place as appositions, they are put in the ablative either with, or, more rarely, without, *in;* as, *Archias* Antióchiæ *nátus est, célebri quondam urbe.* Cic. *Cíves Rómános* Neápoli, *in celebérrimo oppido sæpe vídimus.* Id. But when *in urbe,* etc., precede the name of a town, the latter also is put in the ablative; as, *In oppido* Citio. Nep.; and but very rarely in the genitive; as, *Cassius in oppido* Antióchiæ *est,*—in the town of Antioch. Cic., where the genitive depends on *oppido.*

REM. 3. The genitives *dómi, milítiæ, belli,* and *húmi,* are construed like names of towns; as,

Ténuit se dómi, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir* dómi *clárus.* Liv. *Spargit* húmi *jussos dentes,*—on the ground. Ovid. *Milítiæ* and *belli* are thus used, especially when opposed to *dómi;* as, *Una semper* milítiæ *et* dómi *fúimus,*—both at home and in the camp. Ter. So *Dómi nálitíæque.* Cic. *Et* dómi *et* milítiæ. Id. *Milítiæ dómíque.* Liv. *Milítiæ et* dómi. Ter. *Belli* dómíque, in war and in peace. Hor.

(1.) *Dómi* is thus used with the possessives *meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ,* and *aliénæ;* as, Dómi nostræ *víxit,* he lived at my house. Cic. *Apud eum sic fui tanquam* meæ dómi. Id. *Sacrifícium, quod* aliénæ dómi *fíeret invísere.* Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, generally with a preposition, is used; as, *In víduá dómo.* Ovid. *Páterná dómo.* Id. Sometimes also with the possessives; as, *Meá in dómo.* Hor. *In dómo suá.* Nep. So, instead of *húmi,* 'upon the ground,'

hŭmo is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In hŭmo ărēnōsā.* Ovid. *Sēdēre hŭmo nŭdā.* Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *dŏmi* or *in dŏmo* is used; as, *Dēprĕhensus* dŏmi *Cæsăris.* Cic. *Dŏmi illius fuisti.* Id. In *dŏmo Cæsăris.* Id. In *dŏmo ejus.* Nep.

(3.) The ablative *dŏmo* for *dŏmi* also occurs, but not in Cicero; a,, *Ego id nunc expĕrior* dŏmo. Plaut. *Dŏmo se tĕnēre.* Nep. *Dŏmo abdĭtus.* Suet. *Bello* for *belli* is found in Livy—*Dŏmi bellŏque.* So, also, *hŭmo* for *hŭmi ; Strătus hŭmo.* Stat. *Fīgit* hŭno *plantas.* Virg.: and in hŭmo *lŭmen f'igit.* Ovid.

(4.) *Terræ* is sometimes used like *hŭmi ;* as, *Sacra* terræ *cēlāvĭmus.* Liv. *Prŏjectus* terræ. Virg. *Ignes* terræ *condit.* Luc. So, also, *ărēnæ ; Truncum rēliquit* ărēnæ. Virg.: and *vicĭniæ ; Proxĭmæ* vicĭniæ *hăbĭtat.* Plaut.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *dŏmi, milĭtiæ,* etc., is supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbe, oppĭdo, ædĭbus, sōlo, lŏco, tempŏre,* etc., but see a different explanation above in Note.

GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, R. 4.

III. The genitive plural sometimes depends on the preposition *tĕnus ;* as,

Cūmārum tĕnus, As far as Cumæ. Cœl. *Crūrum* tĕnus. Virg. *Lătĕrum* tĕnus. Id. *Urbium Corcȳræ* tĕnus. Liv.—For the ablative after *tĕnus,* and for the place of the preposition, see § 241, and R. 1.

DATIVE.

§ **222.** 1. The dative is the case of reference, as it denotes the object with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses any specified quality ; or, in other words, the object *for* which, to the *benefit* or *loss* of which, any thing *is* or *is done.* Hence, in distinction from the dative of the *end* (§ 227) the dative of reference is called *datīvus commŏdi et incommŏdi,* the dative of advantage and disadvantage ; as,

Scrībo vōbis *hunc lĭbrum,* I write this book *for you. Prōsum* tĭbi, or Tĭbi *ūtĭlis sum,* I am useful *to you.*

2. Hence the dative of advantage and disadvantage may be used (*a*) with adjectives and particles whose meaning is incomplete unless the object is mentioned in reference to which the quality exists. (*b*) With verbs both transitive and intransitive. If transitive they take an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the remoter object, if intransitive they take a dative only. (*c*) With certain verbs compounded with prepositions, after which the dative is used instead of the case which the preposition, if separate, would govern. (*d*) After a few verbal substantives derived from verbs which govern a dative.

DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

3. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the *object* to which the quality is directed ; as,

Utĭlis agris, Useful to the fields Juv. *Jūcundus ămīcis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inĭmīcus quiēti*, Unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inūtĭlis scrĭbendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

NOTE. The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*; but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites, also those signifying *near*, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bĭlis*, are followed by the dative; as,

Fēlix tuis, Propitious *to your friends*. Virg. *Orātĭo ingrāta Gallis*, A speech displeasing *to the Gauls*. Cæs. *Amīcus tўrannĭdi*, Friendly *to tyranny*. Nep. *Lābōri inhăbĭlis*, Unsuited *to labor*. Colum. *Patri sĭmĭlis*, Like *his father*. Cic. *Nĭhil tam est Lȳsĭæ dīversum, quam Isŏcrātes*. Aptum *tempŏri*. Id. *Mālo prōnus*. Sen. *Promptus sēditiōni*. Tac. *Cuivis făcĭle est*. Ter. *Mĭhi certum est*. Cic. *Par frātri tuo*. Id. *Falsa vēris fĭnĭtĭma sunt*. Id. *Ŏcŭli concŏlōres corpŏri*. Colum. *Multis bŏnis flēbĭlis*. Hor. *Mors est terrĭbĭlis iis, quōrum, etc.*

(*a.*) The following are some of the adjectives included in Rem. 1, viz. *grātus, acceptus, dulcis, jūcundus, lætus, suāvis*; *ingrātus, insuāvis, injūcundus, mŏlestus, grāvis, ăcerbus, ŏdiōsus, tristis*;—*ūtĭlis, inūtĭlis, bŏnus, sălūber, sălūtāris, fructuōsus; călămĭtōsus, damnōsus, funestus, noxĭus, pestĭfer, pernĭcĭōsus, exĭtiōsus*:—*ămīcus, bĕnĕvŏlus, cārus, fămĭliāris, æquus, fĭdus, fĭdēlis, prŏpĭtius, sĕcundus; inĭmīcus, adversus, æmŭlus, ălĭēnus, contrārius, infestus, infĭdus, inīquus, īrātus*;—*aptus, accommŏdātus, appŏsĭtus, hăbĭlis, ĭdōnĕus, opportūnus; ineptus, inhăbĭlis, impor-tūnus, inconvĕnĭens*;—*æquālis, par, impar, dispar, sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, absĭmĭlis, discŏlor*:—*prōnus, prōclīvis, prōpensus, promptus, părātus*:—*făcĭlis, diffĭcĭlis*:—*ăpertus, conspĭcuus, mănĭfestus, perspĭcuus, obscūrus, certus, compertus, nōtus, ambĭguus, dŭbius, ignōtus, incertus, insŏlĭtus*:—*vīcīnus, fĭnĭtĭmus, confīnis, con-termĭnus, prŏpior, proxĭmus, cognātus, concŏlor, concors, congruus, consanguĭneus, consentāneus, consŏnus, convĕnĭens, contĭguus, contĭnuus, contĭnens*.

(*b.*) Many adjectives of other significations, including some compounds of *ob, sub*, and *sŭper*, as *obnoxĭus, obvĭus, subjectus, supplex*, and *sŭperstes*, are also followed by a dative of the object.

(*c.*) After verbals in *bĭlis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tĭbi crēdĭbĭlis sermo*, A speech credible to you, i. e. worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

(*d.*) The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Sўrăcūsāni nōbis dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fŭit jussis măgistrātuum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is a dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *ŏbēdiens*, and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs nōbis dicto audiens atque ŏbēdiens sit*. Liv. So *dicto ŏbēdiens*; as, *Pătŭra es dicto ŏbēdiens, annon, patri?* Plaut.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The adjectives *æquālis, affīnis, ălĭēnus, cognōmĭnis, commūnis, contrārius, fĭdus, insuētus, par, dispar, pĕcūlĭāris, prŏprius, prŏpinquus, săcer, sĭmĭlis, assĭmĭlis, consĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, sŏcius, vīcīnus, sŭperstes, supplex*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Par hujus*, Equal to him. Lucan. Proprium *est ōrātōris ornātē dīcĕre*. Cic. But most of these words, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æquālis ĕjus*, His contemporary. Cic.

(*b.*) *Sĭmĭlis, assĭmĭlis, consĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, par* and *dispar*, take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character or disposition, is to be expressed, and hence we always find *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, sĭmĭlis*; as, *Plūres rēges Rōmŭli quam Nūmæ sĭmĭles*. Liv.

(*c.*) *Amīcus, inĭmīcus*, and *fămĭliāris*, owing to their character as substantives, take a genitive even in the superlative; as, *Hŏmo ămĭcissĭmus nostrōrum hŏmĭnum*,—very friendly to our countrymen. Cic. On the other hand, *hostis*, though a substantive, is sometimes used like an adjective, being modified by

an adverb, and taking an object in the dative; as, *Exspectantibus omnibus quisnam esset tam impius, tam demens,* tam diis hominibusque hostis, *qui,* etc. Cf. § 277, R. 1.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti,* A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213, R. 7.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying useful, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the thing with *ad,* but only a dative of the person; as, *Homo ad nullam* rem *utilis.* Cic. *Locus aptus* ad insidias. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger* ad poenas, ad praemia *velox,* Ovid; Ad *aliquem* morbum *proclivior,* Cic.; Ad omne facinus *paratus,* Id.; *Pronus* ad fidem, Liv.;—sometimes with *in*; as, *Celer* in pugnam. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, may have an accusative of the object with *in, erga,* or *adversus,* instead of the dative; as, *Fidelis* in filios. Just. *Mater acerba* in *suos* partus. Ovid. *Gratus* erga me. Cic. *Gratum* adversus te. Id. So *Dissimilis* in dominum. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, etc., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, Inter se *similes.* Cic. Haec sunt inter eos *communia.* Id. Inter se *diversi.* Id.

REM. 5. *Propior* and *proximus,* instead of the dative, have sometimes, like their primitive *prope,* an accusative; as, *Quod vitium propius* virtutem *erat.* Sall. *P. Crassus proximus* mare Oceanum *hiemarat.* Caes. *Ager, qui proximus* finem *Megalopolitarum est.* Liv. Cf. § 238, 1.

REM. 6. (*a.*) Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par, communis, consentaneus, discors,* with *cum*; as, *Quem parem* cum liberis *fecisti.* Sall. *Consentaneum* cum *iis* literis. Cic. *Civitas* secum *discors.* Liv. So *alienus* and *diversus* with *a* or *ab*; as, *Alienus* a me, Ter.; A ratione *diversus,* Cic.; or without a preposition; as, *Alienum nostra* amicitia. Id.—(*b.*) *Fretus,* which regularly takes the ablative, is in Livy construed with the dative; as, fortunae *fretus*; nulli rei *fretus,* etc. Cf. § 244.— (*c.*) The participial adjectives *junctus* and *conjunctus,* instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative either with or without *cum.*

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jupiter* omnibus *idem.* Virg. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit* occidenti. Hor. In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem,* in imitation of the Greek construction with αὐτός, and is equivalent to *quod occidens,* or *quod facit* is, *qui occidit.* *Similis* is construed in the same manner in Hor. Sat. 1, 3, 122. *Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui, ac, atque, ut, quasi,* or *quam*; sometimes by the preposition *cum.* Cf. § 207, R. 27, (*d.*) *Similis* and *par* are sometimes, like *idem,* followed by *ac* and *atque.*

REM. 8. Some verbal substantives are followed by the dative, when derived from verbs governing the dative; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio* scriptis legibus institutisque *populorum.* Cic. *Traditio alicujus rei* alteri. Id. *Exprobratio* cuiquam *veteris fortunae.* Liv.

NOTE. A dative of the object often follows *esse* and other verbs, in connection with a predicate nominative or accusative, but such dative is dependent, not on the noun, but on the verb. Cf. § 227, R. 4.

DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

Mea dŏmus tibi pătet, My house is open *to you*. Cic. *Pars optāre lŏcum tecto*, A part choose a site *for a building*. Virg. *Tibi sĕris, tibi mĕtis*, You sow *for yourself*, you reap *for yourself*. Plaut. *Lĭcet nēmini contra patriam dūcĕre exercitum*, It is not lawful *for any one* to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc tibi prōmitto*, I promise *you* this. Id. *Hæret lātĕri lētalis ărundo*. Virg. *Surdo fābŭlam narras*. Hor. *Mihi responsum dĕdit*. Virg. *Sic vos non vōbis fĕrtis ărātra, bŏves*. Id. *Omnibus bŏnis expĕdit salvam esse rempūblĭcam*. Cic. *Aptat hăbendo ensem*. Virg.

NOTE. The dative is thus used after all verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, personal or impersonal, and in both voices, provided their signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for whom or to whose benefit or injury any thing is done. In the passive voice, from their nature, neuter verbs can only be so construed impersonally. Cf. § 142, 1, and § 222. 2.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for*, but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many intransitive Latin verbs are translated into English by verbs transitive, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of a transitive verb.—Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, and their contraries, also to command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, take a dative of the object.

NOTE. The neuter verbs comprehended in this rule generally express in the verbal form the meaning of those adjectives, which are followed by the dative, (cf. § 222, R. 1.) Thus, (*a.*) *Illa tibi făvet*, She favors *you*, or is favorable *to you*. Ovid. *Mihi plăcēbat Pompōnius, minĭme displĭcēbat*. Cic. *Quā sĭbi fĭdit*. Hor. *Non lĭcet sui commŏdi causā nōcēre altĕri*. Cic. *Non invĭdētur illi ætāti sed etiam făvētur*. Id. *Despērat salūti suæ*. Id. *Nĕque mihi vestra decrēta auxiliantur*. Sall. *Impĕrat aut servit collectæ pĕcūniæ* cuique. Hor. *Obēdire et pārēre vŏluntāti*. Cic. *Quŏniam factioni inimīcōrum rĕsistĕre nĕquīvĕrit*. Sall. *Mihi mĭnābātur*. Cic. *Irasci inimīcis*. Cæs.

(*b.*) So *Adŭlor, assentior, blandior, commŏdo, făveo, grātĭfĭcor, grātor, grātŭlor*, and its verbal *grātŭlābundus, ignosco, indulgeo, lēnōcĭnor, palpor, parco, plaudo, respondeo, stŭdeo, suppărăsitor; æmŭlor, incommŏdo, invĭdeo, nŏceo, obsum, offĭcio;—arrideo, plăceo; displĭceo;—crēdo, fĭdo, confīdo; despēro, diffīdo;—admĭnĭcŭlor, auxĭlior, mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor, ŏpĭtŭlor, patrŏcĭnor, prōsum, subvĕnio, succurro; dēsum, insĭdior;—impĕro, mando, mŏdĕror, præcĭpio, tempĕro; ausculto, mŏrigĕror, ŏbēdio, obsĕcundo, obsĕquor, obtempĕro, pāreo, dicto audiens sum;—ancillor, famŭlor, ministro, servio, inservio, præstŏlor;—adversor, refrāgor, obsto, obsisto, rĕluctor, rĕnītor, rĕpugno, rĕsisto, and, chiefly in the poets, bello, certo, luctor, pugno;—minor, comminor, intermĭnor;—Irascor, succenseo, stŏmăchor.—To these may be added æquo, adæquo, conrĭcior, dēgĕnĕro, excello, nūbo, suppĕdito, prævārĭcor, rĕcĭpio (to promise), rĕnuncio, suădeo, persuădeo, dissuădeo, supplĭco, vaco, vĭvĭtor, and sometimes mŭteo and lătro:—also the impersonals accĭdit, convĕnit, conducit, contĭngit, lĭbet, dŏlet, expĕdit, lĭcet, lĭbet, or lĭbet, lĭquet, plăcet, etc.—(c.) Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case; as, mihi invĭdētur, I am envied. Mihi malĕdīcitur, I am reviled. Mihi parcitur, I am spared. Hor. Hoc persuādētur mihi, I am persuaded of this.

(1.) (*a.*) Many of the above verbs, which, as intransitive, take the dative, sometimes become transitive and are followed by an accusative; as, adŭlor, ausculto, blandior, dēgĕnĕro, despēro, indulgeo, lūteo, mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor, mŏdĕror, obtrecto, præstŏlor, prōvĭdeo, etc.; as, Adŭlāri alĭquem. Cic. Hanc cūre dēgĕnĕres. Ovid. Indulgeo me. Ter. Hujus adventum præstŏlans. Cæs. Prōvīdēre rem frūmentāriam. Id.—Sometimes also by a preposition and the ablative or accusative; as, A Stŏīcis dēgĕnĕrārit Panætius. Cic. De rēpūblĭcā despēra. Id. Obtrectārunt inter se. Nep.—or by a dependent clause; as, Quæ despērat tractāta nĭtescĕre posse, rĕlinquit. Hor.

(*b.*) Others, as transitive verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impĕro, mando, ministro, minor, comminor, interminor, præcĭpio, rĕcĭpio, rĕnuncio,* etc.; as, Equĭtes *impĕrat cīvĭtātĭbus;* where *cōgendos* is perhaps to be supplied, He enjoins upon the states the providing of cavalry. Cæs. See § 274, R. 5. *Minĭstrāre* vīctum *alĭcui.* Varr. Dēflăgrātĭōnem *urbi et Ītălĭæ tŏti mĭnābātur.* Cic.

(*c.*) *Æquo* and *ădæquo* are construed with the accusative and either the dative or *cum* with the ablative.—*Invĭdeo* takes either a single dative of the person or thing, a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; as, *Hŏnōrem mĭhi invĭdent.* Hor.; or, when *invĭdēre* is used in the sense of *prīvāre,* a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Non invīdērunt laude suā mŭlĭērĭbus.* Liv. In Horace, by a Greek construction, the genitive is once used instead of the accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *Nĕque ille sēpŏsĭti cĭcĕris nec longæ invĭdet ăvēnæ.*

(*d.*) *Cēdo,* used transitively, takes a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; but sometimes the thing is expressed by the ablative; as, *cēdĕre alĭcui possessĭōne hortōrum.* So, also, *concēdo tĭbi lŏcum,* or *concēdo tĭbi lŏco.*

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as transitive verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *dēlecto, jŭvo, adjŭvo, adjŭto, lædo, offendo,* etc.—*Jŭbeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes by the accusative alone, or the dative with the infinitive or subjunctive; as, *Jŭbeo* te *bĕne spērāre.* Cic. Lex *jŭbet* ea *quæ făcienda sunt.* Id. *Ŭbi* Brĭtannĭcos *jussit exsurgĕre.* Tac. Quĭbus *jussĕrat, ut instantĭbus rĕsistĕrent.* Id.—*Fīdo* and *confīdo* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fīdĕre* cursu. Ovid. Cf. § 245.

§ 224.

Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ăd, ante, cŏn, in, intĕr, ŏb, post, præ, prō, sŭb,* and *sŭpĕr,* are followed by the dative; as,

Annŭe cœptis, Be favorable to our *undertakings.* Virg. Rōmānis ĕquĭtĭbus *lĭtĕræ affĕruntur,* Letters are brought to *the Roman knights.* Cic. *Antĕcellĕre* omnĭbus, To excel *all.* Id. *Antĕtŭlit* īræ rĕlĭgĭōnem. Nep. *Audetque* vīris con- *currĕre* virgo. Virg. *Exercĭtum* recrētui, *dūces dūcĭbus compārāre.* Cic. *Immĭ- net* his *aer.* Ovid. Pĕcŏri *signum impressit.* Virg. *Nox* prœlĭo *intervēnit.* Liv. *Interdixit* histrĭōnĭbus *scēnam.* Suet. Meis commŏdis *officis et obstas.* Cic. *Cum* se hostĭum tēlis *objēcisset.* Id. *Posthābui* mea *sēria* lūdo. Virg. *Certā- mĭni præsĕdit.* Suet. Hĭbernis *Labĭēnum præpŏsuit.* Cæs. Gĕnĭbus prŏcum- *bĕre.* Ovid. Mĭsĕris *succurrĕre disco.* Virg. Iis *subsĭdia submittēbat.* Cæs. Tĭmĭdis *supervēnit Æ´gle.* Virg.

NOTE 1. This rule implies that the compound retains the meaning of the preposition; and the dative following such compound is then used instead of the case governed by the preposition. When such compounds are transitive they have with the dative an accusative also, like other transitive verbs.

1. *Accēdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, ădēgnĭto, adhærĕo, adjăceo, adno, adnāto, ad- sto, adstĭpŭlor, adsum, adversor, affulgeo, allābor, allūdo, annuo, appāreo, applaudo, apprŏpinquo, arrēpo, arrīdeo, aspĭro, assentior, assīdeo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo;— addo, adhĭbeo, adjĭcio, adjungo, admŏveo, adverto, advolvo, affĕro, affīgo, alligo, ap- pōno, applĭco, aspergo.*

2. *Antēcēdo, antēcello, anteeo, antesto, antēvĕnio, antēverto;—antēfĕro, antēhābeo, antēpōno.*

3. *Cŏhæreo, collūdo, concĭno, congruo, consentio, consŏno, consuesco, convīvo,* and, chiefly in the poets, *coĕo, concumbo, concurro, contendo;—confĕro, conjungo, compăro, compōno.*

4. *Incĭdo, incŭbo, incumbo, indormĭo, ingēmisco, inhæreo, inhĭo, innascor, innĭtor, insĭdeo, insisto, insto, insŭdo, insulto, invādo, invĭgĭlo, illacrĭmo, illūdo, immĭneo, im- mŏrior, immŏror, impendeo, insum;—immĭsceo, impertĭo, impōno, imprĭmo, incīdo, in- clūdo, indŭo, infĕro, ingĕro, injĭcio, insĕro, inspergo, insuesco, inūro.*

5. *Intercēdo, interclūdo, interclūdo, interjăceo, intermĭco, intersum, intervēnio;—inter- dīco, interjĭcio, interpōno.*

Obārŭbŭlo, ŏberro, ŏbĕquĭto, obluctor, obmurmŭro, obrēpo, obsto, obsisto, obstrĕpo,
ı, obtrecto, obvĕnio, obversor, occumbo, occurro, occurso, offĭcio;—obdūco, objĭcio,
offundo, oppōno.

ı̆fĕro, posthăbeo, postpōno, postpŭto, postscrĭbo.

ı̆cēdo, præcurro, præeo, prælūceo, prǣmĭneo, prǣnĭteo, prǣsĭdeo, prǣsum, præ-
vertor;—prǣfĕro, præjĭcio, præpōno.

ı̆nbo, prŏfĭcio, prŏpugno, prospĭcio, prŏvĭdeo.

10. *Succēdo, succresco, succumbo, succurro, suffĭcio, suffrăgor, sŭbŏleo, subjăceo,*
subrēpo, subsum, subvĕnio;—subdo, subjĭcio, subjŭgo, submitto, suppōno, substerno.

11. *Sŭpercurro, sŭpersto, sŭpersum, sŭpervĕnio, sŭpervīvo.*

Note 2. In some verbs compounded with prepositions the meaning of the
preposition is lost. Such compounds are either not followed by a dative, or
the case depends, not on the preposition, but on the signification of the verb,
according to § 223.

Remark 1. (*a*.) Some verbs, compounded with *ăb*, *dē*, *ex*, *circum*, and *con-*
trā, are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum*, *dēsum*, *dēlābor*, *despēro*,
excĭdo, *circumdo*, *circumfundo*, *circumjĭcio*, *circumlĭcio*, *contrādĭco*, *contrăeo*; as,
Serta căpiti dēlāpsa, The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Numqui*
nummi excidĕrunt tibi? Plaut. *Tigris urbi circumfundĭtur.* Plin. Sibi despĕrans.
Cæs.—(*b*.) *Circumdo* and *circumfundo* take either an accusative of the thing with
a dative of the person, or an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the per-
son; as, *circumdo ălicui custōdias*, or *circumdo ăliquem custōdiis*. *Aspergo*, *in-*
spergo, *dōmo*, *impertio*, *exuo*, and *induo*, are construed in the same manner.
Cf. § 251, R. 2.

Rem. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are com-
pounds of *ăb*, *dē*, or *ex*), are sometimes followed by the dative, though more
commonly by the ablative; as, *ăbĭgo*, *abrŏgo*, *abscindo*, *aufĕro*, *ādĭmo*, *arceo*,
dēfendo, *dēmo*, *dēpello*, *dērŏgo*, *dētrăho*, *ērĭpio*, *ēruo*, *excŭtio*, *extmo*, *extorqueo*, *ex-*
trăho, *exuo*, *prŏhĭbeo*, *surrĭpio*. Thus, *Nec mĭhi te ērĭpient*, Nor shall they take
you from me. Ovid. *Solstĭtium pĕcŏri dēfendĭte.* Virg. *Hunc arcēbis pĕcŏri.* Id.
So rarely *abrumpo*, *ălieno*, *fŭror*, and *răpio*.

Rem. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *dī* or *dis*) likewise occur
with the dative, instead of the ablative with the preposition *ăb*, or poetically
with the ablative alone; as, *diffĕro*, *discrĕpo*, *discŏrdo*, *dissentio*, *dissĭdeo*, *disto*;
as, *Quantum simplex hĭlărisque nĕpōti discrĕpet*, *et quantum discordat*, *parcus*
ăvāro. Hor. *Distābit insŭlo scurræ ămīcus.* Hor. *Græcis Tuscānīcæ stătuæ dif-*
fĕrunt. Quint. *Cōmœdia differt sermōni.* Hor. So likewise *misceo*; as, *Mista*
mŏdestiæ grăvĭtas. Cic.

Rem. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially with *ad*, *con*,
and *in*, instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case
of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. Sometimes, also, a preposi-
tion of similar signification is used; as, *Ad prīmam vōcem timĭdas advertĭtis*
aures. Ovid. *Nēmo eum antĕcessit.* Nep. *Saxa rĭdes sōlā cŏălescĕre calce.* Lucr.
Infĕrunt omnia in ignem. Cæs. *Silex incumbēbat* ad amnem. Virg. *Innīxus*
mŏdērāmĭne nŏtis. Ovid. In Pansam *frātrem innīxus.* Plin. *Confĕrte hanc*
păcem cum *illo* bello. Cic. In this substitution of one preposition for another,
ad is used for *in*, and *in* for *ad*; *ab* for *ex*; *ad*, *antĕ*, *contrā*, and *in*, for *ob*; *ad*
and *antĕ*, for *prō*.

Rem. 5. Neuter verbs of motion or of rest in a place, when compounded
with the prepositions, *ăd*, *antĕ*, *cŏn*, *in*, etc., either take the dative, or, acquir-
ing an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvĕtii rĕlĭquos*
Gallos virtūte præcēdunt, The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs.
Utĕrque, Isocrătem ætāte *præcurrit.* Cic. So *præeo*, *præsto*, *præverto*, *præcello*.
See § 233, (3.)

§ **225.** Verbs compounded with *sătis*, *bĕne*, and *măle*, are
followed by the dative; as,

Et nātūræ *et* lēgibus *sătisfēcit,* He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. Tibi *dii benefāciant omnes,* May all the gods bless you. Plaut. But also, Amicum ergā *bĕne fēci.* Id. *Malĕdicit utrique.* Hor. So *sătisdo, bĕnĕdico, malĕfăcio.*

NOTE. These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *satis, bĕne,* and *male,* but on the simple verb. So, also, *bĕne* and *male alicui vŏlo* ; as, Tibi bĕne *ex ănimo* vŏlo. Ter. Illi *ego ex omnibus* optime vŏlo. Plaut. *Non* sĭbi mǎle vult. Petron. In like manner *vălēre dīco,* and *văle dīco;* as, *Augustus* discēdens (*e cūriā*) *sēdentibus singŭlis vălēre dīcēbat.* Suet. Tibi *vălēdīcĕre non lĭcet grātis.* Sen.—In late writers *bĕnĕdīco* and *malĕdīco* sometimes take the accusative.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets and later prose writers; as, *Quidquid in hac causā* mĭhi *susceptum est.* Cic. *Nĕque cernĭtur* ulli, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulla tuărum audĭta* mĭhi *nĕque rīsa sorōrum.* Id. *Barbărus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor* ulli. Ovid. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with *ā* or *ab.* See § 248, I.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

Unda omnĭbus *ēnārĭganda,* The wave over which (we) all must pass. Hor. Nōbis, *cum sĕmel occĭdit brĕvis lux, Nox est perpĕtua ūna dormienda.* Catull. *Achĭbenda est* nōbis *dĭligentia,* We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestīgĭa summōrum hŏminum* sĭbi *tuenda esse dīcit.* Id. *Si vis me flēre, dŏlendum est prīmum* ipsi tĭbi. Hor. *Făciendum* mĭhi *pŭtāvi, ut respondērem.* Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sāna in corpŏre sāno.* Juv. *Hic vincendum aut mŏriendum, milites, est.* Liv. In such examples, *tibi, vōbis, nōbis, hŏminibus,* etc., may be supplied. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative of the agent, an ablative with *ā* or *ab;* as, *Non eos in deōrum immortālium nŭmĕro rĕnĕrandos a* vōbis *et cŏlendos pŭtātos?* Cic. *Hæc* a me in *dicendo prœtēreunda non sunt.* Id.—The dative after participles in *dus* is by some referred to § 226.

IV. Verbs signifying *motion* or *tendency* are followed by an accusative with *ăd* or *in ;* as,

Ad templum *Pallădis ibant.* Virg. Ad prætōrem *hŏminem traxit.* Cic. *Vergit* ad septentriōnes. Cæs. In conspectum *vēnire.* Nep.

So *curro, dūco, fĕro, festino, fŭgio, inclīno, lĕgo, mitto, pergo, porto, præcipĭto, prŏpĕro, tendo, tollo, vădo, verto.*

REMARK 1. So likewise verbs of *calling, exciting,* etc.; as, *Eurum* ad se *vŏcat.* Virg. *Prōvŏcasse* ad pugnam. Cic. So *ănimo, hortor, incīto, invīto, lăcesso, stĭmŭlo, suscĭto;* to which may be added *attineo, conformo, pertineo,* and *specto.*

REM. 2. But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Clāmor it* cœlo. Virg. *Dum* tĭbi *lĭtĕræ meæ vĕniant,* Cic. *Grĕgem vĭridi compellĕre* hibīsco. Virg. Sēdibus *hunc rĕfer ante suis.* Id. After *vĕnio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Vēnit* mĭhi in mentem. Cic. *Vēnit* mĭhi in suspiciōnem. Nep. *Eum vĕnisse* Germānis in āmīcĭtiam *cognōvĕrat.* Cæs. *Prŏpinquo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

REM. 3. Sometimes also verbs signifying motion are followed by an accusative of place without a preposition, a supine in *um,* an infinitive, or an adverb of place; as, Rōmam *prŏfectus est. Ite* dŏmum. Rus ibam. Lāvīnia *vēnit* lĭtōra. Virg. *Nĕque ego* te dērīsum *vēnio.* Plaut. *Non nos* Lĭbycos *pŏpŭlāre pēnātes vēnimus.* Virg. Huc *vēnit.* Plaut. See §§ 237, 276, II. 271, N. 2.

REM. 4. After *do, scrĭbo,* or *mitto litĕras,* the person for whom they are written or to whom they are sent, is put either in the dative or in the accusative wi.h *ad;* as, *Ex eo lŏco* tĭbi *lĭtĕras ante dĕdĕrāmus.* Cic. *Vulturcius lĭtĕras sĭbi*

ad Catilīnam *dátas esse, dícēbat.* Id. *Caesar scríbit* Labiēno *cum,* etc. Caes. Ad me *Cūrius de te scripsit.* Cic. But to give one a letter to deliver is also expressed by *dáre lítēras álicui,* and also the delivery of the letter by the bearer.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor ;*— the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

Est thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est* mihi *dómi páter,* I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt* nobis *mítia pōma,* We have mellow apples. Id. *Grátia* nobis *ópus est tuā,* We have need of your favor. Cic. Innocentiae *plus pérícŭli quam hónōris est.* Sall. *An nesćis longas régibus esse mánus?* Ovid. So with an infinitive as the subject, *Nec tibi sit dúros ácuisse in praelia dentes.* Tib. 4, 3, 3. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK 1. Hence *mihi est nōmen* signifies, I have the name, my name is, or I am called. The proper name is put either in the nominative, the dative, or the genitive. See § 204, R. 8. So also *cognōmen, cognōmentum,* and, in Tacitus, *vócábulum, est mihi.*—Sometimes, also, a possessive adjective agreeing with *nōmen,* etc., supplies the place of the proper name; as, *Est* mihi *nōmen* Tarquinium. Gell. *Mercūriále impōsuēre* mihi *cognōmen.* Hor.

REM. 2. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fŏre, suppĕtit, ábest, deest,* and *défĭt;* as, *Pauper énim non esi,* cui *rérum suppĕtit úsus.* Hor. *Si* mihi *cauda fŏret, cercōpíthēcus* ĕram. Mart. *Défuit ars* vobis. Ovid. *Non défŏre* Arsácidis *virtútem.* Tac. *Lac* mihi *non défĭt.* Virg. *Hoc ūnum* illi *abfuit.* Cic.

REM. 3. With the dative of the person after *est* Sallust and Tacitus sometimes join, by a Greek idiom, *vŏlens, cúpiens,* and *invitus;* as, *Quia nĕque plébi mílítia vŏlenti* (esse) *pŭtábātur.* Because the common people were not thought to like the war. Sall. *Ut quibusque bellum invítis aut cúpientibus ĕrat,* According as each liked or disliked the war. Tac.

DATIVE OF THE END OR PURPOSE.

§ 227. *Sum,* and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which,* the other the *end for which,* any thing is, or is done; as,

Mihi *maxímae est cúrae,* It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spēro* nobis *hanc conjunctiōnem voluptáti fŏre,* I hope this union will afford us pleasure. Id. Mátri *puellam* dōno *dĕdit.* Ter. Fábio *laudi dátum est.* Cic. Vitio *id* tibi *vertunt.* Plaut. *Id* tibi *hónōri hábētur.* Cic. *Mátūrāvit* collégae *vénire* auxílio. Liv. Cui *bōno fuit?* To whom was it an advantage? Cic.

REMARK 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum, fŏre, fio, do, dōno, dúco, habeo, rélinquo, tríbuo, verto;* also *curro, eo, mitto, praefícisĕor, vénio, appōno, assigno, cēdo, cómparo, pateo, suppĕdĭto, ēmo,* and some others.

REM. 2. The dative of the end or *purpose* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as,

Exemplo *est formíca,* The ant is (serves for) an example. Hor. *Absentium bŏna* divísui *fuēre.* Liv. *Réliquit* pignóri *pŭtámina.* Plaut. *Quae* ēsui *et* pōtui *sunt.* Gell. *Esse* divísui, To be a subject of ridicule. Tac. *Receptui cánĕre,* To sound a retreat. Caes. *Aliquid* dŏti *dícăre,* To set out as dowry. Cic.

REM. 3. *(a.)* The verb *sum,* with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings, affords, serves, does,* etc. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum;* instead of it, *as,* or some other particle, may at times be used; as,

20

Ignāvia ĕrit tĭbi magno dēdĕcŏri, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hæc res est argumento*, This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Hoc vĭtio mĭhi dant*, This they set down as a fault in me. *Ūnĭversos cūræ hăbuit*. Suet. *Ūna res ĕrat magno ūsŭi.* .... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod tĭbi magnŏpĕre cordi est, mĭhi vĕhĕmenter displicet*, What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, etc. Id.

(*b.*) Sometimes the words *fit, able, ready*, etc., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Quum solvendo cīvĭtātes non essent*, ... not able to pay. Cic. *Dīrĭtes, qui ŏnĕri fĕrendo essent*. Liv. *Quæ restinguendo igni fŏrent*. Liv. *Rādĭx ĕjus est vescendo*. Plin.

REM. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a predicate nominative or accusative is sometimes used; as, *Nātūrā tu illi păter es*, By nature you are his father. *Amor est exitium pĕcŏri* or the purpose is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Alĭcui cōmes est ad bellum*. Cic. *Se Rēmis in clientēlam dīcābant*. Cæs.: or by the ablative with *pro*; as, *Innŏcentia pro mālĭvolentiā dŭci cœpit*. Sall. *Alĭbus sunt arbŏres pro cŭbilibus*. Cæs.

REM. 5. Instead, also, of the dative of the end or purpose, *quo?* to what end? for what purpose? why? sometimes occurs, with an accusative, which generally depends on a verb understood, or with an infinitive or a clause; as, *Quo mĭhi fortūnam, si non concēdĭtur ūti?* Hor. *Quo tĭbi, Pasĭphaë, prĕtĭŏsas sūmĕre vestes?* Ovid.

REM. 6. After *do* and other similar active verbs an accusative of the purpose is found in apposition; as, *Lătini cŏrōnam auream Jŏvi dōnum in Căpĭtōlium mittunt*. Liv. *Alĭcui cōmĭtem esse dătum*. Cic. Cf. § 204, R. 1; and § 230, R. 2.

NOTE. The dative, instead of the accusative, is sometimes used after the infinitive, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted; as, *Vōbis nĕcesse est fortĭbus esse vĭris*. Liv. *Maxĭmo tibi et cīvi et dŭci ēvādĕre contĭgit*. Val. Max. See §§ 205, R. 6, and 239, R. 1.

DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as,

Prŏpius Tĭbĕri quam Thermŏpŷlis. Nep. *Proxime castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Prŏpius stăbŭlis armenta tĕnērent*. Virg. *Congruenter nātūræ, convĕnienterque vīvĕre*, Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Epĭcūrus quam sĭbi constanter convĕnienterque dīcat, non lăbōrat*. Id. *Nēmĭni nĭmium bĕne est*. Afran. *Mĭhi nunquam in vītā fuit mĕlius*. Hor. *Vīvĕre vītæ hŏmĭnum ămĭce*. Cic. *Bĕne mĭhi, bĕne vŏbis*. Plaut. So, *Mĭhi obvĭam vēnisti*. Cic. *In certāmĭna sævo comminus īre vĭro*. Sil. *Quæstŏres prōvinciæ mĭhi præsto fuĕrunt*. Cic. *Sămos est exadversum Milēto*. App.

REMARK. *Prŏpius* and *proxĭme*, like their primitive *prŏpe*, are sometimes construed with *a* and the ablative; as, *Prŏpe a meis ædĭbus*. Cic. *Stellæ errantes prŏpius a terris*. Id. *A Surā proxĭme est Phĭlĭscum, oppĭdum Parthŏrum*. Plin.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mĭhi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nŏbis*. Id. But in such instances they seem rather to be used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mĭhi!* Ah me! Virg. *Væ mĭhi!* Wo is me! Ter. *Væ vĭctis esse!* Liv. *Væ mĭsĕro mĭhi*. Plaut. *Hem tĭbi*. Id. *Ecce tĭbi*. Cic.

NOTE. (*a.*) The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes nearly redundant, but it always conveys the expression of a lively feeling, and is therefore termed *dativus ēthĭcus*; as,

Fur mĭhi es, ... in my opinion. Plaut. *An ille* mĭhi *liber, cui mŭlier impĕrat?* Cic. *Tongĭlium* mĭhi *edŭxit.* Id. *Ubi nunc* nōbis * unus ille magĭster?* Virg. *Ecce* tĭbi *Sebōsus!* Cic. *Hem* tĭbi *tălentum argenti! Philippĭcum est.* Plaut. *Sĭbi* is sometimes subjoined quite pleonastically to *suus*; as, *Suo* sĭbi *glădio hunc jŭgŭlo.* Plaut. *Ignōrans* suo sĭbi *servit patri.* Id. *Sĭbi suo tempŏre.*

(*b.*) The following phrases also occur with *vŏlo* and a reflexive pronoun: *quid* tĭbi *vis?* what do you want? *quid* sĭbi *iste vult?* what does he want? *quid* vult sĭbi *hæc orātio?* what does this speech mean? *quid* hæc sĭbi *dōna vŏlunt?* what is the meaning of these presents? or, what is their object?

ACCUSATIVE.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; as,

Lēgātos mittunt, They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Anĭmus mŏvet corpus,* The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da* vēniam hanc, Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imĭtāti sunt,* They imitated him. Cic. *Piscem Sўri venērantur.* Id.

REMARK 1. A transitive verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

Te convinco āmentiæ, I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da* lŏcum melĭorĭbus, Give place to your betters. Ter. *Solvit se Teucria* luctu, Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs considered transitive in one, are used as intransitive in the other. Hence, in translating transitive Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me* cavēret, That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are intransitive, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Ille* mĭhi *fävet,* He favors me: and many verbs originally intransitive acquire a transitive signification.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum senātus, quem* (scil. *dăre*) *vidēbĭtur, dăbit.* Liv.

2. The interrogative interjection *quid?* what? depends on *ais* or *censes.* So also *quid věro? quid ĭgĭtur? quid ergo? quid ĕnim?* which are always followed by another question, and both questions may be united into one proposition, the first serving merely to introduce the interrogation. With *quid postea? quid tum?* supply *sĕquĭtur.* With *quid quod,* occurring in transitions, *dicam de eo* is omitted, but it may be rendered 'nay,' 'nay even,' 'but now,' 'more-over,' etc., without an interrogation.—*Dicam* is also to be supplied with *quid multa? quid plūra? ne multa; ne multis; ne plūra.* The infinitive *dicĕre* is also sometimes omitted; as, *Nimis multa vĭdeor de me.* Cic. *Perge rĕliqua.* Id.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox præcĭpĭtat,* scil. *se.* Virg. *Tum prōra āvertit.* Id. *Eo lăvātum,* scil. *me.* Hor.

The reflexives are usually wanting after *ăbŏleo, abstĭneo, accingo, ădæquo, æquo, agglŏmĕro, augeo, cēlĕro, congĕmĭno, contĭnuo, dēclīno, dēclŏquo, dēsĭno, diffĕro, dūro, ērumpo, flecto, deflecto, facesso, incĭpio, inclīno, instīnuo, irrumpo, jungo, lavo, laxo, lēnio, mātūro, mollio, mŏveo, mūto, plāno, præcĭpĭto, prōrumpo, quatio, rēmĭtto, retracto, sēdo, sisto, stabĭlio, suppĕdito, tendo, tĕneo, tendo, trāĭnio, transmĭtto, turbo, vārio, vergo, verto, dēverto, rēverto, vestio, vibro;* and more rarely after many others.

2. When it is something indefinite, has been previously expressed in any case, or is easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad quos scrībam, nescio,* scil. *lĭtĕras.* Cic. *De quo et tēcum ēgi dilĭgenter, et scripsi ad te.* Id. *Bĕne fēcit Silius.* Id. *Dūcit in hostem,* scil. *exercĭtum.* Liv.

REM. 5. An infinitive, or one or more substantive clauses, may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb; as,

Da mihi fallĕre. Hor. *Reddes dulce lŏqui, reddes ridĕre dĕcōrum.* Id. *Cŭpio me esse clēmentem.* Cic. *Athēnienses stătuĕrunt ut nāves conscendĕrent.* Id. *Vĕreor* ne a doctis repréhendar. Id.Euœ, Bacche, *sŏnat.* Ovid. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Di iram misĕrantur inānem ambōrum, et tantos mortālibus esse labōres.* Virg.—Respecting the infinitive with and without a subject-accusative after an active verb, see § 270–273; and for the subjunctive after such verbs, see § 273.

(*a.*) In such constructions, the *subject* of the dependent clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the leading verb; as, *Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit,* for *Nosti quam tardus sit Marcellus.* Cic. *Illum, ut vīvat, optant.* Ter. *At te ĕgo fáciam, ut minus vắleas.* Plaut.

(*b.*) An ablative with *de* may also supply the place of the accusative, by the ellipsis of some general word denoting *things, facts,* etc., modified by such ablative; as, *De rēpūblicā vestrā paucis accipe.* Sall. Compare a similar omission of a *subject* modified by *de* and the ablative, § 209, R. 3, (2.)

REM. 6. The impersonal verbs of feeling, *misĕret, pœnĭtet, pŭdet, lœdet, pĭget, misĕrescit, misĕrētur,* and *pertœsum est,* are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a genitive of the object in respect to which it is exercised. Cf. § 215, (1.); as,

Eōrum nos misĕret, We pity them. Cic. The impersonal *Vĕrĭtum est* also occurs with such an accusative; *Quos non est vĕrĭtum pōnĕre,* etc. Cic.

REM. 7. *Jŭvat, dēlectat, fallit, fŭgit, prætĕrit,* and *dĕcet,* with their compounds, take an accusative of the person; as,

Te hĭlări ănimo esse valdē me jŭvat, That you are in good spirits greatly delights me. Cic. *Fŭgit me ad te scribĕre.* Cic. *Illud altĕrum quam sit diffĭcĭle, te non fŭgit.* Id. *Nec vero Cæsărem fĕfellit.* Cæs. *Fácis, ut te dĕcet.* Ter. So also when used personally; as, *Parvum parva dĕcent.* Hor.; but *dĕcet* often takes the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as, *Hunc măcŭlam nos dĕcet effŭgĕre.* Ter.; and in comic writers a dative; as, *Vŏbis dĕcet.* Ter.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* after *rĕfert* and *intĕrest,* see § 219, R. 1: and for the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6,)(*b.*)

§ **230.** Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the *object* and the other of the *predicate.* Cf. § 210, R. 3, (3.) ; as,

Urbem ex Antiŏchi patris nōmine Antiŏchīam *rŏcāvit,* He called the city Antioch, etc. Just. *Lūdos fácis me,* You make game of me. Plaut. *Me consŭlem fĕcistis.* Cic. *Iram bĕne Ennius* initium *dixit insāniœ.* Id. *Ancum Marcium* rēgem *pŏpŭlus creāvit.* Liv. *Suspicātōrem suum nŭmĕrābat, non* compētītōrem. Cic. *Quum* vos testes *hăbeam.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The following are among the verbs included in this rule, viz. *appello, dico, nŏmĭno, nuncŭpo, pērhĭbeo, salŭto, scrĭbo* and *inscrĭbo, vŏco; căpio, constĭtuo, creo, dēclāro, dēlĭgo, dēsigno, dico, ēlĭgo, făcio, effĭcio, instituo, lĕgo, prōdo, reddo, rĕnuncio; dūco, dignor, existĭmo, hăbeo, jūdĭco, nŭmĕro, pŭto, rĕpĕrio, intellĭgo, invĕnio,* se *præbēre* or *præstāre,* etc.

NOTE 2. An ablative with *ex* occurs, though rarely, instead of the accusative of the object; as, *Fortūna me, qui liber fuĕram, servum fĕcit,* e summo *infĭmum.* Plaut. Cf. *Qui recta prāva fáciunt.* Ter.

NOTE 3. An infinitive may supply the place of the objective accusative; as, *Si simŭlasse vŏcat crīmen.* Ovid.:—and sometimes of the predicate accusative

also; as, *Si rĕpĕrīre vŏcas* āmittĕre certius; *aut si* scīre ŭbi sit rĕpĕrīre *vŏcas.* Id. So also an adjective may supply the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Præbuit* se dignum *suis mājōrĭbus.* Cic. *Cæsărem* certiŏrem *făciunt.* Cæs.

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as,

Eum Āvārum *possŭmus* existĭmāre. Cic. *Tālem* se impĕrātōrem *præbuit.* Nep. *Præsta* te eum, *qui mihi es cognitus.* Cic. Mercŭrium *omnĭum* inventōrem *artĭum fĕrunt;* hunc *viārum atque itĭnĕrum* dŭcem *arbĭtrantur.* Cæs.; or an adjective supplies the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Ne* me *existĭmārĭs ad mănen-dum* esse prŏpensĭōrem. Cic.

NOTE 4. Instead of the predicate accusative, (1) *pro* with the ablative sometimes follows *pŭto, dŭco,* and *hăbeo,* but denotes only an approximation; as, *Alĭquid* pro certo *hăbēre* or *pŭtāre.* *Ea* pro falsis *dŭcit.* Sall. *Alĭquem* pro hoste *hăbēre.* Cæs.—So also *in* with the ablative; as, *Nĭhil præter virtūtem* in bŏnis *hăbēre.* Cic. *Alĭquem* in nŭmĕro hostĭum *dŭcĕre.* Cic.—and the ablative without *in*; as, *Ŭti vos offĭnĭum* lŏco *dŭcĕrem.* Sall.—So also *e* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *(Ŭt)* făcĕret quod *e* rēpublĭca fĭdēque suā *dŭcĕret.* Liv.—Sometimes (2) the genitive; as, Offĭcii *dŭxit exōrāre* fĭliæ *patrem.* Suet. (See § 211, R. 8, (3.) So with a genitive or an ablative of price or value; as, *Pŭtāre alĭquem* nĭhĭlo. Cic. *Non* hăbeo nauci *Marsum augŭrem.* Enn—and sometimes (3) a dative; as, *Quando* tu me *hăbes* despĭcātui. Plaut.:—or an adverb; as, Ægre *hăbuit, fĭlium id pro părente* ausum. Liv. And (4) *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Lŏca ad* hibernācŭla *lĕgĕre.* Liv. Alĭquem in Patres *lĕgĕre.* Id.: or (5) the genitive depending on the ablative of cause, manner, etc.; as, *Qui servĭtūtem* dēdĭtĭōnis nōmĭne *appellant.* Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, etc.

Such are *do, trĭbuo, sūmo, pĕto, pōno, adjungo, ascrĭbo, cognosco, accĭo, fingo, signĭfĭco,* etc.; as,

Quāre ējus fŭgæ cŏmĭtem me *adjungĕrem.* Cic. *Hŏmĭnum ŏpĭnĭo* sŏcĭum *me* ascrĭbit *tuis laudĭbus.* Id. *Quos ĕgo* sim *tŏtĭes jam dēdignāta* mărĭtos. Virg. *Hunc ĭgĭtur* rēgem *agnoscĭmus, qui Phĭlippum dēdignātur* patrem? Curt. *Fĭliam tuam mĭhi* uxōrem *posco.* Plaut. *Pĕtit hanc Sāturnia mūnus.* Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse.*

§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *cēlo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

Hoc te *vĕhĕmenter rŏgo.* Cic. *Illud* te *ōro, ut,* etc. Id. *Rŏgo* te numinos, I ask you for money. Mart. *Posce* deos vēnĭam, Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quam lĕgent quis* mūsĭcam *dŏcŭĕrit* Epămĭnondam, When they shall read who taught Epaminondas music. Nep. *Antĭgŏnus* ĭter omnes *cēlat,* Antigonus conceals his route from all. Id. *Dēprĕcāri* deos mŭla. Sen. *Quŏtĭdie Cæsar* Æduos frūmentum *flăgĭtāre.* Cæs. *Multa* deos *ōrans.* Virg.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *flăgĭto, efflăgĭto, obsecro, ōro, exōro, contendo, percontor, posco, rēposco, consŭlo, precor. dēprĕcor, rŏgo,* and *interrŏgo,* which, with the accusative of the person, take the accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud, quod, quid,* more frequently than that of a substantive ; of teaching, *dŭceo, ēdŏceo, dēdŏceo,* and *ērŭdio,* which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Admŏneo* and *consŭlo* are rarely found with two accusatives; as, *Consŭlam, hanc rem amĭcos.* Plaut. *Eam rem nos tŏcus admŏnuit.* Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Non dēbĕbam* abs te *has lĭtĕras* poscĕre. Cic. *Vĕnĭam ōrēmus* ab ipso. Virg. *Istud vŏlĕbam* ex te *percontāri.* Plaut.

20*

Rem. 3. (*a.*) Instead of the accusative of the thing, the ablative with *de* is sometimes used; as, *Sic ēgo te eisdem* de *rēbus interrŏgem.* Cic. De *Itĭnĕre hostĭum sĕnātum ēdŏcet.* Sall. *Bassus noster me de hoc libro cēlāvit.* Cic. Cf. § 229, R. 5, (*b.*)—(*b.*) Sometimes also instead of the accusative of the thing an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause is used; as, *Deos prĕcāri dēbēis, ut urbem dēfendant.* Cic. *Ut dŏcērem Rullam posthac tăcēre.* Id. *Dŏcŭi* id non fĭeri posse. Id. *Dŏceant eum qui vir Sex.* Roscius fŭĕrit. Id.—(*c.*) With verbs of teaching, the instrument by means of which the art is practised is put in the ablative; as, *Alĭquem fĭdĭbus dŏcēre.* Cic. Dŏcēre *alĭquem armis.* Liv. *Lĭtĕræ* may be used either in the accusative or in the ablative; as, *Te lĭtĕras dŏceo.* Id. *Doctus Græcis lĭtĕris.* Id.

Rem. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exīgo, pĕto, postŭlo, quæro, scītor, sciscĭtor,* which, with the accusative of the thing, take an ablative of the person with the preposition *ab, de,* or *ex; imbuo, instĭtuo, instruo,* etc., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed; as, *Instĭtuĕre alĭquem* ad dicendum. Cic.

Rem. 5. (*a.*) Many active verbs with the accusative of the person, take also an accusative denoting *in what respect* or *to what degree* the action of the verb is exerted.

(*b.*) The accusative of degree, etc., is commonly *nihil,* a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective of quantity; as, *Non quo me nihil jŭcāre posses.* Cic. *Pauca pro tempŏre mĭlites hortātus.* Sall. Id *adjŭta* me. Ter. *Nĕque est te fallĕre quidquam.* Virg. Cf. § 232, (3.)

Rem. 6. By a similar construction, *gĕnus* and *sĕcus,* 'sex,' are sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive of quality; as, *Nullas hoc gĕnus vĭgĭlias vĭgĭlārunt.* Gell. So, *Omnes mŭliebre secus.* Suet. Cf. 211, R. 6, (4.)

§ 232.

(1.) Some *neuter* verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

Vitam jŭcundam vīvĕre, To live a pleasant *life.* Plaut. *Mīrum somnĭāvi somnium,* I have dreamed a wonderful *dream.* Id. *Fŭrĕre hunc fŭrōrem.* Virg. *Istam pugnam pugnābo.* Plaut. *Pugnāre dicenda Mūsis præ*lia. Hor. *Lūsum insŏlentem lūdĕre.* Id. *Si non servĭtūtem servĭat.* Plaut. *Quĕror haud făciles* questus. Stat. *Jūrāri vērissĭmum jusjūrandum.* Cic. *Ignōtas jŭbet īre vias.* Val. Flacc. So, also, *Īre exsĕquias,* To go to a funeral. Ter. *Īre suppĕtias,* To go to one's assistance. *Īre infĭtias,* To deny. This expression is equivalent to *infĭtior,* and may like that take an accusative; as, *Si hoc ŭnum adjunxĕro,* quod *nēmo eat infĭtias.* Nep.: or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Nĕque infĭtias imus Sicĭliam nostram provinciam esse.* Liv. *Ut suum gaudium gaudērēmus.* Cœl. ad Cic. *Prŏfĭciscor magnum* iter. Cic. *Pollux ĭtque rĕdĭtque* viam. Virg. This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used transitively, and are then followed by an accusative.

Accusatives are thus used with *oleo* and *săpio,* and their compounds, *rĕdŏleo, rĕsĭpio;* as, *Olet* unguenta, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Olēre pĕrĕgrīnum,* To have a foreign smell. Cic. *Orātĭōnes rĕdŏlentes* antīquĭtātem. Id. *Mella* herbam *eam săpiunt,* The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uva pīcem rĕsĭpiens.* Id. So, *Sĭtio* honōres. Cic. *Carnem pluit.* Liv. *Claudĭus* āleam *stŭdĭōsissĭme* lūsit. Suet. *Erumpĕre diu coercĭtam* iram *in hostes.* Liv. *Libros ēvĭgĭlāre.* Ovid. *Præīre* verba. Liv. *Nec vox hŏmĭnem sŏnat.* Virg. *Sūdāre* mella. Id. *Mŏrĭentem nōmĭne clāmat.* Id. *Quis post vīna grăvem* mīlĭtiam *aut* paupĕriem *crĕpat?* Hor. *Omnes ūna mănet nox.* Id. *Ingrāti ănĭmi* crimen *horreo.* Cic. *Ego meas quĕror* fortūnas. Plaut. *Vīvĕre* Bacchānālia. Juv. *Pastōrem saltāret ŭti* Cyclōpa, *rŏgābat.* Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem* Cyclŏpa *mŏvētur.* Id. *Xerxes quum māre ambŭlāvisset,* terram *nārĭgasset.* Cic. *Quā* stădĭum *currit.* Id. *Commūnia* jūra *mĭgrāre.* Id. *Te vŏlo collŏqui.* Plaut. *Ea dissĕrĕre* mālui. Cic.

Cŏrȳdon ardēbat Alexin. Virg. *Stȳgĭas jūrāvĭmus* undas. Ovid. *Nāvĭgat* æquor. Virg. *Currĭmus* æquor. Id. *Pascuntur* sylvas. Id.

NOTE 1. Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambŭlo, calleo, dōleo, ēquĭto, fleo, gaudeo, gēmo, glōrior, horreo, lætor, lātro, nato, palleo, paveo, pĕreo, dēpĕreo, prōcēdo, quĕror, rĭdeo, sĭleo, sĭbĭlo, tăceo, trĕmo, trĕpĭdo, vādo, vĕnio,* etc.

(3.) Neuter verbs and sometimes adjectives also may be followed by an accusative denoting *in what respect,* or *to what degree,* the feeling, condition, etc., is manifested; as,

Nĭhil lăbōro. Cic. *Num id lacrĭmat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? Ter. *Multa ălia peccat.* Cic. *Quicquid dēlĭrant rēges, plectuntur Achĭvi.* Hor. *Nec tu id indignāri posses.* Liv. *Illud mĭhi lætandum video.* Cic. *Illud valde tĭbi assentior.* Id. *Idem glōriāri.* Id. *Hæc glōrians.* Liv. *Hoc stŭdet ūnum.* Hor.—So, *Id ŏpĕram do,* I strive for this. Ter. *Consĭlium pĕtis, quid tĭbi sim auctor.* Cic. *Quod quĭdam auctōres sunt,* Which is attested by some authors. Liv. *Nil nostri misĕrēre?* *Nĭhil Rōmānæ plēbis* sĭmĭlis. Liv. *Sēnātus* nĭhil *sāne* intentus. Sall. These limiting accusatives have commonly the force of adverbs, particularly *nĭhil,* which is used like an emphatic *non* in the sense of ' in no way,' ' in no respect.' So *non nĭhil,* ' to some extent,' ' in some measure.'

NOTE 2. In the above and similar examples. the prepositions *ob, propter, per, ad,* etc., may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, quidquam, aliquid, quicquid, quod, nĭhil, nonnĭhil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, ūnum, multa, pauca, ália, cētĕra, omnia,* etc. Cf. § 256, R. 16, N.

§ 233.   Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans, ad,* and *circum,* have sometimes two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as,

Omnem ĕquĭtātum pontem *transdūcit,* He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. *Agēsĭlāus Hellespontum cōpias trājēcit.* Nep. *Petrēius* jusjūrandum *ădĭgit* Afrānium. Cæs. *Roscillum Pompēius omnia sua præsĭdia circumduxit.* Id. So, *Pontus scōpŭlos sŭperjēcit* undam. Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *indūco* with *ănĭmum;* as, *Id ănĭmum advertit.* Cæs. *Id quod ănĭmum induxĕrat paulisper non tĕnuit.* Cic. So, also, *injĭcio* in Plautus—*Ego te mănum injĭciam.*

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as,

Măgĭcas accingier artes, To prepare oneself for magic arts. Virg. In prose writers the *ad* is in such cases repeated; as, *accingi ad consŭlātum.* Liv. *Classis circumvĕhĭtur arcem.* Id. *Quod anguis dŏmi* vectem *circumjectus fuisset.* Cic. *Lŏcum prætervectus sum.* Id.

(3.) Many neuter verbs, especially verbs of motion, or of rest in a place, when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, become transitive, and accordingly take an accusative; as,

Gentes quæ măre illud adjăcent, The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. *Obĕquĭtāre* agmen. Curt. *Incēdunt* maestos locos. Tac. *Transĭlui* flammas. Ovid. *Succēdĕre* tecta. Cic. *Lūdōrum dĭbus, qui cognĭtiōnem intervĕnĕrant.* Tac. *Adīre* prōvinciam. Suet. *Cœnæ* ne prœlium *ĭneat.* Cic. *Ingrĕdi* iter *pĕdĭbus.* Cic. *Epĭcūri* horti quos mŏdo *prætĕrĭbāmus.* Id.

NOTE. To this rule belong many of the compounds of *ambŭlo, cēdo, curro, eo, ēquĭto, fluo, grădior, lābor, no* and *nāto, rēpo, sālio, scando, vādo, vĕhor, vĕnio, vŏlo;—cŭbo, jăceo, sĕdeo, sisto, sto,* etc., with the prepositions included in § 224, and with *ex.*

REMARK 1. Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which govern an ablative, in like manner become transitive, and are followed by an accusative; as,

Nēminem *convēni*, I met with no one. Cic. *Qui* societātem *coiēris*. Id. *Aversāri* honōres. Ovid. *Ursi* arbōrem *āversi dēripunt*. Plin. *Edormi* crāpūlam. Cic. *Egressus* exsilium. Tac. *Erādītque* celer rīpam. Virg. *Excēdere* numē-rum. Tac. *Exire* limen. Ter. Tibur *āquæ fertīle præfluunt.* Hor.

REM. 2. After verbs both active and neuter, compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is often repeat-ed, or one of similar signification is used; as,

Cæsar se ad nēminem *adjunxit.* Cic. *Multitūdinem* trans Rhēnum *in Galliam transdūcere.* Cæs.—In Galliam *invāsit* Antōnius. Cic. Ad me *ādire* quosdam *mēmini.* Id. *Orātor pērāgrat* per ānimos *hōminum.* Id. *Ne* in senātum *accēde-rem.* Id. *Rēgina* ad templum *incessit.* Virg. Juxta gēnitōrem *adstat* Lāvinia. Id. *Fines* extra quos *ēgrēdi non possim.* Cic. A dative instead of the accusative often follows such compounds, according to § 224. *Circum* is not repeated.

NOTE. Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative, like the transitive verbs from which they are derived; as,

Quid tibi hac receptio *ad te est meum* vīrum? Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plaut. *Quid tibi, mālum, me, aut* quid *ēgo* agam, *cūrātio 'st?* Id. *Quid tibi hanc aditio* est? Id. *Quid tibi hanc notio est, inquam, amīcam mean? Quid tibi hanc digito tactio 'st? Id. Hunnō vitābundus castra hostium consūlesque. Liv. Mithridātes Rōmānum mēditābundus bellum. Just. Mirā-bundi vānam spēciem. Liv. Pōpūlābundus agros. Sisenn. Carnificem imāginā-bundus. App.*

§ 234. A verb in the passive voice has the same govern-ment as in the active, except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

NOTE 1. The accusative of the person with the infinitive, after verbs of *saying* and *commanding*, may become the subject of the passive voice; as, Active, *Dico* rēgem *esse justum*;—Passive, Rex *dicitur justus esse.* Act. *Jūbeo* te *rē-dire*;—Pass. *Jūbēris rēdire*; the construction in the passive being the same as though *rēgem* and *te* had depended immediately upon *dico* and *jūbeo.*—So, also, when the accusative of the person is the object of the verb and the infinitive stands as the accusative of the thing. Cf. § 270, N.

I. When a verb, which in the active voice takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing, is changed to the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, and the accusa-tive of the thing is retained; as,

Rōgātus est sententiam, He was asked his opinion. Liv. *Interrōgātus* causam. Tac. *Segētes alimentāque dēbita dives poscēbātur hūmus.* Ovid. *Mōtus docēri gaudet Iōnicos mātūra virgo.* Hor. *Omnes belli* artes *ēdoctus.* Liv. *Nosne hoc cēlātos tam diu?* Ter. Multa *in extis mōnēmur.* Cic.

NOTE 2. The accusative of the thing after *doctus* and *ēdoctus* is rare; and after *cēlāri* it is generally a neuter pronoun; as *hoc* or *id* cēlābar; of this I was kept in ignorance; but it is found also with the person in the dative; as, Id Alcibiādi *diūtius cēlāri non pōtuit.* Nep. Alcib. 5. *Cēlo*, and especially its pas-sive, generally takes *de* with the ablative.

REMARK 1. (a.) *Induo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in

the passive; as, *Induitur ātras* vestes, She puts on sable garments. Ovid. Thōrāca *indūtus.* Virg. *Exūta est Rōma* senectam. Mart. So *indūcor* and *cingor*; as, *Ferrum cingitur* anguem. Ovid.

(*b.*) When two accusatives follow an active verb compounded with *trans,* the passive retains that which depends upon the præposition; as, *Belgæ* Rhēnum *antīquitus transducti.* Cæs.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est,* is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, Multa *nŏvis rēbus quum sit ăgendum.* Lucr. *Quam* (viam) *nōbis ingrĕdiendum est.* Cic.

II. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates ; as,

Nūdus membra, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os hūmĕrosque deo similis.* Id. *Clāri* gĕnus. Tac. *Tribāni* suam *vīcem anxii.* Liv. *Trĕmit* artus. Virg. *Cētĕra parce puer bello.* Id. *Sibila* colla *tūmentem.* Id. *Explēri* mentem *nĕquit.* Id. *Grȳneus ĕruitur* ŏcŭlos. Ovid. *Pīcti* scūta *Lăbīci.* Virg. *Collis* frontem *lēniter fastīgātus.* Cæs. *Ănĭmum incensus.* Liv. *Oblītus* făciem suo *cruōre.* Tac.

REMARK 1. In this construction an ablative is often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Miles fractus* membra *lăbōre.* Hor. *Dextĕrum gĕnu lăpĭde ictus.* Suet. *Adversum fēmur trăgŭlā grăvĭter ictus.* Cic.

REM. 2. This is a Greek construction, and is usually called the *limiting* or *Greek accusative.* It is used instead of an ablative of limitation, (§ 250,) and occurs most frequently in poetry.

REM. 3. A limiting accusative instead of the ablative is found also in a few ordinary expressions, as in *partim* (for *partem*), *vicem, magnam* and *maximam partem,* instead of *magnā* or *maximā ex parte,* and the adverb *fĕre* ; as, *Maximam partem* lacte *vīvunt.* Cæs. *Magnam partem ex iambis* nostra *constat ōrātio.* Cic. Livy has *magna pars,* viz. Nūmĭdæ, magna pars agrestes.—So *cētĕra* and *rēliqua* are joined to adjectives in the sense of *cētĕris,* 'for the rest,' 'in other respects '; as, *Proxĭmum regnum, cētĕra ēgrĕgium, ab ūnā parte haud sătis prospĕrum fuit.* Liv. So *cētĕra similis, cētĕra bŏnus. A te bis terce* summum *lĭtĕras accēpi.* Cic.—So, also, in the expressions *id tempŏris; id, hoc* or *ĭdem ætātis, illud hōræ,* for *eo tempŏre, eā ætāte,* etc.; *id gĕnus, omne gĕnus, quod gĕnus.*

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

Tertia vīritur ætas. Ovid. *Bellum milĭtābĭtur.* Ovid. *Dormītur hiems.* Mart. *Multa peccantur.* Cic. *Adītur Gnossius Minos.* Sen. *Ne ab omnĭbus circumsistĕrētur.* Cæs. *Hostes invādi posse.* Sall. *Campus ŏbītur ăquā.* Ovid. *Plūres ĭneuntur grātiæ.* Cic. *Ea res sīlētur.* Id.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER PRÆPOSITIONS.

§ **235.** (1.) Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

These are *ăd, adversus* or *adversum, antĕ, ăpŭd, circā* or *circum, circĭter, cĭs* or *citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intĕr, intrā, juxtā, ŏb, pĕnēs, pĕr, post, pōnĕ, prætĕr, prŏpĕ, proptĕr, sĕcundŭm, suprā, trans, ultrā;* as,

Ad templum non æquæ Pallădis ibant,—to the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes,* Against the enemy. Liv. *Germāni qui cis Rhēnum incŏlunt,*—this side the Rhine. Cæs. *Quum tantum rĕsĭdeat intra mūros māli.* Cic. *Principio rērum impĕrium pĕnes rēges ĕrat.* Just. *Templum pōnam propter ăquam.* Virg. *Inter ăgendum.* Id. *Ante dŏmandum.* Id. Respecting the signification of some of the preceding prepositions see § 195, R. 5, etc.

REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* with other words also; as, *Cis Taurum.* Cic. *Cis Pădum.* Liv. *Paucos cis menses.* Plaut. *Citra Vēliam.* Cic. *Citra sătiětātem,* Not to satiety. Col. *Citra fătīgātiŏnem.* Cels. *Citra Trŏjāna tempŏra.* Ovid.

REM. 2. *Inter*, signifying *between*, applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a single plural accusative; as, *Inter me et Scĭpiŏnem.* Cic. *Inter nātos et pārentes.* Id. *Inter nos,* Among ourselves. Id. *Inter fulcārios,* Among the scythe-makers. Cic. When it denotes time it signifies *during,* and more rarely *at;* as, *Inter ipsum pugnæ tempus.* Liv. *Inter cœnam.* Cic.

REM. 3. *Ante* and *post* are commonly joined with concrete official titles, when used to indicate time, rather than with the corresponding abstract nouns; as, *ante* or *post Cicĕrŏnem* consŭlem, rather than *ante* or *post* consŭlātum *Cicĕrŏnis.*

(2.) *In* and *sub*, denoting *motion* or *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative; as,

Via dūcit in urbem, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te ămor.* Cic. *Callĭmăchi ĕpĭgramma in* Cleombrŏtum *est*—on or concerning Cleombrotus. Id. *Exercĭtus sub jŭgum missus est,* The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub* terras *ibit imāgo.* Virg. *Mĕdiā in* urbe, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In* his *fuit Ariovistus.* Cæs. *Bella sub Īlĭăcis* mœnibus *gĕrĕre,* To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub* nocte *silenti.* Virg.

REM. 4. The most common significations of *in*, with the accusative, are, *into, to, towards, until, for, against, about, concerning,*—with the ablative, *in, on, upon, among.* In some instances, *in* and *sub*, denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In* conspectu *nĕo audet vĕnīre.* Phæd. *Nātiōnes quæ in* ămīcĭtiam *pŏpŭli Rōmāni,* ditionem-que essent. Id. *Sub jŭgo* dictātor hostes *mīsit.* Liv. *Hostes sub* montem consē-disse. Cæs.

REM. 5. *In* and *sub*, in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in* hōras. Ovid. *Hostīlem in* mŏdum. Cic. *Quod in bŏno* servo *dĭci posset.* Id. *Sub eā* condĭtiŏne. Ter. *Sub* pœnā *mortis.* Suet.

REM. 6. In expressions relating to time, *sub*, denoting *at* or *in,* usually takes the ablative; as, *Sub* advĕntu *Rōmānōrum.* Liv. *Sub lūce.* Ovid. *Sub tempŏre.* Lucan. Denoting *near, about, just before* or *just after,* it takes the accusative; as, *Sub* lūcem. Virg. *Sub* lūmĭna prima. Hor. *Sub hoc hĕrus inquit.* Id.

REM. 7. *In* is used with neuter adjectives in the accusative in forming adverbial phrases; as, *In ūnĭversum,* In general. *In tōtum,* Wholly. So, *in plēnum; in incertum; in tantum; in quantum; in majus; in mēlius; in omnia,* in all respects, etc.

(3.) *Sŭpĕr,* when denoting place or time, is followed by the accusative, and sometimes poetically by the ablative; but when it signifies *on, about,* or *concerning,* it takes the ablative. With the accusative *sŭpĕr* signifies *over, above, besides* or *in addition to;* with numerals, *more than;* as,

Sŭpĕr lābentem culmĭna *tecti,* Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Sŭpĕr tres mŏdĭos.* Liv. *Sŭpĕr* morbum etiam *fămes* affĭcit exercĭtum. Id. *Sŭpĕr tĕnĕro* prosternit grāmĭne *corpus,* He stretches his body on the tender grass. Virg. *Multa sŭpĕr* Priămo *rŏgĭtans sŭpĕr* Hectŏre *multa,* .... concerning Priam, etc. Id.

REM. 8. The compound *dĕsŭper* is found with the accusative, and *insŭper* with the accusative and the ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes, in poetry, the ablative; as,

Subter terras, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densā* testūdĭne. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative ; as,

Clam vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam patrem.* Ter. *Clam matrem suam.* Plaut. *Clam vobis.* Cæs. *Neque potest clam me esse.* Plaut. *Clam uxore meâ.* Id. Its diminutive *clanculum* is once followed by the accusative, *clanculum patres.* Ter.

REM. 9. The adverbs *versus* or *versum* and *usque* are sometimes annexed to an accusative, principally of place, which depends on *ad* or *in*, and sometimes the preposition is omitted ; as, Ad Oceānum *versus prŏficisci.* Cæs. *Fūgam ad se versum.* Sall. In Galliam *versus castra mŏvēre.* Id.— *Usque ad Nūmantium.* Cic. *Usque in Pamphўliam.* Id. Ad noctem *usque.* Plaut.—Brundūsium *versus.* Cic. Termĭnos *usque Libўæ.* Just. *Usque Ennam profĕcti.* Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.—*Usque* occurs more rarely with *sub* and *trans* with the accusative ; as, Trans Alpes *usque transfertur.* Cic. *Usque sub extrēmum brūmæ imbrem.*—*Versus* also rarely follows *ab*, and *usque* either *ab* or *ex* with the ablative ; as, Ab septemtriōne *versus.* Varr. *A fundamento usque mŏvisti māre.* Plaut. *Usque ex ultĭmā Sўriā.* Cic. *Usque a puĕrtiā.* Ter. *Usque a Rŏmŭlo.* Cic. *Usque a māne ad vesperum.* Plaut.

REM. 10. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them, but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind ; as, *Multis post annis,* i. e. *post id tempus.* Cic. *Circum Concordiæ,* scil. *ædem.* Sall.

REM. 11. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood ; as, *Quid ŏpus est plūrā?* i. e. *propter quid?* why? i. q. *cur?* or *quāre?* Cic. So, *Quid me ostentem?* Id. But it is not easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the accusative of limitation, see § 234, II.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ **236.** Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative ; as,

Acc. *Appius cæcus* multos annos *fuit,* Appius was blind *many years.* Cic. Biduum *Laŏdīceæ fui.* Id. Dies tōtos *de virtūte dissĕrunt.* Id. *Te jam annum audientem Crătippum.* Id.—*Dēcrēvērunt intercalārium* quinque *et* quādrāginta dies *longum.* Id.— *Quum ăbessem ab Amāno* īter *ūnius dĭĕi.* Id. Tres *pătent cœli spătium non amplius* ulnas. Virg. (Cf. § 256, R. 6.) *A portu* stādia *centum et* vĭgĭnti *prōcessimus.* Cic.—*Duas fossas* quindĕcim pedes *lātas perduxit,*—two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Fossæ* quīnos pedes *altæ.* Id. *Fŏrāmĭna longa* pēdes tres *sēmis.* Cato. *Orbem ŏleārium crassum* digitos sex *făcito.* Id.— ABL. *Vixit* annis undētrīginta. Suet. Quātuordĕcim annis *exsilium tŏlĕrāvit.* Tac. Trīginta annis *vixit Punatīus.* Cic.—*Exercĭtus Rōmānus trĭdui* ĭtĭnĕre *abfuit ab anne Tānai.* Tac. *Æscŭlāpii templum* quinque mīllĭbus passuum *distans.* Liv.

NOTE 1. The ablative denoting extent of time and space is rarely used by Cicero, and less frequently than the accusative by other writers.

NOTE 2. The accusative denoting extent of space sometimes follows the adverbs *longe*, *alte*, etc. ; as, Campestris *lŏcus alte* duos pĕdes et sēmissem *infŏdiendus est.* Colum. *Vercingĕtŏrix lŏcum castris dēlĭgit ab Avarĭco longe* mīllia passuum *sēdĕcim.* Cæs.

NOTE 3. (a.) *Old*, in reference to the time which a person *has lived*, is expressed in Latin by *nātus*, with an accusative of the time ; as, *Dĕcessit Alexander mensem ūnum, annos tres et trĭginta nātus.* Just. (b.) A person's age may also be expressed without *nātus* by a genitive of the time closely connected with his name, according to § 211, R. 6 ; as, *Alexander annōrum trium et trĭginta dĕcessit.* (c.) *Older* or *younger* than a certain age is expressed by prefixing to the accusative or genitive of the definite age the ad-

verbs *plus* or *minus*, or the adjectives *major* or *minor*, either with or without *quam*. See § 256, R. 6 and 7.—Sometimes, also, the ablative depends on the comparative; as, *Minor vīgintī quīnque annis nātus.* Nep. *Minor trīginta annis nātu.* Cic. Biennio *quam nos major.* Id. Cf. § 256, R. 16. (1.)

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit *other nouns*, are put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, R. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed may be expressed by an ordinal number; as, *Nos vīcēsimum jam diem pătīmur hĕbescēre āciem hōrum auctōrĭtātis.* Cic. *Pūnico bello duodēcimum annum Italia ūrēbātur.* Liv. Hence in the passive, *Nunc tertia vīvitur* ætas. Ovid.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quæ ăbĕrant* bīdui, scil. *spătium* or *spătio.* Cic.

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, Millibus *passuum sex a Cæsăris castris consēdit.* Cæs.; but sometimes the accusative; as, *Tria passuum* millia *ab ipsā urbe castra pŏsuit.* Liv. The only words used for this purpose in the ablative alone are *spătio* and *intervallo*; as, *Quindĕcim ferme millium* spătio *castra ab Tărento pŏsuit.* Id.

NOTE 4. For *abhinc* and a cardinal number, with the accusative or ablative of past time, see § 253, R. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, R. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem per dĕcem annos ālŭimus,* .... during ten years. Cic.

REM. 6. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* is sometimes placed before the ablative of distance, as if this depended on the preposition; as, *A millibus passuum duŏbus castra pŏsuērunt,* Two miles from the place, or, Two miles off. Cæs.

REM. 7. An *accusative of weight* also occurs when expressed by *libram* or *libras* in connection with *pondo.* Cf. § 211, R. 6. (4.)

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237.—After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town *in which the motion ends* is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

Rēgŭlus Carthāginem rĕdiit, Regulus returned *to Carthage.* Cic. *Căpuam flectit iter,* He turns his course *to Capua.* Liv. *Colpurnius Rōmam prŏficiscĭtur.* Sall. *Rōmam erat nunciātum.* Cic.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum, hăbeo,* etc.; as, *Iter est mihi* Lānŭvinum. Cic. *Cæsărem iter hăbēre* Căpuam. Id. And even after *sum* alone; as, *Omnia illa mūnicipia, quæ* sunt *a Vibōne* Brundĭsium. Cic. So with a verbal noun; as, *Adventus* Rōmam. Liv. *Rĕdĭtus* Rōmam. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition to be supplied is *in,* denoting *to* or *into,* which is sometimes expressed; as, *In* Ephĕsum *ābii.* Plaut. *Ad,* before the name of a town, denotes direction towards it; as, *Iter dirĭgĕre ad Mūtinam.* Cic.; and also its vicinity; as, *Adŏlescentŭlus miles prŏfectus sum ad Căpuam;* i. e. *in castra ad Căpuam.* Id. So, *Lælius cum classe ad Brundĭsium vēnit.* Cæs. *Cæsar* ad Gĕnēvam *pervēnit.* Id. *Quum ĕgo ad* Hērāclēam *accēderem.* Cic.

(b.) When *urbs, oppĭdum, lŏcus,* etc., follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; as, *Dēmărātus se contŭlit* Tarquinios, *in urbem Etrūriæ flōrentissimam.* Cic. Ad Cirtam oppĭdum *iter constĭtuunt.* Sall.—So also when the name of the town is qualified by an adjective; as, *Magnum*

iter ad doctas *prŏfĭcisci cōgor* Athēnas. Prop. But the poets and later prose writers sometimes omit the preposition; as, Ovid, Her. 2, 83.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, Carthāgĭni *nuncĭos mittam.* Hor. Cf. § 225, IV. and R. 2.

REM. 4. *Dŏmus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

Ĭte dŏmum, Go *home.* Virg. *Galli* dŏmos *ăbĭĕrant,*—had gone home. Liv. Rus *ĭbo,* I will go into the country. Ter.

NOTE. (a.) When *dŏmus* is limited by a genitive or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introĕo* in nostram dŏmum. Plaut. *Vēnisse* in dŏmum Leccæ. Cic.   Ad eam dŏmum *prŏfecti* sunt. Id.   In dŏmos *sŭpēras scandēre cūra fuit.* Ovid. Rarely, also, when not limited; as, *Sŏcrātes phĭlŏsŏphĭam* in dŏmos *intrŏduxit.* Cic.   So, *lărem suum.* App., or *ad lărem suum.* Cic. *Cārĭcas* in Albense rus *inferre.* Plin.   Quum in sua rūra *vēnĕrunt.* Cic. With the possessor's name in the genitive, either *dŏmum* or *in dŏmum* is used; as, *Pompōnii dŏmum vēnisse.* Cic.   *In dŏmum Mœlii tēla infĕruntur.* Liv.

(b.) *Dŏmus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Dŏmum rĕditiōnis spe sublātā.* Cæs. So, Itĭo dŏmum. Cic. Concursus dŏmum. Cæs.   Cf. R. 1.

REM. 5. (a.) Before the names of countries and of all other places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *dŏmus* and *rus,* the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asĭā transĭt* in Eurōpam. Curt.   *Te* in Epīrum *vēnisse gaudeo.* Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Dēvĕniunt* spēluncam. Virg. *Dēvēnēre* lŏcos. Id.   *Tŭmŭlum antīquæ Cĕrĕris* sēdemque *sacrātam vēnĭmus.* Id. *Ibis Cĕcrŏpĭos* portus. Ovid. So, also, before names of countries, especially those ending in *us*; as, *Ægyptus, Bospŏrus, Chersŏnēsus, Epīrus, Pĕlŏponnēsus,* etc. So, also, Illyrĭcum *prŏfectus.* Cæs. Măcĕdŏnĭam *pervēnit.* Liv. Afrĭcam *transtūrus.* Id. So, Tacĭtus construes even names of nations, when used, as they often are, for those of countries; as, *Ductus inde* Cangos *exercĭtus.* Ibĕros *ad patrĭum rĕgnum pervādit.* So, Virgil, *Nos ĭbĭmus* Afros.—Pliny has, Insŭlas *Rubri Māris nāvĭgant.*

(b.) Before the names of small islands the preposition is frequently omitted; as, *Pausānĭam cum classe* Cyprum *mīsērunt.* Nep.: but rarely before the names of the larger islands; as, *Sardĭnĭa, Brĭtannĭa, Crēta, Euboea, Sĭcĭlia.*

(c.) Before accusatives of any words denoting locality after verbs of motion, the poets omit the preposition; as, Itălĭam—*Lāvīnĭăque* vēnit lītŏra. Virg.— The old substantive *fŏras* is used, like names of towns, to denote the place *whither,* while *fŏris* denotes the place *where*; as, *Vāde* fŏras. Mart.   Exit fŏras. Plaut.

ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS, AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238.   1. (a.) The adjectives *prŏpior* and *proxĭmus,* with their adverbs *prŏpius* and *proxĭme,* like their primitive *prŏpe,* are often joined with the accusative; as,

Ipse prŏpior montem *suos collŏcat.* Sall. *Crassus* proxĭmus măre Oceănum *hĭĕmārat.* Cæs.—*Libyes* prŏpius măre Afrĭcum *ăgĭtābant.* Sall.   Proxĭme Hispānĭam *Mauri sunt.* Id.

(b.) The adverbs *prĭdĭe* and *postrĭdĭe* are also often followed by the accusative; as, *Prĭdĭe eum dĭem.* Cic.   *Prĭdĭe ĭdus.* Id.   *Postrĭdĭe lūdos.* Id.—(c.) An accusative sometimes follows *intus* and *cŏmĭnus*; as, *Intus* dŏmum. Plaut. *Agrestes cŏmĭnus* īre sues, scil. *in.* Prop.

REMARK 1. The accusative with *prĭdĭe* and *postrĭdĭe* is by some referred to *ante* and *post* understood. For the genitive after these words, see § 212, R. 4, N. 6.—Respecting *versus*, *usque*, *exadversus* (*-um*) and *sēcus* with the accusative, see § 195, R. 3: and § 235, R. 3.

REM. 2. The adverb *bĕne*, by the elipsis of *vălēre jŭbĕo*, is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Bĕne vos*, *bĕne nos*, *bĕne te*, *bĕne me*, *bĕne nostram etiăm* Stěphănĭum! Plaut.   *Bĕne* Messālam, a health to Messala. Tibull.   It is also construed with the dative. See § 228, 1.

2. In exclamations, the noun or pronoun which marks the *object of the feeling* is put in the accusative either with or without the interjections, *O! ah! heu! eheu! ecce! en! hem! pro!* or *væ!as*,

En quătuor āras! ecce duas tĭbi Daphni! Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnis! Virg.   *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut.   *O præclārum custōdem!* Cic.   *Heu me infēlicem!* Ter.   *Pro Deăm hŏmĭnumque* fĭdem! Cic.   *Ah me*, *me!* Catull.   *Eheu me misĕrum!* Ter.   *Hem astŭtĭas!* Id.   *Væ te!* Plaut.   *Væ me!* Sen.   *Misĕram me!* Ter.   *Hŏmĭnem grăvem et civem ēgrĕgĭum!* Cic.   Cf. § 228, 3.

NOTE. The accusative after interjections is supposed to depend on some verb of emotion to be supplied.

SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ **239.**   The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

Mŏleste Pompeium *id ferre constābat*, That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic.   *Eos hoc nŏmĭne appellāri fas est.* Id.   *Mĭror te ad me nĭhil scrībĕre*, I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic.   Campos *jŭbet esse pătentes.* Virg.

NOTE 1. In historical writing the present infinitive has sometimes its subject in the nominative. Cf. § 209, R. 5.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est ădŏlescentis mājōres nătu vĕrēri*, scil. *eum.* Cic. *Expĕdit bŏnas esse vōbis*, scil. *vos.* Ter.; and rarely when it precedes in the accusative; as, *Ea pŏpŭlus lætāri et mĕrĭto dĭcĕre fĭĕri*; and also when its place is supplied by a possessive pronoun expressed or understood; as, *Non fuit consĭlĭum* (meum)—*servīlĭbus offĭcĭis intentum ætātem ăgĕre* (scil. me). Sall.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollĭcĭtus sum susceptūrum* (*esse*), scil. *me*, I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter.   *Sed reddĕre posse nĕgābat*, scil. *se.* Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general word for person or thing; as, *Est ălĭud īrācundum esse*, *ălĭud īrātum*, scil. *hŏmĭnem.* Cic. See § 269, R. 1.

REM. 4. The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often *wanting.* See § 209, R. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 269, R. 3.

NOTE 2. For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used, see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

VOCATIVE.

§ **240**. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

REMARK 1. The interjections *O, heu, and pro (proh)*, also *ah, au (hau), ehem, eho, ehodum, eia (heia), hem, heus, hui, io, and ohe*, are followed by the vocative; as,

O formōse puer! O beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte Jūpiter!* Cic. *Ah stulte!* Ter. *Heus Sȳre!* Id. *Ohe libelle!* Mart. *Ehodum bŏne vir.* Ter.—*Urbem,* mi Rūfe, *cŏle.* Cic. *Quinctīli Vare, legiōnes redde.* Suet. *Quo mōritūre ruis?* Hor. *Macte virtūte esto.* Cic.

REM. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O mĭsĕrae sortis!* scil. *hŏmĭnes.* Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom the proposition is addressed.

ABLATIVE.

The ablative denotes certain relations of nouns and pronouns, all of which are expressed in English by means of prepositions. In Latin this case is sometimes accompanied by a preposition, and sometimes stands alone. Cf. § 37, 6.

ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ **241**. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *ā, (or ăb, ăbs), absquĕ, dē; cōram, pălam, cum, ex, (ē); sĭnĕ, tĕnŭs, prō,* and *prǣ;* as,

Ab illo tempŏre, From that time. Liv. *A scrībendo,* From writing. Cic. *Cum exercĭtu,* With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis,* For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fŭgā,* From flight. Id. *Pălam pŏpŭlo.* Liv. *Sĭne labōre.* Cic. *Căpŭlo tĕnus.* Virg. *Cantābit văcuus cōram lătrōne viātor.* Juv. cf. § 195, 5.

NOTE. Of the prepositions followed by the ablative, five signify removal or separation, viz. *ā (ab or abs), dē, ē (or ex), absquē* and *sĭnē.*

REMARK 1. *Tĕnus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive plural. See § 221, III.—*Cum* is always appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me, te, se, nōbis,* and *vōbis,* and commonly to the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo, quā, quibus,* and *qui.* Cf. § 133, 4, and § 136, R. 1.

REM. 2. The adverbs *prŏcul* and *simul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on the prepositions *a* or *ab,* and *cum* understood; as, *Prŏcul* mări, Far from the sea. Liv. *Simul* nŏbis *habĭtat.* Ovid. *Prŏcul* dŭbio. Suet. The prepositions are frequently expressed; as, *Prŏcul a terrā.* Cic. *Prŏcul a patriā.* Virg. *Tēcum simul.* Plaut. *Vōbiscum simul.* Cic.—So, rarely, *æque. Qui me in terrā æque fortūnātus ĕrit.* Plaut. Cf. *Nōvi æque omnia* tēcum. Id.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Quum cōram sămus.* Cic. *Cum frātre an* sine. Id. Cf. § 235, R. 10.

REM. 4. The ablative follows also the prepositions *in* and *sub,* when they answer to the question 'where?' *sūper,* when it signifies 'on' or 'concerning'; and sometimes *clam* and *subter.* Cf. § 235, (2.)—(5.)

REM. 5. *In* is generally joined with the ablative after verbs of *placing,* as, *pōno, lŏco, collŏco, stătuo, constĭtuo,* and *consĭdo;* as, *Et sōle tăbentes artus* i i litŏre *pōnunt.* Virg.—So, also, after verbs signifying to *have, hold, or regard;*

as, *hăbeo, dūco, nŭmĕro*, etc.—After verbs of *assembling, concealing,* and *including, in* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative.—After *dēfīgo, inscrībo, insculpo, incīdo,* and *insĕro, in* is usually joined with the ablative.

§ 242. Many verbs compounded with *ăb, dē, ex,* and *sŭper,* are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

Abesse urbe, To be absent from the city. Cic.   *Abīre sēdĭbus,* To depart from their habitations. Tac.   *Ut se mălĕdictis non abstĭneant.* Cic.   *Dētrūdunt nāves scŏpŭlo,* They push the ships from the rock. Virg.   *Nāvi ēgressus est.* Nep.   *Excēdĕre fīnĭbus.* Liv.   *Cæsar prœlio sŭpersēdēre stătuit.* Cæs.   *Trĭbūto ac dēlectu sŭpersessum est.* Cic.   So the adjective *extorris;* as, *Extorris patriā, dŏmo.* Sall.   And so the verbal *ēruptio;* as, *Mūtĭnā ēruptio.* Cic.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as, *Dētrăhĕre de tuā fāmā numquam cōgĭtāvi.* Cic.   *Ex ŏcŭlis ăbiērunt.* Liv.   *Exīre a patriā.* Cic.   *Exīre de vītā.* Id.   Cf. § 224, R. 4.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equĭtes dēgressi ad pĕdes,* scil. *ĕquis.* Liv.   *Abīre ad Deos,* scil. *vītā.* Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de,* and *ex,* instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, R. 1 and 2.   Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, R. 1.

ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 243. *Opus* and *ūsus,* signifying *need,* usually take the ablative of the thing needed; as,

Auctōrĭtāte tuā nōbis ŏpus est, We need your authority. Cic.   *Nunc ănĭmis ŏpus, nunc pectŏre firmo.* Virg.   *Nāves,* quĭbus *consŭli ūsus non esset,* Ships, for which the consul had no occasion. Liv.   *Nunc vīrĭbus ūsus, nunc mănĭbus răpĭdis.* Virg.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) *Opus* and *ūsus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Mātūrāto ŏpus est,* There is need of haste. Liv.   *Ūsus facto est mihi.* Ter.   *Ubi summus impĕrātor non adest ad exercĭtum, cĭtius, quod non facto est ūsus, fit, quum quod facto est ŏpus.* Plaut.   After *ŏpus,* a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit Hirtio convento,*—of meeting, or, to meet, § 274, R. 5. Cic.   *Opus sĭbi esse dŏmĭno ējus invento.* Liv.—or a supine is used; as, *Ita dictu ŏpus est,* It is necessary to say, I must say. Ter.—Instead of the ablative with *ŏpus est,* an infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, or *ut* with a subjunctive clause, sometimes occurs; as, *Opus est te ănĭmo vălēre.* Cic.   *Mihi ŏpus est, ut lăvem.* Id.

(*b.*) *Opus* and *ūsus,* though nouns, are seldom limited by the genitive.   In a few passages they are construed with the accusative. See § 211, R. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* is sometimes the subject and sometimes the predicate of *est; ūsus,* which seldom occurs except in ante-classic poets, is, with only rare exceptions, the subject only.   The person to whom the thing is needful is put in the dative; (§ 226.) With *opus* the thing needed may either be the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, or follow it in the ablative: as, *Dux nōbis ŏpus est.* Cic.   *Verres multa sĭbi ŏpus esse aiēbat.* Id.; or, *Dūce nōbis ŏpus est.* Cic.   The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns; as, *Quod non ŏpus est, asse cārum est.* Cato apud Sen.—In the predicate *ŏpus* and *ūsus* are commonly translated 'needful' or 'necessary.' Cf. § 210, R. 5.

NOTE. For the ablative of character, quality, etc., limiting a noun, see § 211, R. 6.

§ **244.** *Dignus,* *indignus, contentus, prædĭtus,* and *frētus,* are followed by the ablative of the object; as,

Dignus laude, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox pŏpŭli* mäjestāte *indigna,* A speech unbecoming the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestiæ* eo *contentæ non quærunt amplius.* Cic. *Hŏmo* scĕlĕre *præditus.* Id. *Plērique* ingenio *frēti.* Id.—So, *Æquum* est me *atque* illo. Plaut.

REMARK 1. The adverb *digne,* in one passage, takes the ablative; *Peccat ūter nostrum* crūce *dignius.* Hor.—*Dignor,* also, both as the passive of the obsolete *digno,* and as a deponent verb, is followed by an ablative of the thing. As a deponent it takes also an accusative of the person; as, *Haud ĕquidem tāli* me *hŏnōre dignor.* Virg.—As a Pass. *Qui* tāli *hŏnōre dignāti* sunt. Cic. Conjūgio, *Anchīsa, Vĕnĕris dignāte* sŭperbo. Virg.—Sometimes as a deponent, instead of the ablative of the thing, it is followed by an infinitive clause; as, *Non ĕgo grammatĭcas* ambīre *tribus et pulpĭta dignor.* Hor. And both *dignor* and *dēdignor* are followed by two accusatives, one of the object the other of the predicate. See § 230, R. 2.

REM. 2. (*a*.) *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscĭpe cŏgĭtātiōnem dignissĭmam tuæ* virtūtis. Cic. *Indignus* ăvōrum. Virg.; and *dignus* sometimes takes a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative; as, *Non me censes scire quid dignus siem?* Plaut. *Frētus* is in Livy construed with the dative. Cf. § 222, R. 6, (*b*.)

(*b*.) Instead of an ablative, *dignus* and *indignus* often take an infinitive, especially in the passive; as, *Erat dignus* ămāri. Virg.; or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus* qui impĕret. Cic. *Non sum dignus,* ut fīgam pālum in pariĕtem. Plaut.; or the supine in *u*; as, *Digna atque indigna rělātu vōcĭf'ĕrans.* Virg. *Contentus* is likewise joined with the infinitive; as, *Non hæc artes contenta paternas* ēdĭdĭcisse *fuit.* Ovid.—So, *Nāves pontum* irrumpĕre *frētæ.* Stat.

§ **245.** I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, pŏtior, vescor,* and their compounds, are followed by the ablative; as,

Ad quem tum Jāno supplex his *vōcĭbus ūsa est,*—addressed these words. Virg. *Frui* vŏluptāte, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungĭtur* offĭcio, He performs his duty. Id. Oppĭdo *pŏtiti* sunt. Liv. *Vescĭtur* aurā. Virg. His *rēbus perfruor.* Cic. *Lēgĭbus abūti.* Id. *Dēfuncti* imperio. Liv. Grāvi *ŏpĕre perfungĭmur.* Cic. O tandem magnis *pĕlăgi dēfuncte* pĕrīclis. Virg.

The compounds are *abūtor, deūtor, perfruor, dīfungor,* and *perfungor.*

NOTE. *Utor* may take a second ablative, as an apposition or a predicate, like the predicate accusative, (§ 230, R. 2), and may then be translated by the verb *to have*; as, *Ille făcĭli* me *ūtĕtur* patre, He shall have in me an indulgent father. Ter.

REMARK. In early writers these verbs sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem mĕdĭci ūtuntur.* Varr. Ingĕnium *frui.* Ter. *Datāmes milĭtāre* mūnus *fungens.* Nep. *Gentem ălĭquam* urbem *nostram pŏtitūram* pŭtem. Cic. *Sacras* lauros *vescar.* Tibull. *In prŏlŏgis scribendis* ŏpĕram *abūtitur.* Ter.—*Pŏtior* is, also, found with the genitive. See § 220, 4.

II. 1. *Nītor, innītor, fīdo* and *confīdo,* may be followed by the ablative without a preposition; as, Hastā *innixus.* Liv. *Fīdĕre* cursu. Ovid. Nātūrā *lŏci confīdĕbant.* Cæs.

2. *Misceo* with its compounds takes, with the accusative of the object, the ablative of the thing mingled with; as, *Miscēre păbŭla* sāle. Coll. *Aquas* nectāre. Ovid. *Aër* multo *călōre admixtus.* Cic.

3. *Assuesco, assuēfăcio, consuesco, insuesco,* and sometimes *acquiesco,* take either the dative or the ablative of the thing; as, *Aves sanguine et prædā as- suētæ.* Hor. Nullo offĭcio *aut* disciplīnā *assuĕfactus.* Cæs. Cf. § 224.

4. *Vivo* and *ĕpŭlor*, 'to live or feast upon,' are followed by the ablative; as, Dăpĭbus *ĕpŭlāmur ŏpīmis.* Virg. Lacte *atque pĕcōre vīvunt.* Cæs.

5. *Sto* signifying 'to be filled or covered with,' and also when signifying 'to cost,' is followed by the ablative without a preposition; when signifying 'to persevere in, stick to, abide by,' 'to rest or be fixed on,' it is followed by the ablative either with or without *in;* as, *Jam* pulvĕre *cælum stāre vĭdent.* Virg.— Multo sanguine *ac* vulnĕribus *ea Pœnis victōria* stĕtit. Liv. Stāre conditiōnibus. Cic. *Omnis* in Ascānio *stat cūra pārentis.* Virg.—*Consto,* 'to consist of' or 'to rest upon,' is followed by the ablative either alone or with *ex, de,* or *in;* as, *Constat hŏmo ex* ănĭmo *constat et* corpŏre. Lucr.

REMARK 1. *Fīdo, confīdo, misceo, admisceo, permisceo,* and *assuesco* often take the dative.

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *sto, fīdo, confīdo, nītor, innītor,* and *assuesco* take *in* or *ad; acquiesco, in;* and *misceo* with its compounds, *cum.*

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source,* without a preposition.

Such are *nātus, prōgnātus, sātus, creātus, crētus, ēdĭtus, gĕnĭtus, gĕnĕrātus, ortus;* to which may be added *ŏriundus,* descended from.

Thus, *Nāte deā!* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantălo prōgnātus,* Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Sātus Nērĕĭde,* Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Creātus rēge.* Id. *Alcănōre crēti.* Virg. *Edĭte rēgĭbus.* Hor. *Dīis gĕnĭte.* Virg. *Argŏlĭco gĕnĕrātus Alēmōne.* Ovid. *Ortus nullis mājōribus.* Hor. *Cælesti sēmĭne ŏriundi.* Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after the verbs *creo, gĕnĕro,* and *nascor;* as, *Ut patre certo nascĕrēre.* Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus.* Hor.

REM. 2. After participles denoting origin, the preposition *ex* or *de* is usually joined to the name of the mother; and in a few passages *ex* or *ab* is joined to the name of the father; as, *Prōgnāti ab Dīte patre.* Cæs. In speaking of one's ancestors *ab* is frequently used; as, *Plērosque Belgas esse ortos* a Germānis. Id.

REM. 3. Origin from a place or country is generally expressed by a patrial adjective; as, *Thrăsybŭlus* Athēniensis, Thrasybulus *of Athens.* Livy often uses *ab;* as, *Turnus Herdōnius* ab Arīciā. Cæsar prefers the ablative alone; as, *Cn. Măgius Crĕmōnā;* and in this manner is expressed the tribe to which a person belongs; as, *Q. Verres* Rŏmĭliā,—*of the Romilian tribe.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, ETC.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the *cause, manner, means,* and *instrument,* after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. The English prepositions with the ablative of cause, manner, means, and instrument are *by, with, in,* etc.

1. The *cause.* (1.) Adjectives which have a passive signification, as denoting a state or condition produced by some external cause, may take such cause in the ablative; as,

Campāni *fuĕrunt sŭperbi* bŏnĭtāte *agrōrum.* Cic. *Animal* pābŭlo *lætum.* Sen. Prælio *fessi lassīque,* Weary and faint with the battle. Sall. *Hŏmines ægri* grăvi *morbo.* Cic.

(2.) Neuter verbs expressing an action, state or feeling of the subject originating in some external cause, may take that cause in the ablative; as,

Intĕriit fāme, He perished with hunger.   *Laude aliēnā dŏlet.* Cic.   *Lætor tuā dignitāte.* Id.   *Gaude tuo bŏno.* Id.   *Suā victoriā glŏriāri.* Cæs.   Aquilōnĭbus *labōrant quercēta.* Hor.—So with *bĕne est* and the dative; as, *Mihi bĕne ĕrat non piscĭbus urbe pĕtitis, sed pullo atque hædo.* Hor.   *Ubi illi bĕne sit ligno,* āquā cālĭdā, cibo, vestimentis, etc. Plaut.

NOTE 1. After such adjectives and neuter verbs, a preposition with its case often supplies the place of the simple ablative.

NOTE 2. In exclamations of encouragement or approbation, the defective adjective *macte, macti,* either with or without the imperative of *esse* (*esto, este, estōte*), is joined with an ablative of cause, especially with *virtūte.*

NOTE 3. After neuter verbs and adjectives denoting emotions, especially those of *care, grief,* and *sorrow,* the accusative *vĭcem,* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used, instead of the ablative *vĭce,* to signify 'for' or 'on account of'; as, *Rēmittĭmus hoc tibi, ne nostram vĭcem irascāris,* That you may not be angry on our account. Liv.   *Tuam vĭcem sæpe dŏleo, quod,* etc. Cic. *Suam vĭcem mǎgis anxius, quam* ejus, *cui auxilium ab se pĕtĕbātur.* Liv.

REMARK 1. When the *cause* is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob, propter,* or *per;* as, *Non sẽ æquum me propter vos dēcĭpi.* Ter. These prepositions, and *a,* or *ab, de, e* or *ex,* and *præ,* are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, *Ob adultĕrium cæsi.* Virg.   *Nec lŏqui præ mærōre pŏtuit.* Cic.

REM. 2. (*a.*) After active verbs, the *cause,* unless expressed by an ablative in *u* from substantives having no other case; as, *Jussu, rŏgātu* and *admŏnĭtu,* is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by *causā, grǎtiā, ergo,* etc., with a genitive; as, *Lēgĭbus propter mĕtum pāret.* Cic.   *Ne ob* eam rem *ipsos dēspĭcĕret.* Id.   *Dōnāri virtūtis ergo.* Id.   *Si hoc* hŏnōris mei causā *suscĭpĕris.* Id.   But with *causā,* etc., the adjective pronoun is commonly used for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te ǎbesse* meā causā, *mŏleste fĕro.* Cic. Cf. § 211, R. 3, (*b.*)

(*b.*) When the cause is a state of feeling, a circumlocution is often used with a perfect participle of some verb signifying 'to induce'; as, *Cŭpidĭtāte ductus, inductus, incitātus, incensus, inflammātus, impulsus, mōtus, captus,* etc.   *Mihi bĕne-vŏlentiā ductus trĭbuĕbat omnia.* Cic. Livy frequently uses *ab* in this sense; as, *Ab īrā, a spe, ab ŏdio,* from anger, hope, hatred.

2. The *m a n n e r.* *Cum* is regularly joined with the ablative of manner, when expressed simply by a noun, not modified by any other word ; and also when an adjective is joined with the noun, provided *an additional circumstance,* and not merely an essential character of the action, is to be expressed.   Thus :

Cum vŏluptāte *alĭquem audīre.* *Verres Lampsăcum vēnit* cum magnā cǎlămĭtāte cīvĭtātis. Cic.   Hence also when the connection between the subject and the noun denoting the attribute is only external; as, *Prŏcēdĕre* cum veste purpŭreā; in distinction from *Nūdis pĕdĭbus incēdĕre;* *Apertō capĭte sĕdēre,* etc., which express circumstances or attributes essential to the subject.

But *mŏdus, rǎtio, mos, rītus,* etc., signifying manner, never take *cum,* and it is omitted in some expressions with other substantives; as, *Hoc mŏdo scripsi;* *Constituĕrunt* quā rǎtiōne *ǎgĕrētur ;* *Mōre bestiārum vǎgāri;* *Latrōnum* rītu *vīvĕre;* Æquo ǎnimo *fĕro;* Maximā fĭde *amīcĭtias cŏluit.*   Summā æquĭtāte *res constĭtuit ;* *Viam* incrēdĭbĭli cĕlĕrĭtāte *confēcit ;* *Librum* magnā cūrā dĭligentiāque *scripsi ;* the action of the verb being intimately connected with the circumstance expressed by the ablative.   So in some expressions with substantives alone; as, *Silentio prætĕrīre* or *fǎcĕre alĭquid ;* *Lēge ǎgĕre;* *Jūre* and *injūriā fǎcĕre ;* *Magistrātus* vĭtio *creātus ;* *Recte* et *invīte fit.*

REM. 3. The *manner* is also sometimes denoted by *de* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *De* or *ex* industriā, On purpose. Liv.   *Ex integro,* Anew. Quint.

3. The *means* and *instrument*. An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

> *Amīcos observantiā, rem* parsimōniā *rētīnuit,* He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrō*que *dēcōri.* Virg. *Ægrescit* mēdendo. Id. *Cornibus tauri, apri* dentibus, morsu *leōnes se* tūlantur. Cic. *Cæsus est virgis.* Id. *Trabs saucia* secūri. Ovid. For the ablative of the means after verbs of *filling,* etc., see § 249, I.

Rem. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per,* or by the ablative *ŏpĕrā* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meā, tuā, suā, ŏpĕrā,* which are equivalent to *per me, per te, per se,* and denote both good and bad services. *Bĕnĕfĭcio meo,* etc., is used of good results only; as, *Bĕnĕfĭcio meo patres sunt.* Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus silvas publicas dēpŏpŭlātus ĕrat.* Cic.— When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppidum cēpit,* but *per vim ei bŏna ērĭpuit.*

Rem. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Confĭcĕre cervum săgittis; glădio ălĭquem vulnĕrāre; trā-jĭcĕre pectus ferro.*

§ 248.

The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab;* as,

> (In the active voice,) *Clōdius me dĭlĭgit,* Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) A Clōdio *dĭlĭgor,* I am loved by Clodius. *Laudātur ab his, culpātur ab* illis. Hor.

Remark 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Prŏbĭtas laudātur,* scil. *ab hŏmĭnĭbus.* Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur.* Virg. *Tōto certātum est cor-pŏre regni.* Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in omni gĕnĕre scĕlĕrum vŏlutentur,* scil. *a se.* Cic.

Rem. 2. *Neuter* verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab;* as,

> *M. Marcellus pĕriit ab* Annĭbăle, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir ab hoste cădat.* Ovid.

Rem. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec* conjŭge *captus.* Ovid. *Cŏlitur linĭgĕrā turbā.* Id. *Pēreat meis excīsus* Argīvis. Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *dus,* see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary* agent of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb, is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument; as, *Maximo dŏlōre confĭcior.* Cic. *Frangi* cŭpĭdĭtāte. Id. *Æăcĭdæ tēlo jăcet* Hector. Virg.

NOTE. The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab*; as, A *võluptātibus díséri.* Cic. A *nātūrā dátum hõmini vivendi curriculum.* Id. *Vinci* a *voluptāte.* Id. *Victus* a *lābore.* Id.

§ **249.** I. A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to *affect* in any way, to *fill, furnish, load, array, equip, endow, adorn, reward, enrich,* and many others.

REMARK 1. This rule includes such verbs as *affício, aspergo, conspergo, inspergo, respergo, compleo, expleo, impleo, oppleo, repleo, suppleo, cúmúlo, farcio, réfercio, sátio, exsatio, sátúro, stípo, constípo, õbruo, õnéro, augeo, induo, vestio, armo, orno, circumdo, circumfundo, macto, lõcúplēto, instruo, imbuo, dõno, impertio, rēmúnéror, honesto, hõnõro,* etc.; as,

Terrōre implétur Africa, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruxēre épúlis mensas,* They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut éjus ánimum his opiniōnibus imbuas,* That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Nāves õnérant áuro,* They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cúmúlat altāria dõnis,* He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se grāmĭne vestit,* The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Mollibus ornābat cornua sertis.* Id. *Multo cibo et põtiōne complēti.* Cic. *Libros puérílibus fābúlis réfercíre.* Id. *Sátiári dēlectātiōne non possum.* Id. *Hõmines sátúrāti hõnōribus.* Id. *Senectus stípida stúdiis júventūtis.* Id. *Me tanto hõnōre hõnestas.* Plaut. *Equis Africani lõcuplētāvit.* Colum. *Stúdium tuum nullā me nóvā võluptāte affécit.* Cic. *Terram nox õbruit umbris.* Lucr.

REM. 2. Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. The active verbs *induo, dõno, impertio, aspergo, inspergo, circumdo,* and *circumfundo,* instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Cui quum Dívĭnâra tūnícam indusset.* Cic. *Dõnāre mūnéra cívíbus.* In the earliest writers *dõno,* like *condõno,* has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

II. A noun denoting that in *accordance* with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Nostro mõre, According to our custom. Cic. *Instítúto suo Cæsar cõpias suas éduxit,* According to his practice. Cæs. *Id factum consílio meo,*—by my advice. Ter. *Pácem fécit his conditiónibus,*—on these conditions. Nep.

NOTE. The prepositions *de, ex, pro,* and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, *Neque est factúrus quidquam nisi* de meo consílio. Cic. *Ex consuētúdine áliquid fácére.* Plin. Ep. *Dõcet quidquid ágas, ágére* pro víribus. Cic. *Secundum nātūram vívĕre.* Id.

III. The ablative denoting *accompaniment,* is usually joined with *cum;* as,

Vágāmur égentes cum conjúgibus et líbéris, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sæpe admírāri sõleo cum hoc* C. Lælio. Id. *Júlium cum his ad te líteris misi.* Id. *Ingressus est cum gládio.* Id. *Rõmam véni cum febri.* Cum occāsu sõlis cõpias édúcere,*—as soon as the sun set.

REMARK. But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, *Ad castra Cæsáris omnibus cõpiis contendérunt.* Cæs. *Inde tõto exercítu proféctus.* Liv. *Eõdem décem nāvibus* C. Furius vénit. Liv. And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as, *Castra clāmōre invādunt.*

§ 250. 1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken; as,

Piĕtāte fīlius, consĭliis părens, In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Rēges nōmĭne māgis quam impĕrio,* Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *Oppĭdum nōmĭne Bibrax.* Cæs.—*Jūre pĕrītus,* Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxĭus ănĭmo,* Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pĕdĭbus æger,* Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crīne rŭber, nĭger ōre.* Mart. *Fronte lætus.* Tac. *Mājor nātu.* Cic. *Prūdentĭi non infĕrĭor, ūsu vēro etiam supĕrĭor.* Id. *Maxĭmus nātu.* Liv.—*Ănĭmo angi,* To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrĕmisco tōtā mente et omnĭbus artŭbus,* I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente,* Affected in mind, *i. e.* deprived of reason. Cic. *Altĕro ŏcŭlo căpĭtur.* Liv. *Ingĕnii laude flōruit.* Cic. *Pollēre nōbĭlĭtāte.* Tac. *Ănĭmōque et corpŏre torpet.* Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablative of limitation*, and denotes the relation expressed in English by 'in respect of,' 'in regard to,' 'as to,' or 'in.'— Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 213;—after verbs, § 220, 1. and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (3.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative; as,

Dŏmus plēna servis, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dīves agris,* Rich in land. Hor. *Fĕrax sæcŭlum bŏnis artĭbus.* Plin.—*Inops verbis,* Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba frātrĭbus,* Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Vidŭam arbŏrĭbus sŏlum.* Colum. *Nūdus agris.* Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 213, R. 3–5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative; as,

Scătentem bellŭis pontum, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs rĕdundat mīlĭtĭbus,* The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa ăbundat porco, hædo, agno, gallīnā, lacte, cāseo, melle.* Cic.—*Vĭrum qui pĕcūniā ĕgeat,* A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cārēre culpā,* To be free from fault. Id. *Mea ădŏlescentĭa indĭget illōrum bŏnā existĭmātĭōne.* Id. *Ăbundat audācĭā, consĭlio et rătĭōne dēfĭcĭtur.* Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *ăbundo, exŭbĕro, rĕdundo, scăteo, afflŭo, circumflŭo, diffŭo, supĕrflŭo, suppĕdĭto, văco, vĭgeo;—cāreo, ĕgeo, indĭgeo, văco, dēfĭcĭor, dēstĭtuor,* etc.

REM. 2. The *genitive*, instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *făcĕre* with *de;* as, *Quid de Tulliŏlā meā fĭet?* Cic.; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative; as, *Quid hoc hŏmĭne or huic hŏmĭni făcĭātis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescĭt quid făcĭat* auro,—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fĭat parvi pendis,* You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Sum* is occasionally used in the same manner; as, *Mĕtum cēpērunt quidnam se fātūrum esset,*—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive, free, debar, drive away, remove, depart,* and others which imply *separation.*

NOTE. The principal verbs of this class are *arceo, pello, dēpello, expello, abdīco, interdīco, dēfendo, dēturbo, dējicio, ējicio, absterreo, dēterreo, mŏveo, ămŏveo, dēmŏveo, rēmŏveo, sēcerno, prōhĭbeo, sēpăro, exclūdo, interclūdo, ăbeo, exeo, cēdo, dēcēdo, discēdo, dēsisto, ēvādo, abstineo, spŏlio, prīvo, orbo, lībero, expēdio, laxo, nūdo, solvo, exsolvo, exŏnĕro, lēvo, purgo,* to which may be added the adjectives *lībĕr, immūnis, pūrus, văcuus,* and *ăliēnus;* as,

Nūdantur arbŏres fōliis, The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me lībĕra mētu,* Free me from this fear. Ter. *Tūne eam phĭlŏsŏphiam sĕquĕre, quæ spŏliat nos jūdĭcio, prīvat apprŏbātiōne,* orbat sensĭbus? Cic. *Sŏlvit se Teucria luctu.* Virg. *Te illis sēdĭbus arcēbit.* Cic. *Q. Varium pellĕre possessiōnĭbus cōnātus est.* Id. *Omnes trĭbu rēmōti.* Liv. *Lĕvāre se ære aliēno.* Cic. *Me lĕves chŏri sēcernunt pŏpŭlo.* Hor. *Ănĭmus omni lībĕr cūrā et angōre.* Cic. *Utrumque hŏmĭne aliēnissĭmum.* Cic. When *aliēnus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes the ablative with *ab,* or rarely the dative; as, *Id dīcit, quod illi causæ maxĭme est aliēnum.* Id.   In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the genitive; as, *Quis aliēnum pŭtet ējus esse dignĭtātis?* Id.—*Alius* too, in analogy with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Nēve pŭtes ălium săpiĕnte bŏnōque beātum.* Hor.; but this may also be referred to the ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

REMARK 1. Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less frequently followed by *ab, de,* or *ex,* with the ablative *of the thing,* and always by *ab* with the ablative *of the person;* as, *Tu Jŭpĭter, hunc* a tuis āris *arcēbis.* Cic. *Præsĭdium* ex arce *pĕpŭlērunt.* Nep. *Aquam* de agro *pellĕre.* Plin. *Ex ingrātā* cīvĭtāte *cēdĕre.* Cic. *Arcem* ab incendio *lībērāvit.* Id. *Solvĕre bellnum* ex cătēnis. Auct. ad Her.—*Sēdes rēmōtas* a Germānis. Cæs. *Se* ab Etruscis *sēcernĕre.* Liv.

REM. 2. *Arceo,* in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2., and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Plāgamque sĕdēre cēdendo arcēbat.* Ovid.—*Prŏhĭbeo* and *dēfendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be defended, with the ablative of the thing to be warded off—or the reverse—*ălĭquem* or *ălĭquid* a *pĕrīcŭlo,* or *pĕrīcŭlum ab ălĭquo.* They are also sometimes construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2, and sometimes with infinitive or subjunctive clauses. *Prŏhĭbeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, *Id* te *Jŭpĭter prŏhĭbessit.* Plaut.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Captæ prŏhĭbēre Pœnos* aquĭlæ. Sil.—*Interdīco* takes the person either in the accusative or the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *ălĭquem* or *ălĭcui* ălĭquā re; as, *Quibus quam äquā et igni interdīxisset.* Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive clause with *ne,* and more rarely with *ut,* sometimes follows *interdīco.*—*Absum,* in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab,* and sometimes the dative; as, *Curtæ nescio quid semper abest* rei. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abdīco* takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abdĭcāre se* măgistrātu. Cic. *Abdĭcāre* măgistrātum. Sall. In Plautus, *circumdūco,* to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclūdo,* instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *Itĭnĕrum angustiæ* multĭtūdĭni fŭgam *interclūsērant.* Cæs.; and, instead of the ablative of the thing, a subjunctive clause with *quōmĭnus* occurs: *Interclūdor dŏlōre, quōmĭnus ad* te *plūra scribam.* Cic.

REM. 3. Verbs which signify to *distinguish,* to *differ,* and to *disagree,* are generally construed with *ab,* but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the ablative alone.

NOTE. Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo, discerno, sēcerno, diffĕro, discrĕpo, dissĭdeo, disto, dissentio, discordo, ăbhorreo, ăliēno,* and *ăbălĭēno.*—*Dissentio, dissĭdeo, discrĕpo,* and *discordo* are construed also with *cum.*—The verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Distat* inf īdo scurræ *amīcus.* Hor., and in like manner the adjective *dīversus;* as, *Nĭhil est tam Lўsiæ dīversum, quam* Isocrătes. Quint.

ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The price or value of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive; as,

Quum te trécentis tálentis régi Cotto vendidisse, When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. Vendidit hic auro patriam, This one sold his country for gold. Virg. Cibus úno asse vénális. Plin. Constitit quádringentis millibus. Varr. Diénis in diem assibus ánimum et corpus (militum) æstimári. Tac. Léri mómento æstimáre. Cæs. Istuc verbum vile est viginti mínis. Plaut. Asse cárum est. Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) æstímo, dúco, fácio, fío, hábeo, pendo, púto, députo, taxo: (2) émo, mertor, vendo, do, véneo, sto, consto, presto, conduco, lóvo, váleo, luo, and líceo.—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid; as, Láror quádrante. Triginta millibus Gelius hábitat. Cic. Vix drachmis est obsónatus décem. Ter. Dóceo tálento, etc. So esse in the sense 'to be worth'; as, Sextante sal in Itália érat.

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in a general or indefinite manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective; as, magno, permagno, parvo, tantúlo, plúre, mínimo, plúrimo, vili, vilióri, vilissimo, nímio, etc.; as, Plúre vénit. Cic. Conduxit non magno dómum. Id. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as prétio, ære, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, Parvo prétio ea vendidisse. Cic.—The adverbs béne, pulchre, recte, mâle, câre, etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price; as, Béne émère; recte vendére; optime vendére, etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used váleo with the accusative; as, Dénárii dieti, quod dénos æris válébant.

REM. 5. Múto and its compounds, commúto and permúto, are commonly construed like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative; as, Chaóniam glandem pingui mútavit arísta. Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the ablative; as, Cur valle permútem Sabiná diritias óperósiores? Why should I exchange my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction cum is joined with the ablative.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the time at or within which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Die quinto décessit, He died on the fifth day. Nep. Hoc témpore, At this time. Cic. Tertiá vigiliá éruptiónem fécérunt, They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. Ut hiéme nárigés, That you should sail in the winter. Cic. Próximo triennio omnes gentes subégit. Nep. Agámemnon cum úniversá Græciá vix décem annis únam cépit urbem. Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by interdiu or die; 'by night,' by noctu or nocte; and 'in the evening,' by respére or vespéri; see § 82, Exc. 5, (a.) Lúdis is used for in tempóre lúdórum; and Sáturnálibus, Látinis, gládiátóribus, for ludis Sáturnálibus, etc. Other nouns not properly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or without in, as initio, principio, adventu and discessu áliójus, cómitiis, túmultu, bello, páce, etc.; or in initio, etc. But bello is more common without in, if it is

joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Pūnĭco sĕcundo*, *bello Lătīnō-rum*; and so, also, *pugnā Cannensi*. So we say *in pŭĕrĭtĭē*, but omit *in* with an adjective; as, *extrēmā pŭĕrĭtĭā*. *In* is very rarely used with nouns express-ing a certain space of time; as, *annus*, *dies*, *hŏra*, etc., for the purpose of de-noting the time of an event. *In tempŏre* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempŏre* alone is used, and *tempŏre* in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempŏri* or *tempĕri*, whose comparative is *tempĕrĭus*.

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative.—(*a*) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these great ways; *post tres annos*, *tribus annis post*; *post tertĭum annum*, *tertĭo anno post*; *tres post annos*, *tribus post annis*; *tertĭum post annum*, *tertĭo post anno.*

(*b.*) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis post dē-cemvĭros*. Cic. So *Consul factus est annis post Rōmam condĭtam trĕcentis duō-dēnōnăgintā.*

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis octo*; *post paucis diēbus*; and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post alĭquanto*; *ante paulo.*

NOTE 3. *Quam* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vēnĕrat*; *post tres annos quam vēnĕrat*; *tertĭo anno postquam vēnĕrat*; *post annum tertĭum quam vēnĕrat*, etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertĭo anno quam vēnĕrat.*

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam*, 'after,' we may use *ex quo*, *quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Ipse octo diēbus*, *quibus has lĭtĕras dā-bam*, *cum Lĕpĭdi cŏpĭas me conjungam*; i. e. in eight days *after* the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. Fam. *Mors Sex. Roscii quătrĭduo*, *quo is occisus est*, *Chrȳsŏgŏno nuntĭātur*,—four days *after* he had been killed. Cic. *Quem trĭduo*, *quum has dăbam lĭtĕras*, *exspectābam*,—three days *after* the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diēbus paucis*, *quibus hæc acta sunt*, *mŏrĭtur.* Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *ăbhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Quæstor fuisti ăbhinc annos quătuordĕcim.* Cic. *Cŏmĭtĭis jam ăbhinc trĭginta diēbus hăbĭtis.* Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic*; as, *ante hos sex menses mălēdixisti mĭhĭ*,—six months ago. Phæd. *Ante* is sometimes used in-stead of *ăbhinc*; and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille*; as, *Paucis his diēbus*, or *paucis illis diēbus*,—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the neuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Vēnit id tempŏris.* Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id dĭēi.* Gell. See § 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (*a.*) The time *at* or *within* which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de*, with the ablative; as, *De tertĭā vigĭlĭā ad hostes contendit*,—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut jŭgŭlent hŏmĭnes surgunt de nocte lătrōnes.* Hor. So, also, with *sub*; as, *Ne sub ĭpsā profectĭōne milites oppĭ-dum irrumpĕrent*,—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Rōmān-ōrum*, While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(*b.*) The time *within* which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *intra* with the accusative; as, *Dimĭdĭam partem nātĭōnum sŭbēgit intra vigĭnti dies.* Plaut. *Intra dĕcĭmum dĭem*, *quam Phĕras vēnĕrat*, In less than ten days after... Liv.

22

REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (*a*) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis in die sāturum fīeri; vix ter in anno nuntium audīre*; and (*b*), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in puerĭtiā, ădŏlescentiā, jŭventūte, sĕnectūte*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer, ădŏlescens, jŭvĕnis, sĕnex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *Cn. Pompeius, ădŏlescens se et pătrem consĭlio servāvit.*—So, also, adjectives ending in *ēnārius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicĕro sexāgēnārius.*

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ **254.** The name of a town *in which* any thing is said *to be*, or *to be done*, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Alexander Bābÿlōne *est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic.　*Intĕrĕrit multum*—*Thēbis nūtrītus an* Argis,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor.　*Nātus* Tibŭre *vel* Gabiis. Id.

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rūre*, or more commonly by *rūri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater filium* rūri *habĭtāre jussit.* Cic. With an adjective only *rūre* is used; as, *Interdum nūgāris rūre pāterno.* Hor. Cf. § 221, N.

REM. 2. (*a*.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, In Philippis *quĭdam nunciāvit.* Suet.

(*b*.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dŏmus* and *hŭmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrā mărique*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *lŏco* and *lŏcis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc lŏco, multis lŏcis*, etc.—*Lĭbro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc, prīmo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *tōto, tōtā, tōtis*, is generally used without *in*; as, Urbe tōtā *gĕmitus fit.* Cic.　Tōtā Asiā *vāgātur.* Id.　Tōto māri. Id. But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctā Asiā.* Liv.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Iphĭcrătes* in Thrāciā *vixit, Chares* in Sigĕo. Nep.　*Rūre ĕgo vīventem, tu dĭcis* in urbe *beātum.* Hor.　Aio hoc fĭĕri *in* Græciā. Plaut.　In Bactriānis Sogdiānisque *urbes condĭdit.* Lücus in urbe *fuit.* Virg. But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Milĭtes stātīvis castris habēbat.* Sall.　*Magnis in laudĭbus fuit* tōtā Græciā. Nep.　*Pŏpŭli sensus maxĭme* theātro *et* spectācŭlis *perspectus est.* Cic.　*Pompeius se* oppĭdo *tĕnet.* Id.　In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nāvĭta* puppe *sēdens.* Ovid.　*Ibam forte* Viā Sacrā. Hor.　Silvisque agrīsque viisᵢne *corpora fœda jăcent.* Ovid.　*Mĕdio* alveo *concursum est.* Liv.—*Fŏris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fŏris cœnat.* Cic. Cf. § 237, R. 5, (*c*.)

§ **255.** 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

Brundísio *prófecti súmus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Diónýsius tyrannus* Syrácúsis *expulsus Córinthi púeros dócébat.* Id. *Démarátus Tarquínios* Córintho *fúgit.* Id. *Accépi tuas literas dátas* Plácentiá. Id. *Intérim* Rómá *per literas certíor fit;* scil. *dátas* or *missus.* Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, Narbóne *réditus.* Id.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *dómo, húmo,* and *rúre* or *rúri,* are used, like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

Dómo *prófectus,* Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit* húmo *júvenis,* The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. Rúre *huc advénit.* Ter. Si rúri *vénit.* Id. Virgil uses *dómo* with *unde*; as, *Qui génus? unde dómo?* and Livy, instead of *dómo abésse,* has *esse ab dómo.* With an adjective, *rúre,* and not *rúri,* must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *dómus* and *húmus,* when answering the question 'whence?' *ab, ex,* or *de,* is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandríá prófectus.* Cic. *Ex dómo.* Id. *De vitíférá vénisse* Viennâ. Mart. *Ab húmo.* Virg.

REM. 3. *(a.)* With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab, ex,* or *de,* is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu præmísit.* Plaut. Ex Asiá *transit in Európam.* Curt. Ex castris *prófiscuntur.* Cæs. De Pomptíno, scil. prædio. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, Ex Médis *ad adversáriórum líbernácúla pervénit.* Nep.

(b.) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litéræ* Mácédóniá *allátæ.* Liv. *Classis* Cypro *advénit.* Curt. *Cessissent* lóco. Liv. *Ni cite vicis et castellis proxímis subventum fóret.* Liv. *Ite* sacris, *próperáte* sacris, *laurumque* cápíllis *pónite.* Ovid. *Fluíbus omnes próstiluére suis.* Virg. *Advéntu ingentes montíbus ornos.* Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by, through,* or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per*; but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

Per Thébas *iter fécit.* Nep. *Exercítum* vádo *transdúcit.* Cæs. His pontíbus *pabúlátum mittébat.* Id. *Tribúni mílitum* portá Collíná *urbem intrávére sub signis,* médiáque urbe *agmine in Arentínum pergunt.* Liv. *Légíones* Penníinis Cottíánis-que Alpibus, *pars* monte Graio, *tráducuntur.* Tac. *Équites* viá brévíóre *præmísi.* Cic.

ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ **256.** 1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam, atque,* etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

Nihil est virtúte *formósius,* Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis* C. Lælio *cómíor?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the *subject* of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

Súdere pulchríor ille est, *tu lévíor* cortice. Hor. *Vílius argentum est* auro, vir-tútíbus *aurum.* Id. *Tullus Hostílius férócíor* Rómúlo *fuit.* Liv. Lacrímá *nihil cítius árescit.* Cic. *Quid mágis est dúrum* saxo, *quid mollíus* undá? Ovid. Hoc *némo fuit mínus inéptus.* Ter. *Albánum, Mæcénas, sive* Fálernum *te mágis* ap-pósitis *delectat.* Hor.

Rem. 2. An object with which a person or thing addressed is compared, is also put in the ablative; as, *O fons Bandúsiæ splendidior vitro!* Hor.

Rem. 3. Sometimes the person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, instead of following it in the ablative, is connected with it by *quam*, and it is then put in the same case as the subject, whether in the nominative or the accusative; as, *Orátio quam hábitus fuit miserábilior.* Cic. *Affirmo nullam esse laudem amplórem quam eam.* Id. So, also, when an ablative in the case absolute takes the place of the subject; as, *Eódem* (scil. *dúce*) *plúra*, quam grégário mílite, *tólerante.* Tac.

Rem. 4. If the person or thing which is compared with any object is neither the subject of the sentence nor the person addressed, *quam* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is then put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the object with which it is compared; as, *Meliórem*, quam ego sum, *suppóno tíbi.* Phant. *Ego hóminem callidiórem vidi néminem* quam Phormiónem. Ter. *Adventus hóstium fuit ágris*, quam urbi *terribílior.* Liv. *Omnes fontes* æstáte, quam hiéme, *sunt gélidíores.* Plin. *Themístoclis nómen*, quam Sólonis, *est illústrius.* Cic.—The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multo majóri*, quam Africánus fuit, *me non multo minórem quam* Lælium *fácile et in repúblicá et in amícitiá adjunctum esse pátiare.* Cic.

Rem. 5. (*a*.) The person or thing with which the *object* of an active verb is compared, though usually connected with it by *quam*, (R. 4,) is sometimes put in the ablative, especially in the poets, and frequently also even in prose, if the object is a pronoun, particularly a relative pronoun; as, *Attálo*, quo *grátiórem inimícum non hábui, sorórem dédit*, He gave his sister to Attalus, *than whom*, etc. Curt. *Hoc nihil grátius fácere pótes.* Cic. *Causam énim suscepísti antiquiórem memóriá tuá.* Id. *Exégi mónumentum ære perénnius.* Hor. *Cur óleam sánguine vipérino cautius vitat?* Id. *Quid prius dicam sólitis parentis* laudibus? Id. *Májóra* víribus *audes.* Virg. *Nullam sacrá vite prius sérĕris arbórem.* Hor. *Nullos his mallem lúdos spectasse.* Id. § 178, 3.

(*b*.) The ablative instead of *quam* is never used with any other oblique case except the accusative, but *quam* is sometimes found, even where the ablative might have been used; as, *Mélior tútiorque est certa pax* quam *speráta victória.* Liv. After *quam*, if the verb cannot be supplied from the preceding sentence, *est*, *fuit*, etc., must be added; as, *Hæc verba sunt M. Varrónis*, quam fuit *Claudius, doctióris.* Gell. *Drúsum Germánicum minórem nútu*, quam *ipse* érat, *frátrem ámásit.* Sen.

Rem. 6. (*a*.) *Minus*, *plus*, and *amplius* with numerals, and with other words denoting a certain measure or a certain portion of a thing, are used either with or without *quam*, generally as indeclinable words, without influence upon the construction, but merely to modify the number; as, *Non plus quam quátuor millia effúgérunt*, not *effúgit.* Liv. *Pictóres antiqui non sunt úsi plus quam quátuor colóribus*, not *plúribus.* Cic.

(*b*.) *Quam* is frequently omitted with all cases; as, *Minus duo millia hóminum ex tanto exercitu effúgérunt.* Liv. *Milites Rómáni sæpe plus dimidiáti mensis cibáriá ferébant.* Cic. *Quam plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv. *Sédecim non amplius eo anno légiónibus defensum império est.* Id.

(*c*.) These comparatives, as in the preceding example, are sometimes inserted between the numeral and its substantive, and sometimes, when joined with a negative, they follow both, as a sort of apposition; as, *Quinque millia armátórum, non amplius, rélictum érat præsídium*,—a garrison of five thousand soldiers, not more. Liv. So, also, *longius; Cæsar certior est factus, magnas Gallórum cópias non longius millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs. See § 236.

(*d*.) The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies trigínta aut plus eo in náví fui.* Ter. *Triennio amplius.* Cic. *Horá amplius mólíebantur.* Id. *Ne longius tríduo ab castris absit.* Cæs. *Apud Suévos non longius anno rémánére úno in lóco incólendi causá licet.* Id. *Quam initio non amplius* duóbus míllibus *hábuisset.* Sall.

Rem. 7. *Quam* is in like manner sometimes omitted, without a change of case, after *major, minor,* and some other comparatives; as, *Obsides ne minóres octōnum dēnum annōrum neu majóres* quīnum quādrāgēnum,.... of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv. *Ex urbāno exercĭtu, qui minóres quīnque et trīginta annis ērant, in nāres impositi sunt.* The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, R. 6. *Longius ab urbe mille passuum.* Liv. *Annos nātas mägis quädräginta.* Cic.

Rem. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or a clause, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo mäjus* quam ut fǎveat ōrātōri audĭtor. Cic.

Rem. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opīnĭōne, spe, ex-spectātiōne, fĭde,—dicto, sŏlĭto,—æquo, crēdĭbĭli, necessāriō, vēro, and justo,*—are used in a peculiar manner in the ablative after comparatives; as, *Opīnĭōne celērius ventūrus esse dicĭtur,*—sooner than is expected. Cæs. *Dicto citĭus tumĭda æquŏra plācat,* Quicker than the word was spoken. Virg. *Injūrias grăvius æquo habēre.* Sall.

(*a.*) These ablatives supply the place of a clause; thus, *grăvius æquo* is equivalent to *grăvius quam quod æquum est.* They are often omitted; as, *The-mistŏcles lībērius vīvēbat,* scil. *æquo.* Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too, quite, or rather,* as in the above example—'He lived too freely,' or 'rather freely.' *Vŏluptas quam mäjor est atque longior, omne ănĭmi lūmen exstinguit,*—when it is too great, and of too long continuance. Cic. So *tristior,* scil. *sŏlĭto,* rather sad.

(*b.*) The English word 'still,' joined with comparatives, is expressed by *ĕtiam* or *vel,* and only in later prose writers by *ădhuc;* as, *Ut in corpŏrĭbus mag-ne dissĭmĭlĭtūdĭnes sunt, sic in ănĭmis exsistunt mäjōres ĕtiam vărĭĕtātes.* Cic.

Rem. 10. (*a.*) With *infĕrĭor,* the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullā arte* cuiquam *infĕrĭor.* Sall. The ablative is also found; as, *Ut hūmānos cāsus virtūte infĕrĭōres pǔtes.* Cic. But usually *infĕrĭor* is followed by *quam;* as, *Tīmŏtheus bellī laude non infĕrĭor fǔit,* quam păter. Cic. *Grātĭā non infĕrĭor,* quam qui umquam fǔērunt amplissĭmi. Id.

(*b.*) *Quālis,* 'such as,' with a comparative, occurs poetically instead of the relative pronoun in the ablative; as, *Nardo perunctum,* quālĕ *non perfectĭus meæ lăbŏrārint mănus;* instead of *quo.* Hor. Epod. 5, 59. *Anĭmæ quāles nēque candĭdiōres terra tŭlit;* for *quĭbus.* Id. Sat. 1, 5, 41.

Rem. 11. *Quam pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prælium atrōcĭus* quam pro *nŭmĕro pugnantĭum,* The battle was more severe than was proportionate to the number of the combatants. Liv. *Minor,* quam pro *tŭmultu, cædes.* Tac.

Rem. 12. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are put in the comparative; as, *Triumphus clārior quam grātĭor,* A tri-umph more famous than accustomed. Liv. *Fortius quam fēlĭcius bellum gessē-runt.* So, also, when the comparative is formed by means of *măgis;* as, *Măgis audacter quam părāte ad dicendum vēnĭēbat.* Cic.—Tacitus uses the positive in one part of the proposition; as, *Spĕcĭem excelsæ glōrĭæ vĕhĕmentĭus quam caute appĕtēbat;* or even in both; as, *Clāris mäjōrĭbus quam vĕtustis.*

Rem. 13. (*a.*) *Pŏtĭus* and *măgis* are sometimes joined pleonastically with *nolle* and *præstāre,* and also with comparatives; as, *Ab omnĭbus se dēsertos pŏ-tĭus quam abs te dēfensos esse* mālunt. Cic. *Qui măgis vēre vincĕre quam diu impĕrāre* vellet. Liv. *Ut ēmŏri pŏtĭus quam servīre* præstāret. Cic. *Mĭhi quāvis fŭga pŏtĭus quam ulla prōvincia esset* optātĭor. Id. *Quis măgis queat esse beā-tĭor?* Virg.

(*b.*) So, also, the prepositions *præ, ante, præter,* and *supra,* are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus præ cētēris fortĭor exsurgǐt,* Apul. *Scĕlĕre ante alĭos immānĭor omnes.* Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, *Ante alĭos cārissĭmus.* Nep. As these prepositions, when joined with the positive, denote comparison, they seem in such examples to be redundant. See § 127.

Rem. 14. *Alius* is sometimes in poetry treated as a comparative, and construed with the ablative instead of *atque* with the nominative or accusative; as, *Nēve pūtes ālium săpiente bŏnōque beātum.* Hor. *Alius Lȳsippo.* Id. But compare § 251, N.

Rem. 15. By the poets *ac* and *atque* are sometimes used instead of *quam* after comparatives; as, *Quam continatior ulem in vitiis, tanto lēvius miser ac prior ille, qui,* etc. Hor. *Arctius atque hĕdērā prŏcēra adstringitur ilex.* Id.

Rem. 16. The *degree of difference* between objects compared is expressed by the ablative :—

(1.) Of substantives; as, *Minor ūno mense,* Younger by one month. Hor. Sesquĭpēde *quam tu longior,* Taller than you by a foot and a half. Plaut. *Hibernia* dimidio *minor quam Britannia.* Cæs. Dimidio *minōris constābit,* It will cost less by half. Cic. *Quam mŏlestum est ūno* dĭgito *plus hăbēre !....*to have one finger more, i. e. than we have, to have six fingers. Id.—but the expression is ambiguous, as it might mean 'to have more than one finger.' *Sŭpĕrat* căpĭte *et* cervicibus *altis.* Virg.

(2.) Of neuter adjectives of quantity and neuter pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, parvo, paulo, nimio, ălĭquanto, tantŭlo, altĕro tanto* (twice as much); as, Multo *doctior es patre,* Thou art (by) much more learned than thy father. The relative and demonstrative words, *quanto—tanto, quo—eo,* or *quo—hoc,* signifying 'by how much—by so much,' are often to be translated by an emphatic *the;* as, Quanto *sŭmus sŭpĕriōres,* tanto *nos submissius gĕrāmus,* The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves: lit. by how much—by so much—. Cic. Eo *grăvior est dolor,* quo *culpa est māior.* Id. But the relative word generally precedes the demonstrative; as, Quo *diffĭcilius,* hoc *præclārius.* Id. Poetically, also, *quam măgis—tam măgis* are used instead of *quanto măgis—tanto măgis.* Virg. Æn. 7, 787: and *quam măgis—tanto măgis.* Lucr. 6, 459.—*Iter* multo *făcilius,*— much easier. Cæs. *Parvo brĕvius,* A little shorter. Plin. Eo *măgis,* The more. Cic. Eo *mĭnus.* Id. Istoc *măgis vĭpŭlibis,* So much the more. Plaut. *Via* altĕro tanto *longior,*—as long again. Nep. Multo *id maximum fŭit.* Liv.

(3.) The ablative of degree is joined not only with comparatives but with verbs which contain the idea of comparison; as, *mălo, præsto, sŭpĕro, excello, antĕcello, antĕcēdo,* and others compounded with *ante;* and also with *ante* and *post,* in the sense of 'earlier' and 'later'; as, *Multo præstat.* Sall. *Post paulo,* A little after. Id. *Multo ante lūcis advĕntum,* Long before—. Id. *Multis partibus* is equivalent to *multo;* as, *Nŭmĕro multis partibus esset infĕrior.* Cæs.

Note. The accusatives *multum, tantum, quantum,* and *ălĭquantum,* are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, Aliquantum *est ad rem ăvidior.* Ter. Multum *imprŏbiōres sunt.* Plaut. Quantum *dŏmo infĕrior,* tantum *glŏriā sŭpĕrior ēvāsit.* Val. Max. Cf. § 232, (3.)—So *longe,* 'far,' is frequently used for *multo;* as, Longe *mĕlior.* Virg. Longe *et* multum *antĕcellĕre.* Cic. So, *pars pĕdis* sesqui *māior,*—longer by one half. Id.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ **257.**   A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute,* to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

Pўthăgŏras, Tarquĭnio regnante, *in Ităliam vēnit,* Pythagoras came into Italy, in the reign of Tarquin. Cic. *Lŭpus,* stĭmŭlante fāme, *captat ŏvile,* Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Mīlites,* pĕcŏre *e longinquiŏribus vīcis* ădacto, *extrēmam fāmem sustentābant.* Cæs. *Hac* ŏrātione *hăbĭtā, concilium dīmisit.* Id. *Galli,* re cognĭtā, *obsidiōnem rĕlinquunt.* Id. Virtūte exceptā, *nihil ămīcitiā præstābilius pŭtetis.* Cic.

Note 1. The Latin ablative absolute may be expressed in English by a similar construction, but it is commonly better to translate it by a clause connected by *when, since, while, although, after, as*, etc., or by a verbal substantive; as, *Te adjuvante*, With thy assistance. *Non—nisi te adjuvante*, Only with thy assistance, or not without thy assistance. *Te non adjuvante*, Without thy assistance. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.)

Remark 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause connected by *quum, si, etsi, quamquam, quamvis*, etc.

Thus, for *Tarquinio regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquinius regnabat* might be used; for *hac oratione habita :—quum hanc orationem habuisset*, or *quum haec oratio habita esset,—concilium dimisit*. The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

Rem. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as,

Cæsāre ventūro, *Phosphŏre, redde diem.* Mart. Irruptūris *tam infestis* nātiōnĭbus. Liv. *Quum concio plausum, meo nōmine recĭtando, dēdisset,*—when my name was pronounced. Cic. *Quum immŏlandā Iphĭgĕniā tristis Calchas esset.* Id. *Quis est ēnim, qui, nullis officii præceptis trădendis, philŏsŏphum se audeat dĭcĕre*—without propounding any rules of duty. Cic. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.) and R. 9.

Rem. 3. (a.) A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause. Cf. § 274, 3, (a.)

(b.) Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle, especially with a substantive pronoun referring to some word in the leading clause; as, Se audiente, *scribit Thŭcydides.* Cic. *Lēgio ex castris Varrōnis,* adstante *et inspectante ipso, signa sustŭlit.* Cæs. Me dūce, *ad hunc rŏti finem,* me milite, *vēni.* Ovid. So *M. Porcius Cāto,* vivo quŏque *Scĭpiōne, allātrāre ējus magnitūdĭnem sŏlitus ĕrat.* Liv.

Note 2. Two participles must not be put together in the ablative absolute agreeing with the same noun. Thus, we may say *Porcia sæpe marītum cogĭtantem invenĕrat,* but not, *Porcia marĭto cogĭtante invento.*

Note 3. Instead of the ablative absolute denoting *a cause,* an accusative with *ob* or *propter* occurs in Livy and in later writers; as, *Cānōpum condidēre Spartāni, ob sepultum illic* rectōrem nāvis *Cānōpum.* Tac. *Decemvĭri libros Sĭbyllīnos inspĭcĕre jussi sunt propter territos hŏmines nŏvis prŏdĭgiis.* Liv.

Rem. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the participle, is the same as that of the principal verb. The perfect participle and the future in *rus,* denote respectively an action as prior or subsequent to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pȳthăgŏras,* Tarquinio regnante, *in Ităliam vēnit,* Pythagoras came into Italy *during the reign of Tarquinius.* Eā cognĭtā, *obsidiōnem rĕlinquunt,* The Gauls, *having learned the fact,* abandon the siege. So, *Rex ăpum non nisi* migratūro exāmĭne *fŏras prōcēdit,* The king-bee does not go abroad, except *when a swarm is about to emigrate.* Plin.

Note 4. *Non prius quam, non nisi, ut, vĕlut,* and *tamquam,* are sometimes joined with the participle; as, *Tibērius excessum Augusti* non prius *pălam fēcit,* quam *Agrippā jŭvĕne interēmpto,* —not until. Suet. *Galli læti,* ut *explōrātā victōriā, ad castra Rōmānōrum pergunt.* Cæs. *Antiŏchus,* tamquam *non transitūris in Asiam Rōmānis,* etc. Liv.

REM. 5. (a.) The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice.

Thus, for Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces,' we find, 'Cæsar, ĕquitātu præmisso, subsĕquĕbātur omnibus cōpiis.'

(b.) As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and the perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, since the agent with *a* or *ab* is generally not expressed with this participle in the ablative absolute, as it is with other parts of the passive voice. Thus, *Cæsar, his dictis, concilium dimīsit,* might be rendered, 'Cæsar, *having said this,* or *this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly.'

(c.) As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar, hæc locūtus, concilium dimīsit.* In the following example, both constructions are united: *Ităque....agros Remōrum dēpŏpŭlāti, omnibus vīcis, ædifīciisque incensis.* Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and a passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Ortā lūce.* Cæs. *Vel exstincto vel ēlapso ănĭmo, nullum resīdēre sensum.* Cic. *Tam multis glōriam ējus ădeptis.* Plin. *Litĕras ad exercitus, tamquam ădepto principātu, mīsit.* Tac.

REM. 7. (a.) As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle ; as,

Quid, ădŏlescentŭlo dūce, effĭcĕre possent, What they could do under the guidance of a youth. Cæs. *Me suāsōre atque impulsōre, hoc factum,* By my advice and instigation. Plaut. *Hannĭbăle vīvo,* While Hannibal was living. Nep. *Invītā Minervā,* in opposition to one's genius. Cic. *Cælo sĕrēno,* when the weather is clear. Virg. *Me ignāro,* without my knowledge. Cic. With names of office, the concrete noun is commonly used in the ablative absolute, rather than the corresponding abstract with *in* to denote the time of an event; as, *Rōmam vēnit* Mārio *cōnsŭle,* He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

(b.) The nouns so used as predicates are by some grammarians considered as supplying the place of participles by expressing in themselves the action of a verb. Such are *dux, cŏmes, adjūtor* and *adjūtrix, auctor, testis, jūdex, interpres, măgister* and *măgistra, præceptor* and *præceptrix*; as, *dūce natūrā,* in the sense of *dūcente natūrā,* under the guidance of nature; *jūdĭce Pŏlȳbio,* according to the judgment of Polybius.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Nondum comperto quam in rēgiōnem vēnisset rex.* Liv. *Audĭto vēnisse nuncium.* Tac. *Vāle dicto.* Ovid. This construction, however, is confined to a few participles; as, *audīto, cognĭto, comperto, explōrāto, dēspērāto, nunciāto, dicto, ēdicto.* But the place of such participle is sometimes supplied by a neuter adjective in the ablative; as, *Incerto præ tĕnĕbris quid pĕtĕrent.* Liv. Cf. R. 7, (a.) *Haud cuiquam dŭbio* quin hostium essent. Id. *Juxta pĕrīcŭlōso* vēra an ficta prōmĕret. Tac.

REM. 9. (1.) The noun in the ablative, like the subject nominative, is sometimes wanting; (a) when it is contained in a preceding clause ; as, *Atticus Servīliam, Brūti mātrem, non mĭnus post mortem ējus, quam* flōrente, *cŏluit,* scil. eo,

i. e. Brūto. Nep. (b) When it is the general word for person or persons followed by a descriptive relative clause; as, *Hannibal Ibērum cōpias trājēcit*, *praemissis, qui Alpium transitus spĕcŭlārentur.* Liv. (c) When the participle in the neuter singular corresponds to the impersonal construction of neuter verbs in the passive voice; as, *In amnis transgressa, multum certāto, Bardesănes vĭcit.* Tac. *Mĭhi, errāto, nulla vĕnia, recte facto, exĭgua laus prōpōnĭtur.* Cic. *Quum, nondum pălam facto, vĭri mortuĭque prōmiscue complōrārentur.* Liv. *Nam jam ŏtāte eā sum, ut non siet, peccāto, mi ignosci æquum;* i. e. *si peccātum fuĕrit.* Ter. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)

(2.) So in descriptions of the weather; as, *Tranquillo*, scil. *mări*, the sea being tranquil. Liv. *Sĕrēno*, scil. *cælo*, the sky being clear. Ib. *Arānei sĕrēno texunt, nĭbĭlo texunt*,—in clear and in cloudy weather. Plin. Substantives when used thus are to be considered as ablatives of time; as, *Cŏmĭtiis, lūdis, Circensĭbus.* Suetonius has used *proscriptiōne* in the sense of 'during the proscription.' So *pāce et Principe.* Tac. Impĕrio *pŏpŭli Rōmāni.* Cæs.

REM. 10. This ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cæsar*, quamquam obsidiōne *Massiliæ* rĕtardante, *brĕvi tămen omnia sŭbēgit.* Suet. *Dēcemvĭri non ante, quam perlātis lēgibus, dēpŏsĭtūros impĕrium esse aiēbant.* Liv.

REM. 11. A predicate ablative is sometimes added to passive participles of *naming, choosing*, etc. § 210, (3.); as, *Hasdrŭbāle impĕrātōre suffecto.* Liv.

CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ **258.** Tenses, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes—*principal* and *historical.*

A. The principal tenses are, the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *two futures.*

B. The historical, which are likewise called the *preterite* tenses (§ 145, N. 2.), are the *imperfect*, the *historical perfect*, and the *pluperfect.*

I. In the connection of leading and dependent clauses, only tenses of the same class can, in general, be united with each other. Hence:—

1. A *principal* tense is followed by the *present* and *perfect definite*, and by the periphrastic form with *sim.* And:—

2. A *preterite* tense is followed by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and by the periphrastic form with *essem.*

NOTE. The periphrastic forms in each class supply the want of subjunctive futures in the regular conjugation.

The following examples will illustrate the preceding rules:—

(a.) In the first class. *Scio quid ăgas. Scio quid ēgĕris. Scio quid actūrus sis.*—*Audĭvi quid ăgas*, I have heard what you are doing. *Audĭvi quid ēgĕris. Audĭvi quid actūrus sis.*—*Audiam quid ăgas*, etc.—*Audivĕro quid ăgas*, etc.

(b.) In the second class. *Scĭēbam quid ăgĕres. Scĭēbam quid ēgisses. Scĭēbam quid actūrus esses.*—*Audĭvi quid ăgĕres*, I heard what you were doing. *Audĭvi quid ēgisses. Audĭvi quid actūrus esses.*—*Audivĕram quid ăgĕres*, etc.

The following may serve as additional examples in the first class; viz. of *principal tenses* depending on,

(1.) The PRESENT; as, *Non sum ita hĕbes, ut istuc* dīcam. Cic. *Quantum dŏlōrem* accēpĕrim, *tu existĭmāre* pŏtes. Id. *Nec* dŭbito *quin rĕdĭtus ējus rĕipūblĭcæ sălūtāris* fŭtūrus sit. Id.

(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Sátis prōvīsum est, ut ne quid ăgĕre pos-sint.* Id. *Quis músĭcis, quis huic stŭdĭo lĭtĕrārum se dēdĭdit, quin omnem illārum artĭum vim comprehendĕrit.* Id. *Dēfectĭōnes sōlis prædictæ sunt, quæ, quantæ, quando fūtūræ sint.* Id.

(3.) The FUTURES; as, *Sīc făcillĭme, quanta ōrātōrum sit, semperque fuĕrit paucĭtas, jūdicābit.* Id. *Ad quos dies rēdĭtūrus sim, scrībam ad te.* Id. *Si sciĕris aspĭdem lătēre uspĭam, et velle alĭquem imprūdentem sŭper eam assĭdĕre, cūjus mors tĭbi ēmŏlŭmentum factūra sit, imprŏbe fĕcĕris, nĭsi mŏnuĕris, ne assĭdeat.* Id.

The following, also, are additional examples in the second class, viz. of *preterite tenses* depending on,

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extĭmescēbam, ne quid turpĭter făcĕ-rem, vel jam effēcissem.* Cic. *Non ēnim dŭbĭtābam, quin eas lĭbenter lectūrus esses.* Id.

(2.) The HISTORICAL PERFECT; as, *Vēni in ējus villam ut libros inde prōme-rem.* Id. *Hæc quum essent nuntiāta, Vălĕrius classem extemplo ad ostium flŭmĭ-nis duxit.* Liv.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Păvor cēpĕrat mĭlĭtes, ne mortĭfĕrum esset vul-nus.* Liv. *Ego ex ipso audĭĕram, quam a te lĭbĕrālĭter essem factus.* Cic. *Non sătis mĭhi constĭtĕrat, cum ălĭquāne ănĭmi mei mŏlestĭā, an pŏtĭus lĭbenter te Athē-nis vīsūrus essem.* Id.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the present is used in narration for the historical perfect, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Lēgātos mit-tunt, ut pācem impetrārent.* Cæs.

(b.) The present is also sometimes followed by the perfect subjunctive in its historical sense; as, *Pandĭte nunc Hĕlĭcōna, deæ, cantusque mŏvēte, Qui bello excĭti rēges, quæ quemque sĕcūtæ* Complērint campos acies.* Virg.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is possible to conceive of it in its pro-gress, and not merely in its conclusion or result; and especially when the agent had an intention accompanying him from the beginning to the end of the action; as, *Fēci hoc, ut intelligĕres,* I have done this that you might under-stand; i. e. such was my intention from the beginning. *Sunt philŏsŏphi et fŭĕ-runt, qui omnino nullam hăbēre censērent hūmānārum rerum prŏcūrātiōnem deos.* Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The historical perfect is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action in-definite.

(b.) These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narra-tive of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *Factum est, ut plus quam collēgæ Miltiādes văluĕrit.* Nep.

(c.) The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the historical perfect, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, *Adeo nihil mĭsĕrĭti sunt, ut incursĭōnes făcĕrent et Vēios in ănĭmo hăbuĕrint oppugnāre.* Liv.

(d.) The historical perfect may even be followed by the present, when a general truth is to be expressed, and not merely one which is valid for the time indicated by the leading verb; as, *Antĭŏcho pācem pĕtenti ad priōres condĭtiōnes nihil addĭtum, Afrĭcāno prædĭcante, neque Rōmānis, si vincantur, ănĭmos mĭnui, nĕque, si vincant, secundĭs rēbus insŏlescĕre.* Just.

REM. 4. (a.) As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictōres quŏque eos peccāre dĭcēbat, qui non sentīrent, quid esset sătis.* Cic. *Ad te scripsi, te lĕvĭter accūsans in eo, quod de me ĭcto crēdĭdisses.* Id.

(*b.*) In like manner the tense of the subjunctive following the infinitive future is determined by the verb on which such infinitive depends; as, *Sol Phaëthonti filio* facturum *se* esse dixit *quicquid* optasset. Cic.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a principal or a preterite tense, according as it is used in the definite or in the historical sense; as, *Arbitrāmur nos eā præstitisse, quæ rátio et doctrīna præscripsērit.* Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in istā lōca vēnisse, úbi áliquid sópĕre vidērēre.* Id.

(*b.*) But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as, *Ita mihi videor et esse Deos, et quáles essent sátis* ostendisse. Cic.

II. Tenses belonging to different classes may be made dependent on each other, when the sense requires it.

(*a.*) Hence a present or perfect definite may follow a preterite, when the result of a past action extends to the present time; as, *Ardēbat autem Hortensius cúpĭdĭtāte dicendi sic, ut in nullo umquam flagrantius stúdium* vidērim; i. e. that up to this time I have never seen. Cic. And, on the other hand, a preterite may follow a present to express a continuing action in the past; as, *Scītōte oppĭdum esse in Siciliā nullum, quo in oppido non isti dēlecta múlier ad libídinem* esset: (*esset* here alludes to the whole period of Verres' prætorship.) Cic.

(*b.*) But without violating the rule which requires similar tenses to depend upon each other, the *hypothetical* imperfect subjunctive, may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, since the imperfect subjunctive refers to the present time; as, *Mēmŏrāre possem quibus in lócis máximas hostium cópias pópulus Rōmānus parvā mánu fūdĕrit.* Sall. *Possem* here differs from *possum* only by the hypothetical form of the expression.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ **259.** The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

NOTE. Hence it is used even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with *si, nisi, etsi,* and *etiamsi,* when the writer, without intimating his own opinion, supposes a thing as actual, or, with *nisi,* makes an exception, which, only for the sake of the inference, he regards as actual; as, *Mors aut plāne negligenda est, si omnīno exstinguit ánimum, aut étiam optanda, si áliquo eum* dēdūcit, *úbi sit fútūrus æternus.* Cic. *Adhuc certe, nisi ĕgo* insānio, *stulte omnia et incaute fiunt.* Id.—It is likewise used in interrogations.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being apparently used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) (*a.*) The present is often used for the historical perfect in narration, see § 145, I. 3.—(*b.*) It is sometimes used also for the future to denote the certainty of an event, or to indicate passionate emotion. So, also, when the leading sentence contains the present imperative, *si,* is often joined with the present instead of the future; as, *défende si pŏtes.*—(*c.*) The present is also used for the imperfect or perfect, when it is joined with *dum* 'while'; as, *Dum ĕgo in Siciliā* sum, *nulla stātua dējecta est.* So it is even so used by Livy in transitions from one event to another; as, *Dum in Asiā bellum gēritur, ne in Ætóliis quidem quiĕtæ res fuērunt.* But the preterites are sometimes used with *dum* 'while'; and *dum* 'as long as' is regularly joined with the imperfect.

(2.) (*a.*) The perfect, in its proper signification, i. e. as a perfect *definite,* denotes an act or state terminated at the present time. Thus Horace, at the close of a work, says, Exēgi *mŏnŭmentum ære pĕrennius;* and Ovid, in like circumstances, *Jamque ŏpus* exēgi. So, also, Panthus in Virgil, in order to de-

note the utter ruin of Troy, exclaims, Fuimus *Trŏes*, fuit *Ilium*, i. e. we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.—(*b.*) The perfect *indefinite* or *historical* perfect is used in relating past events, when no reference is to be made to the time of other events; as, *Cæsar Rŭbĭcōnem transit*, Cæsar crossed the Rubicon. (*c.*) As in the epistolary style the imperfect is used instead of the present, when an incomplete action is spoken of (§ 145, II. 3), so the historical perfect is in like circumstances employed instead of the present, when speaking of a completed action. With both the imperfect and perfect, when so used, however, the adverbs *nunc* and *etiamnunc* may be used instead of *tunc* and *etiamtum*.

(*d.*) The historical perfect is sometimes used for the pluperfect in narration; as, *Sed postquam* aspexi, *illico cognōvi*, But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.—This is the usual construction after *postquam* or *posteāquam, ŭbi, ŭbi primum, ut, ut primum, quum primum, simul, simul ut, simul ac,* or *simul atque,* all of which have the signification of 'as soon as,' and sometimes after *priusquam.* But when several conditions are to be expressed in past time, the pluperfect is retained after these particles; as, *Idem sĭmŭlac se rĕmĭscĕrat, nĕque causa subĕrat, quāre ănĭmi lăbōrem perferret, luxŭriōsus rĕpĕriēbātur.* Nep. So, also, *postquam* is joined with the pluperfect, when a definite time intervenes between events, so that there is no connection between them; as, *Hannĭbal anno tertĭo, postquam dŏmo prŏfūgĕrat, cum quinque nārĭbus Africam accessit.* Id.—In a very few passages the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive* are joined with *postquam.*

(3.) The pluperfect sometimes occurs, where in English we use the historical perfect; as, Dixĕrat, *et spissis noctis se condĭdit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg. Sometimes, also, it is used for the historical perfect to express the rapidity with which events succeed each other; so, also, for the imperfect, to denote what had been and still was.

(4.) The future indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *Vălēbis,* Farewell. Cic. And:—

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio lŏco de ōrātōrum ănĭmo et injūrĭis* vidēro, I shall see (have seen).... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already done, and intimates the rapidity with which it will be completed.

Rem. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time; as, *Nātūram si* sĕquēmur *dūcem, numquam* ăberrābĭmus. Cic.; but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed; as, *De Carthāgĭne vĕrēri non ante* dēsĭnam, *quam illam excisam esse cognōvĕro.* Cic. In English the present is often used instead of the future perfect; as, *Făciam si* pŏtĕro, I will do it, if I can. *Ut* sēmentem fēcĕris, *ita* mĕtes, As you sow, so you will reap. Cic.

Rem. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability or advantage of an action not performed, the indicative of the preterites (§ 145, N. 2.) is used, where the English idiom would have led us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

(*a.*) This construction occurs with the verbs *ŏportet, nĕcesse est, dēbeo, convēnit, possum, dĕcet, licet, reor, pŭto;* and with *par, fas, cōpĭa, æquum, justum, consentāneum, sătis, sătius, æquĭus, mēlĭus, ūtilĭus, optābilĭus,* and *optĭmum—est,* ĕrat, etc.

(*b.*) In this connection the imperfect indicative expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet past; the historical perfect and the pluperfect indicative, things which have not been, but the time for which is past; as, *Ad mortem te dŭci jam prĭdem* ŏportēbat, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it ought to have taken place. Cic.—*Longe* ūtĭlĭus fuit *angustĭas ădĭtūs occŭpāre*, It would have been much better to occupy the pass. Curt. *Cătilĭna ērăpit e sĕnātu triumphans gaudĭo, quem omnīno vīvum illinc exīre non* ŏportuĕrat. Cic.

(c.) In both the periphrastic conjugations, also, the preterites of the indicative have frequently the meaning of the subjunctive; as, *Tam bŏna constanter præda tĕnenda fuit*,—ought to have been kept. Ovid. This is more common in hypothetical sentences than in such as are independent.

(d.) The indicative in such connections is retained, even when a hypothetical clause with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is added, and it is here in particular that the indicative preterites of the periphrastic conjugations are employed; as, *Quæ si dŭbia aut prŏcul essent, tamen omnes bŏnos reĭpublicæ consŭlĕre dĕcēbat.* Sall. *Quodsi Cn. Pompeius prīvātus esset hoc tempŏre, tamen erat mittendus.* Cic.—*Dēlēri tŏtus exercĭtus pŏtuit, si fŭgientes persĕcŭti victōres essent.* Liv. *Quas nĭsi mānūmīsisset, tormentis ĕtiam dēdendi fuĕrunt.* Cic. *Si te non invēnissem, pērĭtūrus per præcĭpĭtia fui.* Petr. But the subjunctive also is admissible in such cases in the periphrastic conjugations.

Rem. 4. (1.) The preterites of the indicative are often used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, in order to render a description more animated. They are so used,

(a.) When the inference has already partly come to pass, and would have been completely realized, if something else had or had not occurred, whence the adverb *jam* is frequently added; as, *Jam fāmes quam pestilentia tristior ĕrat; ni annōnæ fŏret subventum*,—would have been worse. Liv. The same is expressed by the verb *cœpi* instead of *jam;* as, *Britanni circumire terga vincentium cœpĕrant, ni*, etc. Tac. And without *jam;* as, *Effĭgies Pisōnis traxĕrant in Gēmōnias ăc dīvellēbant* (would have entirely destroyed them) *ni*, etc. Id.

(b.) The perfect and pluperfect are likewise used in this sense, and a thing which was never accomplished is thus, in a lively manner, described as completed; as, *Et pĕractum ĕrat bellum sine sanguĭne, si Pompeium opprimĕre Brundĭsii* (Cæsar) *pŏtuisset.* Hor.—The imperfect indicative is rarely used, also, for the imperfect subjunctive, when this tense is found in the hypothetical clause; as, *Stultum ĕrat morēre, nisi fiĕret.* Quint.—Sometimes, also, the preterites of the indicative are thus used in the *condition;* as, *At fuĕrat mēlius, si te puer iste tĕnēbat.* Ovid. See § 261, R. 1.

(2.) 'I ought' or 'I should,' is expressed by the indicative of *dēbeo*, and *possum* is in like manner often used for *possem;* as, *Possum persĕqui multa oblectāmenta rērum rustĭcārum, sed*, etc., I might speak of the many pleasures of husbandry, but, etc.; and it is usual in like manner to say, *diffĭcĭle est, longum est, infīnītum est,* e. g. *narrāre,* etc., for, 'it would be difficult,' 'it would lead too far,' 'there would be no end,' etc.

(3.) The indicative is used in like manner after many general and relative expressions, especially after the pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cunque;* as, *quisquis, quotquot, quīcumque, ūtut, utcumque,* etc., see §§ 139, 5, (3.) and 191, I. R. 1, (b.); as, *Quidquid id est, tīmeo Dănăos et dōna fĕrentes.* Virg. *Quem sors cumque dăbit, lucro appōne.* Hor. *Sed quidquo mŏdo sēse illud hăbet.* But however that may be. Cic.—In like manner sentences connected by *sīve—sīve* commonly have the verb in the indicative, unless there is a special reason for using the subjunctive; as, *Sīve vērum est, sīve falsum, mĭhi quidem ita rĕnunciātum est.* Later writers however use the subjunctive both with general relatives, etc., and with *sīve—sīve.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ **260.** The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

Note. The subjunctive character of a proposition depends, not upon its substance, but upon its form. 'I believe,' 'I suppose,' are only conceptions, but my believing and supposing are stated as facts, and, of course, are expressed by means of the indicative. When, on the other hand, I say, 'I should be-

23

lieve,' 'I should suppose,' the acts of believing and supposing are represented not as facts, but as mere conceptions. Hence the verb that expresses the purpose or intention for which another act is performed, is put in the subjunctive, since it expresses only a conception; as, *Edo ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. This mood takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses attached to 'the main clause of a sentence by a subordinate connective. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or in such, at least, as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive, in some of its connections, is to be translated by the indicative, particularly in *indirect questions*, in clauses expressing a *result*, and after *adverbs of time;* as,

Rogas me quid tristis sim,—why I am sad. Tac. *Stellārum tanta est multitūdo, ut numerāri non possint,*—that they cannot be counted. *Quum Cæsar esset in Galliā,* When Cæsar was in Gaul. Cæs.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty,* and *desire.*

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present may refer either to present or future time; as, *Mediocribus et quis ignoscens vitiis tĕneor,* I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cesăre ut det sibi vĕniam,* He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as, *Si fāta fuissent ut cadĕrem,* If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sānior essem,* I would be wiser, if I could. Ovid. *Cētĕros răpĕrem et prosternĕrem,* The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect subjunctive has always a reference to present time, and is equivalent to the indicative present or perfect definite; as, *Errārim fortasse,* Perhaps I may have erred. Plin.—When it has a future signification it is not to be accounted a perfect, but the subjunctive of the future perfect. See Rem. 4 and 7, (1.) But compare § 258, R. 1, (b.) and R. 3, (b.)

(4.) The pluperfect subjunctive relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id respondērunt se factūros esse, quum ille vento Aquilōne vĕnisset Lemnum....* when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfects *vellem, nollem,* and *mallem,* in the first person, express a wish, the non-reality and impossibility of which are known; as, *vellem,* I should have wished.—In the second person, where it implies an indefinite person, and also in the third when the subject is an indefinite person, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the sense of the pluperfect, and the condition is to be supplied by the mind. This is the case especially with the verbs, *dico, puto, arbitror, crēdo;* also with *video, cerno,* and *discerno;* as, *Mæstique* (crēdĕres victos) *rĕdeunt in castra,*—one might have thought that they were defeated. Liv. *Pecūniæ an fāmæ minus parcĕret, haud facile discernĕres.* Sall. *Qui vidēret equum Trōjānum introductum, urbem captam dicĕret.* Cic. *Quis umquam crēdĕret?* Id. *Quis pūtāret?* Id.—The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used, also, for the pluperfect in interrogative expressions; as, *Socrates quum rŏgārētur cujātem se esse dicĕret, Mundānum,* inquit. Id. *Quod si quis deus dicĕret, nonquam pūtārem me in Acadēmiā tamquam philŏsŏphum dispūtātūrum,* If any god had said....I never should have supposed. Cic.

REM. 3. The subjunctive in all its tenses may denote a supposition or concession; as, *Vendat ædes vir bŏnus,* Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. *Dixĕrit Epicūrus,* Grant that Epicurus could have said. Id. *Vērum an eps pugnæ fuerit fortūna,*—Fuisset, Grant that it might have been. Virg. *Mālus civis Cn. Carbo fuit. Fuĕrit ăliis,* He may have been to others. Cic.—This concessive subjunctive is equivalent to *esto ut.*

REM. 4. The present and perfect subjunctive are used in independent propositions to soften an assertion. When so used, they do not differ essentially from the present and future indicative; as, *Forsitan* quærātis, You may perhaps ask. *Vĕlim sic existimes*, I would wish you to think so. *Nēmo istud tĭbi* concēdat, or concessĕrit, No one will grant you that. *Hoc sine ullā dŭbĭtātiōne* confirmāvĕrim, *ēlŏquentiam rem esse omnium difficillimam*, This I will unhesitatingly affirm. Cic. *Nil ĕgo* contŭlĕrim *jūcundo sānus amīco.* Hor. The form which is called the perfect subjunctive, when thus used for the future, seems to be rather the subjunctive of the future perfect: see Rem. 7, (1.) *Vŏlo* and its compounds are often so used in the present; as, *Vĕlim obvias mĭhi lĭtĕras crēbro mittas*, I wish that you would frequently send, etc. Cic. The perfect subjunctive is also rarely used in the sense of a softened perfect indicative; as, *Forsitan tĕmĕre* fēcĕrim, I may have acted inconsiderately.

REM. 5. The subjunctive is used in all its tenses, in independent sentences, to express a doubtful question implying a negative answer; as, *Quo eam?* Whither shall I go? *Quo īrem?* Whither should I go? *Quo īvĕrim?* Whither was I to have gone? *Quo īvissem?* Whither should I have gone? The answer implied in all these cases is, 'nowhere.' So, *Quis* dŭbĭtet *quin in virtūte dĭvĭtiæ sint?* Who can doubt that riches consist in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam nūmen Jūnōnis* ădōret *prætĕrea?* Virg. *Quidni, inquit*, mĕmĭnĕrim? Cic. *Quis* vellet *tanti nuntius esse māli?* Ovid.

REM. 6. The present subjunctive is often used to express a wish, an exhortation, asseveration, request, command, or permission; as,

Mŏriar, *si*, etc. May I die, if, etc. Cic. Pĕream, *si non*, etc. May I perish, if, etc. Ovid. So, *Ne* sim *salvus.* Cic. *In mĕdia arma* ruāmus, Let us rush.... Virg. *Ne me attingas, scĕleste!* Do not touch me, villain! Ter. Făciat *quod lĭbet*, Let him do what he pleases. Id. The perfect is often so used; as, *Ipse* vīdĕrit, Let him see to it himself. Cic. *Quam id recte* făciam, vīdĕrint *săpientes.* Id. Mĕmĭnĕrimus, *ĕtiam adversus infĭmos justitiam esse servandam.* Id. *Nihil incommŏdo vălētŭdĭnis tuæ* fēcĕris. Id. Emas, *non quod opus est, sed quod nĕcesse est.* Sen. *Dōnis impii ne* plācāre audeant *deos;* Plătōnem audiant. Cic. *Nātūram expellas* furca, *tămen usque recurret.* Hor.

(*a.*) The examples show that the present subjunctive, in the first person singular, is used in asseverations; in the first person plural, in requests and exhortations; in the second and third persons of the present and sometimes of the perfect, in commands and permissions, thus supplying the place of the imperative, especially when the person is indefinite.

(*b.*) With these subjunctives, as with the imperative, the negative is usually not *non* but *ne;* as, *ne dicas; ne dicat; ne dixĕris.* So, also, *ne* fŭĕrit, for *licet ne* fŭĕrit.

(*c.*) The subjunctive for the imperative occurs most frequently in the third person. In the second person it is used principally with *ne;* as, *ne dīcas.* In the latter case the perfect very frequently takes the place of the present; as, *ne dixĕris.* The subjunctive is also used in the second person, instead of the imperative, when the person is indefinite.

(*d.*) In precepts relating to past time, the imperfect and pluperfect, also, are used for the imperative; as, *Forsitan non nēmo vir fortis dixĕrit*, restitisses, *mortem pugnans* oppĕtisses,—you should have resisted. Cic.

REM. 7. In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or passive voice.

(1.) When the expression of futurity is contained in another part of the sentence, the future of the subjunctive is supplied by the other tenses of that mood, viz. the future subjunctive by the present and imperfect, and the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect. Which of these four tenses is to be used depends on the leading verb and on the completeness or incompleteness of the action to be expressed. The perfect subjunctive appears to be also the subjunctive of the future perfect, and might not improperly be so called; as,

Tantum mŏneo, hoc tempus si āmīsĕris, *te esse nullum umquam măgis ĭdōneum rĕ-*
pertūrum, I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will
never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other future is contained in the sentence, the place of the future
subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus,* with *sim* and *essem;* as,
Non dŭbitat quin brĕvi Trōja sit *pĕritūra,* He does not doubt that Troy will
soon be destroyed. Cic. In hypothetical sentences the form with *fuĕrim* takes
the place of a pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Quis ĕnim dŭbitat, quin, si Săguntīnis*
impĭgre tŭlissēmus ŏpem, tŏtum in Hispăniam āversūri *bellum* tŭĕrimus. Liv.
The form in *fuissem* occurs also, but more rarely; as, *Appăruit, quantam* ex-
cĭtatūra *mōlem vĕra* fuisset *clādes, quum,* etc. See *Periphrastic Conjugation,*
§ 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *dus,*
but by *fŭtūrum sit* or *esset,* with *ut* and the present or imperfect of the sub-
junctive; as, *Non dŭbito quin* fŭtūrum sit, *ut laudētur,* I do not doubt that he
will be praised.

PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ **261.** In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclu-*
sion, the former is called the *protăsis,* the latter the *apodŏsis.*

1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds,
the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of
the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying
present time. In the *apodosis* the same tenses of the subjunctive de-
note what the result would be, or would have been, had the suppo-
sition in the protasis been a valid one; as,

Nisi te sătis incitātum esse confīdĕrem, *scrībĕrem plūra,* Did I not believe
that you have been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which im-
plies that he *does believe,* and therefore *will not write.* *Si Neptūnus, quod Thēseo*
prōmīsĕrat, non fēcisset, *Thēseus fĭlio Hippŏlȳto non* esset orbātus. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis,* imply the
real or *possible existence* of the action or state supposed; as,

Si vĕlit, if he wishes, or, should wish, implying that he either does wish, or,
at least, may wish. In the apodosis the present or perfect either of the sub-
junctive or of the indicative may be used.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis*
of a conditional sentence with *si,* etc.; as, *Si* vāles, *bĕnĕ est.* Cic. *Si quis antea*
mirābātur *quid esset, ex hoc tĕmpŏre* mirētur *pŏtius....* Id.—The conjunction *si*
in the protasis is often omitted; as, *Libet agros ĕmi.* *Prīmum quæro quos agros?*
If you will buy lands, I will first ask, etc. But the protasis may be rendered
without *if,* and either with or without an interrogation, as, You will buy lands,
or, Will you buy lands? The future perfect often occurs in the protasis of
such sentences; as, *Cāsus mēdicusve lĕvārit ægrum ex præcĭpiti, mĕter dĭāna nĕ-*
căbit, (Hor.) Should chance or the physician have saved him, the silly mother
will destroy him. *Si* is in like manner omitted with the imperfect and pluper-
fect subjunctive, in supposing a case which is known not to be a real one; as,
Absque te esset, hŏdie nunquam ad sōlem occāsum vīvĕrem. Plaut.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive differ but slightly from the in-
dicative, the latter giving to a sentence the form of reality, while the subjunc-
tive represents it as a conception, which, however, may at the same time be a
reality. The second person singular of the present and perfect subjunctive
often occurs in addressing an indefinite person, where, if the person were defi-
nite, the indicative would be used; as, *Mĕmŏria minuĭtur, nisi eam* exerceas.
Cic. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action,

the indicative must be used, if its existence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence. In the *orātio oblīqua*, when the leading verb is a present or a future, the same difference is observed between the tenses of the subjunctive as in hypothetical sentences; but when the leading verb is a preterite the difference between possibility and impossibility is not expressed.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hic sis, āliter sentias*, If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cūra rēsistat, jam flammæ tūlērint.* Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Mǎgno mercentur Atrīdæ*, i. e. *si possint.* Virg.; or is contained in a participial clause; as, *Agis*, etsi a multĭtūdĭne victus, *glōriā tămen omnes vĭcit.* Just. So, also, when the participle is in the ablative absolute; as, *Dōnā- rem tripŏdas*—divĭde me *scilicet artium, quas aut Parrhāsius prōtălit, aut Scōpas.* Hor. *C. Mūcius Porsĕnam interfĭcĕre, prōpŏsĭtā sibi morte, cōnātus est.* Cic. It is only in later writers that the concessive conjunctions *etsi, quamquam*, and *quamvis* are expressed with the participle, but *tămen* is often found in the *apodosis*, even in the classic period, when a participial clause precedes as a protasis.

REM. 5. In hypothetical sentences relating to past time, the actions seem often to be transferred in a measure to the present by using the imperfect, either in the protasis or the apodosis, instead of the pluperfect; as, *Quod certe non fēcisset, si suum nŭmĕrum (nautārum) nāres hăbērent.* Cic. *Cimbri si stătim infesto agmine urbem pĕtissent, grande discrīmen esset.* Flor. Sometimes the imperfect, although the actions are completed, appears both in the protasis and the apodosis.

REM. 6. *Nĭsi, nĭsi vĕro*, and *nĭsi forte* are joined with the indicative, when they introduce a correction. *Nĭsi* then signifies 'except'; as, *Nescio*; nĭsi *hoc vĭdeo.* Cic. *Nĭsi vĕro*, and *nĭsi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' introduce an exception, and imply its improbability; as, *Nēmo fĕre saltat sōbrius*, nĭsi forte *insānit.* Cic. *Nĭsi forte* in the sense of 'unless you suppose,' is commonly used ironically to introduce a case which is in reality inadmissible.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

A. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut, ne, quo, quin*, and *quŏmĭnus ;* as,

Ea non, ut *te institŭĕrem, scripsi*, I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irrĭtant ad pugnandum*, quo *fiant acrĭōres*, They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut* or *ŭti*, signifying 'that,' 'in order that,' or simply 'to' with the infinitive, relates either to a purpose or to a result. In the latter case it often refers to *sic, ĭta, ădeo, tam, tālis, tantus, is, ējusmŏdi*, etc., in the preceding clause; as,

Id mĭhi sic ĕrit grātum, ut *grātius esse nĭhil possit*, That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum ĭta hĕbes*, ut *istuc dĭcam.* Id. *Nēque* tam *ērāmus āmentes*, ut *explōrāta nōbis esset victōria.* Id. *Tantum indulsit dōlōri*, ut *eum pĭĕtas vincĕret.* Nep. *Ĭta* and tam *are sometimes omitted; as, Epāmīnondas fuit ĕtiam dīsertus*, ut *nēmo Thēbānus ei par esset ēlŏquentiā*, instead of *tam dĭsertus.* Id. *Esse opŏrtet* ut *vīvas, non vīvĕre* ut *ēdas.* Auct. ad Her. *Sol effĭcit* ut *omnia flōreant.* Cic.

REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying 'even if' or 'although,' expresses a suppo-
sition merely as a conception, and accordingly takes the subjunctive;
as,

Ut dēsint vīres, tămen est laudanda vŏluntas, Though strength be wanting, yet
the will is to be praised. Ovid. *Ut*, in this sense, takes the negative *non*; as,
Exercĭtus si pācis nōmen audīĕrit, ut non refĕrat pĕdem (even if it does not with-
draw) insistet certe. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive denoting a result, is used with
impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows*, etc.; as,

Quī fit, ut nēmo contentus vivat? How does it happen that no one lives con-
tented? Hor. *Huic* contigit, ut patriam ex servitūte in libertātem vindicāret.
Nep. *Sĕquĭtur igĭtur*, ut etiam vitia sint parca. Cic. *Rĕliquum* est, ut ĕgŏmet
mihi consŭlam. Nep. *Restat igĭtur*, ut mōtus astrōrum sit vŏluntarius. Cic.
Extrēmum illud est, ut te ōrem et obsecrem. Id.

NOTE 1. To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases
signifying 'it happens,' viz. *fit, fĭĕri non potest, accĭdit, contingit, ēvĕnit,
ūsu vĕnit, occurrit* and *est* (it is the case, or it happens, and hence *esto*, be it
that):—and the following, signifying 'it remains,' or 'it follows,' viz. *fătūrum,
extrēmum, prŏpe, proxĭmum,* and *rĕliquum—est, rĕlinquĭtur, sĕquĭtur, restat,* and
sŭpĕrest: and sometimes *accĭdit*.

NOTE 2. *Contingit* with the dative of the person is often joined with the
infinitive, instead of the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Non cuivis hŏmĭni contingit
ădīre Cŏrinthum.* Hor. And with *esse* also and other verbs of similar meaning,
the predicate (as in the case of *licet*) is often found in the dative.—*Sĕquĭtur* and
efficĭtur, 'it follows,' have sometimes the accusative with the infinitive and
sometimes the subjunctive; and *nascĭtur*, in the same sense, the subjunctive
only.

NOTE 3. *Mos* or *mōris est, consŭētūdo* or *consŭētūdĭnis est*, and *nātūra* or *con-
suētūdo fert*, are often followed by *ut* instead of the infinitive.—*Ut* also occurs
occasionally after many such phrases as *nŏcuum est, rārum, nātūrāle, nĕcesse,
ūsĭtātum, mīrum, singŭlāre—est*, etc., and after *æquum, rectum, vērum, ūtĭle, vēri-
sĭmĭle*, and *integrum—est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs de-
noting *willingness* and *permission;* also after verbs of *asking, advis-
ing, reminding*, etc., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac;* as,

Quid vis făciam? What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Insāni fĕriant
sine lītŏra fluctus.* Virg. *Tentes dissimŭlāre rŏgat.* Ovid. *Id sinas ōro.* Id. *Se
suādēre, dixit, Pharnabīzo id nĕgōtii dăret.* Nep. *Accēdat ŏportet actio vāria.*
Cic. *Fac cōgĭtes.* Sall. So, *Vide ex nāvi efferantur, quæ*, etc. Plaut

Verbs of willingness, etc., are *vŏlo, mālo, permitto, concēdo, pătior, sĭno, lĭcet, vĕto*,
etc.; those of asking, etc., are *rōgo, ōro, quæso, mŏneo, admŏneo, jŭbeo, mando, pĕto,
prĕcor, censeo, suādeo, ŏportet, nĕcesse est, postŭlo, hortor, cūro, dēcerno, opto, impĕro.*

REM. 5. *Nē*, 'that not,' 'in order that not,' or 'lest,' expresses a
purpose negatively; as,

Cūra ne quid ei dēsit, Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Nēmo
prūdens pŭnit, ut ait Plato, quia peccātum est, sed ne peccētur.* Id. *Ut ne* is fre-
quently used for *ne*, especially in solemn discourse, and hence in laws; as,
Opĕrā'dĭtur, ut jūdicia ne fĭant. Id. *Quo ne* is used in the same manner in one
passage of Horace. *Misus ad hæc—quo ne per vācuum Rōmāno incurrĕret hos-
tis.*—On the other hand *ut non* is used when a simple result or consequence is
to be expressed, in which case *ita, sic, tam* are either expressed or understood;
as, *Tam forte ægrōtābam, ut ad nuptias tuas vĕnīre non possem.* In a few cases,
however, *ut non* is used for *ne.*—*Ut non* is further used, when the negation re-

fers to a particular word or to a part only of the sentence, as in similar cases *si non* must be used, and not *nisi*; as, *Confer te ad Manlium, ut a me non ejectus ad alienos, sed invitatus ad tuos isse videaris.* Cic.

REM. 6. *Nē* is often omitted after *căvē;* as,

Căve pŭtes, Take care not to suppose. Cic. Compare § 267, R. 3.

REM. 7. After *mĕtuo, tĭmeo, vĕreor,* and other expressions denoting fear or caution, *nē* must be rendered by *that* or *lest,* and *ut* by *that not.*

NOTE 3. To the verbs *mĕtuo, tĭmeo,* and *vĕreor* are to be added the substantives expressing fear, apprehension, or danger, and the verbs *terreo, conterreo, dēterreo, căveo,* to be on one's guard, *video* and *observo* in requests (as, *vide, vidēte* and *videndum est*), in the sense of 'to consider'; as,

Milo mĕtuēbat, ne a servis indicārētur, Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. Vĕreor, ne, *dum minuĕre vĕlim lăbōrem,* augeam. Id. *Pāvor ĕrat, ne castra hostis aggrĕderētur.* Liv. *Illa duo vĕreor, ut tibi possim concēdĕre,* I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic. *Căvendum est ne assentātōribus pătēfăciāmus aures,* neu *ădŭlāri nos sināmus.* Cic. *Vĭde ne hoc tibi obsit.* *Terruit gentes, grăve ne rĕdīret sēcŭlum Pyrrhæ.* *Multitūdĭnem dēterrent,* ne *frūmentum* conferant. Cæs. *Me misĕrum! ne prōna cădas.* Ovid.

NOTE 4. *Nēve* or *neu* is used as a continuative after *ut* and *ne.* It is properly equivalent to *aut ne,* but is also used for *et ne* after a preceding *ut;* as, on the other hand, *et ne* is used after a negation instead of *aut ne;* as, *Lēgem tŭlit,* ne *quis ante actārum rērum accūsārētur,* nēve *multārētur.* Nep. *Cæsar milites non longiōre ōrātiōne cŏhortātus, quam ŭti suæ pristĭnæ virtūtis mĕmŏriam rĕtinērent,* neu *perturbārentur ănĭmo—prœlii committendi signum dĕdit.* Cæs. *Nēque,* also, is sometimes used for *et ne* after *ut* and *ne;* as, *Ut ea prætermittam,* nĕque *eos appellem.* Cic. *Cur non sanctis ne vicinus patricio sit plēbeius,* nec *eōdem itĭnĕre eat.* Cic.—*Ne non* is sometimes used for *ut* after verbs of fearing; as, *Timeo* ne non *impĕtrem,* I fear I shall not obtain it.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dīcam.* Cic. *Ne singŭlos nōmĭnem.* Liv.

NOTE 5. *Nēdum,* like *ne,* takes the subjunctive; as, *Optĭmis tempŏribus clārissĭmi viri vim tribūnĭciam sustĭnēre non pŏtuērunt:* nēdum *his tempŏribus sine jūdĭciōrum rĕmĕdiis salvi esse possīmus,*—still less, etc. Cic. *Ne* is sometimes used in the sense of *nēdum;* as, *Nōram eam pŏtestātem* (scil. *tribūnōrum plĕbis*) *ēripĕre patribus nostris,* ne *nunc dulcēdĭne sĕmel capti ferant dēsidĕrium.* Liv.— *Nēdum* without a verb has the meaning of an adverb, and commonly follows a negative; as, *Ægre inermis tanta multĭtūdo,* nēdum *armāta, sustĭnēri pŏtest.* Liv. *Nē,* also, is used in the same manner in Cic. Fam. 9, 26.

REM. 9. *Quō,* 'that,' 'in order that,' or, 'that by this means,' especially with a comparative; *non quō,* or *non quod,* 'not that,' 'not as if'; *non quin,* 'not as if not'; which are followed in the apodōsis by *sed quod, sed quia,* or *sed* alone; and *quōmĭnus,* 'that not,' after clauses denoting hinderance, take the subjunctive; as,

Adjŭta me, quo *id* fĭat *facĭlius,* Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. Non quo *rēpūblicā sit mihi quicquam cārius, sed dēspĕrātis ĕtiam Hippocrătes* vĕtat *adhĭbēre mĕdĭcīnam.* Cic. Non quod *sōla ornet, sed quod excellant.* Id. *Nĕque* rĕcūsāvit, quo minus *lēgis pœnam* subīret. Nep. *Ego me dūcem in cīvīli bello nĕgāvi esse,* non quin *rectum esset, sed quia,* etc. Cic. And instead of *non quin* we may say *non quo non, non quod non,* or *non quia non;* and for *non quod, non eo quod,* or *non ideo quod.*

REM. 10. *Quin,* after negative propositions and questions with *quis* and *quid* implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nēmo, nullus, nihil....est, rĕpĕrĭtur, invĕnītur*, etc., *vix est, ægre rĕpĕrĭtur*, etc.; as, *Messānam nēmo vēnit, quin vīdĕrit*, i. e. *qui non vīdĕrit*, No one came to Messana who did not see. Cic. *Nēgo ullum pic-tūram fuisse....quin conquisiĕrit*, i. e. *quam non*, etc. Id. *Nihil est, quin mălĕ narrando possit dēprăvāri*. Ter. *Quis est, quin cernat, quanta vis sit in sensĭbus?* Cic.

NOTE 6.   When *quin* is used for the relative it is commonly equivalent to the nominative *qui, quæ, quod*, but it is sometimes used in prose instead of the accusative, and sometimes after *dies* for *quo*, as the ablative of time; as, *Dies fēre nullus est*, quin *hic Sătrius dōmum meam vēnĭtet*, i. e. *quo—non ventitet*. Cic.—*Qui non* is often used for *quin*; as, *Quis ĕnim erat, qui non sciret*. Id.; and when *quin* stands for *qui non* or *quod non*, is and *id* are sometimes added for the sake of emphasis; as, *Cleanthes nĕgat ullum cibum esse tam grăvem, quin is die et nocte concŏquātur*. Cic.   *Nihil est quod sensum hăbeat, quin id intĕreat*. Id.—So, also, the place of *quin* is supplied by *ut non*; as, *Augustus numquam filios suos pŏpŭlo commendāvit* ut non *adjĭcĕret* (without adding) *si mĕrēbuntur*. Suet.   And if no negation precedes, or if *non* belongs to a particular word, and not to the verb, *qui non* and *ut non* must of course be used and not *quin*.

2. For *ut non*, 'that not,' or 'without' with a participle, especially after *făcĕre non possum, fĭĕri non pŏtest, nulla causa est, quid causæ est? nihil causæ est*; as, *Făcĕre non possum* quin *ad te mittam*, i. e. *ut non*, etc. Cic.   *Numquam tam mălĕ est Sĭcŭlis*, quin *ŏliquid făcĕte et commŏde dicant*. Cic.   *Numquam ac-cēdo*, quin *abs te* abeam *doctĭor*,—without going from you wiser. Ter.

NOTE 7.   *Quin* takes the subjunctive also after the negative expressions *non dŭbito, non est dŭbium, non ambĭgo*, I doubt not; *non ăbest; nihil, paulum, non procŭl, haud multum ăbest; non, vix, ægre alstĭneo; tĕnēre me, or tempĕrāre mihi non possum; non impĕdio, non rĕcūso, nihil prætermitto*, and the like.   In these cases, however, the negation in each is expressed in Latin by 'that,' 'but that,' or 'to' with an infinitive; as, *Non dŭbito* quin *dŏmi sit*, that he is at home. *Non multum ăbest*, quin *mĭserrĭmus sim*, Not much is wanting to make me most wretched.   Cic.   Hence, as *quin* is not in such cases regarded as a negative, *non* is superadded when a negative sense is required; as, *In quibus non dŭbito* quin *ŏffensĭōnem neglĭgentiæ vĭtāre atque effŭgĕre non possum*. Cic.   *Dŭbitandum non est* quin *numquam possit ŭtĭlĭtas cum hŏnestāte contendĕre*. Id.

NOTE 8.   In Nepos, *non dŭbito*, in the sense of 'I do not doubt,' is always fol-lowed by the infinitive with the accusative, and the same construction often occurs in later writers but not in Cicero: in the sense of to scruple or hesitate, when the verb following has the same subject, *dŭbito* and *non dŭbito* are gener-ally followed by the infinitive; as, *Cĭcĕro* non *dŭbitābat conjŭrātos supplĭcio af-fĭcĕre*.—It may be added that 'I doubt whether' is expressed in Latin by *dŭbito sitne, dŭbito utrum—an, dŭbito sitne—an*, or *dŭbito num, numquid*, for *dŭbito an*, and *dŭbium est an* are used, like *nescio an* with an affirmative meaning.

NOTE 9.   *Quin* signifies also 'why not?' being compounded of the old abla-tive *qui* and *nĕ*, i. e. *non*, and in this sense is joined with the indicative in ques-tions implying an exhortation; as, Quin *conscendĭmus ĕquos?* Why not mount our horses?   In this sense it is also joined with the imperative; as, Quin dic *stătim*, Well, tell me: or with the first person of the subjunctive.   Hence with-out being joined to any verb it signifies 'even' or 'rather.'

REM. 11.   The principal verbs of hinderance, after which *quŏmĭnus* occurs, and after which *ne*, and, if a negative precedes, *quin* also may be used, are *dē-terreo, impĕdio, intercēdo, obsisto, obsto, offĭcio, prŏhĭbeo, rĕcūso*, and *rĕpugno*.   It occurs also after *stat* or *fĭt per me*, I am the cause, *non pugno, nihil mŏror, non contĭneo me*, etc.

NOTE.   *Impĕdio, dēterreo*, and *rĕcūso* are sometimes, and *prŏhĭbeo* frequently followed by the infinitive.   Instead of *quŏmĭnus, quo sĕcius* is sometimes used.

§ 263.   The particles specified in this section always introduce a sentence containing only a conception of the mind, and are hence joined with the subjunctive.

1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *ŭtĭnam, ŭti, O!* and *O! si ;* as,

Ŭtĭnam mĭnus vītæ cŭpĭdi fuissēmus! O that we had been less attached to life! Cic. *O si sōlĭtæ quicquam virtūtis* ădesset! Virg.

REMARK. The present and perfect tenses, after these particles, are used in reference to those wishes which are conceived as possible; the imperfect and pluperfect are employed in expressing those wishes which are conceived as wanting in reality. Cf. § 261, 1 and 2.—' Would that not' is expressed in Latin both by *ŭtĭnam ne* and *ŭtĭnam non. Ŭtĭnam* is sometimes omitted; as, *Tēcum lūdĕre sicut ipsa possem!* Catull.

B. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

2. (1.) *Quamvis,* however; *lĭcet,* although; *tamquam, tamquam si, quăsi, ac si, ut si, vĕlut, vĕlut si, sĭcŭti, sĭcŭti,* and *ceu,* as if; *mŏdo, dum,* and *dummŏdo,* provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

Quamvis *ille fēlix* sit, *tămen,* etc. However happy he may be, still, etc. Cic. *Vērĭtas* licet *nullum dēfensōrem* obtĭneat, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. Tamquam *clausa* sit *Asĭa, sic nĭhil perfertur ad nos.* Id. *Sed quĭd ĕgo his testĭbus ūtor,* quăsi *res dŭbia aut obscūra* sit? Id. *Me omnĭbus rēbus, juxta* ac si *meus frāter* esset, *sustentāvit,* He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Sĭmĭlĭter făcĕre eos,*—ut si *nautæ* certārent, *ŭter,* etc. Id. *Absentis Ariŏvisti crūdēlĭtātem,* vĕlut si *cōram* ădesset, *horrēbent.* Cæs. *Inquæ sĭnus cāros,* vĕlŭti cognoscēret, *ĭbat.* Ovid. Sĭcŭti *jurgio* lăcessītus foret, *in sēnātum vēnit.* Sall. *Hic vēro ingentem pugnam,* ceu *cētĕra nusquam bella* forent. Virg. *Odĕrint dum* mĕtuant. Att. in Cic. *Mānent ingĕnia sēnĭbus,* mŏdo permănent *stŭdium et industria.* Cic. *Omnia honesta neglĭgunt* dummŏdo *potentĭam* consĕquantur, They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id.

NOTE. *Mŏdo, dum,* and *dummŏdo,* when joined with a negation, become *mŏdo ne, dum ne,* and *dummŏdo ne.*

(2.) *Quamvis* (although) is in Cicero joined with a principal tense of the subjunctive; as, Quamvis *non* fuĕris *suāsor, apprŏbātor certe fuisti.* Cic. In later writers it is often used with the indicative; as, *Fēlĭcem Nĭŏbem,* quamvis *tot fūnĕra* vīdit. Ovid. So also once in Cicero, Quamvis *patrem suum numquam* vīdĕrat. Rab. Post. 2.

(3.) *Quamvis,* as a conjunction, in the sense of 'however much,' is joined with the subjunctive. So also when its component parts are separated; as, *C. Gracchus dixit, sibi in somnis Ti. frātrem visum esse dīcĕre,* quam vellet conctūrētur, *tămen,* etc.— *Quamvis* 'however much,' as an adverb, governs no particular mood.

(4.) *Etsi, tămetsi,* even if, although, and *quamquam,* although, commonly introduce an indicative clause:—*ĕtiamsi* is more frequently followed by the subjunctive. In later prose writers, and sometimes in Cicero and Sallust as well as in the poets, *quamquam* is joined with the subjunctive; as, Quamquam *præsente Lŭcullo* lŏquar. Cic. *Vi rĕgĕre patriam quamquam* possis. Sall. Jug. 3. *Fīlĭus* quamquam *Thētĭdos mārĭnæ Dardănas turres* quătĕret. Hor.

REMARK. The imperfect subjunctive with *ac si,* etc., is used after the present, to denote that in reality the thing is not so, but in that case a hypothetical subjunctive must be supplied; as, *Egnātii rem ut tueāre æque a te pĕto,* ac si *mea nĕgōtia* essent, i. e. ac *pĕtĕrem, si mea nĕgōtia essent,* as I would pray if, etc. Cic.

3. After *antĕquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive. The present indicative is commonly used when the action is to be represented as certain, near at hand, or already begun; the subjunctive is used when the thing is still doubtful, and also in general propositions; as,

Ea causa ante mortua est, quam *tu nātus esses*, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit ĕquos*, priusquam *pābŭla gustassent Trŏjæ, Xanthumque* bibissent. Virg. Priusquam incĭpias, *consŭlto ŏpus est*, Before you begin there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. (1.) *Dum, dōnec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

Dum hic vĕnīret, lŏcum rĕlinquĕre nŏluit, He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nĭhil pŭto tĭbi esse ūtĭlius quam oppĕrīri* quoad *scīre possis, quid tĭbi ăgendum sit*. Id. *Cornu tĕtendit, et duxit longe*, dōnec *curvāta cŏirent inter se cāpita*. Virg.—In the sense of 'as long as,' these particles take the indicative, but Tacitus joins *dōnec* with the subjunctive even when a simple fact is to be expressed.

(2.) *Dum*, while, is commonly used with the indicative present, whatever may be the tense of the principal sentence. Cf. § 259, R. 1, (1.), (a.)

5. *Quum (cum)*, when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

Qui non dīfendit injūriam, nĕque rĕpulsat a suis, quum *pŏtest, injuste făcit*. Cic. Quum *recte nārĭgāri pŏterit*, tum *nāvĭges*. Id. *Crēdo tum, quum Sicĭlia* flōrēbat *ŏpĭbus et cōpiis, magna artĭfĭcia fuisse in eā insŭlā*. Id. Quum *tot* sustineas *et tanta nĕgŏtia, peccem, si mĭher tua tempŏra*, Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time. Hor. Quum *vita sine ămīcis mĕtus plēna sit, rătio ipsa mŏnet ămīcĭtias compărāre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The rule for the use of *quum* may be thus expressed: *Quum temporal* takes the indicative, *quum causal* the subjunctive. Hence, when *quum* is *merely* a particle of time, with no reference to cause and effect, and not occurring in a historical narrative (see Rem. 2), it may be joined with any tense of the indicative. But when it is employed to express the relation of cause and effect, or has the meaning of 'though' or 'although,' it is joined with the subjunctive (b.). *Quum*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when, while*, or *after*; referring to a train of thought, it signifies *as, since, though* or *although, because*; but may often be translated *when*.

REM. 2. In narration, *quum*, even when it relates to time, is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, when a historical perfect stands in the principal clause; as,

Gracchus, quum *rem illam in rĕlĭgiōnem pŭpŭlo vŏnisse* sentīret, *ad sĕnātum rĕtŭlit*. Cic. *Alexander*, quum *intĕrēmisset Clĭtum, vix mănus a se abstĭnuit*. Id.

NOTE. *Quum temporal*, when it expresses an action frequently repeated, may be joined with the pluperfect indicative, and the apodosis then contains the imperfect; as, Quum *autem vir esse cœpĕrat*, dăbat se *lăbōri*. Cic. Quum *rŏsam vĭderat, tum incĭpĕre ver* arbitrābātur. Id. Cf. § 264, 12.

REM. 3. *Quum* in the sense of 'while' is joined with the perfect and imperfect indicative, often with the addition of *intĕrea* or *intĕrim*, to express simultaneous occurrences; as, *Cătĭlus cēpit magnum suæ virtūtis fructum*, quum *omnes prŏpe ūnā vōce, in eo ipso vos spem hăbĭtāros esse*, dixistis. Cic. *Cædēbātur virgis*

in mèdio fòro Messánæ cìvis Rômânus, jùdices, quum intèrea nulla vox àlia istius mìsèri audiēbātur, *nisi hæc: cìvis Rômânus sum.* Id.

REM. 4. *Quum*, for the most part preceded by an adverb, as, *jam, nondum, vix, ægre*, or joined with *repente* or *sùbito* is followed by the indicative, especially by the present indicative, to express the beginning of an action. In the cases mentioned in this and the preceding remark, the historians also use *quum* with the historical infinitive.

For the subjunctive after *si* and its compounds, see § 261.

C. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER *QUI*.

§ **264.** Relatives require the subjunctive, when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception; as, for example, a *consequence*, an *innate quality*, a *cause*, *motive*, or *purpose*.

1. (*a.*) When the relative *qui*, in a clause denoting a *result* of the character or quality of something specified in the antecedent clause, follows a demonstrative, and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive.

NOTE. The demonstratives after which *qui* takes the subjunctive, are *tam* with an adjective, *tantus, tālis, ējusmōdi, hūjusmōdi*, and *is, ille, iste*, and *hic* in the sense of *tālis*; as,

Quis est tam Lyncēus, qui *in tantis tĕnebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut ille in tantis*, etc., Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble, (or, as not to stumble,) in such darkness. Cic. *Tālem te esse opōrtet*, qui *ab impiōrum cìvium sŏciĕtāte* sējungas; i. e. *ut tu*, etc. Id. *At ea fuit lĕgātio Octāvii*, in quā *pĕrìcùli suspìcio non sŭbesset*, i. e. *ut in eā.* Id. *Nec tāmen ĕgo sum* ille *ferreus*, qui *frātris càrissĭmi mĕrōre non* mŏvear, i. e. *ut ĕgo non mŏvear.* Id. *Non sùmus ii*, quibus *nihil vērum esse* videātur, i. e. *ut nobis nihil*, etc. Id. *Nulla gens* tam *fĕra est*, cūjus *mentem non* imbuĕrit *deōrum ŏpīnio*, i. e. *ut ējus mentem*, etc. Id.

(*b.*) Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

Res parva dìctu, sed quæ *stŭliis in magnum certāmen* excessĕrit, i. e. *tālis* quæ....of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. *Nunc dicis aliquid*, quod *ad rem* pertineat, i. e. *tāle ut id*, etc. Id. So *quis sum*, for *num tālis sum;* as, *Quis sum*, cūjus *aures lædi nĕfas* sit? Sen.—In like manner, also, a demonstrative denoting a character or quality, is implied in the examples included in the following rule :—.

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quamquam is, etsi is*, or *dummōdo is*, it takes the subjunctive; as,

Laco, consìlii quamvis ĕgrĕgii, quod *non ipse* afferret, inìmicus, Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu aquam a pùmìce postùlas*, qui *ipsus* sìtiat. Plaut. *Nìhil mòlestum*, quod *non dĕsīdĕres*, i. e. *dummŏdo id.* Cic.

3. *Quod*, in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

Quod sciam, as far as I know; *quod mĕminĕrim*, as far as I recollect; *quod ĕgo intelligam; quod intelligi possit; quod conjectūrā prŏcīdĕri possit; quod salvā fĭde possim; quod commŏdo tuo fìat*, etc.—*Quìdem* is sometimes added to the relative in such sentences. *Quod sine mŏlestiā tuā fìat*, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. In the phrases *quantum possum, quantum ĕgo perspìcio*, on the other hand, the indicative is used.

4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

Májor sum, quam cui possit *fortūna nŏcēre,* i. e. *quam ut mihi,* etc., I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Audītā vōce præcōnis mājus gaudium fuit, quam quod ūnĭversum hŏmĭnes* căpĕrent, Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality, or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut,* which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his lĭtĕris lŏngĭor fŭi,* quam *aut* vellem, aut quam *me pŭtăvi fŏre:*—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse.*

5. A relative clause expressing a *purpose, aim,* or *motive,* and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

Lăcĕdæmŏnii lēgātos Athēnas mīsērunt, qui *eum absentem* accūsārent: i. e. *ut illi eum accūsārent,* The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar ĕquĭtātum omnem præmittit,* qui vĭdeant, *quas in partes iter făciant.* Cæs. *Sunt autem multi, qui ērĭpiunt ăliis, quod ăliis* largiantur. Cic. *Assĭduē rĕpĕtant,* quas perdant, *Bĕlides undas.* Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampsăcum ei (Thĕmistŏcli) rex dōnārat,* unde vīnum sūmĕret, i. e. *ex quā* or *ut inde,* etc. Nep. *Sŭper tăbernăc-ŭlum rēgis,* unde *ab omnibus conspĭci* posset, *imāgo sōlis crystallo inclūsa fulgē-bat.* Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain **indefinite general expressions,** specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

Fuērunt eā tempestāte, qui dīcĕrent, There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant,* quĭbus *appĕtentior fāmæ,* vĭdērētur, There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt,* qui censeant, *ūna ănĭmum et corpus ŏccīdĕre.* Cic. *Erunt,* qui *existĭmāri* vĕlint. Cic. *Si quis* ĕrit, qui *perpĕtuam ōrātiōnem* dē-sīdĕret, *altĕrā actiōne* audiet. Id. *Vĕnient lēgiōnes,* quæ *nĕque me inultum nĕque te impūnītum* pătiantur. Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod,* in the sense of 'there is reason why'; as, *Est* quod gaudeas, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod vīsum dŏmum.* Id. *Si est quod* dēsit, *ne beātus quĭdem est.* Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, ădest, præsto sunt, exsis-tunt, exŏriuntur, invĕniuntur, rĕpĕriuntur,* (scil. *hŏmĭnes*); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tem-pus vēnit,* etc.

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefi-nitely; as, *Est unde hæc* fiant. *Si est culpām* ut *Antipho in se* admīsĕrit, If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est ŭbi id isto mŏdo* văleat. Cic. So *est cur* and *est ut* in the sense of *est cur*; as, *Ille ĕrat,* ut ōdisset *dēfensōrem sălūtis meæ,* i. e. he had reason to hate. Cic. *Non est ĭgitur* ut mīrandum sit, There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quīdam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi,* etc., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt ōrātiōnes quædam, quas Mēnoクスĭto* dăbo. Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui,* even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos* jūvat. Hor. *Sunt qui ĭta* dīcunt. Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general **negative,** or an **interrogative** expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

Nēmo est, qui *haud* intélligat, There is no one *who does not understand.* Cic.
Nulla res est, quæ *perférre* possit *continuum lăbōrem*, There is nothing which
can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corpŏris*, quæ *non* sit *minor.*
Id. *Nihil est*, quod *tam misĕros* fáciat, *quam impiĕtas et scĕlus.* Cic. *In fŏro
vix dēcĭmus quisque est*, qui *ipsus sēse* nosçat. Plaut. *Quis est*, qui *útĭlia* fúgiat?
Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ látebra est, in* quam *non* in-
tret *mĕtus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcĭus quam habēre*, quicum *omnia* audeas *sic lŏ-
qui ut tēcum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quicum* rather than
the definite *quōcum*, § 136, R. 1.) *An est quisquam*, qui *hoc* ignōret? Is there
any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Numquid est mĭli*, quod *non* dixĕris? Ter.

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nēmo, nullus, nihil, ūnus non, ālius non, non quisquam,
vix ullus, nec ullus*, etc., with *est : vix* with an ordinal and *quisque ; nĕgo* esse *quemquam*,
etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis, quid ; qui, quæ, quod ;
quantus, ūter, ecquis, numquis, an quisquam, an aliquis, quŏtus quisque, quŏtus*, etc.,
with *est? quot, quam multi*, etc., with *sunt?*

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est, nihil est, quid est, num-
quid est*, etc., followed by *quod, cur, quăre*, or *quamobrem*, and denoting ' there
is no reason why,' ' what cause is there?' ' is there any reason?' as, Quod
tímeas, *non est*, There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est*,
quod *adventum nostrum* pertīmescas. Cic. *Quid est*, quod *de ējus cīvĭtāte* dŭbĭtes ?
Id. *Quæris* a me, *quid ĕgo Cătilīnam mĕtuam. Nihil*, et cūrāvi *ne quis mĕtuĕret.
Quid est*, cur *virtus ipsa per se non* efficiat *beātos ?* Id.—So after *non hăbeo*, or
nihil hăbeo ; as, *Non hăbeo*, quod te accūsem. Cic. *Nil hăbeo*, quod āgam, I have
nothing to do. Hor. *Nihil hăbeo*, quod ad te scrībam. Cic. So without a nega-
tive, *De quibus* hăbeo *ipse*, quid sentiam. Id. *Causa* or, with *quid* and *nihil,
causæ*, is sometimes added ; as, *Non fŭit causa*, cur postŭlāres. Id. *Quid ĕrat
causæ*, cur mĕtuĕret. Cic.

NOTE 4. (*a.*) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions
included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or
quality of the subject of the antecedent clause ; and the relative, as in the pre-
ceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or
demonstrative pronoun with *ut* ; as, *Nēmo est, qui* nescĭat, There is no one who
is ignorant, *i. e.* no one is ignorant. Cic. So, *Sunt, qui hoc carpant*, There are
some who blame this, *i. e.* some blame this. Vell.

(*b.*) If the relative clause is to be construed as a *part of the logical subject*
it does not require the subjunctive ; as, *Nihil stăbĭle est*, quod *infĭdum* est
Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the *reason* of what goes before,
takes the subjunctive ; as,

Peccārisse mihi vĭdeor, qui *a te* discessĕrim, I think I did wrong in leaving
you. Cic. *Inertĭam accūsas ădŏlescentĭum*, qui *istam artem non* ēdiscant, You
blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id.
O fortūnāte ădŏlescens, qui *tuæ vĭrtūtis Hŏmērum præcōnem* invēnĕris!—in hav-
ing found. Id. *Cătmĭnĭus fŭit mīrĭfĭcā vĭgĭlantĭa*, qui *suo tōto cōnsŭlātu somnum
non* vīdĕrit,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui, quippe qui*, or *utpŏte
qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive ; as,

Convīvĭa cum patre non īnĭbat, quippe qui *ne in oppĭdum quidem nĭsi perrāro*
vēnisset. Cic. *Nēque Antōnĭus prŏcul abĕrat*, utpŏte qui *magno exercĭtu* sĕquĕ-
rētur. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy ; as, Quippe
qui *omnia* vīcĕrat. Sall.

9. After *dignus, indignus, aptus*, and *ĭdōneus*, a relative clause
takes the subjunctive ; as,

Vĭdētur, qui *ălĭquando* impĕret, dignus esse, He seems to be worthy at some
time to command. Cic. *Rustĭci nostri quum fĭdem ălĭcūjus bŏnĭtātemque laudant,
dignum esse dīcunt*, quicum *in tĕnebris* mīces. Id. *Nulla vĭdēbātur aptĭor per-*

24

sōna, quæ *de ætāte* lŏquĕrētur. Id.   *Pompeius* īdōneus *non est*, qui impetret. Id.
Et rem īdōneam, *de* quā quærātur, *et hŏmines* dignos, quĭbuscum dissĕrātur, *pŭ-tant.* Id.

Note 5. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis servus* lībertāte dignus *fuit*, cui *nostra sălus cāra non esset?* The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

Note 6. The infinitive frequently follows these adjectives in poetry, though rarely in prose; as, *Et puer ipse fuit* cantāri dignus. Virg.:—and sometimes *ut*; as, *Eras* dignus, ut hăbēres *intĕgram mănum.* Quint.

10. A relative clause, after *ūnus, sōlus, prīmus,* etc., restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

Hæc est ūna contentio, quæ *ădhuc* permānsĕrit, This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic.   *Vŏluptas est* sōla, quæ *nos* vŏcet *ad se, et* allicent *suapte* natūrā, Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause,* it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

Semper hăbĭti sunt fortissĭmi, qui summam impĕrii pŏtīrentur, Those were always accounted the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep.   Quemcumque *lictor jussu* consŭlis prĕhendisset, *trĭbūnus mitti jŭbēbat.* Liv.   Ut quisque maxĭme labōrāret lŏcus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut alĭquos mittēbat.   So after *si quis* or *qui*; as, Si qui *rem mōlitiōsius* gessisset, *dēdĕcus* existimābant. Cic.   Quŏtiens sŭper tāli nĕgōtio consultāret, ēditā sŏlmās parte ūtēbātur. Tac.   *Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quā* tŭlisset impĕtum, sustinēre văluit.—It is sometimes found in like manner after *quum, ŭbi, ut,* and *si* when used in the sense of *quum,* when repeated actions are spoken of; as, *Id* ŭbi dixisset, *hastam in fĭnes eōrum ēmittēbat.* Liv.   Sin Nūmĭdæ prŏpius accessissent, *ibi* vĭrō virtūtem ostendēre.* Sall.   Sometimes even the present subjunctive is so used when employed as an aorist to express things which have happened repeatedly, and still happen (see § 145, I. 2.); as, Ubi *de magnā virtūte et glōriā bonōrum* mĕmŏres, *quæ sibi quisque,* etc. Sall.

Note 7. This is called the *indefinite subjunctive*, or *subjunctive of generality,* inasmuch as the action is not referred to a distinct, individual case. The indicative, however, is used in such cases more frequently than the subjunctive.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 265.   Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

Note 1. A question is indirect when its substance is stated in a dependent clause without the interrogative form. Indirect questions generally depend upon those verbs and expressions which commonly take after them the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. § 272. Thus:—

Quālis sit *ănĭmus, ipse ănĭmus nescit,* The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic.   *Crĕdĭbĭle non est,* quantum scribam, It is incredible how much I write. Id.   Quis *ego* sim, me rŏgĭtas? Do you ask me, who I am? Plaut.   *Ad te* quid scrībam *nescio.* Cic.   *Nec* quid scrībam *hăbeo,* Nor have I any thing to write. Id.   *Dŏce me,* ūbi sint *dii,* Inform me where the gods are. Id.   *Incertum est,* quo te lŏco mors exspectet. Sen. Ep.   Quam prĭdem *sĭbi hĕrēdĭtas* vēnisset, *dŏcet.* Id.   *Nunc accĭpe,* quāre dēsĭpiant *omnes.* Hor.   *Id* utrum *illi* sentiant, an

vēro sĭmulent, *tu intelligere.* Cic.   *Quæro,* num *tu sĕnātui causam tuam* permittas. Id.   *Vides,* ut *altā* stet *nive candidum Sōracte.* Hor.   *Nescit, vītāne* fruātur, an sit *ăpud mānes.* Ovid.

NOTE 2. All interrogatives whether adjectives, pronouns, or particles, may serve as connectives of clauses containing indirect questions; as,

Quantus, quālis, quŏt, quŏtus, quŏtuplex, ŭter; quis, qui, cŭjas; ŭbi, quŏ, unde, quā, quorsum, quandiu, quamdūdum, quampridem, quŏties, cur, quāre, quamobrem, quemadmŏdum, quōmŏdo, ut, quam, quantŏpĕre, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon.

REMARK 1. The indicative is frequently used in dependent questions, especially in Terence and Plautus and occasionally in later poets; as, *Vide ărāritia* quid fācit. Ter.   So Virg. Ecl. 5, 7.   In the best prose writers the indicative generally indicates that the question is direct, or that the sentence is not a question; as, *Querĭmus ĭbi malĕfĭciam* fit, Let us seek there, where the crime actually is. Cic.   *Nihil est admīrābilius, quam quōmŏdo ille mortem fĭlii* tūlit.

REM. 2. In double questions, 'whether—or,' the first may be introduced by *utrum,* or the enclitic *ne,* or without an interrogative particle.   Hence there are four forms of double questions,—1. *utrum* (or *utrum ne*),—*an.*   2. *utrum,* —*an* (*anne*).   3. *-ne,* —— *an.*   4. *-ne,* —— *-ne ;* as, *Multum intĕrest,* utrum *laus* imminuātur, an *sălus* dēserātur. Cic.   The interrogative particle *utrum* is not used in a single question; and *num—an* is used only in direct questions.   The English 'or not' in the second part, which is used without a verb, is expressed in Latin by *annon* or *necne,* either with or without a verb; but *necne* occurs only in indirect questions; as, *Dii sint—an,* necne *sint,* quæritur.   Cic.—*Ne— ne, an—an,* or *num—num* scarcely occur except in poetical or unclassical language.

REM. 3. *Dŭbito, dŭbium est,* or *incertum est an, dĕlibĕro* or *hæsito an,* and especially *haud scio an, nescio an,* though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative.   Compare § 198, 11, R. (*e.*)

REM. 4. *Nescio quis,* used nearly in the sense of *ăliquis,* does not influence the mood of the following verb; as, *Sed căsu* nescio quo, *in eo tempŏra ætas nostra* incĭdit. Cic.   *Lăcus,* nescio quo *căsu, nocturno tempŏre* incensus est. Nep. So, also, *nescio quōmŏdo,* 'somehow' or 'in some way'; as, *Sed* nescio quōmŏdo, *inhæret in mentibus quăsi augŭrium.* Cic.   In like manner *mīrum quam, mīrum quantum, nīmium quantum,* and the like, when united to express only one idea, do not affect the mood of the verb; as, *Sāles in dicendo nīmium quantum vălent,*—very much. Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INSERTED CLAUSES.

§ 266.   1. When a dependent proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part,* either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

Quid enim pŏtest esse tam perspĭcuum, quam esse ăliquod nūmen, quo hæc rĕgantur? For what can be so clear as, that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed? Cic.   Here the thing which is stated to be clear is, not merely *esse aliquod nūmen,* that there is a god, but also that the world is governed by him. Hence the latter clause, *quo hæc rĕgantur* is an essential part of the general proposition.   *Illud sic făre dēfĭniri sŏlet, dĕcōrum id esse, quod consentāneum sit hŏminis excellentiæ.* Id.   *Audium quid sit, quod Epĭcūrum non* prŏbes, I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus Id   *Jussit ut, quæ* vēnissent, *nāves Euboeam pĕtērent.* Liv.

REMARK 1. Hence the subjunctive is used in general sentences, in which the class of things mentioned exists only as a conception or idea, while the individual thing has a real existence; as, *Est ĕnim ulciscendi et pŭniendi mŏdus, atque haud scio an sătis sit eum* qui lăcessiĕrit *injŭriæ suæ pænitēre,* i. e. each individual offender of the class.

REM. 2. When the principal proposition contains a subjunctive denoting a *result,* after *ita, tam, tălis,* etc., the inserted clause has the indicative; as, *Asĭa vēro tam ŏpĭma est et fertĭlis,* ut—*multĭtūdĭne eărum rērum,* quæ exportantur, *făcĭle omnĭbus terris antēcellat.* Cic. — The same is the case in definitions; as, *Vidēre igĭtur opŏrtet, quæ sint convĕnientia cum ĭpso nĕgōtio,* hoc est, quæ *ab re sēpărāre non possunt.* Cic. — So also explanatory clauses, especially circumlocutions introduced by a relative pronoun, are sometimes found with the indicative; as, *Ităque ille Mărius item exĭmie L. Plŏtium dilexit, cŭjus ingĕnio pŭtābat ea,* quæ gessĕrat, *posse cĕlebrāri.* Cic.

NOTE. To this rule belongs the construction of the *ōrātio oblīqua,* 'indirect discourse,' or 'reported speech,' in which the language of another is presented, not as it was conceived or expressed by him, but in the third person. Thus, Cæsar said, 'I came, I saw, I conquered,' is direct,—Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' is indirect discourse.

2. In the *ōrātio oblīqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quintilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *ōrātio dīrecta,* the latter of the *ōrātio oblīqua;*— *Antōnius inquit,* 'Ars eărum rērum est, quæ sciuntur', Antonius says, 'Art belongs to those things which are known.' Cic. *Antōnius inquit,* artem eărum rērum esse, quæ sciantur, Antonius says, that 'art belongs to those things which are known.' Quint.

So, *Sŏcrătes dīcĕre sŏlēbat, omnes, in eo quod* scīrent, *sătis esse ēlŏquentes,* Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all were sufficiently eloquent in that which they understood?' Cic. *Cĭto mīrāri se* aiēbat, *quod non* rīdēret *hăruspex, hăruspĭcem quum* vīdisset. Id. *Nĕgat jus esse, qui miles non sit, pugnāre cum hoste.* Id. Indignābantur ibi esse impĕrium, ŭbi non esset lībertas. Liv. *Ităque Athĕnienses, quod hŏnestum non esset, id ne ūtĭle quĭdem (esse) pŭtāvērunt.* Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *ōrātio dīrecta,* to denote liberty, power, etc., the same remains in the *ōrātio oblīqua,* and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hæc Ariŏvistus respondit, quum* vellet, *congrĕdĕrētur,* To this Ariovistus replied, that 'he might meet him when he pleased.' Cæs. In the *ōrātio dīrecta,* this would be *congrĕdiāris.*

(*b.*) The imperative in the *ōrātio dīrecta* is, in the *ōrātio oblīqua,* changed into the subjunctive; as, *hoc mihi dicĭte,* which in the *ōrātio oblīqua* is, *hoc sibi dicant,* or *hoc sibi dicĕrent,* according to the tense of the leading verb.

(*c.*) So also direct questions addressed to the second person, when changed from direct to indirect speech, become subjunctives. Liv. 6, 37.—But such questions when not addressed to the second person are expressed in the *ōrātio oblīqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; as when in direct speech we say, *Etiamsi vētĕris contŭmēliæ oblīvisci* rělim, *num possum ĕtiam rĕcentium injŭriārum mĕmŏriam dēpŏnĕre?* The *ōrātio oblīqua* will be, *Cæsar respondit* (histor. perf.)— si vētĕris contŭmēliæ oblīvisci vellet, *num ĕtiam rĕcentium injŭriārum—mĕmŏriam dēpŏnĕre posse?* Cæs. Very rarely the accusative with the infinitive is found in a question of the second person, as in Liv. 6, 17: but the subjunctive in questions of the third person is le·s uncommon in Cæsar; as, *Quis păti posset?* for *quem păti posse? Quis hoc sibi persuădēret?* for *quem sibi persuāsūrum?* See § 273, 3.

REM. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *ōrātio oblīqua,* either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the inserted clause contains the words or sentiments of the subject of the leading clause, all references to him are regularly expressed by the reflexives *sui* and *suus*; as, *Huc nēcessĭtāte cŏactus dŏmĭno nāvis qui sit ăpĕrĭt, multa pollĭcens, si se conservasset.* Nep. And this is equally true when the word to which the pronoun refers is not in reality the grammatical subject, provided it may still be conceived as such; as, *Quum ei in suspĭcĭōnem vĕnisset, ălĭquid in ĕpĭstŏlā de se esse scriptum.* Nep.; for the words, *quum ei in suspĭcĭōnem vĕnisset*, are equivalent to *quum suspĭcărētur.* See § 208, (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *ōrātĭo dĭrecta* into the *oblĭqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form; but the perfect is used after the present, perfect definite, or future.

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Impĕrāvĭt Alexander Lȳsippo, ut ĕōrum ĕquĭtum, qui ăpŭd Grānĭcum cĕcĭdĕrant, făcĕret stătŭas,* Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3.

A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb,) when it contains the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

Sŏcrătes accūsātus est, quŏd corrumpĕret jŭventūtem, Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, lit., because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invŏcābant, cujus ad sŏlenne vĕnissent,* They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. *Quos vīcĕris ămīcos tĭbi esse cāre crēdas,* Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends. Here, in the first example, the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. In the last, it is implied by the use of the subjunctive mood, that the belief spoken of is that of the person addressed:—*quos vīcisti* would have been merely an addition of the speaker, by means of which he would have designated the persons whose friendship he was speaking of; and, in general, the *indicative*, in such sentences, is employed in those statements which are independent of the sentiments of the person, to whose thoughts or words allusion is made. Cf. supra, 2, R. 5.

REMARK. In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *dīco, pŭto, arbĭtror,* and the like, are often construed in a similar manner, although, properly speaking, not these verbs, but those in the clauses dependent on them, should be in the subjunctive; as, *Quum ēnim, Hannĭbālis permissu, exisset de castris, rĕdĭit paulo post, quod se oblĭtum nescĭo quod dīcĕret,...*because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic. *Ab Athēnĭensĭbus, lŏcum sĕpultūrae intra urbem ut dărent, impetrāre non pŏtŭit, quod rēlĭgĭōne se impĕdīri dīcĕrent.* Id.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267.

The imperative mood is used to express a *command, wish, advice,* or *exhortation ;* as,

Nosce te, Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam mĕmento servāre mentem,* Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc ădes,* Come hither. Virg. *Pasce cāpellas, et pōtum pastas ăge, et inter ăgendum occursāre capro căvēto.* Id.

(1.) The imperative *present* denotes that an action is to be performed directly or at once; as, *lĕge*, read; *mŏrēre*, die; or that a state or condition is to continue; as, *vīve*, live.

(2.) The imperative *future* denotes that something is to be done, as soon as something else has taken place; as, *Quum vălētŭdĭni tŭæ consŭlŭĕris, tum consŭlĭto nāvĭgātiōni.* Cic. *Priŭs audīte paucis; quod quum dīxĕro, si plăcŭĕrit, făcĭtōte.* Ter. The precedent event is often to be supplied by the mind. Sometimes, especially in poetry, the imperative present is used for the imperative future, and, on the other hand, *scīto* and *scītōte*, from *scio*, are used instead of the imperative present, which is wanting.

(3.) Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts*, *laws*, and *wills*; and also in *precepts* and *rules of conduct*; as, *Rēgĭo impĕrĭo duo sunto, iíque consŭles* appellantor, *mĭlĭtiæ summum jus hăbento, nēmĭni* pārento, *illīs sălus pŏpŭli suprēma lex esto.* Cic. *Non sătis est pulchra esse pŏēmăta, dulcia* sunto. Hor. *Ignoscĭto sæpe altĕri, numquam tĭbi.* Cic.

REMARK I. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *nē*, and *nor* by *nēve*; as,

Ne *tanta ănĭmis* assuescĭte *bella.* Virg. Ne crēde *cŏlōri.* Id. *Hŏmĭnem mortuum in urbe* ne sĕpĕlīto, *nēve* ūrĭto. Cic.

NOTE. *Non* and *nĕque* occur, though rarely, with the imperative; as, *Vos quŏque* non *cāris aures ŏnĕrāte lăpillis*, nec *prōdĭte grăves insūto vestĭbus auro.* Ovid. But with the subjunctive used for the imperative *non* and especially *nĕque* are found more frequently. Cf. § 260, R. 6, (*b.*)—In Plautus and Terence *ne* is of common occurrence both with the imperative and with the present subjunctive, and with no difference of meaning; but later poets chiefly use *ne* with the present subjunctive, and *ne* with the imperative only when they speak emphatically. In classical prose writers the periphrastic *nōli* with the infinitive is preferred.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of both tenses of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as, *Qui ădĭpisci vēram glōriam vŏlet, justĭtiæ* fungātur *offĭciis.* Cic. *Quod dŭbĭtas*, ne fēcĕris. Plin. Ep. See § 260, II., R. 6. An imperative of the perfect passive is very rarely found; as, *At vos admŏnĭti nostris quŏque cāsĭbus* este. Ovid. *Jacta ālĕa* esto. Cæs. in Suet. But the subjunctive is more common; as, *Jacta sit ālĕa.* Sometimes also the future indicative; as, *Sed vĭdēbis, meăque nĕgōtia* vĭdēbis, *mēque dis jăvantĭbus ante brŭmam* exspectābis, *instead of* vĭde, vĭde, *exspecta.* Cic. *Ubi sententiam meam vōbis pērēgĕro, tum quĭbus eădem plăcēbunt, in dextram partem tăciti* transībĭtis, *instead of transītōte.* Liv. With the future the negative is *non.* See § 259, R. 1, (4.)

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple affirmative imperative, *cūra* or *cūrāto ut, fac ut,* or *fac* alone is used with the subjunctive; as, *Cūra ut quam prīmum* vĕnias, *Come* as soon as possible. *Fac ērŭdias,* Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. For the negative imperative *fac ne, cāve ne* or *cāve* alone, with the present or perfect subjunctive is used; but especially *nōli* with the infinitive; as, *Nōli pŭtāre,* Do not suppose. Cic. *Cāve exīstĭmes,* Do not think. Id. Nōlīte *id velle quod non fĭĕri pŏtest, et* căvēte ne *spe præsentis pācis perpĕtuam pācem* ŏmittātis. Id.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 268. 1. The infinitive partakes of the properties of the noun and verb, just as the participle combines the properties of the adjective and verb. It expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed.

2. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

Hoc făcĕre possum, I am able to do this. Cic. Vidi *nostros inimicos cŭpĕre bellum,* I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec gĕmĕre aëriā cessābit turtur ab ulmo,* Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.—*Victōrem victæ* succŭbuisse quĕror, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Sē a sēnibus* audisse dicēbant, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. Audiet *cives* ācuisse *ferrum jŭventus,* The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor.—Nĕgat *sēse verbum* esse factūrum, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam* audiĕrat *non* dātum iri *fīlio uxōrem suo,* After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper* existimābitis *nihil hōrum vos* visūros fŏre, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. (*a.*) The present and perfect infinitives are sometimes called respectively the infinitives of *incomplete* and of *completed* action. The present infinitive, however, is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *mĕmĭni*; but in such case the speaker transfers himself to the past, and the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me* mĕmĭni dĭcĕre, I remember *my saying* this. Cic. *Teucrum* mĕmĭni *Sidōna* vĕnīre, I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon. Virg. So with *mĕmŏriā* tĕneo. Cic. Phil. 8, 10. *Scribit* also is construed like *mĕminit*; as, Cic. Off. 3, 2: and after the same analogy, and for the sake of vivid expression Cicero says, *M. Maximum* accēpimus *făcĭle* cēlāre, tăcēre, dissimŭlāre, etc.—though speaking of things which he had not witnessed himself. So, also, with *recordor*;—*Recordor longe omnibus ūnum* antĕferre *Dēmosthĕnem.* Cic. When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *mĕmĭni*; as, *Mĕmĭnistis me ita* distribuisse *causam.* Cic.

(*b.*) The passive voice having no simple form for expressing the completed state of suffering makes use of the combination of the perfect participle with *esse*; as, *ămātus* esse, to have been loved. When thus combined *esse* loses its own signification of a continued state, and when this state is to be expressed, another infinitive must be chosen; as, Constrictam *jam hōrum conscientiā* tĕnēri *conjūrātiōnem tuam non* vĭdes? Cic. Sometimes, however, when no ambiguity can arise, *esse* in the usual combination retains its original meaning; as, *Apud Plătōnem est, omnem mōrem Lăcēdæmōniōrum* inflammātum esse *cŭpiditāte vincendi.* Id. Here *inflammātum* esse expresses a continued or habitual state—*Fuisse* with the perfect participle denotes a state completed previous to a certain past time; as, *Jŭbet bŏno ănimo esse; sōpītum* fuisse *rēgem sŭbĭto ictu.* Liv.

REM. 2. To express the result of an action rather than its progress, the perfect infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present, especially after *sătis hăbeo, sătis mihi est, pŭdet, contentus sum, mĕlius ĕrit, vŏlo* or a verb of equivalent meaning; as, *Bacchātur vătes, magnum si pĕctŏre possit* excussisse *deum.* Virg. *Quum illam nēmo* vĕlit *attigisse.* Plin. The poets use the infinitive perfect where we should expect a present; as, *Tendentes Pĕlion* impŏsuisse *Olympo.* Hor.

REM. 3. The present infinitive is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Dēsĭne fāta deûm* flecti *spĕrāre,* Cease to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Prōgĕniem Trōjāno a sanguine* dŭci *audĭvĕrat.* Id. *Cras mihi argentum* dāre *dixit,* i. e. se *dătūrum esse.* Ter. *Cāto* affirmat *se vivo illum non* triumphāre. Cic.

REM. 4. (*a.*) The infinitive future active is formed by a combination of the participle future active with *esse*; as, *ămātūrus* esse; the infinitive future passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *iri*; as, *ămātum* iri. These future infinitives denote an action or state as continuing. The participle in *rus,* which properly expresses intention (see § 162, 14), takes also the infinitive *fuisse* to express a past intention; as, Scio te *scriptūrum fuisse,* I know that

you have had the intention to write, whence it was an easy transition to the sense, 'you would have written,' in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled. This infinitive is used especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used (cf. § 162, 14, R. 3.); as, *Etiamsi obtemperasset auspiciis, idem ēventūrum fuisse pŭto.* Cic. In like manner the infinitive future with *esse* is used in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences instead of the imperfect subjunctive; as, *Libertus, nisi jūrasset, scĕlus se factūrum* (esse) *arbitrābātur.* Id.

(b.) Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *fŭtūrum esse* or *fŏre,* followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Numquam pŭtāvi* fŏre, ut *supplex ad te* venīrem, I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspĭcor* fŏre, ut infringātur *hŏmĭnum inprŏbĭtas.* Id. *Crēdēbam* fŏre, ut *ĕpistŏlam* scripsisses.—So, also, in the passive for a continued state of future suffering the present and imperfect are used; as, *Crēdo* fŏre, ut *ĕpistŏlam* scrībātur, and, *Crēdēbam* fŏre, ut *ĕpistŏla* scrībĕrētur. But to express a completed state in future time the perfect participle is employed; as, *Quos* spēro *brĕvi tempŏre tēcum* cōpŭlātos fŏre. Cic. *Quod vidēret nŏmĭne pācis bellum invŏlūtum* fŏre. Id. This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed; as, *Spēro* fŏre ut *săpias.*—*Fŏre* is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active, viz. *Te ad me* fŏre ventūrum. Cic. Att. 5, 21: and *Quum sĕnātus censēret—lĭbenter* factūros fŏre. Liv. 6, 42.

Rem. 5. (a.) The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse,* denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos lăbōres* susceptūrum fuisse, *si iisdem fīnibus glōriam meam quibus vītam essem termĭnātūrus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, etc. Cic. *Ut perspĭcuum sit omnĭbus, nĭsi tanta ăcerbĭtas injūriæ fuisset, numquam illos in eum lŏcum prōgressūros fuisse,....*that they never would have come into that place. Id.

(b.) *Fŭtūrum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive passive, corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition; as, *Nĭsi nunciĭ essent allāti, existĭmābant plērĭque* fŭtūrum fuisse, ut *oppĭdum* āmittĕrētur,...that the town would have been lost. Cæs.

(c.) The participle future passive cannot be used to form an infinitive future passive, since it always retains the meaning of necessity, and in this sense has three regular infinitives, *ămandum esse, ămandum fuisse,* and *ămandum fŏre;* as, *Instāre hĭemem, aut sub pellĭbus* hăbendos *mĭlĭtes* fŏre, *aut* diff'erendum esse *in æstātem bellum.* Liv.

Rem. 6. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, the perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, (see § 259, R. 4.), sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *(Dixit) sibi vītam fīliæ sui cāriōrem* fuisse, *si lībēre ac pŭdĭce vīvĕre lĭcĭtum fuisset,* (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv. This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary, when the verb has no future participle; as, *Equĭdem Plătōnem existĭmo, si gĕnus fŏrense dĭcendi tractāre rŏluisset, grăvissĭme et cōpiōsissĭme* pŏtuisse dĭcĕre,—would have been able to speak. Cic.

§ 269.

The infinitive may be regarded either as a verb or as an abstract noun. (a.) As a verb it is used either indefinitely (§ 143, 4), or with a subject of its own, which is put in the accusative, (§ 239). But the infinitive *passive* of neuter and sometimes of active verbs, like the third person singular of that voice, may be used impersonally or without a subject; as, *Vĭdes tōto* prŏperāri *lītŏre,* You see a stir is made all along the shore. Virg. See §§ 209, R. 3, (2.), and 239, R. 4. The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, R. 5.

(*b.*) As a noun, the infinitive, either alone or with a subject-accusative, has two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and is accordingly used either as the subject or the object of a verb.

THE INFINITIVE AS THE *SUBJECT* OF A VERB.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* of a verb; as,

Ad rempúblicam pertinet me conservári, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Nunquam est útile* peccáre, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Május dédecus est porta* amittére *quam omníno non* párvisse. Sall. In the first example *conservári* with its subject accusative *me* is the subject of *pertinet*, and is equivalent to 'my preservation': in the second, *peccáre* is the subject of *est útile.* See § 202, 2, and III. R. 2.

REMARK 1. A general truth may be expressed by the infinitive without a subject; as, *Fácinus est* vincíre *cívem Románum,* To bind a Roman citizen, or, that one should bind a Roman citizen, is a crime. But in such case the verb *esse* and verbs denoting *to appear, to be considered or called* (§ 210, R. 3.), require the noun or adjective of the predicate to agree with the implied subject in the accusative; as, *Æquum* est *peccátis véniam* poscentem *reddére rursus.* Hor. *Atticus maximum æstimávit* quæstum, mémorem grátumque cognosci. Nep.

NOTE. The indefinite pronoun *áliquem* or *áliquos* may in such cases be supplied, and the same indefiniteness may be expressed by *te* or *nos,* cf. § 209, R. 7; but it is still more frequently expressed by the infinitive passive. Hence the sentence *Fácinus est vincíre cívem Románum,* may also be expressed by *Fácinus est* vincíri *cívem Románum.* So, *Quam víderent de eórum virtúte non* desperári. Nep.—The impersonal verbs *licet, decet, oportet, opus est,* and *nécesse est,* when there is no definite subject, are joined with the infinitive active alone; but when there is a subject-accusative, they are connected with the passive construction; as, a c t. *licet hoc fácere; decet specímen cápere ex hac re;* p a s s. *licet hoc fíeri; decet specímen cápi.*

REM. 2. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is often the subject of a proposition, when the substantive verb with a noun, a neuter adjective, or an impersonal verb forms the predicate. Of this kind are *justum, æquum, verisímile, consentáneum, apertum—est, érat,* etc., *nécesse est, opus est;— appáret, constat, convénit, decet, licet, oportet; intelligítur, perspicítur,* etc.; as, *Cui verba dáre difficíle* est. Ter. *Mendácem mémorem esse* oportet. Quint. *Légem brévem esse* oportet. Sen. *Constat profécto ad salútem cívium* inventas esse *leges.* Cic. *Non énim me hoc jam dícere* pádébit. Id. See § 209, R. 3, (5.), (a.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non lícere cúiquam in náve cápillos* depónere. Ter.

REM. 4. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may also be the predicate nominative; as, *Impúne quælibet* fácere *id est* régem esse. Sall. In this sentence *fácere* is the subject, and *régem esse* is the predicate; for *id,* which only represents by a kind of apposition the clause *impúne quælibet fácere,* can be omitted.

REM. 5. When the infinitive *esse,* (or others of similar meaning, as, *fíeri, vívere, vítam dégere, cédere, ábire,* etc.), with a predicate adjective (or noun), is joined with *licet,* such predicate is put in the accusative, if the subject-accusative of the infinitive is expressed, and sometimes, also, when it is omitted, but more frequently, in the latter case, the predicate adjective or noun is attracted to the dative following *licet;* as, *Ut eum lícent ante tempus* consúlem fíeri. Auct. ad Her. *Médios esse jam non* licébit. Cic. *Si cívi Románo licet esse* Gáditánum. Id.—*Lícuit énim esse otióso* Themístocli. Id. *Mihi* négligenti esse *non licet.* Id. *Sibi vítam fíliæ suæ cariórem fuisse, si líberæ ac púdicæ vívere licítum fuisset* (scil. ei). Liv. So also *nécesse est* with the predicate in the

dative. *Vōbis nĕcesse est fortibus vĭris esse.* Liv.—But *lĭcet, ŏportet,* and *nĕcesse est* are also joined with the subjunctive mood, and hence is derived the construction of *lĭcet* as a conjunction. See § 263, 2.

THE INFINITIVE AS THE *OBJECT* OF A VERB.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb; as,

Hæc vītāre cŭpĭmus, We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Pŏëtas omnīno non cōnor attingĕre,* I do not at all attempt to read the poets. Id. Sententiam vălēre *cŭpĭērunt,* They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spēro te vălēre,* I hope that you are well. Id.

NOTE. The infinitive as the object of a verb supplies the place of the accusative of the *thing,* and hence many active verbs besides the infinitive take in the active voice an accusative of the *person,* cf. § 231, R. 3, (*b.*), and in the passive retain the infinitive; as, *Consŭles jŭbentur scrībĕre exercĭtum. Mūros adīre vĕtiti sunt.* Cf. § 234, I.

REMARK 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun.

(*a.*) It may depend upon *relative adjectives,* (see § 213, R. 1), which, by the poets, are joined with the infinitive instead of their usual construction with the genitive of the gerund, etc.; as, *Cēdĕre* nescins. Hor. *Arĭdi committĕre pugnam.* Ovid. *Cŭpĭdus mŏriri.* Id. *Cantāre* pĕriti *Arcādes.* Virg. Callĭdus *condĕre furto.* Hor. *Quidlibet* impŏtens *spērāre.* Id. *Sutrīnas făcĕre* inscius. Varr. Insuētus *vēra audire.* Liv. Certa *mŏri.* Virg. Fēlĭcior *unguĕre tēla.* Virg. So, Audax *omnia perpĕti,* Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. Sollers *ornāre Cŷpassis,* Skilful to adorn. Ovid. Segnes *solvĕre* nĕdum. Hor. Indŏcĭlis *paupĕriem pāti.* Id. *Non lēnis fāta revĕllĕre.* Id. See § 213, R. 4, (1.)

(*b.*) It may also depend upon adjectives signifying *usefulness, fitness,* etc., which are sometimes by the poets construed with the infinitive instead of the dative; as, (*Tibia*) aspīrāre *et* ŭdesse *chŏris ĕrat* ūtĭlis. Hor. *Ætas mollis et* apta rēgi. Ovid. *Fons ĕtiam rīvo* dāre *nŏmen* idŏneus. Hor. *Frūges* consŭmĕre nāti. Id. And after *dignus* and *contentus;* as, Dignus *amāri.* Virg. Cf. § 244, R. 2, (*b.*)

(*c.*) Upon a noun; as, Tempus *est hūjus libri* făcĕre *fĭnem,* It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Iniit* consĭlia *rēges* tollĕre, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id. *Ea erat confessio* căpŭt *rērum Rōmam* esse. Liv. Cŭpĭdo *incessĕrat* Æthĭŏpiam *invīsĕre.* Curt. *Quĭbus in ōtio* vīvĕre *cŏpĭa* ĕrat. Sall. So, Nec *mĭhi sunt vires* inĭmīcos pellĕre *tēctis,* instead of *pellendis inimīcis,* or *ad pellendos inĭmīcos.* Ovid.

(*d.*) If for the infinitives depending on nouns or adjectives other nouns were substituted, these last would be put in the genitive, dative, or ablative; and hence such infinitives may perhaps be properly regarded as exceptions to the rule, that the infinitive has but two cases, the nominative and the accusative.

REM. 2. (*a.*) The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in exclamations and indignant interrogations, where *crēdĭbĭle est?* or *vērumne est?* may be supplied; as, *Mēne incepto* dēsistĕre *rictum?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking? Virg. *Me mĭsĕrum! te in tantas ærumnas propter me* incīdisse! Cic.—But *ut,* also, with the subjunctive, either with or without an interrogative particle, may be used to express a question with indignation; as, *Eïne* (scil. *pătri*) *ĕgo ut* adverser? Liv. *Tu ut unquam te* corrigas? Cic. *Jūdĭcio ut* ărător *dēcūmānum* persĕquātur? Id.; where *fĭĕri pŏtest?* may be supplied.

(*b.*) So, in the *ōrātio oblīqua,* the words signifying *said, saying,* etc., are often omitted, or implied in a preceding verb or phrase; as, *Id făcĭle eff́ĭci posse,* scil. *dixit.* Nep. *Quem sĭgnum* dātūrum *fŭgientibus?* Curt.

REM. 3. The infinitive is sometimes to be supplied; and *esse* and *fuisse* with a predicate adjective, and also in the compound forms of the infinitive, both active and passive, are commonly omitted, especially after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing,* and *perceiving;* as, *Vos cognōvi fortes.* Sall. *Quem pulsum mēmŏrāvi.* Tac.—So, also, with the infinitive perfect passive when depending on *vŏlo, nŏlo, cŭpio,* and *ŏportet;* as, *Adŏlescenti mōrem gestum ŏportuit.* Ter. *Quod jam pridem factum ŏportuit.* Cic.—Sometimes in a relative clause an infinitive is to be supplied from the finite verb of the main proposition; as, *Quos cŏluit omnes interfēcit,* scil. *interfĭcēre. Ne illam quĭdem consĕquantur, quam pŭtant, grātiam;* i. e. *quam se consĕcŭtūros pŭtant.* Cic.

THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ **271.** The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting *ability, obligation, intention* or *endeavor;* after verbs signifying *to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate,* or *be wont;* and after the passive of verbs of *saying, believing, reckoning,* etc.

NOTE 1. To these classes belong *possum, quĕo, nĕquĕo, vălĕo, dēbĕo; cūro, cōgĭto, dēcerno, stătŭo, constĭtŭo, instĭtŭo, păro; cōnor, nītor, tendo, contendo, tento, mātūro, prŏpĕro, aggrĕdior, persĕvēro;—cœpi, inclpio, pergo, dēsino, dēsisto, intermitto, parco; rĕcūso; sŏlĕo, assuesco, consuesco, insuesco; audĕo, vĕrĕor, mĕtŭo, rĕformīdo, tĭmĕo, horrĕo, dŭbĭto;—nudĭor, crēdor, existĭmor, fĕror, nĕgor, nuntior, pĕrhĭbĕor, pŭtor, trādor, jŭbĕor, vĭdĕor,* and *cōgor.*

NOTE 2. When the preceding verbs are joined with *esse, hăbēri, jŭdĭcāri, vĭdēri,* etc., the predicate noun or adjective is put in the nominative; as, *Sŏlet tristis rĭdēri; aude săpiens esse; cœpit mĭhi mŏlestus esse; dēbes esse dĭlĭgens; pŏtest lĭber esse:* and so also *mĕrĕtur, scil, dĭdĭcit lĭber esse.*

NOTE 3. The poets, in imitation of the Greeks, use the infinitive after *fūgĕ, anfer, căvĕ, parcĕ, mĕmento; pārĕo, rĕfūgĭo, quæro, urgĕo, lăbōro, ămo, gaudĕo, fūro, calĕo, sūmo, mitto, rĕmitto, pătior, jūro, conjūro, pugno, vălus,* and some other verbs, especially to denote a *wish* or *purpose;* as, *Introiit vĭdēre.* Ter. *Non te frangĕre persĕquor.* Hor. *Non pŏpŭlāre pĕnātes vĕnimus.* Virg. In this construction, the poets are sometimes imitated by the later prose writers.

REMARK 1. Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with *ut, ne,* etc.; and with some of them this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiam ne dĭcēret, rĕcūsāvit.* Cic.

REM. 2. The passives *dīcor, trādor, fĕror, narror, rĕpĕrior, existĭmor, vĭdĕor,* etc., may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Thus we may say, *Māter Pausānĭæ eo tempŏre vixisse dicitur,* or, *Dicitur eo tempŏre mātrem Pausānĭæ vixisse,* The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living.... Nep. The former construction is more common especially with *vĭdĕor,* see § 272, R. 6; but the latter is frequent with *nuntiātur,* and very common with the compound tenses, *trādĭtum est, prōdĭtum est,* etc., and with the participle future passive; as, *crēdendum est, intelligendum est,* etc.; as, *Quōrum nēmĭnem tōlum fuisse crēdendum, est.* Cic.

REM. 3. The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb, only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

REM. 4. The verbs to *wish* or *desire, vŏlo, nŏlo, mālo; cŭpio, opto, stŭdeo,* have a twofold construction:—the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them, when the subject remains the same; and when followed by *esse, hăbēri,* etc., the predicate-noun or adjective is in the nominative;—but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when a reflexive pronoun of the same person follows. We say, therefore, *vŏlo ĕrŭdītus fĭĕri,* and on the other hand, *vŏlo te ĕrŭdītum fĭĕri,* and *vŏlo me ĕrŭdītum fĭĕri.* So, *Vŏlo is esse, quem tu me esse vŏluisti.* Cic. *Cŭpio me esse clēmentem, cŭpio—*

me *non dissolūtum* vidĕri. Id.; or, omitting the pronoun, *cŭpĭo esse clēmens nec dissolūtus* vidēri.—*Omnis hŏmĭnes qui sese stŭdent præstāre cētĕris ănĭmālĭbus*, etc. Sall.

NOTE 4. *Vŏlo* is used with the present infinitive passive; as, *Me ămāri rōlo*, I wish to be beloved; *hoc vĕlim intellĭgi*, I wish this to be understood; and also with the infinitive perfect passive to denote the eager desire that something should be instantly accomplished; as, *Lēgāti quod ĕrant appellāti sŭperbius, Cŏrinthum pătres vestri*—exstinctum esse *rŏluērunt*. Cic.; but it occurs most frequently with the omission of *esse*; as, *hoc factum rŏlo; nunc illos commŏnĭtos vĕlim*; so, *patriam* exstinctam *cŭpit*.

NOTE 5. The nominative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, perceiving, etc. (§ 272), is rare even in poetry, and is an imitation of the Greek idiom, which requires the nominative with the infinitive when the same subject re-mains; as, *Phæselus ille, quem vĭdētis, hospĭtes, ait* fuisse *nārium* celerrĭmus. Catull. *Quin rĕtŭlit Ajax* esse *Jŏvis nĕpos*, instead of *se esse Jŏvis nĕpŏtem*. Ovid. *Sensit mĕdĭos* dēlapsus *in hostes*, instead of *se dēlapsum esse*. Virg.

THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ **272.** The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like; as,

Vĭdēbat, *id non posse fĭĕri*, He saw that that could not be done. Nep. Sentit *ănĭmus, se suā vi, non alĭēnā, mŏvēri*. Cic. Audīvi te *vĕnīre*. *Me in ējus pŏtes-tāte* dixi *fŏre*. Id. Affirmant *mīlĭtum jăcēre ănĭmos*. Liv. *Sæpe vēnit* ad anres meas, te istud nimis *crēbro* dĭcĕre. Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Pērŭsiam pugnātam* (esse), *quīdam* auctōres sunt. Liv.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all such verbs and phrases as denote the exercise of the external senses and intellectual faculties, or the communication of thought to others; as, *audio, vĭdeo, sentio, ănĭmadverto, cognosco, intellĭgo, percĭpio, disco, scio, nescio, censeo, spēro, despēro, cōgĭto, jūdĭco, crēdo, arbĭtror, pŭto, ŏpīnor, dūco, stătuo, mĕmĭni, rĕcordor, oblīviscor, ŏpīnio est, spes est,* etc.;—*dico, trādo, prōdo, scrībo, rĕfĕro, narro, nuntio, confirmo, nĕgo, ostendo, indĭco, dŏceo, certiōrem fācio, dēmonstro, pĕrhĭbeo, prōmitto, pollĭceor, spondeo,* etc.; but with most of these a different construction often occurs. See § 273.

NOTE 2. The propositions, whose subjects are thus put in the accusative and their verbs in the infinitive, are those which are *directly* dependent on the verbs of saying and perceiving. Respecting the clauses inserted in such dependent propositions, see § 266, 1.

NOTE 3. (*a.*) When a relative clause inserted in a proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, has the same verb as the proposition in which it is inserted, but such verb is not repeated, the noun which is the sub-ject of the relative clause is also put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Te suspĭcor eisdem rēbus, quĭbus me* ipsum, *commŏvēri*. If the verb is expressed we must say, *eisdem rēbus commŏvēri, quĭbus* (ĕgo) ipse commŏveor. So, also, in inserted relative clauses where the verb, if expressed, would be in the sub-junctive, (see § 266, 2.); as, (*Verres*) *aiĕbat se tantŭdem æstimasse, quanti* Sĭcer-dōtem, *for quanti* Sŏcerdōs *æstimasset*. Cic. *Confĭtētur se in eā parte fuisse quā te, quā* virum *omni laude dignum* patrem *tuum*. Id.

(*b.*) The same is the case with the particle *quam* after a comparative, see § 256, R. 5, (*a.*) But sometimes when *quam* connects a clause to a preceding proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, the same construction follows that precedes *quam*, even when the verb of the latter clause is express-ed; as, *Nonne tĭbi affirmāri quīdvis me pŏtius perpessūrum,* quam *ex Ĭtăliā ad bellum cĭvīle me* exĭtūrum; instead of *quam exīrem* or *quam ut exīrem*. Cic.

(*c.*) In long speeches in the *ōrātio oblīqua*, relative clauses, having a verb of their own which should properly be in the subjunctive, are put in the ac-cusative with the infinitive, if the relative clause is not subordinate to the one with the infinitive, and which is governed by a verb of saying or perceiving,

but is rather coördinate with it; in which case the relative is equivalent to the demonstrative with *et*; as, *Nam illōrum urbem ut prōpugnāculum oppŏsitum esse barbăris, ăpud quam bis classes rēgis fēcisse naufrăgium*; for *et ăpud eam jam bis*, etc.—In Livy and Tacitus the same construction sometimes occurs even after conjunctions; as after *quum* in the sense of 'while,' see § 263, 5, R. 3; after *quamquam* on account of its absolute signification, see § 198, 4, and after *quia*.

Note 4. The personal pronouns, which, with the other moods, are expressed only when they are emphatic, must be always expressed in the accusative with the infinitive. The verbs 'to promise' and 'to hope' are in English usually joined with the infinitive present without a pronoun, but in Latin not only is the pronoun expressed, but the infinitive which follows is in the future; as, 'He promised to come,' is in Latin, *Prōmīsit se ventūrum* (scil. *esse*, see § 270, R. 3). But the infinitive present sometimes occurs after these verbs; as, *Pollicentur obsĭdes dăre*, Cæs. B. G. 4, 21; and the pronoun is occasionally omitted, see § 239, R. 2 and 3.

Remark 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or in the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quidem audītum est, crŏcŏdīlum viŏlātum esse ab Ægyptio*; instead of Ægyptium *crŏcŏdīlum viŏlasse*. Cic.

Rem. 2. After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., the conjunction *that* is omitted in translating from English into Latin, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

Rem. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes rendered into English by a similar form; as, *Si vis me flēre*, If you wish *me to weep*. Hor.; but the dependent clause is more frequently connected to the verb of saying, etc., by the conjunction *that*, and the infinitive translated by the indicative or potential mood; as, *Sentimus nĭvem esse albam*, We perceive *that snow is white*. Cic. Sometimes the dependent clause is annexed to the other without the conjunction; as, *Crēdunt* se neglĭgi, They think *they are neglected*. Ter.

Rem. 4. A present infinitive corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a preterite tense; as, *Dixit Cæsărem venīre*, He said that Cæsar *was coming*. Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a preterite tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsărem venīsse*, He said that Cæsar *had come*. See § 268, 2.

Rem. 5. The present infinitive, after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as, Surgĕre *vĭdet lūnam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma rŭtīlāre vĭdent*. Id. *Vĭdēbis* collūcēre *făces*. Id. *Nec Zĕphyros audis* spīrāre? Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sæpe hoc mājŏres nātu* dīcĕre audīvi. Cic. The two constructions are sometimes united; as, *Mēdium video* discēdĕre *cælum, pālantesque pŏlo stellas*. Virg.

Rem. 6. The subject-accusative after verbs of *saying, showing*, and *believing*; as, *dīco, nĕgo, trādo, fēro, mĕmŏro, narro, nuntio, pĕrhĭbeo, prōdo, scrĭbo, dēmonstro, ostendo, arguo, crēdo, pŭto, existĭmo*, and the like, and also after *jŭbeo, vĕto*, and *prŏhĭbeo*, is regarded also as the accusative of the *object* after these verbs; and hence such verbs are used also in the passive, the accusative of the active voice becoming, as usual, the nominative of the passive. This is especially the case when their subject is indefinite; as, *Dicunt* (they or people say) *me vĭrum prŏbum esse*, or *dicor vĭr prŏbus esse*. So, *Vĕtīmur hoc făcĕre*, instead of, *Nos hoc făcĕre vĕtant*. Instead also of the impersonal *vĭdētur* (it appears) followed by the infinitive with its subject-accusative, it is common to say personally, *vĭdeor, vĭdēris*, etc., with the infinitive; as, *vĭdeor errasse*, it appears that I have erred.

25

INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.

§ **273.** When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. §§ 262 and 272.

1. (*a.*) Verbs of *endeavoring* and *resolving* take after them the infinitive and more rarely the subjunctive, when the subject remains the same; but when the subject is changed, they take the subjunctive only.

NOTE 1. Such are *stătuo, constĭtuo, dēcerno, tento, lābōro, păro, mĕdĭtor, cūro, nītor, contendo, consĭlium căpio, ănĭmum* or *in ănĭmum indūco.* Cf. § 271, N. I. After *Ŏpĕram do,* I exert myself, *id. hoc,* or *illud ăgo,* I endeavor, *nĭhil antīquius hăbeo* or *dūco quam,* nothing is of more importance to me, and *vĭdeo* for *cūro,* the subjunctive is almost exclusively used.

(*b.*) Verbs of *effecting* are construed with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. Such are *făcio, effĭcio, perfĭcio, ēvinco, pervinco, impĕtro, assĕquor, consĕquor,* etc. But *făcĕre* 'to effect ' occurs in Cic. Brut. 38, in connection with the accusative and infinitive passive.

NOTE 3. Făcio with *ut* is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invītus quĭdem* fēci, ut *L. Flōmĭnium e sĕnātu ējĭcĕrem,* for *invītus ējēci.* Cic.— *Fac,* 'suppose ' or 'granting,' and *effĭcĕre,* 'to prove,' take the accusative with the infinitive; but the passive *effĭcĭtur,* 'it follows,' takes also the subjunctive. —*Făcĕre,* 'to introduce ' or 'represent,' is joined with a present or perfect participle; as, *Lælĭum et Scĭpĭōnem* făcĭmus admīrantes. Cic. In the passive the accusative also with the infinitive is found, there being no present participle; as, Isocrătem *Plăto* laudāri fācit *a Sōcrăte.* Cic.

2. Verbs signifying *to request, to demand, to admonish, to advise, to encourage, to command,* and the like, both when the subject remains the same and when it is changed, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne,* and only rarely by the infinitive.

NOTE 4. (*a.*) Such are *rŏgo, ōro, prĕcor, pĕto ; posco, postŭlo, flăgĭto ; mŏneo, admŏneo, commŏneo, hortor, cŏhortor, exhortor, suādeo, persuādeo, instĭtuo,* (I instruct,) *impello, cōgo, mando, præscrībo, ēdīco, dēcerno, lēgem do, censeo, perpello, excĭto, incĭto, impĕro,* etc.; as, *Te non hortor sōlum, sed ĕtiam* ōro, ut *tūta mente in rempūblĭcam* incumbas. Cic.

(*b.*) In the poets and later prose writers the infinitive more frequently follows those verbs without any difference of meaning. The poets even use the infinitive to express a purpose; as, *Prōtĕus pĕcus ēgit altos* vĭsĕre montes. Hor.

(*c.*) *Nuntio, scrībo, mitto,* and even *dīco,* are followed by the subjunctive, when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done; as, *Hæc* ut făcias, scrībo. Cic.

(*d.*) *Jŭbeo* and *vĕto* commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive with or rarely without *ut.* Sometimes, with the infinitive, the person to whom the command is given is omitted, especially when it is either obvious from the nature of the command or indefinite; as, *Castra mūnīre* jŭbet, scil. *mĭlĭtes.* Cæs. *Lex rectē făcĕre* jŭbet, scil. *hŏmĭnes.* Cic. With the subjunctive the *dative* of the person sometimes follows *jŭbeo ;* as, *Brĭtannĭco* jussit, *exsurgĕret.* Tac.—*Impĕro* is sometimes followed by the accusative with the infinitive passive; and so also is *censeo,* I vote, or, I ordain. The latter is often construed with the participle in *dus* with *esse* expressed or understood; as, *Carthāgĭnem dēlendam censeo.*

(*e.*) *Mŏneo* and *admŏneo*, 'I remind,' and *persuādeo*, 'I convince,' take the accusative with the infinitive.

3. (*a.*) In the *oratio obliqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, duty, etc.; as,

Virginius ūnum Ap. Claudium lēgum expertem esse aiēbat: respicĕrent tribūnal hŏmĭnes castellum omnium scĕlĕrum. Liv.

(*b.*) On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used after a verb of requesting, commanding, etc., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; the verb of saying being considered as implied in the verb of requesting, etc.; as, *Orābat ne se ui parrĭcīdam lĭbērūm āversā-rentur: sibi vitam fīliæ suā cāriōrem fuisse, si....* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 2, (*b.*)

4. (*a.*) Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission,* and *necessity,* commonly take the infinitive, or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

NOTE 5. Such are *vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, opto, permitto, pātior, sĭno, concēdo, licet, prŏh-beo, ŏportet,* and *nĕcesse est.* Cf. § 271, R. 4. *Vŏlo ut* is used to express a strong emphasis. *Nōlo* is not construed with the subjunctive.

(*b.*) An infinitive passive without a subject is sometimes used with *ŏportet*; as, *Non ŏportuit* relictas, scil. *esse ancillas.* Ter. *Ut ut ĕrat,* mansum tămen *ŏportuit,* scil. *esse.* Id. *Non pātābant de tāli vĭro suspiciōnĭbus ŏportēre* jūdĭcāri. Nep.

(*c.*) Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. *Quod,* 'that,' commonly with the indicative, introduces a substantive clause containing the explanation or ground of the predicate or of some other word in the principal clause.

REMARK. The subjunctive follows *quod* in those cases only in which the clause expresses the view or sentiment of some other person than the writer or speaker. Cf. § 266, 3.

Quod is used:—

(1.) After such expressions as *bĕne, mălē, prūdenter făcio; bĕne, mălē fit; ēvĕnit, accĭdit,* and the like; *prætĕreo, mitto;* and generally *adde, accēdit,* etc.; as, *Bĕne făcis,* quod *me adjūvas.*

(2.) To introduce the explanation of a noun, pronoun, or pronominal adverb in the principal clause; as, *Magnum bĕnĕficium est nātūræ,* quod *nĕcesse est mŏri.*

(3.) After verbs signifying an *affection of the mind,* and the *outward expression of such feeling;* and also after verbs of *praising, censuring, accusing,* and *thanking.*

NOTE 6. Such are *gaudeo, dēlector, grātum,* or *jūcundum est mĭhi, angor, dŏleo, ægre, mŏlestē,* or *grăviter fĕro, succenseo, pænĭtet, mīror, admīror, glōrior, grātŭlor, grātias āgo, quĕror, indignor,* and others of similar meaning; as, *Scĭpio sæpe* quĕrēbātur, *quod omnĭbus in rēbus hŏmĭnes dĭligentiōres essent, ut,* etc. Cic. *Gaudeo* quod *te* interpellāvi. Id. *Quod* spīrātis, *quod* vōcem mittĭtis, *quod* formas hŏmĭnum habētis, indignantur. Liv. *Cato* mirari *se* aiēbat, *quod* non rīdēret haruspex, hărūspĭcem quum vĭdē-ret. Cic.

NOTE 7. After those verbs which express the feeling of joy, grief, etc.; as, *gaudeo, dŏleo, miror,* the accusative with the infinitive is more commonly found, but those which denote the outward expression of such feeling are more commonly construed with *quod*; but sometimes this distinction is reversed. *Grātŭlor* is commonly joined with *quod.*

NOTE 8. A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon *addo*, (generally in the imperative *adde*), or upon *fácio* joined with an adverb; as, Adde quod *púbes tibi crescit omnes.* Hor. Adde huc quod *mercem sine fácis gestat.* Id. Fécit hūmānĭter *Licīnius,* quod *ad me vespri vênit.* Cic. In all other cases the infinitive is employed in purely objective propositions.

6. By the infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, a proposition is expressed as a *thought,* so that it resembles an abstract noun; by *quod,* with the indicative or the subjunctive, it is represented simply as a *fact.* To the latter is frequently joined *hoc, id, illud, istud,* or *huc,* etc.; as, Illud *quóque nóbis accĕdit incommŏdum,* quod *M. Jūnius abest.* Cic. Huc *accĕdĕbat,* quod, etc. Sall. *Quod* generally refers to past time, and hence it is preferable to say, *Grātissi-mum mihi est,* quod *ad me tua mănu scripsisti;* but with the infinitive, *Grātissi-mum mihi est* te *bĕne vălēre.*

(*a.*) *Quod,* with the indicative, in the sense of *as to,* or *with regard to,* is used at the beginning of a sentence, especially in letters, in repeating an expression of a person for the purpose of answering it; as, *Quod autem me Agămemnŏnem æmŭlāri pŭtas, falleris.* Nep. *Quod sisti te velle scire, qui sit reipublicæ stātus: summa dissensio est.* Cic. Sentences thus introduced by *quod* are in no grammatical connection with the verb that follows them. See § 206, (14.)

(*b.*) *Quod* is used in explanatory or periphrastic propositions which refer to a preceding demostrative pronoun, as *hoc, id,* etc., unless such pronoun be added pleonastically, in the nominative or accusative, to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Mihi quidem vĭdentur hŏmines* hac *re maxime belluis præstāre,* quod *lŏqui possunt.* Cic.

NOTE 9. The construction of the infinitive resembles, in the following particulars, that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender:—

(*a.*) Like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, Tōtum hoc philōsŏphāri *displicet.* Cic. *Quum* vīvĕre ipsum *turpe sit nōbis.* Id. *Me* hoc ipsum nihil ăgĕre *dēlectat.* Id. Meum intellĭgĕre *nulla pecuniā vendo.* Petr. See § 205, R. 8.

(*b.*) It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, Cūjus *non dīmĭcāre fuit vincĕre.* Val. Max.

(*c.*) It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, R. 3, (5,) and 229, R. 5. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, Te accēpisse *meas lătĕras gaudeo.* Ter. See §§ 232, (2,) and 273, 5.

(*d.*) It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vidĕre* est perspĭcĕre *aliquid.* Cic. See § 210.

(*e.*) It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, R. 1.

(*f.*) It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Aristo et Pyrrho* inter *optime vălēre* et *grăvissĭme ægrōtāre, nihil prorsus dīcēbant intĕresse.* Cic. *Quod crimen dicis* præter *ămasse meum?* Ovid. *Invēniet nil sibi lēgātum,* præter *plōrāre.* Hor.

(*g.*) It is used also like an ablative; as, *Audīto rēgem* in *Sicĭliam* tendĕre. Sall.

(*h.*) Sometimes, also, especially in the poets, it denotes a purpose, like a participle in *dus,* (see § 274, R. 7.); as, *Lōrīcam dŏnat* hăbēre *viro.* Virg.; or like a dative of the end, (see § 227.)

PARTICIPLES.

§ **274.** 1. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs; as,

Quĭdam, poēta nōmĭnātus, A certain one, called a poet. Cic. Cătŭlōrum *oblīta* leœna, The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Făventes* rēbus *Carthăgĭniensium,* Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens ad sĭdĕra* palmas. Virg. *Accūsātus rei cāpĭtālis.* Cic. *Prīmā dicte* mĭhi *summā dĭcende Cā*mēnā. Hor. *Omnia doctus.* Stat. *Cāsus ăbĭes vīsūra mărīnos.* Id. *Cārĭtūri* arbŏre *montes.* Ovid. *Parcendum est* tĕnĕris. Juv. *Ūtendum est* ætāte. Ovid. *L. Brūtus* arcens rĕdĭtu tўrannum, *in prœlio concĭdit.* Cic.

2. **The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,**

Sĭmul hoc dĭcens *attollit se.* Virg.   *Tum ad Thraseam in hortis* ăgentem *missus est.* Tac. *Turnum* fŭgientem *hæc terra vĭdēbit?* Virg. *Qui* missus *ab Argis Ītălā* consēdĕrat *urbe.* Id. *Lāmĭa* mūnĕre *ædĭlĭtātis* perfunctus, *pĕtit prætūram.* Cic. *Jussus cum fĭde pœnas luam.* Hor. *Jŭvĕnis mĕdĭos* mŏrĭtūrus *in hostes irruit.* Virg. *Pĕrĭtūrus injēcit sĕse in agmen.* Id. *Illa tĭbi* ventūra *bella expĕdĭet.* Id.

NOTE. The participle expresses the action or state of the verb, and also marks its complete or incomplete state or condition. Cf. § 144, 1–3. Except, however, in deponent verbs, the Latin language has no active participle denoting a completed action, equivalent to the English 'having written,' nor any passive participle denoting a state of suffering still going on, equivalent to the English present participle 'being loved.'

REMARK 1. The present participle, particularly that of the verb *eo*, sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclūsit hiems, et terruit Auster* euntes, ... as they were on the point of going. Virg. *Nec nos via fallit* euntes. Id.

REM. 2. (*a*.) The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Ibant,* ōrantes *vĕniam....*to sue for favor.... Virg. *Eurўpўlum* scitantem *ōrācŭla Phœbi* mittimus. Id. (*b*.) It is also used to express a state or condition, where, in English, a substantive is employed with a preposition; as, *ignōrans,* from ignorance; *mĕtuens,* from fear; *consŭlātum pĕtens,* in his suit for the consulship; *omne mălum nascens fācĭle opprĭmĭtur,*—in its origin.

REM. 3. (*a*.) The perfect participle passive, especially in the poets, often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Nŏtus* frŏbŭt *pĭceā* tectus *cālĭgĭne....*covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid. Cf. Virg. Æn. 1, 480; 2, 277; 4, 72, 589; 5, 113, 708; 6, 335 Georg. 1, 204. It is often to be translated by a present active participle; as *Mĭnū pectus* percussa *dĕŏrum,* flărentesque *abscissa cŏmas,* i. e. *pĕrātiens, ŏb scĭndens.* Virg. Tunsæ *pectŏra* palmis. Id. So, also, *sŏlĭtus, ausus, fisus,* an the perfect participles of deponent verbs; as, *Longum cantu* sŏlāta *lăbōrem.* Id. *Vox audītur fractos* sŏnĭtus imĭtāta *tŭbārum.* Id. *Dĭvĭdŭus Cæsărem* complexus. *obsecrāre* cœpit. Cæs. Concrētos *sanguĭne crines* gĕrens. Virg. Tonsis *in val-* *lĭbus,* i. e. quæ tondentur. Id.

(*b*.) The perfect participle of a preceding verb is often used in a succeeding clause, to express the completion of an action; as, *Exercĭtum* fundit *fŭgatque,* fūsum *persĕquitur.* Liv. This idiom frequently occurs in Ovid.

REM. 4. *Hăbeo,* with perfect participles denoting *knowledge* and *determination*; as, *cognĭtum, perspectum, perceptum, comprĕhensum, explŏrātum, stătūtum. constĭtūtum, dēlĭbĕrātum, persŭāsum mĭhi* hăbeo, etc., forms a periphrasis, like the passive verb in English, and equivalent to *cognōri, perspexi, percēpi,* etc., instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clōdii ănĭmum* perspectum or cognĭtum *hăbeo ;* for *perspexi,* etc., I perceive, know. *Persŭāsum mĭhi hăbeo* and *persŭā-sissĭmum hăbeo* are used only in the neuter gender and with an accusative with the infinitive in the sense of *mĭhi persŭāsi* or *persŭāsum mĭhi est.* When *hăbeo* with any other participle than those above indicated is used, it expresses more than the ordinary perfect active; as, *Quod me* hortāris *ut absolvam ;* hăbeo ab-sŏlūtam *suāve ĕpos ad Cæsărem ;* i. e. I have it ready. Cic. *Do, reddo, cūro,*

tĕneo, possĭdeo, and *missum făcio*, are sometimes so construed with participles; as, Missam *iram făciet*, for *mittet.* Ter. *Hostes victos dăre*, for *vincĕre.* Sall.

REM. 5. (*a.*) The passive participles may supply the place of a verbal noun in *io* or *us*, the perfect being employed to represent an action as completed, and the future when it is conceived as still incomplete; as, *Ante Rōmam* condi-tam, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Consilia urbis* dēlendæ, Plans for the destruction of the city. Id. See § 275, 11. With the limitations about to be made in regard to the nominative, this construction is used in all the cases, and even when they are governed by the prepositions, *ad, ante, ob, post, prop-ter; ab* and *ex*; as, *Ab litĕras* rēcĭtātæ *magnum luctum fēcērunt*, The reading of this letter. Liv. *Tārentum* captum, The taking of Tarentum. *Ob* recēptum *Hannibālem*, On account of the reception of Hannibal. *Sibi quisque cæsi rēgis expĕtēbat dĕcus*, The glory of killing, or, of having killed the king. *Propter Africam* dŏmĭtam. Eutrop. *Ante Epămĭnondam* nātum. Nep. *Post Christum* nātum. *Ab* condĭtā *urbe ad* lībĕrātam. Liv. The oblique cases only of partici-ples in *dus* are used in this manner as the nominative denotes necessity, (see Rem. 8,) and even the perfect participle is not thus used in the nominative by Cicero.

(*b.*) The neuter of the perfect passive participle without a noun is used by Livy, as the subject of a proposition; as, Tentātum *per dictātōrem, ut ambo pa-tricii cōnsŭles creārentur, rem ad interregnum perduxit:* i. e. the attempt, or the fact of the attempt being made by the dictator. Compare a similar use of this participle in the ablative, § 257, R. 9, (1.) (*c.*)

(*c.*) The English 'without' with a verbal substantive; as, 'without writing, without having waited,' etc., is expressed in Latin by means of a negative noun, adjective or participle connected with a participle; as, *Cæsar exercĭtum numquam per insidiōsa itinĕra duxit, nisi perspēcŭlātus locōrum situs*, without having examined the localities. This form occurs often with the ablative absolute; as, *Athēnienses* non exspectāto *auxilio adversus ingentem Persārum exercĭtum in prælium egrēdiuntur*, without waiting for assistance. So, nullā prœstitūtā *die*, Without fixing any time. Cic. *Misĕrum est nihil perficientem angi.* Id.

REM. 6. (*a.*) The participle in *rus*, especially with verbs of motion, often denotes intention or purpose; as, *Ad Jŏvem Ammōnem pergit* consultūrus *de orīgĭne suā*, He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin. Just.

(*b.*) It is also used where in English a clause connected by *since, when, al-though*, etc., is employed; as, *Plūra* locūtūros *obīre nos jussit*, When or although we intended to say more. *Hercŭlem Germāni, itūri in prælium* cănunt. Tac. Hence it is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, to express the inference from a hypothetical proposition; as, *Egrēdĭtur castris Rōmānus, vallum* invāsū-rus, *ni cōpia pugnæ fĭĕret.* And with the repetition of the preceding verb; as, *Dēdit mihi quantum maxĭme pŏtuit*, datūrus *amplius, si pŏtuisset*, i. e. ac *dēdisset amplius.* Plin. Ep.

REM. 7. (*a.*) The participle in *dus*, also, denotes a purpose passively, when joined with verbs signifying *to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake*, etc. Such are *do, trado, tribuo, attribuo, mando, mitto, permitto, concēdo, rĕdĭmo, condūco, loco, hăbeo, accipio, suscipio, rĕlinquo, dēposco, rŏgo*; as, *Testāmentum tĭbi trādit* legendum, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos* trŭcidandos *Cĕthĕrgo. Quod* ūtendum *accēpĕris, reddĭto.* Id. *Cŏnon mūros dirūtos a Lysandro* rĕficiendos *cūrāvit*,—ordered them to be restored. Nep.

(*b.*) But the same meaning may be expressed actively by means of *ad* and the gerund; as, *Cæsar oppĭdum ad* dirĭpiendum *milĭtĭbus concessit.*—The poets sometimes use the infinitive active for the same purpose; as, *Tristitiam et mĕ-tus trādam prŏtervis in măre Caspium portāre ventis.* Hor. In prose such use of the infinitive is of exceedingly rare occurrence; as, *Bĭbĕre dăre.* Cic.

REM. 8. (*a.*) The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of *necessity* or *propriety;* sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of *possibility;* as,

Is vĕnĕrandus a nōbis est, He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. *Dēlenda est Carthāgo*, Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc spēranda fuĕrunt.* Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Ŭtrum pāce nōbis an bello esset* ūtendum. Cic.

(*b.*) Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas* dissĭmŭlanda *tĭbi*, You were revealing facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Brūto principe hūjus maxĭme* conservandi *est nōminis.* Cic.

REM. 9. The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action; as, *Occŭpātus sum in lĭtĕris scrĭbendis*, in writing letters; literally, in letters which are being written. See § 275, II.—So, also, in the poets both in the nominative and oblique cases; as, *Trīginta magnos* volvendis *mensĭbus orbes impĕrio explēbit.* Virg. Volvenda *dies.* Id. Cf. Volventĭbus *annis.* Id.

REM. 10. After participles in *dus*, the person by whom a thing must be done, is put in the dative, but in a few passages even of Cicero it is found in the ablative with *ab.* See § 225, III.

REM. 11. The neuter of the participle in *dus*, joined with a tense of *esse* in the periphrastic conjugation (see § 184, 3,) retains the signification of necessity; as, *Audendum est*, We must venture. In early writers and sometimes also in the poets, an accusative of the object is joined with this neuter, if the verb is transitive; as, *Nunc pācem ōrandum, nunc*—arma *rĕpōnendum, et bellum exĭtĭāle cāvendum.* Sil. But in classical Latin such accusative is generally changed to the nominative, and the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number. Thus, instead of *virtātem laudandum est*, we usually find *virtus laudanda est.* The accusative in this connection is used by Cicero in only two passages. *Utendum est* with the ablative occurs more than once in Cicero; as, *Quam suo cuĭque jūdicio sit ūtendum.*

REM. 12. In classical prose the participle in *dus* never has the signification of *possibility*, except when joined with *vix;* as, *Vix optandum nōbis vĭdēbātur.* Cic. *Vix ĕrat crēdendum*, i. e. *vix crēdi pŏtĕrat.* Later writers use it in this sense with negative particles, and at a later period it was used with still more frequency in the sense of possibility as well as in that of necessity.

3. (*a.*) A participle is often employed, instead of a verb, in a conditional, explanatory, adversative, relative, or other dependent clause; as,

Cūrio, ad fŏcum sĕdenti (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnītes* attŭlērunt. Cic. *Trīduă viam* prōgressi, *rursus rĕvertērunt;* for, *quum prōgressi essent.* Cæs. *Diŏnȳsius tȳrannus, Sȳrăcūsis* expulsus, *Cŏrinthi pŭĕros dŏcēbat.* Cic. *Diŏnȳsius, cultros* mĕtuens tonsōrios, *candenti carbōne sĭbi adūrēbat cāpillum.* Id. *Risus interdum ita rĕpente ērumpit, ut eum* cŭpientis *tĕnēre nĕquĕamus.* Id. *Cĭcōnĭs* abĭtūrae *congrĕgantur in lŏco certo.* Plin.

NOTE 1. If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 3.

NOTE 2. (*a.*) The English clauses most frequently expressed in Latin by means of participles are such as are connected by relatives or by *as, when, after, although, since, because, etc.;* as, *Nēmo observat lūnam nisi* labōrantem. Sen. *Ut ŏcŭlus, sic ănĭmus, se non* vĭdens, *alia cernit,*—though not perceiving itself. Cic. *Servīlius Ahāla Spūrium Mælium, rĕgnum* appĕtentem, *intĕrēmit,*—because he was aspiring to the sovereignty. Cic.—(*b.*) When a participle is connected with a relative or interrogative it can only be translated by a circumlocution; as, *Non sunt ĕa bŏna dīcenda,* quĭbus abundantem *lĭcet esse mĭserrĭmum,*—which one may possess in abundance, and still be very miserable. Cic. *Sĕnātus absurdum esse dīcebat, ignōrāre rĕgem,* quid spīrans aut pĕtens vĕnĕrit,—with what hope or request he had come. Liv.

(*b.*) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the actions de-
noted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed
in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille* (*Arīon*)
sĕdens *cithăram tēnet.* Ovid. *Simul hoc dicens attollit in ægrum se fēmur.* Virg.
i. e. *hoc dĭcit et attollit.* But if one of the actions precede the other, the
perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy,
Cæsar hostes aggressus *fūgārit.* Submersas *obrŭe puppes,* i. e. *Submerge et
obrŭe.* Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the
participle is often followed by *tămen.* Later writers in such case join the par-
ticles *quamquam, quamvis, ĕtiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsărem
milites, quamvis* recūsantem *ultro in Africam sunt sĕcūti.* Suet.: and these are
sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that par-
ticiples are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attri-
butes, e. g. *adstantes, audientes,* for *ii qui adstant, audiunt,* i. e. the bystanders,
hearers.

(*c.*) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*,
especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a parti-
cular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen* tĕnentem. Plin. In
English the *infinitive* is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as,
Audīvi te cănentem, I heard you sing. *Audīvi te cănĕre,* would be, I heard that
you sung. *Vidēmus Pŏlyphēmum vastâ se mōle* mŏventem. Virg.

NOTE 3. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle
passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amāvisset* cannot be exchanged
for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved.* As the perfect participles
of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial
construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect
passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 5.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ **275.** I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are fol-
lowed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

Mĕtus pārendi sĭbi, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo* victis, By sparing
the vanquished. Liv. *Effĕror stŭdio* patres *vestros videndi,* I am transported
with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Pĕtendi* consŭlātum *grātiâ.* Sall.
Vēnit ad rĕcĭpiendum pecūnias. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the
neuter singular of participles in *dus,* but it has the meaning of the active voice.
It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and
sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lăcĕdæmōnem* occŭ-
pandi, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense;
as, *Spes* restituendi *nulla ĕrat,*—of being restored. Nep. *Athēnas* ērŭdiendi
grātiâ missus,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante* dŏmandum.
Virg. *Ades ad* imperandum. Cic.

REM. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the geni-
tive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its significa-
tion it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun.
Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infin-
itive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infini-
tive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the
power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as,
Multum intĕrest inter dăre et accĭpĕre. Sen. *Non sōlum ad discendum prŏpensi
sŭmus, sed ĕtiam ad dŏcendum.* Cic.

II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consilium scribendi epistolam*, the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund: and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scribendi*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*epistolam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scribendus*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consilium scribendæ epistolæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendi*, Plans for destroying the city. *Reparandārum classium causā* (Suet.), for *reparandi classes*. *Perpetiendo labōri idōneus*. Colum. *Ad defendendam Rōmam ab oppugnandā Cāpuā duces Rōmānos abstrahēre*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor, fruor, fungor, potior*, and rarely of *medeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc utenda idōnea*. Ter. *Justitiæ fruendæ causā*. Cic. *In munēre fungendo*. Id. *Hostes in spem potiundōrum castrōrum venērant*. Cæs. *Aquæ salūbritāte medendisque corporibus nobiles*. Vell.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendi rātio* (Cic.), not *alicujus. Artem et vēra et falsa dijūdicandi* (Id.), not *vērōrum dijūdicandōrum*: because it would not be known whether *alicujus* and *vērōrum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive, Dative, Accusative*, and *Ablative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when it is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

Amor habendi. Cic. *Patriam spes videndi*. Virg. *Nam habet nātūra, ut aliārum omnium rērum, sic vivendi mōdum*. Cic. *Barbara consuetūdo hōminum immolandōrum*. Id. *Postrēmo Catilina* dissimulandi *causā aut sui expurgandi, in senātum vēnit*. Sall. *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandōrum, nōminis Rōmāni* extinguendi. Id. *Vivendi stultōsi*. Cic. *Certus eundi*. Virg. *Insuetus nāvigandi*. Cæs. *Perītus civitatis regendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *amor, ars, causa, consilium, consuetūdo, cōpia, cupīditas, desidērium, difficultas, finis, facultas, forma, grātia, illecebra, libīdo, locus, licentia, mŏdus, mātěria, mos, occāsio, ōtium, pōtestas, rātio, spatium, spes, stūdium, ūsus, vēnia, vis, vŏluntas*.

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quibus omnia hŏnesta atque inhŏnesta vendēre mos ĕrat*, With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus ĕst abīre*, It is time, i. e. *tempestīvum est*, it is proper to go.

(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance,* and their contraries; as, *ávidus, cúpidus, stúdiōsus, pērītus, impērītus, insuētus, certus, conscius, ignārus, rūdis,* etc. See § 213, R. 1, (3.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund; as, Exemplōrum *éligendi pótestas,* instead of *exempla éligendi,* or, *exemplōrum éligendōrum.* Cic. Eārum rērum *infītiandi rátio.* Id. *Fácultas* agrōrum *condōnandi.* Cic. *Nōmīnandi* istōrum *érit cópia.* Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui,* even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *di*; as, *Quó-niam* tui *vidēndi est cópia.* Plaut. *Non vēreor, ne quis hoc me* vestri *adhortandi causā magnífīce lóqui existimet.* Liv. *In castra vēnērunt* sui *purgandi causā.—* With the demonstrative pronouns, *éjus, hūjus, illīus,* the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *éjus,* though referring to a woman, has the participle in *di,* not in *de*; as, *Ego* ējus *vīdendi cúpidus rectā consēquor.* Ter. *Tui* in the first example and *éjus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum,* are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency* or *purpose,* with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Rēgium impērium initio conservandæ libertātis fuērat.* Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Quæ postquam glōriōsa módo, nēque belli patrandi cognōvit,* scil. *esse.* Id. *Causā* or *grátiā* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Máneat prōvinciālibus potentiam suam tāli módo* ostentandi, scil. *fácultas.* Tac. *Quum hábērem in ánimo* nāvigandi, scil. *prōpōsitum.* Tac.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness* or *fitness*; and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose*; as,

Charta empōrētica est inūtilis scrībendo. Plin. *Căpessendæ reīpūblicæ hábilis.* Tac. *Ut nec triumvīri* accipiundo, *nec scrībæ* rēfērundo *suffīcērent.* Liv. *Lócum oppido* condendo *căpēre.* Id. *Non fuit consilium agrum* cōlendo *aut* vēnando *intentum ætātem ăgēre.* Sall. *Tibērius quāsi firmandæ valētūdini in Campāniam concessit.* Tac. *Quum* solvendo *ære aliēno respūblica non esset.* Liv. *Quum* solvendo *cīvitātes non essent,*—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *Stŭdēre, intentum esse, tempus impendēre, tempus consūmēre* or *insūmēre, ópēram dāre, suffīcere, sătis esse, deesse, esse,* signifying *to serve for, to be adequate to,* and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *idōneus* understood; but see § 227, R. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Dĕcemvīri* lēgibus scrībendis, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. So, *Cōmitia* creandis dĕcemvīris. Id. *Triumvīros* agro dando *crĕat.* Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut,* than by the dative; as, *Pĕcus* ad vescendum *hŏmīnibus apta.* Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad,* to, or *inter,* during or amid, and sometimes *ante, circa,* or *ob*; as,

Ad pœnĭtendum *prŏpĕrat, qui cīto jūdĭcat.* Pub. Syr. *Inter bĭbendum,* While
drinking. Just. *Ad tŏlĕrandos făcĭlĭus lăbōres.* Quint. *Ad castra făcĭenda.* Cic.
Ob absolvendum. Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a, (ab), de, e, (ex),* or *in;* or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

Aristōtĕlem non dēterruit a scrībendo. Cic. *Ex assentando.* Ter. *Non vĭdeor*
a *dēfendendis hŏmĭnĭbus discēdĕre.* Cic. *Crescit* eundo. Virg. *Rem quærunt*
mercātūris făcĭendis. Cic. *Ōrātĭōnem Lătīnam* lĕgendis nostris *effĭcies plēnĭō*
rem. Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum;* as,
Pro vāpŭlando. Plaut. *Cum lŏquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is
changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is
differently construed; as, *Nullum offĭcĭum* rĕfĕrendā grātĭā *măgis nĕcessārĭum
est,* instead of *rēlātĭōne grātĭæ.* § 256. Cic. *Nec jam* possĭdendis *pūblĭcis agris
contentos esse.* § 244. Liv. *Is fīnis fuit* ulciscendā *Germānĭci morte,*—in avenging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time.
§ 253.

SUPINES.

§ **276.** Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except
the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of
the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *u* a passive
signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as
verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their
verbs; as,

Non Grāĭis servītum mātrĭbus *ībo,* I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons.
Virg. *Te id* admŏnĭtum *vĕnĭo.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote
the *purpose* of the motion; as,

Cŭbĭtum discessĭmus. Cic. *Ire* dējectum *mŏnŭmenta rēgis.* Hor. *Lēgāti
vēnērunt* questum *injūrĭas, et res* rĕpĕtītum. Liv. *Quum* spectātum *lūdos iret.*
Nep. So after participles; as, *Patrĭam* dēfensum *rĕvŏcātus.* Nep. Spectātum
admissi. Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um,* considered as a noun, is analogous to
that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of *purpose* arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express
motion; as, Do *fīliam* nuptum. Ter. *Vos* ultum *injūrĭas* hortor. Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies 'I go to do a thing,' and
hence 'I intend,' or, 'am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus
and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Glўcĕrĭum,
quid ăgis? cur te* īs perdĭtum? Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut.
Bŏnōrum præmĭa ēreptum eunt. Sall. With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a
periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the

supine is formed; as, *Ne bŏnos omnes* perditum *eant* (Sall.), for *perdant.* *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *ĕripiunt.* *Ultum ĭvit* (Tac.), for *ultus est.* Ultum *ĭre injurias festinat,* i. e. *ulcisci.* Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the Infinitive *ĭri,* with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brūtum* visum īri *a me pŭto.* Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *īri* is used impersonally; ' I suppose that I am going to see Brutus.' § 184, 2, (*a.*) Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum īri,* to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causā* or *grātiā,* a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *qui,* a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy* or *difficult, worthy* or *unworthy, honorable* or *base,* and a few others; as,

Mirābile dictu! Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jūcundum cognĭtu atque audītu,* Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu făcĭlis,* A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Făcĭlia inventu.* Gell. *Incrēdĭbile mĕmŏrātu.* Sall. *Turpĭa dictu.* Cic. *Optĭmum factu.* Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *audītu, cognĭtu, dictu, factu, inventu, mĕmŏrātu* and *nātu,* which occurs in the expressions, *grandis, mājor, mĭnor, maxĭmus,* and *mĭnĭmus nātu.* In *magno nātu,* of an advanced age, and *maxĭmo nātu filius,* the eldest son, *nātu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affābĭlis, arduus, asper, bŏnus, deformis, dignus, indignus, dulcis, dūrus, făcĭlis, diffĭcĭlis, fœdus, gravis, hŏnestus, horrendus, incrēdĭbĭlis, jūcundus, injūcundus, magnus, mĕmŏrābĭlis, mollis, prōclivis, pulcher, rārus, turpis,* and *ūtĭlis.*

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas, nĕfas,* and *ŏpus;* as, *Hoc fas est dictu.* Cic. *Nĕfas dictu.* Ovid. *Dictu ŏpus est.* Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pŭdet dictu.* Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fastīdienda sunt.* Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 250.

REM. 4. (*a.*) Instead of the supine in *u,* an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad,* or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardui imitātu, cĕtĕrum* cognosci *ūtĭlia.* Val. Max. *Illud autem făcĭle* ad *crēdendum est.* Cic. *Opus* proscriptĭone *dignum.* Plin. *Aqua* pŏtui *jūcunda.* Id. *Făcĭlior* ad intellectum atque imĭtātĭŏnem. Quint. With *ŏpus est* the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u;* as, *Opus est* mātūrāto, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(*b.*) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res făcĭlis* ad intelligendum; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *făcĭle est invĕnīre,* is used by the best writers after *făcĭlis, diffĭcĭlis,* and *jūcundus.* The most common construction of *dignus* is with *qui* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

ADVERBS.

§ **277.** I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

Bĕne mŏnes. You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes,* Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Mălè narrando.* Ter. *Longe dissĭmĭlis.* Cic. *Valde bĕne.* Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pŏpŭlus lātē rex,* for *lātē regnans,*—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nĭhĭl admŏdum,* Nothing at all. Cic. *Hŏmō plānē noster,*—entirely ours, that is, devoted to us. Id. *Homērus plānē ŏrātor.* Id. *Admŏdum puella.* Liv. *Lātē tyrannus.* Hor. *Grăvĭbus sŭperne ictĭbus conflictābantur,* i. e. *sŭperne accidentĭbus.* Tac. *Multārum circa cīvĭtātum,* i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (*a.*) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *săpĭenter* for *cum săpĭentĭā*; *hic* for *in hōc lŏco*; *bĕne* for *in bŏno mŏdo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempŏre.*—(*b.*) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nĭhil,* 'in no way'; *nonnĭhil,* 'in some measure'; *quidquam,* 'at all'; *ălĭquid,* 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

Non pārēre nōlŭit, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra măli,* Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nĭhil est,* It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc ille non vīdit,* And this he clearly perceived. Cic. So, *nonnulli,* some; *nonnumquam,* sometimes. *Non,* before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hŏmo non indoctus,* i. e. *hŏmo sānē doctus. Non sēmel,* i. e. *sæpius; non ignōro, non nescio, non sum nescius,* I know very well. *Qui mortem in mălis pōnit,* non *pŏtest eam non tĭmēre,*—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

Nēmo non vĭdet, Every one sees. Cic. *Nĕque hæc non ēvēnērunt,* And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nēmo est, qui nescĭat,* Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (*a.*) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne—quĭdem,* the two negatives do not destroy each other; as, *Non fŭgio ne hos* quĭdem *mōres* : and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nĕque —nĕque, nēve—nēve,* or *non—non,* these negative particles are equivalent to *aut —aut*; as, Non *me carmĭnĭbus vincet,* nec *Orpheus,* nec *Linus.* Virg. Nēmĭnem, non *re,* non *verbo,* non *vultu dēnĭque offendi.* Cic. Nullius *rei* nĕque *præs,* nĕque *manceps factus est.* Nep.

(*b.*) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jūra te* non *nŏcĭtūram hŏmĭni* nēmini. Plaut.

(*c.*) *Nēmo, nullus, nĭhil,* and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, Non *nēmo,* some one; *nēmo* non, every one; *non nulli,* some; *nullus non,* every; *non nĭhil,* something; *nĭhil non,* everything; *non numquam,* sometimes; *numquam non,* at all times. So, *nusquam non,* every where, but instead of *nonnusquam, ălĭcŭbi* is used.

REM. 6. (*a.*) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mŏdo* or *non sōlum,* when, followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quĭdem,* if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause ; as,

Mihi non mŏdo irasci, sed ne dŏlēre quĭdem impūne lĭcet, which is equivalent to *Mihi non mŏdo non irasci, sed ne dŏlēre quĭdem impūne lĭcet*, or *Mihi non mŏdo irasci, sed dŏlēre quĭdem impūne non lĭcet*, Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum sēnātui non sŏlum jŭvāre rempūblicam, sed ne lūgēre quĭdem lĭcēret.* Id.

(*b.*) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non mŏdo* when followed by *sed* or *vērum* with *ĕtiam*, and also after *vix* ; as, *Qui non mŏdo ea fŭtūra tĭmet, vērum ĕtiam fert, sustinetque praesentia*, Who not only does *not* fear.... Cic. *Hæc gĕnĕra virtūtum non sŏlum in mōribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris rĕpĕriuntur*, These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Făcile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir ūnus tōtius Græciæ* făcile *doctissimus*. Cic. *Hŏmo rēgiōnis illīus virtūte* făcile *princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *mŏdo—mŏdo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes —sometimes); as, *Mŏdo hoc, mŏdo illud dicit; mŏdo huc, mŏdo illuc vŏlat*. Instead of the second *mŏdo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *ăliquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde.*—*Partim—partim*, partly—partly', is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *ălii—ălii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nōbis ita tĭmidi sunt, ut* etc., *partim ita rēpūblicā āversi, ut*, etc.—*Simul—simul*, ' as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quā—quā* is equivalent to *et—et.*—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *mŏdo—mŏdo*, sometimes like *partim— partim* ; as *Erumpunt sæpe vĭtia ămĭcōrum tum in ipsos ămĭcos, tum in ăliēnos*. Cic. *Hæc (bĕnĕficia) tum in ūnĭversam rempūblicam, tum in sĭngŭlos cives conferuntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by 'both—and especially,' 'not only—but also,' or 'but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *vēro, certe, ĕtiam, quŏque, præcipue, imprimis* or *maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortūna quum in rēliquis rēbus, tum præcipue in bello plūrimum pŏtest.* Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrŏgantia ŏdiōsa est, tum illa ingēnii atque ēlŏquentiæ multo molestissima. Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem păter mŏriens quum tūtōribus et prŏpinquis, tum lēgĭbus, tum æquĭtāti măgistrātuum, tum jūdĭciis vestris commendātum pătāvit.* Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vēro.*

REM. 10. *Non mŏdo—sed ĕtiam* (or *non sŏlum*, or *non tantum—vērum ĕtiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English 'not only—but (also).' The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non mŏdo—sed*, without the *ĕtiam*, which we render in English by ' I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam* or *non dico—sed* ; as, *Quid est ēnim minus non dico ōrātōris, sed hŏminis.*

REM. 11. *Tam—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nēmo tam multa scripsit*, quam *multa sunt nostra.* With superlatives they are rendered into English by ' the—the' and comparatives; as, *Vēternōsus* quam *plūrimum bĭbit*, tam *măxime sitit*, The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam quisque pessime fēcit*, tam *măxime tūtus est.* Sall.—*Tam—quam quod maxime* signifies, ' as much as possible.'—*Non tam—quam* signifies, ' not so much—as,' or ' less—than ' ; as, *Prŏvincia non* tam *grātiōsa et illustris*, quam *nĕgŏtiōsa ac mŏlest t.* Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non măgis—quam* are equivalent to *æque—ac*, ' as much as,' but in *non măgis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam* ; as, *Alexander* non *dūcis* măgis quam

mīlĭtis mūnia exsĕquēbătūr, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *māgis*.

(*a.*) *Sic* and *ĭta* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ĭta* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tămen*. *Tantus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Præsĭdĭī tantum est, ut ne mūrus quĭdem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(*b.*) *Ut—ĭta* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque ille*, *ut semper fuit ăpertissĭmus, non se purgāvit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *prīmum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dēnĭque* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *prīmum*, *sĕcundo*, (for *sĕcundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accēdit*, *huc adde*, etc. Sometimes *dēnĭque* is followed by *postrēmo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dēnĭque* without the other adverbs concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, mĭnus ēvĕnĭunt.* Cic.—So, *si mĭnus—at*, 'if not—yet'; and *sin mĭnus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated. —The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ĭta non* or *ădeo non*; as, *ădeo non cūrābat, quid hŏmĭnes de se lŏquĕrentur.*

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, Nunc *prīmum somnia me ēlūdunt* or *ēlūsērunt*; but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia* tunc *prīmum se dīcēbat ēlūsisse.* Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23, (*c.*)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *necdum*, 'and not yet'; *nullusdum*, 'no one yet'; *nihildum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vixdum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vixdum ĕpistŏlam tuam lēgĕram, quum ad me Curtius vēnit.* Cic.— So, also, the conjunction *nĭsi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nĭsi quod* or *præterquam quod.*—After *nihil ălĭud* we may use either *nĭsi* or *quam*, *nĭsi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *ălĭud.* Hence *nihil ălĭud nĭsi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil ălĭud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut ŏpīnor*, *ut pŭto*, *ut censeo*, *ut crēdo*, is frequently omitted. *Crēdo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative, § 235; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin; *pro lĕge et contra lĕgem dīcĕre*; *hæc cum eo, partim ĕtiam ab eo dĭdĭci.* Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as, *Quod aut sĕcundum nātūram esset, aut contra.* Cic. *Cis Pădum ultrāque.* Liv. Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extrāque mūnītĭōnes.* B. Civ. 3, 72.

3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective, and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic ; as,

Quid dicam de thēsauro omnium rērum, mēmŏrĭā? Hoc appāret in bestiis, vŏlŭcrĭbus, nantĭbus, agrestĭbus, cĭcŭrĭbus, fĕris, ut se ipsæ dilĭgant. Cic. *Sæpissime inter me et Scipiōnem de ămĭcĭtĭā dĭssĕrēbātur.* Id. *Quid fācĕres si in ălĭquam dŏmum villamve vēnisses?* Id. *Nĭhil per iram aut cŭpĭdĭtātem actum est.* Id. *Thĕmistŏcles non mĭnus in rēbus gĕrendis promptus quam excōgĭtandis ĕrat.* Nep.

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab, ad, de, ex,* and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et,* etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et, nec—nec,* etc., the prepositions must be repeated ; as, *Ut eōrum et in bellĭcis et in cĭvīlĭbus officiis vĭgeat industrĭa.* Cic.— *Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *intĕresse,* and other writers repeat it after other verbs also ; as, *Quid intersit inter pŏpŭlārem—cīvem, et inter constantem, sĕvērum et grăvem.* Cic. *Certātum inter Ap. Claudĭum maxime fĕrunt et inter P. Dĕcĭum.* Liv.

5. (*a.*) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only ; as, *Quæ nĕmŏra, aut quos ăgor in spĕcus,* (Hor.) for, *in quæ nĕmŏra aut in quos spĕcus ăgor.* So, Hor. Ep. 2, 1, 25.— (*b.*) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative ; as, *In eādem ŏpīnĭōne fui, quā rĕlĭqui omnes,* (Cic.), properly *in quā rĕlĭqui omnes fuērunt.*

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ **278.** Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have either no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (*a.*) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(*b.*) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government ; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun ; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent ; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc. ; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun ; as, *Conĭdunt venti, fŭgiuntque nŭbes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Lŏcum, quem et non cŏquit sol, et tangit ros.* Varr. *Lādī dĕcem per dĭes, facti sunt, nēque res ulla prætermissa est.* Cic. *Vĭdes, ut altā stet nĭve candĭdum Sōracte, nec jam sustĭneant ŏnus silvæ lĭbŏrantes, gĕlūque flūmĭna constĭtĕrint ăcūto.* Hor. *Intelligĭtis et ănĭmum ei præsto fuisse, nec cōnsĭlium dēfuisse.* Cic. *Gĕnĕri ănĭmantĭum omni est a nātūrā trĭbūtum, ut se tueātur, dēclĭnetque ea, quæ nŏcĭtūra vĭdeantur.* Id. *Aut nēmo, aut Cāto săpĭens fuit.* Id. *Pulvis et umbra sŭmus.* Hor. *Si tu et Tullĭa vălētis, ĕgo et Cĭcĕro vălēmus.* Cic. *Aggĕre jacto turrĭbusque constĭtūtis.* Cæs. *Clārus et hŏnōrātus vir,* An illustrious and honorable man. Id. *Cæsar Rēmos cŏhortātus, lĭbĕrālĭterque ōrātĭone prōsĕcūtus.* Cæs. *Pāter tuus, quem cŏlŭi et dĭlexi.* Cic. *Belgæ spectant in septentrĭōnem et orĭentem sōlem.* Cæs. *Nāvĭbus junctis, rătĭbusque complŭrĭbus factis.* Id. *Lĕge, vel tăbĕllas redde.* Plaut. *Allŏbrŏges trans Rhŏdănum vĭcos possessĭōnesque hăbĭbant.* Cæs. *Quum trĭumphum ĕgĕris, censorque fuĕris, et ŏbĭĕris lĕgātus.* Id. *Quum ad oppĭdum accessisset, castrăque ĭbi pŏnĕret.* Cæs.

Ades *ănĭmo, et* ŏmitte *tĭmōrem.* Cic. *Ea* vĭdēre *ac* perspĭcĕre *pŏtestis.* Id.
Grăvĭter *et* cōpiōse *dixisse dĭcĭtur.* Id. Cum *frātre an* sĭne. Id. Cf. § 277, II. 2.
Cui carmĭna cordi, nŭmĕrosque intendĕre *nervis.* Virg. *Nec census, nec clārum*
nōmen ărōrum, sed prŏbĭtas *magnos* ingĕniumque *făcit.* Ovid. *Phĭlŏsŏphi nĕ-*
gant quemquam *vĭrum bŏnum esse, nĭsi* săpientem. Cic. Glōria *vĭrtūtem tam-*
quam umbra *sĕquĭtur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single
words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether
coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in
the same construction; as, Meā *et* reĭpūblĭcæ *intĕrest.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sīve*
es Rōmæ, *sīve* in Epīro. Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221, Note.) *In*
Mettĭi descendat *jūdĭcis aures, et* patris *et* nostrus. Hor. See § 211, R. 3. In like
manner, *Hannĭbal non* ălĭter *vinci pŏtŭit, quam* mŏrā.

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be
connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, Disce *nec* invĭdeas. Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunc-
tions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different
moods; as, Stŭpōrem hŏmĭnis, *vel* dīcam *pĕcŭdis,* vĭdēte. Cic. *Nec* sătis scio,
nec, si sciam, *dīcĕre* ausim. Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multi* followed by another adjective, where in
English ‘and’ is usually omitted; as, Multæ *et* magnæ *arbŏres,* Many large
trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is,* introducing a more accurate
description. See § 207, R. 26, (*c.*)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (*a.*) When two single words,
as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *vĕlin,* nōlim,
whether I would or not; *maxĭma mĭnĭmā,* the greatest as well as the least;
prīma postrēma, from the first to the last; *dignos indignos ădīre ; īre rĕdīre,* to
go to and fro. Ædĭfĭcĭis omnĭbus pūblĭcis prīvātis, sacris prŏfānis sic pĕpercit.
Cic. Nam glōriam, hŏnōrem, impĕrĭum bŏnus ignāvus æque sĭbi exoptant. Sall.
C. 11.

(*b.*) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as,
Consŭles dēclārāti sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus. P. Lentŭlo L. Triārĭo, quæs-
tōrĭbus urbānis. Cic. Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues.
It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as,
Ădĕrant ămĭci, prŏpinqua. Id.; also with verbs; as, Adsunt, quĕruntur Sicŭli. Id.
In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly
to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each. The following may serve
as an example of both cases: Qui non mŏdo Cŭrĭis, Cătōnĭbus, Pompeiis, antiquis
illis, sed his rĕcentĭbus, Mārĭis et Dĭdĭis et Cæliis commĕmŏrandis jăcēbant. This
is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has
not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we should not
conclude the enumeration with *et* ălii, et rĕliqui, et cētĕra, etc., but should make
use of the adjectives alone, ălii, rĕliqui, cētĕra, etc. But though *et, ac* and *at-*
que are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* fre-
quently occurs in this position; as, Prĕcor ut ea res vōbis pācem, tranquillĭtā-
tem, ŏtĭum, concordĭamque affĕrat. Cic. *Et* may be supplied also when two
protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say ‘if—and if,’ or
‘if—and.’ See an example in Cic. Off. 3, 9.

(*c.*) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et, atque,* or *que* is
used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case ob-
taining the meaning of the adversative *sed ;* as, Mŏnēre cœpit Pōrum, *ne* ultĭma
expĕrīri persĕvērāret, dēdĕretque se vĭctōri. Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more
connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as,
Et pĕcūnĭa persŭādet, *et* grātĭa, *et* auctōrĭtas dīcentis, *et* dignĭtas, *et* postrēmo
aspectus. Quint. Hoc *et* turpe, *nec* tămen tūtum. Cic. Nĕque *nāta* est, *et æterna*
est. Id. Et *tĭbi et* mĭhi vŏluptāti *fŏre.* Id. Before clauses the disjunctive con-

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa* aut *invitābit* aut *dēhortābĭtur.* Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc, simul...simul, partim...partim, quā...quā, tum...tum, quum...tum,* are used before successive clauses.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu,* rather than *aut* or *vel,* is employed; as, *Mars sīve Māvors.* Cf. § 198, 2, (c.)

REM. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nēmo, nihil, nullus,* and *numquam, rēque* (or *nec*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam, ullus, umquam,* and *usquam.* But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam,* see § 207, R. 31, (a.); as, *Hōræ quidem cēdunt, et dies, et menses, et anni:* nec *prætĕritum tempus umquam rĕvertitur.* Cic. *Sēnātus dēcrēvit, dārent ŏpĕram consŭles, ne quid respūblĭca dētrimenti cāpĕret.* Cæs.

REM. 10. The conjunctions *ĭgĭtur, vērum, vērumtămen, sed,* and *sed tămen,* indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *ĭtăque.*

REM. 11. *Vēro* and *autem* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincĕre scit Hănnĭbal, victōrĭā ūti nescit.* Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat. 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vĕro*; as, *aliēna vitia videt, sua non vĭdet.* But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (c.); as, *Quāsi nunc id ăgātur,—ac non hoc quærātur.* Cic.

INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 209, R. 13:—with the dative, § 228, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

ARRANGEMENT.

I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ **279.** 1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives,* are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (*a.*) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of them, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the intervention of other words.* In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(*b.*) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives,* are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb.*

(c.) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, Dumnŏrix *grātiā et largītĭōne ăpud Sĕquănos plūrĭmum pŏtĕrat.* Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the verb is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(d.) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, Cito *ārescit lacrĭma, præsertim in ălĭēnis mălis,* Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. Sua *rĭtia insĭpĭentes et suam culpam in sēnectūtem confĕrunt.* Id.

(e.) If there be no *emotive* or *pathetic* word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the *significant* word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, Gallia *est omnis divīsa in partes* tres. Cæs. Quod ante *id tempus accĭdĕrat* numquam. Id. Quod *ălĭud iter hăbĕrent* nullum. Id. Quæ virtus ex prŏvĭdendo est appellāta prūdentia. Cic.

3. (a.) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. et, ĕtĕnim, ac, at, atque, atqui, nĕque or nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, vērum, and the relatives quāre, quŏcirca, and quamobrem.

(b.) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. Ut, even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after vix, pæne, and prŏpe, and also after the negatives nullus, nĕmo, nĭhil, and the word tantum. In Cicero, ĭtăque stands first and igĭtur is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(c.) Autem, ĕnim, and vēro (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb sum; as, Ille ĕnim rĕvŏcātus rĕsistĕre cæpit. Cæs. Ego vēro rellem, affuisses. Cic. Incrĕdĭbĭle est ĕnim, quam sit, etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, Cur non de intĕgro autem dătum. Id. The enclitics que, ne, ve, are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, Rōmum Cāto dēnĭgrāvit, in fŏrŏque esse cæpit; and this is always the case with a, ad and ob. So, also, for the sake of euphony, Apud quosque. Cic.

(d.) Quidem and quŏque, when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, Verbo ille reus ĕrat, re quĭdem vēro Oppianĭcus. Cic. Me scilicet maxime, sed proxĭme illum quŏque Jĕfellissem. Id. In negative sentences, ne precedes, and quĭdem follows, the emphatic word; as, Ne ad Cătōnem quĭdem prŏvŏcābo. Cic.— Quĭdem is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, Tĭbĭque persuāde, esse te quĭdem mĭhi cārissĭmum, sed multo fŏre cārĭōrem, si, etc., instead of, te cārissĭmum quĭdem mĭhi esse.—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between ne and quĭdem; as, Ne in fāmis quĭdem. Id., so is dŭbĭtĕtur quĭdem. Id. Ne quum in Sĭcĭliā quĭdem fuit. Id.; and even Ne cŭjus rei argŭĕrĕtur quĭdem.— So, also, in Cicero, non nisi, 'only,' are separated; and the negative may even be contained in a verb.

(e.) The preceding rules respecting the position of connectives are often violated by the poets, who place even the prepositive conjunctions after one or more words of a proposition; as, Et tu, pŏtes nam, etc.. Hor. Vivos et rŏdĕret

ungues. Id. They even separate *et* from the word belonging to it; as, *Audīre et vĭdeor pios errāre per lūcos.* Id. So, *Auctius atque dī mēlius fēcēre.* Id. And they sometimes append *que* and *ve* neither to the first word, nor to their proper words in other connections; as, *Messallam terrā dum sĕquĭturque mŏri,* instead of *terrā mărīque.* Tib. In such arbitrary positions, however, these conjunctions are almost invariably joined to verbs only.

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, Hŏmĭnes hŏmĭnibus *maxime ūtiles esse possunt.* Cic. *Equĭtes* ālii ālio *dīlapsi sunt.* Liv. *Lēgĭtĭmque* virum *vir.* Virg. Mănus mănum *lăvat.* Petr. So, also, the personal and possessive pronouns; as, *Sēquĕre quo* tua te *nātūra dūcit.* Suum se *nĕgōtium ăgĕre* dicunt.

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum tă-cent,* clāmant. Cic. *Frăgĭle corpus* ănĭmus *sempĭternus mŏvet.* Id.

6. *Inquam* and often *aio,* introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, '*Non nosti quid păter,*' inquit, '*Chrÿsippus dicat.*' Hor. '*Quid,*' aio, '*tua crĭmĭna prōdis?*' Ovid. When a nominative is added to *inquit,* it usually follows this verb; as, *Mĭhi vēro,* inquit Cotta, *vĭdētur.* Cic.—*Dīcit* and *dīxit* are used like *inquit* only by the poets.

7. (*a.*) The adjective may be placed before or after its noun according as one or the other is emphatic, the more emphatic word being placed before the other. When any thing is dependent on the adjective, it usually follows its noun. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla* officii *præcepta.* Cic. *Tuum* ergă dignĭtātem meam *stŭdium.* Id.

(*b.*) Demonstratives, and the adjectives *prīmus, mĕdius,* etc., when signifying the first part, the middle part, etc., (see § 205, R. 17), usually precede their nouns; as, *Ea res.* Cæs *His ipsis verbis.* Cic. *Mĕdia nox.* Cæs. *Rĕliqua Ægyptus.* Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vir clārissĭmus.* Cic. *Di immortāles. Res innŭmĕrābĭles. Vis tempestātis.* Cæs.

9. (*a.*) When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last, unless it is to be made emphatic; as, *Opes irrĭ-tāmenta mălōrum.* Ovid. Hence names of honors or dignities, and every thing of the nature of a title, are commonly placed after the proper name, as explanatory additions. Thus, especially, the names of changeable Roman dignities; as, *Cĭcĕro* consul; *C. Curiōni* tribūno plēbis; but also permanent appellations; as, *Ennius* poēta; *Plăto* phĭlŏsŏphus; *Diŏnÿsius* tÿrannus; and such epithets as *vir hŏnestissĭmus; hŏmo doctissĭmus.* But the hereditary title *rex* is frequently placed before the name; as, rex Dēiŏtărus; and so the title *Impĕrātor* after it became permanent.

(*b.*) In the arrangement of the Roman names of persons, the *prænōmen* stands first, next the *nōmen* or name of the *gens,* third the *cognōmen* or name of the *fămĭlia,* and last the *agnōmen;* as, *Publius Cornēlius Scīpio Afrĭcānus.* The prænomen is usually denoted by a letter. In the imperial times the *nōmen* is often either omitted or follows as something subordinate.

10. (*a.*) Oblique cases precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

Pŏpŭli Rōmāni laus est. Cic. Laudis *ăvĭdi,* pĕcūniæ *lĭbĕrāles.* Sall. Cunctis esto *bĕnignus,* nulli *blandus,* paucis *fămĭliāris,* omnĭbus *æquus.* Sen. *Mŏnŭ-mentum* ære *pĕrennius.* Hor. Hanc tĭbi dōno *do.* Ter.—Ad *mĕrĭdiem spectans.* Cic. *Extra pĕrĭcŭlum.* Id.

(*b.*) Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last; as, *Incerta fortūnæ.* Liv. *Nec tĭbi plus* cordis, *sed minus* ōris inest. Ovid.

REMARK. This rule, so far especially as it relates to genitives, is in a great degree arbitrary, as the position of the governed and governing words depends on the idea to be expressed; thus, *mors patris tui*, contrasts the death with the preceding life; but, *fratris tui mors* distinguishes this case of death from others. Hence we say, *ănĭmi mōtus, ănĭmi morbus, corpŏris partes, terræ mōtus.*—An objective genitive usually follows the word on which it depends; as, *ŭnā signĭfĭcātĭōne* litĕrārum, by means of a single notice by letters.—When several genitives are dependent on one noun, the subjective genitive commonly precedes and the objective genitive may either precede or follow the governing noun.— The genitive dependent on *causā* or *grātiā*, 'on account of,' regularly precedes these ablatives; as, *glōriæ causā mortem obire; ēmōlŭmenti sui grātiā.*

(*c.*) When a noun which is governed by a preposition, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by which the noun is modified; as, *A primā lŭce ad sextam hōram.* Liv. *Ad ănĭmi mei lætitiam.* Cic. *Ad bĕne beātēque vivendum.* Id.

(*d.*) Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective or a genitive, by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullā in re.* Cic. *Justis de causis.* Id. *Suos inter æquāles.* Id. *Hanc ob causam.* Id. *Magno cum metu.* Id. *Quā in urbe.* Id. *Eā in re.* Id. *Ætātis suæ cum primis.* Nep.— So, also, a conjunction may follow the preposition; as, *Post vero Sullæ victōriam.*

(*e.*) *Per*, in adjurations, is often separated from its case by other words; as, *Per ĕgo te deos ōro.* Ter.—In the poets, other prepositions are sometimes separated in the same manner; as, *Vulnĕra, quæ circum plurima mūros accēpit patrios.* Virg.

(*f.*) *Tēnus* and *versus*, and sometimes other prepositions, (cf. § 241, R. 1,) follow their cases, especially when joined with *qui* or *hic.* This occurs most frequently with the prepositions *ante, contra, inter,* and *propter*; more rarely with *circa, circum, pēnes, ultra* and *adversus*; and with still less frequency with *post, per, ad,* and *de*; as, *quam ante, quem contra, quos inter, quem propter, quos ad, quem ultra, hunc post, quam circa.*—The preceding prepositions, and more rarely others also, sometimes, especially in the poets and later prose writers, follow nouns and personal pronouns. In such case, if the noun be modified by an adjective or a genitive, the preposition sometimes stands between them, and sometimes follows both; as, *Postes sub ipsos.* Virg. *Rīpam ăpud Euphrātis.* Tac. *Māria omnia circum.* Virg. And more rarely other words intervene; as, *His accensa sŭper.* Virg. *Vitiis nēmo sine nascĭtur* Hor.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

Jŭgurtha, ŭbi eos Africā dēcessisse rătus est, nĕque propter lŏci nātūram Cirtam armis expugnāre possit, mœnia circumdat. Sall. *Servīre măgis quam impĕrāre părāti estis.* Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir grăvis et săpiens.* Cic. *Clārus et hŏnōrātus vir.* Id. *In scriptōribus lĕgendis et ĭmĭtandis,* or *In lĕgendis ĭmĭtandisque scriptōribus;* but not *In lĕgendis scriptōribus et ĭmĭtandis.* *Quum respondēre nĕque vellet nĕque posset.* *Hăbentur et dicuntur tўranni.* *Amīcitiam nec ūsu nec rătiōne hăbent cognitam.*

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te mīsi, cognosces. Sall. *Lītĕras ad te mīsi, per quas grātias tĭbi ēgi.* Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se, suus, qui,* ordinals and superlatives; as, *Suos quisque dēbet tuēri.* Cic. *Sătis sŭperque est sĭbi suārum cuique rērum cūra.* Id. *Sĕvērĭtas ănĭmadversiōnis infĭmo cuĭque grātissĭma.* Id. *Maxĭme dēcet, quod est cūjusque maxĭme suum.* Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.

15. (a.) An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, Mălĕ *parta* mălĕ *dīlābuntur.* Cic. *Nīhil* tam *aspĕrum nĕque* tam *diffĭcĭle esse, quod* non *cūpĭdissĭme factūri essent.* Sall.—*Impĕrĭum* fắcĭle iis artĭbus rĕtĭnētur, *quibus* inĭtĭo partum est. Id. *Sed* maxĭme *ădŏlescentĭum fămĭlĭărĭtātes* appĕtēbat. Id. *Non* tam *in bellĭs et in prœlĭis,* quam *in prōmissis et fĭde* firmĭōrem. Cic.—(b.) When *non* belongs to a single word of the proposition, it always stands immediately before it; as, non te *rĕprĕhendo, sed fortūnam.* But if it belongs to the proposition generally, it stands before the verb, and particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *Cur tantŏpĕre te angas, intellĭgĕre sānĕ* non possum. Instead of *non dīco,* nĕgo is generally used; as, nĕgāvit eum adesse.—The negatives *non,* nĕque, *nēmo, nullus,* when joined to negative pronouns or adverbs, such as *quisquam, ullus, umquam,* always precede them though not always immediately; as, nēmĭni quidquam nĕgāvit; non mēmĭni me umquam te vĭdisse. § 207, R. 31.

NOTE 1. In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, Cīvis Rōmānus, pŏpŭlus Rōmānus, jus cīvĭle, œs ălĭēnum, terrā mărĭque, Pontĭfex maxĭmus, măgister ĕquĭtum, trĭbūnus mĭlĭtum, trĭbūm mĭlĭtum consŭlāri pŏtestāte, Jŭpĭter optĭmus maxĭmus, vĭa Appĭa; ne quid respūblĭca dētrĭmenti căpĭat. Cic. The ablatives ŏpĭnĭōne, spe, justo, sŏlĭto, (see § 256, R. 9), generally precede the comparative.

NOTE 2. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise (a) from emphasis; (b) from poetic license; and (c) from regard to the harmony of the sentence. The following general rule sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding.

16. The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

NOTE 3. The last place is often an emphatic one, except for the verb. When the verb is neither first nor last in a proposition the word before it is emphatic. An adjective, when emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive; when not emphatic, it commonly follows it. But with the demonstrative pronouns the rule is reversed.

NOTE 4. The principal poetical variation in the arrangement of words consists in the separation of the adjective from its noun, and in putting together words from different parts of a proposition.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse vĭdētur ;* nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. Hĭātus should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

II. OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

§ **280.**   A compound sentence, whose clauses are united as protasis and apodosis, or in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period.*

1. (a.) In the former kind of period the protasis must precede the apodosis; as, *Quum Pausănĭas sēmĭănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset,* confestim ănĭmam efflāvit, When Pausanias had been carried out of the temple but just alive, he immediately expired. In a period of the latter kind the verb of the principal proposition is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as, Pausănĭas, *quum sēmĭănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset,* confestim ănĭmam efflāvit, Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep.

(b.) A sentence, such as *Scĭpĭo exercĭtum in Afrĭcam trājēcit, ut Hannĭbălem ex Itălĭā dēdūcĕret,* is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so when we

say, *Scīpio, ut Hannĭbălem ex Ĭtălĭā dēdūcĕret, exercĭtum in Āfrĭcam trājēcit.*
Periods in which the subordinate clause precedes with two conjunctions; as,
Quum igĭtur Rōmam vēnisset, stătim impĕrātōrem ădiit, are made still more
strictly periodic by placing first the conjunction which belongs to the whole,
and then inserting the subordinate proposition; as, Ităque, *quum Rōmam vē-
nisset,* stătim impĕrātōrem ădiit.

2. (*a.*) If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same
subject, or the same noun depending on them, they are commonly formed into
a period; as, Antĭgŏnus, *quum adversus Sĕleucum Lȳsĭmăchumque dĭmĭcāret,* in
prœlio occīsus est. Nep. Quem, *ut barbări incendium effūgisse ēminus vīdērunt,*
tēlis missis interfēcērunt. Id.

(*b.*) So, also, when the noun which depends on the verb of the leading clause
is the subject of the dependent clause; as, L. Manlio, *quum dĭctātor fuisset,*
M. Pompōnius, trĭbūnus plēbis, diem dixit. Cic.

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and
verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the be-
ginning or end of the sentence; as, Lātæ (sunt) deinde lēges, *non sōlum quæ
regni suspĭciōne consŭlem absolvĕrent, sed quæ ădeo in contrārium vertĕrent, ut pŏpŭ-
lārem ĕtiam făcĕrent.* Liv. The position of the leading verb is also often
otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent
its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause; but clauses, when so
arranged, do not constitute a period.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter
should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause,* a *condition,* a *time,* or a *comparison,* usually
precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after, a long one.

III. OF THE CONNECTION OF CLAUSES.

(1.) In connecting propositions, relatives, whether pronouns, pronominal ad-
jectives, or adverbs, are often employed in order to avoid the too frequent re-
currence of *et, autem,* and certain other conjunctions. Every relative may be
used for this purpose instead of its corresponding demonstrative with *et*; as,
qui for *et is, quālis* for *et tālis, quo* for *et eo,* etc. They are used also before those
conjunctions which are joined with *et* or *autem* at the beginning of a proposi-
tion; as, *si, nisi, ut, quum,* etc. (see § 206, (14.); as, *quod quum audīvissem, quod
si fēcissem, quod quamvis non ignōrassem,* for *et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis
hoc ;* or *quum autem hoc,* etc.; and, often, also, where in English no conjunction
is used, and even before other relatives; as, *quod qui făcit, eum ĕgo impium
jŭdĭco,* i. e. *et qui hoc făcit,* or, *qui autem hoc făcit.* In the ablative with com-
paratives the relative is often used as a connective; as, *Cáto, quo nēmo tum
ĕrat prūdentior,* i. e. Cato, who was more prudent than all others.

(2.) In propositions consisting of two members, the relative pronoun is joined
grammatically either to the apodosis or to the protasis; with the former in,
Qui, *quum ex eo quærĕrētur, cur tam diu vellet esse in vītā,* Nĭhil hăbeo, inquit,
quod accūsem sĕnectūtem. Cic. de Sen. 6. But is more frequent with the
protasis or secondary clause; as, A quo quum quærĕrētur, quid maxĭme expĕ-
dĭret, *respondit.* Cic. Off. 2, 25. When it is thus joined with the protasis, the
nominative of the demonstrative is supplied with the apodosis from another
case of the relative in the protasis, as, in the preceding passage, from the abla-
tive. But for the sake of emphasis the demonstrative may be expressed, and
frequently, also, for the sake of clearness; as, *Qui nos quum a postĕriōribus non
esset rĕtentus,* Arcĕsĭlas eum rĕvŏcārit. Cic. de Fin. 2, 1. The accusative is
sometimes to be supplied; as, *Qui (Herāclĭtus) quōnĭam intellĭgi nōluit, ŏmittā-
mus.* Cic. N. D. 3, 14. When the demonstrative precedes, and is followed by
a proposition consisting of two members, the relative is attached to the prota-

sis, which is placed first, and not to the leading clause or apodosis; as, *Ea suási Pompeio*, quibus ille si párnisset, *Cæsar tantas ópes, quantas nunc hábet, non hábēret.* Cic. Fam. 6, 6. *Nóli adversus eos me velle dúcēre,* cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, *Itáliam rēliqui.* Nep. Att. 4.

(3.) Where in English we use 'however' with the relative; as, He promised me many things, which, however, he did not perform, the Latins made use of the demonstrative with *sed* or *vērum*, or the relative alone implying the adversative conjunction; as, *multa mihi prōmisit,* sed ea *non præstitit,* or, quæ *non præstitit,* but not *quæ autem* or *quæ vēro.* *Qui autem* and *qui vēro* are used however in protases, where the relative retains its relative meaning, and there is a corresponding demonstrative in the apodosis; as, *Qui autem omnia bóna a se ipsis pétunt, iis nîhil málum vidēri pótest, quod nātúræ nécessitas áffērat.* Cic. de Sen. 2.

(4.) In double relative clauses, especially where the cases are different, Cicero frequently for the second relative clause substitutes the demonstrative; as, *Sed ipsius in mente insídēbat spécies pulchrítūdinis exímia quædam,* quam intuens, in eáque dēfixus, *ad,* etc. for *et in quā.* Cic. Orat. 2. And sometimes even when the cases are the same; as, *Quem Phlíuntem vēnisse férunt,* eumque *cum Leonte dissēruisse quædam.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 3; where *et* alone would have been sufficient.

(5.) From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions merely as a copulative. See § 206, (14.)

(6.) *Něque* or *nec* is much used by Latin writers instead of *et* and a negation, and may be so used in all cases except when the negative belongs to one particular word; see § 278, R. 9. *Něque* or *nec* is added to *ēnim, vēro,* and *támen,* where we cannot use 'and.' To these negative expressions a second negative is often joined, in which case *něque ēnim non* is equivalent to *nam; non vēro non,* to *atque étiam,* a stronger *et; nec támen non,* to *attámen.*

ANALYSIS.

§ 281. I. 1. The analysis of a complex or a compound sentence consists in dividing it into its several component propositions, and pointing out their relation to each other.

2. In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses be supplied. See § 203, 4; § 274, 3; and § 257.

3. In a continued discourse the connection and relation of the successive sentences also should be specified.

Rules for the Analysis of Complex and Compound Sentences.

(1.) State whether the sentence is complex or compound. § 201, 11, 12.

(2.) If complex, (1) specify the principal and subordinate clauses. (2) Specify the class to which the subordinate proposition belongs, (§ 201, 7,) and (3), its connective, and the class to which such connective belongs, (§ 201, 8 and 9.)

(3.) If compound, specify the principal propositions, with their subordinates, if any they have, as in the case of complex sentences.

II. The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate, and, in case either of them be compound, in pointing out the simple subjects or predicates of which it is composed, and, if complex, in specifying the several modifiers, whether of the essential or subordinate parts.

Rules for the Analysis of a Simple Sentence.

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate, § 201, 1—3. If these are simple, the analysis is complete, but if either is compound :—

2. Specify the simple subjects or predicates of which the compound consists.—If either is complex :—

3. Point out the grammatical subject, and the words, phrases, etc. *directly* modifying it.

4. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical subject is specified.

5. Point out the grammatical predicate, and the words, phrases, etc., *directly* modifying it.

6. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical predicate is specified.

PARSING.

III. Parsing consists in resolving a proposition into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing the derivation of each word, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

Rules for Parsing.

1. Name the part of speech to which each word belongs, including the subdivision in which it is found.

2. If it is an inflected word :—

(1.) Name its root or crude form, and decline, compare, or conjugate it.

(2.) If it is a noun or pronoun, tell its gender, number and case :—if in the nominative or in the accusative with the infinitive, tell its verb :—if in an oblique case depending on some other word, tell the word on which its case depends.

(3.) If it is an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, tell the word which it modifies.

(4.) If it is a finite verb or an infinitive with the accusative, tell its voice, mood, tense, number, person, and subject.

3. If it is a conjunction, tell its class and what it connects.

4. If it is a preposition, tell the words whose relation is expressed by it.

5. If it is an adverb, tell its class and what it qualifies.

6. Prove the correctness of each step of the process by quoting the definition or rule of formation or construction on which it depends.

Note. The words constituting a proposition are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

Examples of Analysis and Parsing.

1. *Equus currit,* The horse runs.

Analysis. This is a simple sentence: its subject is *ĕquus*, its predicate is *currit*, both of which are simple. See § 201, 1-3; § 202, 2; and § 203, 2.

27

Parsing. Equus is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d decl., § 38; masc. gender, § 28, 1; third person, § 35, 2; its root is *ĕqu–*, § 40, 10; decline it, § 46; it is in the nominative case, singular number, § 35, 1, (*b.*); the *subject* of *currit*, § 209, (*a.*)—*Currit* is a neuter verb, § 141, II.; of the 3d conjugation, § 149, 2, from *curro*; its principal parts are *curro, cúcurri, cursum, currĕre,* § 151, 4; it is from the first root *curr–*; give the formations of that root, § 151, 1; it is in the active voice, § 142, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; present tense, § 145, I.; third person, § 147; singular number, § 146; agreeing with its subject-nominative *ĕquus*, § 209, (*b.*)

NOTE. The questions to be asked in parsing *ĕquus* are such as these, Why is *ĕquus* a noun? Why a *common* noun? Why of the *second* declension? Why *masculine?* etc.—In parsing *currit*, the questions are, Why is *currit* a *verb?* Why a *neuter* verb? Why of the *third* conjugation? Which are the *principal parts* of a verb? Of what does the *first root* of a verb consist? What parts of a verb are derived from the *first root?* etc. The answer in each case may be found by consulting the etymological rules and definitions.

2. *Sævius ventis ăgĭtātur ingens pīnus,* The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

Analysis. This also is a simple sentence:—its subject is *ingens pīnus,* its predicate *sævius ventis ăgĭtātur;* both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *pīnus,* the pine; this is modified by *ingens,* great, § 201, 2, § 202, 2, and § 203, 6, (3.)

The grammatical predicate is *ăgĭtātur,* is shaken; this is modified by two independent modifiers, *sævius,* more violently, and *ventis,* by the winds, § 203, II. 3, Rem., § 203, I. 1, (2), and (3.)

Parsing. Pīnus is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d and 4th declensions, § 38 and § 99; feminine gender, § 29, 2; 3d person, § 35, 2; from the root *pīn–,* § 40, 10; (decline it both in the 2d and 4th declensions);—it is found in the singular number, § 35, 1, and the nominative case, the subject of *ăgĭtātur,* § 209, (*a.*)

Ingens is a qualifying adjective of quantity, § 104, 4, and § 205, N. 1; of the 3d decl., § 105, 1, and § 38; of one termination, § 108, and § 111; from the root *ingent–,* § 40, 10; (decline it like *præsens,* § 111, but with only *i* in the ablative, § 113, Exc. 3,);—it is found in the singular number, feminine gender, § 26, R. 4; and nominative case, agreeing with its noun *pīnus,* § 205.

Agĭtātur is an active frequentative verb, § 141, I., and § 187, II. 1; of the 1st conjugation, § 149, 2; from the first root of its primitive *ăgo,* § 187, II. 1, (*b.*); (name its principal parts in both voices, see § 151, *x.;* and give the conjugation of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, see § 156,);—it is found in the singular number, § 146; third person, § 147; agreeing with its subject-nominative *pīnus,* § 209, (*b.*)

Sævius is a derivative adverb of manner, § 190, 2–4; in the comparative degree, from the positive *sæve* or *sævĭter,* which is derived from the adjective *sævus,* § 194, 1 and 2, and § 192, II. 1, and Exc. 1 and 2; modifying the verb *ăgĭtātur,* by expressing its degree, § 277.

Ventis is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 46; from the root *vent–,* § 40, 10; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, § 35, 1; ablative case, modifying *ăgĭtātur* by denoting its means or instrument, § 247.

3. *Mĭthrĭdātes, duārum et vīginti gentium rex, tŏtĭdem linguis jūra dixit,* Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

Analysis. This also is a simple sentence; its subject is *Mĭthrĭdātes, duārum et vīginti gentium rex,* its predicate is *tŏtĭdem linguis jūra dixit;* both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *Mithridātes;* this is modified directly by *rex,* § 202, I. (1.)

Rex is limited by *gentium,* § 202, I. 1, (2.)

Gentium is limited by the compound addition *duārum* and *vīginti* connected coördinately by *et,* § 202, III. 3.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit;* this is limited by *jūra* and *linguis,* the former a simple, the latter a complex addition, as it is modified by *tōtidem,* § 203, I. 1, (2.) and II. 1.

Parsing. *Mithridātes* is a proper noun, § 26, 2; of the third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *Mithridāt-,* § 40, 10; genitive *Mithridātis,* § 73, 1; (decline it in the singular number only, § 95, (a.);—it is found in the nominative case, the subject of *dixit,* § 209, (a.)

Rex is a common noun—third declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *rēg-,* § 40, 10; genitive *rēgis,* § 78, 2; (decline it):—it is found in the singular number—the nominative case, in apposition to *Mithridātes,* § 204.

Gentium is a common noun from *gens*—third declension—feminine gender, § 62; from the root *gent-,* § 56, I. R. 1; genitive *gentis,* § 77, 2 and (2.); (decline it):—it is found in the plural number—genitive case, § 83, II. 3; limiting *rex* subjectively, § 211 and R. 2.

Duārum is a numeral adjective, § 104, 5; of the cardinal kind, § 117; from *duo, duæ, duo* ; from the root *du-* ; (decline it, § 118, 1,):—it is found in the plural number, § 118, 2; feminine gender, genitive case, § 26, R. 4; agreeing with its noun *gentium,* § 205.

Et is a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1, connecting *duārum* and *vīginti,* § 278.

Vīginti is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, indeclinable, § 118, 1; limiting *gentium,* § 205.

Dixit is an active verb, § 141, I.; of the third conjugation, § 149, 2; from *dico,* (give the principal parts in the active voice, and its first, second, and third roots, § 150, 4, and § 171, 1;) it is formed from the second root *dix-,* (give the formations of the second root);—it is found in the active voice, § 141, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; perfect indefinite tense, § 145, IV. and Rem.; singular number, third person, agreeing with *Mithridātes,* § 209, (b.)

Jūra is a common noun, of the third declension, from *jus,* root *jūr-,* § 56, I. R. 1. genitive *jūris,* § 76, Exc. 3; neuter gender, § 66; (decline it):—it is found in the plural number, accusative case, § 40, 8; the object of *dixit,* § 229.

Linguis is a common noun, of the first declension, feminine gender, from *lingua,* root *lingu-,* (decline it);—found in the plural number, ablative case, after *dixit.* § 247.

Tōtidem is a demonstrative pronominal adjective, § 139, 5, (2.) and (3.); indeclinable, § 115, 4; it is in the ablative plural, feminine gender, limiting *linguis,* § 205.

4. *Pausānias, quum sēmiănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset, confestim ănĭmam efflāvit.* Nep. Paus. 4.

Analysis. This is a complex sentence, § 201, 11; consisting of two members, which are so arranged as to constitute a period, § 280, 1.

The principal proposition is, *Pausānias confestim ănĭmam efflāvit,* § 201, 5. The subordinate proposition is, *quum (is) sēmiănĭmis de templo ēlātus esset,* § 201, 6.

The leading proposition has a simple subject, *Pausānias,* § 202, 2, and a complex predicate, *confestim ănĭmam efflāvit,* § 203, 3; in which *efflāvit* is the grammatical predicate, § 203, 2; which is modified by *confestim* and *animum,* § 203, I. 1, (2.) and (3.), and II. R. 2., and also by the adverbial clause *quum sēmiănĭmis,* etc. § 201, 6 and 7, and § 203, I. 3.

The subordinate proposition, which is connected to the leading clause by the subordinate conjunction *quum,* § 201, 9, has a simple subject, viz. *is* understood, and a complex predicate, *sēmiănĭmis, de templo ēlātus esset,* § 203, 3.— The grammatical predicate is *ēlātus esset,* § 203, 2; which is modified by *sēmiănĭmis,* § 203, I. 1, (1.), and *de templo,* § 203, I. 2, and II. Rem. 2.

Parsing. *Pausānias*, a Greek proper noun, § 26, 2;—1st decl., §§ 41 and 44; masc. gender, § 28, 1; root *Pausāni-*; found in sing. num., nom. case, the subject of *efflāvit*, § 209, (a.)

Confestim, an adv. of time § 190, 3; limiting *efflāvit*, § 277.

Animam is a com. noun of 1st decl., fem. gender, § 41; from *ănĭma*, root *ănĭm-*; (decline it);—it is found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of *efflāvit*, § 229.

Efflāvit, an act. verb, 1st conj., from *efflo*, compounded of *ex* and *flo*, § 196, 6; (give the principal parts in the act. voice and the three roots);—it is formed from the second root; (give the formations of that root); in the active voice, ind. mood, perfect indefinite tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Pausā-nias*, § 209, (b.)

Quum is a temporal conjunction, § 198, 10; connecting the dependent to the principal clause, § 278.

Sēmĭănĭmis is a predicate adj., of the 3d decl., of two terminations, § 109; (decline it);—it is in the sing. num., masc. gend., nom. case, agreeing with *is* understood, § 210, R. 1, (a.)

De is a preposition, expressing the relation between *ēlātus esset* and *templo*, § 195.

Templo is a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gend., from *templum*, root *templ-*; (decline it);—in the sing. num., abl. case, after *de*, § 241.

Ēlātus esset is an irregular active verb, of the third conjugation, § 179; from *efferō*, compounded of *ex* and *fĕro*, § 196, 6; (see *fĕro* and compounds, § 172); (give the principal parts in both voices, and the 1st and 3d roots);—it is formed from the third root, *ēlāt-*, (give the formations of that root in the passive voice); in the subjunctive mood, pluperfect tense, § 145, V.; sing. num., third person, agreeing with *is* understood referring to *Pausānias*, § 209, (b.)

5. *Rōmāna pūbes, sēdāto tandem pāvōre, postquam ex tam turbĭdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rĕdiit, ŭbi vācuum sēdem rēgiam vīdit, etsi sătis crēdēbat patrĭbus, qui proxĭmi stĕtĕrant, sublimem raptum prŏcellā; tāmen, vēlut orbĭtātis mĕtu icta, mœstum ălĭquamdiu silentium obtĭnuit.* Liv. 1, 16.

Analysis. This is a complex sentence, whose clauses constitute a period, § 280. It is composed of the following members or clauses:—

1. Rōmāna pūbes [tāmen] *mœstum ălĭquamdiu silentium obtĭnuit.* This is the leading clause. The following are dependent clauses.
2. vēlut *orbĭtātis mĕtu icta,*
3. *sēdāto tandem pāvōre,*
4. *postquam ex tam turbĭdo die sērēna et tranquilla lux rĕdiit,*
5. *ŭbi vācuum sēdem rēgiam vīdit,*
6. etsi *sătis crēdēbat patrĭbus,*
7. qui *proxĭmi stĕtĕrant,*
8. *sublimem raptum prŏcellā.*

NOTE 1. In the preceding clauses the predicates are printed in Italics.

NOTE 2. The connective of the 1st clause, is the adversative *tāmen*, which is inserted on account of *etsi* intervening between the principal subject and predicate. The connective of the 2d clause is *vēlut*, of the 4th *postquam*, of the 5th *ŭbi*, of the 6th *etsi*, followed by a clause constituting the protasis, and of the 7th *qui*. The 3d and 8th clauses have no connectives.

(1.) The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pūbes*, which is limited by *Rōmāna.*—The grammatical predicate is *obtĭnuit*, which is limited by *ălĭquamdiu* and *silentium*, and also either directly or indirectly by all the dependent clauses. *Silentium* is itself modified by *mœstum.*

The second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth clauses are used adverbially to denote the time and other circumstances modifying the principal predicate *silentium obtĭnuit*, § 201, 7.

(2.) The second is a participial clause, equivalent to *vĕlut (ea* scil. *pŭbes) orbĭtātis mĕtu icta esset,* § 274, 3, (*a.*)

(3.) The third clause is also participial, and is equivalent to *quum tandem părŏr sēdātus esset,* § 257, R. 1; and hence *părŏre* represents the subject, and *sēdāto tandem* the predicate—the former being simple, the latter complex.

(4.) The grammatical subject of the 4th clause, which is connected to the leading clause by *postquam,* § 201, 9, is *lux,* which is modified by *sērēna* and *tranquilla.*—The grammatical predicate is *rēdiit,* which is modified by *postquam* and *ex tam turbido die,* § 203, I. 1, (3.), and II. 1.

(5.) The grammatical subject of the fifth clause is *ea* understood.—The grammatical predicate is *vĭdit,* which is modified by *ŭbi* and *văcuam sēdem rēgiam,* § 203, I. 1, (3.) and II. 1.

(6.) The grammatical subject of the sixth clause also is *ea.* Its grammatical predicate is *crēdĕbat,* which is modified by *sătis* and *patribus,* § 203, I. (2.) and (3.), and by the 8th clause, II. 3.

(7.) The grammatical subject of the seventh clause is *qui.* Its grammatical predicate is *stĕtērant,* which is modified by *proxĭmi,* § 203, I. (1.) It is an adjective clause, modifying *patribus,* § 201, 7 and 9.

(8.) The grammatical subject of the eighth clause, which has no connective, § 204, Rem., is *eum,* i. e. *Rŏmŭlum,* understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum (esse),* which is modified by *sublĭmem* and *prŏcellā.*

Parsing. *Rŏmāna* is a patrial adjective, § 104, 10, derived from *Rŏma,* § 128, 6, (*a.*) and (*e.*); of the 1st and 2d declensions, § 105, 2; fem. gender, sing. number, nom. case, agreeing with *pŭbes,* § 205.

Pŭbes, a collective noun, § 26, 4; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *pūb-,* § 56, I. R. 6; genitive *pŭbis,* § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the nom. sing., the subject of *obtĭnuit,* § 209, (*a.*)

Tămen, an adversative conjunction, § 198, 9, relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause.

Mestum, a qualifying adj., § 205, N. 1; of the 1st and 2d declensions, neut. gender, sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium.*

Alĭquamdiu, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; compounded of *alĭquis* and *diu,* § 193, 6; and limiting *obtĭnuit,* § 277.

Silentium, a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, § 46; sing. num., acc. case, the object of *obtĭnuit,* § 229.

Obtĭnuit, an active verb, of the 2d conj., § 149, 2; from *obtĭneo,* compounded of *ob* and *tĕneo,* see § 168; (give the principal parts in the act. voice, and the formations of the 2d root, § 157 at the end);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pŭbes,* § 209, (*b.*)

Vĕlut for *vĕlut si,* an adverb, compounded of *vel* and *ut,* § 193, 10; modifying *icta,* and *obtĭnuisset* understood, (as they would have done if, etc.)

Orbĭtātis, an abstract noun, § 26, 5; from the primitive *orbus,* § 101, 1 and 2; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *orbĭtā-,* § 56, I., and R. 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., subjective gen. case, limiting *mĕtu,* § 211.

Mĕtu, an abstract noun, 4th decl., masc. gen., § 87; sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

Icta, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *īco,* of the 3d conj. (give the principal parts in both voices, and decline the participle);—found in the fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pŭbes,* § 205.

Sēdāto, a perfect pass. part. from the active verb *sēdo,* of the 1st conj., § 149, 2; (give the principal parts in both voices, § 151, 4; and decline it, § 105, R. 2.);—found in the masc. gender, sing. num., abl. case, agreeing with *părŏre,* § 205.

Tandem, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; modifying *sēdāto,* § 277.

Părŏre, an abstract noun, § 26, 5, and § 102, 1; (from *păveo*), 3d decl., masc. gen., § 58; root *păvor,* § 56, II., and § 70, (decline it);—found in the sing. number, abl. case, absolute with *sēdāto,* § 257.

Postquam, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam,* § 193, 10; modifying *rēdiit,* and connecting the 1st and 4th clauses, § 201, 9.

Ex, a preposition, § 195, R. 2.

Tum, an adverb of degree, § 191, R. 2; modifying *turbido,* § 277.

Turbĭdo, an adjective, agreeing with *dĭe*.

Dĭe, a common noun, 5th decl., masc. gender, § 90, Exc. 1.; sing. number, abl. case, after the prep. *ex*, § 241.

Sĕrēna, an adj., 1st and 2d decls., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*, § 205.

Et, a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1; connecting *sĕrēna* and *tranquilla*, § 278.

Tranquilla, like *sĕrēna*.

Lux, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *lūc–*, § 56, I., and R. 2; genitive *lūcis*, § 78, 2.

Rĕdiit, an irregular neuter verb, of the 4th conj., § 176; from *rĕdeo*, compounded of *eo*, § 182, and the inseparable prep. *red*, § 196, (*b.*), 3; (give its principal parts);—found in the ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *lux*, § 209, (*b.*)

Ubi, an adverb of time, and like *postquam*, a connective, § 201, 9; and modifying *rĕdiit*, § 277.

Văcuam, an adj., qualifying *sēdem*.

Sēdem, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *sēd–*, § 56, I., R. 6; genitive *sēdis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of the transitive verb *vidit*, § 209.

Rēgiam, a denominative adj., § 128, I., 2, (*a.*); from the primitive *rex*, agreeing with *sēdem*.

Vidit, an active verb, of the 2d conj., (give its principal parts in the active voice, and the formations of the 2d root); found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *ea*, i. e. *pūbes*, understood.

Etsi, a concessive conjunction, § 198, 4; corresponding to the correlative adversative conj. *tămen*, § 198, 4, R. 9.

Sătis, an adverb of degree, § 191, III., and R. 2; modifying *crēdēbat*, § 277.

Crēdēbat, an act. verb, § 141, I.; 3d conj., (give the principal parts in the active voice and the formations of the 1st root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, imperfect tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *ea*, scil. *pūbes*, understood.

Patribus, a common noun, § 26, 3; 3d decl., from the root *patr–*, § 56, II., R. 3; gen. *patris*, § 71; masc. gender, § 28, 1; plur. num., dat. case, depending on *crēdēbat*, § 223, R. 2.

Qui, the subject of the 7th clause, is a relative pronoun, § 136; masc. gender, plur. num., agreeing with its antecedent *patribus*, § 206, R. 19, (*a.*); and is nominative to *stĕtĕrant*, § 209, (*a.*)

Proxĭmi, an adj. of the superlative degree, § 126, 1, (compare it); of the 1st and 2d decls., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, § 205, § 210, R. 1, (*a.*) and R. 3, (2.)

Stĕtĕrant, a neuter verb, 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root, § 165; (give its principal parts, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, plup. tense, § 145, V.; 3d person plural, agreeing with its subject *qui*, § 209, (*b.*)

Sublimem, an adj., of the 3d decl., and two terminations, § 109; masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *eum*, (i. e. *Rōmŭlum*,) understood, and modifying also *raptum esse*, § 205, R. 15.

Raptum (*esse*), an act. verb, 3d conj.; (give the principal parts in both voices and the formations of the 3d root in the passive voice)—found in the pass. voice, inf. mood, perf. tense; has, following the imperfect, it has the meaning of a pluperfect, § 268, 2, and § 145, V.; depending on *crēdēbat*, § 272.

Prŏcellā, a com. noun, 1st decl., fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case, § 247.

PROSODY.

§ **282.**   Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it. Cf. § 13.

2. A syllable is either *short, long,* or *common.*

(*a.*) The time occupied in pronouncing a short syllable is called a *mora* or *time.*

(*b.*) A long syllable requires two *moræ* or double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *ămārĕ.*

(*c.*) A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tĕnĕbræ.*

3. The quantity of a syllable is either *natural* or *accidental;*— natural, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; accidental, when it depends on its *position.*

Thus the *e* in *rĕsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēstĭti* it is long by its position, since it is followed by two consonants: § 283, IV. On the contrary, the *e* in *dēdūco* is naturally long, but in *dĕervo* it is made short by being placed before a vowel: § 283, I.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined either by certain established *rules,* or by the *authority* of the poets.

Thus it is poetic usage alone that determines the quantity of the first syllables of the following words, viz. *māter, frāter, prāvus, dico, dūco; păter, ăvus, cădo, mănĕo, grăvis,* etc.; and hence the quantity of such syllables can be ascertained by practice only or by consulting the gradus or lexicon.

5. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special.* The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

§ **283.**   I. (*a.*) A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *e* in *mĕus, i* in *patrĭæ.* Thus,

> Conscia mens recti fāmæ mendācĭa ridet. *Ovid.* F. 4, 311.
> Ipse ĕtiam exĭmĭæ laudis succensus amore. *Virg.* A. 7, 496.

(*b.*) So also when *h* comes between the vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nĭhil:* (see § 2, 6.) Thus,

> Dē nĭhĭlō nĭhil, in nĭhĭlum nīl posse rēverti. *Pers.* 4, 84.

Exc. 1. (*a.*) *Fīo* has the *i* long, except in *fĭt* and when followed by *er*; as *fīunt*, *fīēbam*. Thus,

> Omnia jam fīunt, fĭĕri quæ posse nĕgābam. *Ovid.* Tr. 1, 8, 7.

(*b.*) It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fīĕret*. *Ter.*; *fĭĕri.* Plaut: and, on the contrary, Prudentius has *fĭō* with *i* short.

Exc. 2. (*a.*) *E* is long in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension, when preceded and followed by *i*; as, *fācĭēi.* Thus,

> Non rādū sōlis, nĕque lūcīda tēla dĭēi. *Lucr.* 1, 148.

(*b.*) In *spei*, *rei*, and *fĭdei*, *e* is short.

Note. In Lucretius the *e* of *rei* is, in a few cases, long, and that of *fĭdei* is lengthened once in Lucretius and once in a line of Ennius.

Exc. 3. (*a.*) *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *aī* of the first declension; as, *aulāī*, *pictāī.* Cf. § 43, 1.

(*b.*) *A* and *e* are also long in proper names in *aïus*, *eïus*, or *eïa*; as, *Cāïus*, *Pompēïus*, *Aquilēïa*; and in the adjectives *Grāïus* and *Vētus.* Thus,

> Æthĕrium sensum, atque aurāī simplĭcis iguem. *Virg.* A. 6, 747.
> Accipe, Pompēī, dĕductum carmen ab illo. *Ovid.* Pont. 4, 1, 1.
> Necnon cum Vĕnĕtis Aquilēïa perfūrit armis. *Sil.* 8, 606.

Exc. 4. (*a.*) *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *ūnĭus*, *illĭus.* Thus,

> Illīus et nĭtīdo stillent unguenta căpillo. *Tibull*, 1, 7, 51.
> Illīus pūro dēstillent tempŏra nardo. *Id.* 2, 2, 7.

(*b.*) But *i* in the genitive of *alter* is commonly short; and in that of *ălius* it is always long.

Exc. 5. The first vowel of *ĕheu* is long; that of *Dīāna*, *ĭo*, and *ŏhe*, is common.

Exc. 6. Greek words retain their original quantities, and hence, in many *Greek* words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another vowel; as,

> āēr, Achāïa, Achĕlōüs, dĭa, ĕos, Lāertes, and Greek words having in the original a long *e* or *o* (*η* or *ω*.) See also § 293, 3.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ei* (*ει*) before a vowel, and in Latin with a single *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Æneas*, *Alexandria*, *Cassiopēa*, *Clio*, *Dārīus*, *elēgīa*, *Gălātēa*, *Mēdēa*, *Mausolēum*, *Pēnēlŏpēa*, *Thālīa*, *Atrĭdes.*

Hence, most adjectives in *eus*, formed from Greek proper names, have the *e* long; as, *Cythĕrēus*, *Pēlŏpēus*; and the *e* remains long when *ei* is restored; as, *Pēlŏpēïa.*

Exc. *Acādēmia*, *chōrea*, *Mālea*, *plătea*, and some patronymics and patrials in *eïs*; as, *Nērēïs*, have the penult common.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eos*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphĕos*, *Orphĕa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cēphēos*, *Ilĭonēa.*

(3.) Greek words in *aïs*, *oïs*, *aïus*, *oïus*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāïs*, *Mīnōïs*, *Grāïus*, *Nērēïus*, *Mĭnōïus*, *Māchāon*, *Ixion.* But *Thēbāïs*, *Sīmöïs*, *Phāon*, *Deucălĭon*, *Pygmālĭon*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

Note 1. Greek words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amўthāon*, *-āŏnis*; *Deucălĭon*, *-ŏnis.*

Note 2. In Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, the *eu* in the nominative is always a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

II. A diphthong is long; as, *aūrum, fœnus, Eūbœa, Pompēius, Orphēu.* Thus,

> Infernīque lacus, Æēǣque insŭla Circæ. *Virg.* A. 3. 386.
> Thēsaūros ignōtum argenti pondus et aūri. *Id.* A. 1. 359.
> Harpyiǣque cŏlunt alĭæ, Phinēïa postquam. *Id.* A. 3, 212.

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *prǣustus, prǣăcutus.* Thus,

> Nec tōtā tămen ille prior prǣeunte cărīnā. *Virg.* A. 5, 186.

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

Exc. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

> Insŭlǣ Iŏnĭo in magno, quas dīra Cēlæno. *Virg.* A. 3, 211.

Exc. 3. The diphthongs consisting of *u* followed by a vowel are either long or short; the two vowels thus combined being subject to the same rules of quantity, as their final vowel would be if standing alone; as, *quā, quĭ, quŏrum, quĭa, quăbus, quŏtio, quĕror, ǣquŏr, linguă, sanguĭs.*

III. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as, *ālius* for *aliĭus; cōgo* for *cŏăgo; nil* for *nihil; jūnior* for *jăvĕnior.* Thus,

> Tītўre cōge pĕcus, tu post cărecta lătēbas. *Virg.* E. 3, 20.

IV. A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position; as, *ārma, bēllum, āxis, gāza, mājor.* Thus,

> Pāscĕre ŏpŏrtet ŏves dēdūctum dīcĕre cārmen. *Virg.* E. 6, 5.
> Nēc mўrtŭs vincet cŏrўlos ; nēc laurea Phœbi. *Id.* E. 7, 64.
> At nōbis, Pax alma, vĕni, spicamque tĕnēto. *Tibull.* I. 10, 67.
> Rāra jŭvant: prīmis sic mājor grātia pōmis. *Mart.* 4, 29, 3.

Note 1. A vowel (other than *i*) before *j* is in reality lengthened by forming a diphthong with it, since *i* and *j* are in fact but one letter. Thus *major* is equivalent to *maĭ'-or*, which would be pronounced *maĭ'-yor*. See § 9, 1.

Exc. 1. The compounds of *jŭgum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bĭjŭgus, quădrĭjŭgus.* Thus,

> Intĕreā bĭjŭgis infert se Lūcāgus albis. *Virg.* A. 10, 575.

Remark. The vowel is long by position, when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

> Tolle mŏras; sempĕr nŏcŭit differre părātis. *Lucan.* 1, 281.
> Ferte citī ferrŭm ; dăte tēlă ; scandite mūros. *Virg.* A. 9, 37.
> Ne tămen ignŏrĕt, quæ sĭt sententia scripto. *Ovid.*

Note 2. A short vowel at the end of a word, before an initial double consonant or *j* in the following word, is not lengthened.

Note 3. In the comic poets a vowel frequently remains short though followed by two consonants, especially if only one of them is in the same word.

Exc. 2. A vowel *naturally short*, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *ăgris, phărētra, vŏlŭcris, pŏplītes, cŏchlea.* Thus,

> Et prīmo sīmīlis *vŏlūcri*, mox vēra *vŏlūcris. Ovid.* M. 13. 607.
> Nātum ante ōra *pătris, pătrem* qui obtruncat ad āras. *Virg.* A. 2, 663.
> Nox *tĕnĕbras* prŏfert, Phœbus fūgat inde *tĕnĕbras. Ovid.*

Rem. 1. If the vowel before a mute and liquid is *naturally long*, it continues so; as, *sălūbris, ambŭlācrum.*

Rem. 2. In *compound* words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *ăbluo, ŏbruo, sŭblĕvo, quamŏbrem.*

Rem. 3. A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word; as,

> Terrasquĕ tractusque măris cœlumque prŏfundum. *Virg.* E. 4, 51.

Rem. 4. In Latin words, only the liquids *l* and *r* following a mute render the preceding short vowel common; but, in words of Greek origin, *m* and *n* after a mute have the same effect, as in *Tēcmessa, Prŏcne, Cŷcnus.*

SPECIAL RULES.

FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

§ **284.**   Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

by conjugation, *ămo, ămat, ămābat, ămāvi, ămātus,* etc.; by declension, *ămor, ămōris, ămōri, ămōribus,* etc.; so, *ănĭmal, ănĭmātus,* from *ănĭma; gĕmĕbundus,* from *gĕmĕre; fămĭlia,* from *fămŭlus; māternus,* from *māter; prōpinquus,* from *prŏpe.*

Note 1. *Lār, pār, săl,* and *pēs* in declension shorten the vowel of the nominative; as, *sălis, pĕdis,* etc.

Note 2. The vowel of the primitive is sometimes lengthened or shortened in the derivative by the addition or removal of a consonant.

Rem. 1. Derivatives from increasing nouns of the second or third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

puĕrĭtia, from *puĕri; virgĭneus,* from *virgĭnis; sălūber,* from *sălūtis.*

Rem. 2. In verbs, the vowels of the derived tenses and of derivative words agree in quantity with the verbal root from which they are formed; as,

mŏvēbam, mŏvēlo, mŏveam, mŏvērem, mŏve, mŏvēre, mŏvens, mŏvendus, from *mŏv,* the root of the present, with *ŏ* short;—*mōvĕram, mōvĕrim, mōvissem, mōvĕro, mōvisse,* from *mōv,* the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtūrus* and *mōtus;*—*mōto, mōtio, mōtor,* and *mōtus, -ūs,* from *mōt,* the root of the supine, with *ō* also long.

Rem. 3. (*a.*) *Sŏlūtum* and *vŏlūtum* from *solvo* and *volvo* have the first syllable short, as if from *sŏluo, vŏluo.* So, from *gigno* come *yĕnui, gĕnĭtum,* as if from *gĕno;* and *pŏtui,* from *pŏtis sum (possum).*

(*b.*) The *a* in *da*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in other parts of the verb. See § 294, 2.

(*c.*) The *o* in *pŏsui* and *pŏsitum* is short, though long in *pōno*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

vēni, vīdi, fēci, from *vĕnio, vĭdeo, făcio; cāsum, mōtum, vīsum,* from *cădo, mŏveo, video.*

Note 3. Such perfects are supposed to have been formed either by the contraction of reduplicated syllables, as *vĕnio,* perf. *vĕvēni,* by syncope *vēni,* by crasis *vēni,* or by the omission of a consonant, as *video,* perf. *vīdsi,* by syncope *vīdi,* the vowel retaining the quantity which it had by position.

Note 4. The long vowel of dissyllabic supines probably arose in like manner from syncope and contraction; as, *video, vīdsum,* by syncope *vīsum; mŏveo, mŏvitum,* by syncope *mŏitum,* by contraction *mōtum.*

(1.) (*a.*) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*bĭbi, dĕdi, fŭdi,* (from *findo*), *scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli.* So also *percŭli,* from *percello.*

(*b.*) The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283, I.); as, *rŭi.*

(2.) (*a.*) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*cĭtum,* (from *cieo*), *dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum,* and *stătum.*

(*b.*) So, also, had the obsolete *fŭtum,* from *fŭŏ,* whence comes *fŭtūrus.*

Exc. 2. (*a.*) Reduplicated polysyllabic perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

cĕcĭdi, cĕcĭni, tĕtĭgi, dĭdĭci, from *cădo, căno, tango,* and *disco.*

(*b.*) The second syllable of reduplicated perfects is sometimes made long by position; as, *mŏmŏrdi, tĕtĕndi.*—*Cĕcīdi* from *cædo,* and *pĕpēdi* from *pēdo,* retaining the quantity of their first root also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third root of the verbs from which they are formed, it is long; as, *cænātŭrio* from *cænātū,* the third root of *cæno.* So *partŭrio, ĕsŭrio, nuptŭrio.*

Exc. 4. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third root of verbs of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clāmĭto, vŏlĭto.* See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 5. A few other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive. Such are,

Dēni, *from* dĕcem.	Mōbilis, *from* mŏveo.	Stīpendium, *from* stips
Fōmes *and* } *from*	Persōna, *from* persŏno.	(stipis).
Fōmentum, } fŏveo.	Rēgŭla *and* } *from*	Suspīcio, ōnis, *from* sus-
Hūmānus, *from* hŏmo.	Rex (rēgis), } rĕgo.	pĭcor.
Lātĕra, *from* lăteo.	Sēcius, *from* sĕcus.	Tēgŭla, *from* tĕgo.
Lītĕra *from* lĭno.	Sēdes, *from* sĕdeo.	
Lex (lēgis), *from* lĕgo.	Sēmen, *from* sĕro.	

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive. Such are,

Dĭcax, *from* dīco.	Mŏlestus, *from* mōles.	Săgax, *from* sāgio.
Dŭx (dŭcis), *from* dūco.	Năto, *from* nāto. *sup.*	Sŏpor, *from* sōpio.
Fĭdes, *from* fīdo.	Nŏto, *from* nōtu. *sup.*	Vădum, *from* vādo.
Lăbo, *from* lābor, *dep. v.*	ŏdium, *from* ōdi.	Vŏco, *from* vox (vōcis.)
Lŭcerna, *from* lūceo.	Quăsillus, *from* quālus.	

NOTE 1. *Disertus* comes regularly (by syncope) from *dissertus*, the prefix *dis* being short, § 299, 1. Cf. *dirimo* and *diribeo*, where *s* is changed to *r*. See § 196, (b.) 2.

NOTE 2. Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

REMARK 1. Some of these irregularities seem to have arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mōbilis* may have been *mŏvibilis; mōtum, mŏvitum*, etc.

REM. 2. Sometimes the vowel in the derived word being naturally short, is restored to its proper quantity by removing one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *nŭx, nŭcis*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is naturally long, but has been made short before another vowel, it is sometimes restored to its original quantity by the insertion of a consonant; as, *hībernus*, from *hiems*.

REM. 3. The first syllable in *hīquidus* is supposed to be common, as coming either from *liquor* or *līqueo*; as,

Crassáque convéniant *liquĭdis*, et *liquĭda* crasėis. *Lucr.* 4, 1255.

II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ **285.** 1. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them; as,

dēfĕro, of *dē* and *fĕro; ădŏro*, of *ăd* and *ōro*. So *ăbērĭor, āmŏvĕo, circŭmĕo, cōmĕdo, ēnĭtor, prōdūco, sŭbōrno.*

2. The change of a vowel or a diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity; as,

concīdo, from *cădo ; concīdo*, from *cædo ; ērĭgo*, from *rĕgo ; reclūdo*, from *claudo; inīquus*, from *æquus.*

EXC. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnĭtus* and *cognĭtus*, from *nōtus ; dĕjĕro* and *pĕjĕro*, from *jūro ; hŏdĭe*, from *hōc dĭe: nihĭlum* and *nihĭl*, from *hīlum ; causīdĭcus*, and other compounds ending in *dĭcus*, from *dīco.*

EXC. 2. *Imbēcillus*, from *bācillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambĭtus* has the penult long from *ĭtum*, but the nouns *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* follow the rule.

EXC. 3. *Innŭba, prŏnŭba*, and *subnŭba*, from *nūbo*, have *u* short; but in *connŭbium*, it is common.

EXC. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs. § 294, (a.)

NOTE 1. Prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§ 294, (a.); those which end in a single consonant are short (§ 299, 1.)—*Trā* from *trans* is long; as, *trādo, trādūco.*

EXC. 5. *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short:—*prŏfānus, prŏfāri, prŏfecto, prŏfestus, prŏficiscor, prŏfiteor, prŏfūgio, prŏfūgus, prŏcella, prŏfundus, prŏnĕpos, prŏneptis*, and *prŏtervus.* It is common in *prŏcūro, prŏfundo, prŏpāgo, prŏpello*, and *prŏpino.*—Respecting *præ* in composition before a vowel see § 283, II. Exc. 1.

REM. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prŏphēta.* In *prŏlŏgus, prŏpŏla*, and *prŏpĭno*, it is common.

REM. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* (for *dĭs*) and *se* are long; as,

dīdūco, sēpăro. Respecting *disertus*, see § 284, Exc. 5, 2, N. 1.

Rem. 3. (*a*.) The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *rĕmitto*, *rĕffĕro*, *rĕdămo*.

(*b*.) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in *rēligio*, *rēliquiæ*, *rēliquus*, *rēpĕrit*, *rētŭlit*, *rēpŭlit*, *rēcĭdit*, *rēdăcĕre*, where some editors double the consonant following *re*. Cf. § 307, 2. In the impersonal verb *rēfert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

Rem. 4. *A* ending the former part of a compound word, is long; the other vowels are short; as,

mālo, *quāpropter*, *trādo*, (*trans* do); *nĕfas*, *valēdico*, *hujuscĕmŏdi*; *bĭceps*, *trĭdens*, *omnĭpŏtens*, *signĭfĭco*; *hŏdie*, *quandŏquĭdem*, *philŏsŏphus*; *dūcenti*, *lōcŭples*, *Trōjŭgĕna*; *Polŷdōrus*, *Eurÿpŷlus*, *Thrăsŷbŭlus*.

Exc. 1. **A.** *A* is short in *quăsi*, *eădem*, when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds; as, *cătăpulta*, *hexămĕter*.

Exc. 2. **E.** *E* is long in *crēdo*, *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquăquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquis*, *nēquitia*; *mēmet*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *sēse*, *vēcors*, *vēsānus*, *vēnēfĭcus*, and *vīdēlĭcet*;—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *sēmi*; as, *sēdēcim*, *sēmestris*, *sēmŏdius*; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

Note 2. (*a*.) The first *e* in *vĭdelicet*, as in *vĭde*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

(*b*.) *E* is common in some verbs compounded with *făcio*; as, *lĭquefăcio*, *pătĕfăcio*, *rārĕfăcio*, *tăbĕfăcio*, *tĕpĕfăcio*.

Exc. 3. **I.** (1.) *I* is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296;) as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *quīlibet*, *quantīvis*, *quantīcumque*, *tantīdem*, *unicuique*, *eīdem*, *reīpublicæ*, *utrīque*.

(2.) *I* is also long in those compounds which may be separated without altering the sense, (§296;) as, *lādīmăgister*, *sīquis*, *agrīcultūra*.

(3.) *I*, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *tībīcen* for *tibīicen*, from *tibia* and *căno*. See § 283, III.

(4.) *I* is long in *bīgæ*, *quadrīgæ*, *īlicet*, *scīlicet*.

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *i* of *ŭbique* and *utrŏbīque*, the second in *ĭbidem*, and the first in *nīmirum*, are long. In *ŭbicumque*, as in *ŭbi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dĭes* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *bīduum*, *trīduum*, *mĕrīdies*, *quŏtīdie*, *quŏtīdiānus*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*.

Note 3. In Greek words, *ĭ*, ending the former part of a compound, is short; as, *Callĭmăchus*; unless it comes from the diphthong *ei* (*ι*), or is made long or common by position.

Exc. 4. **O.** (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando* (except *quandŏquĭdem*,) is long; as, *contrōversia*, *intrōdūco*, *retrōcēdo*, *quandōque*. *O* is long also in *ălĭōqui* (*-quin*), and *utrōque*.

(2.) *O* is long in the compounds of *quō* and *eo*; as, *quōmŏdo*, *quōcumque*, *quōnam*, *quōlĭbet*, *quōmĭnus*, *quōcircă*, *quōvis*, *quōque* (i. e. *et quo*); *eōdem*, *eōne*; but in the conjunction *quŏque*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *omēga* (*ω*) have the *o* long; as, *gĕōmetra*, *Mĭnōtaurus*, *lāgŏpus*.

Exc. 5. **U.** *U* is long in *Jūpiter* (*Jŏvĭs păter*), and *jūdico* (*jūs dīco*).

III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ **286.** 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax*, *păcis*; *sermo*, *sermōnis*. The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.

2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular, but *iter, supellex*, compounds of *căput* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jĕcur*, have two increments; as,

iter, i-tĭn-ĕ-ris; supellex, sŭ-pel-lec-tĭ-lis; anceps, an-cĭp-ĭ-tis; jĕcur, jĕ-cĭn-ŏ-ris.

REMARK. The double increase of *iter*, etc., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itĭner*, etc.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

rex,	Gen. *rē-gis,*	D. and Ab. *rēg-ĭ-bus.*
sermo,	—— *ser-mō-nis,*	—————— *ser-mōn-ĭ-bus.*
iter,	—— *i-tĭn-ĕ-ris,*	—————— *ĭt-ĭn-ĕr-ĭ-bus.*

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the increment. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment; as,

          1   **1 2**   **1 2**   **1 2 3**
ser-mo, ser-mō-nis, ser-mōn-ĭ-bus ; i-ter, i-tĭn-ĕ-ris, ĭt-ĭ-nĕr-ĭ-bus.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases as in the genitive singular; as,

sermōnis, sermōni, sermōnem, sermōne, sermōnes, sermōnum, sermōnibus. Bōbus, or *būbus,* from *bos, bŏvis,* is lengthened by contraction from *bŏvibus.*

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions, § 283, I.

Thus, *aura,* gen. *aurăi,* § 283, I. Exc. 3, (a.): *fructus,* dat. *fructŭi,* § 283, I. (a.): *dies,* gen. *diēi,* § 283, I. Exc. 2, (a.)

INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension in the singular number are short; as,

gĕner, gĕnĕri; sătur, sătŭri; tĕner, tĕnĕri; vĭr, vĭri. Thus,

> Ne, *puĕri,* ne tanta ănĭmis assuescite bella. *Virg.* A. 6, 833.
> Monstra sinuunt; *gĕnĕros* externis affŏre ab ŏris. *Id.* A. 7, 270.

EXC. The increment of *Iber* and *Celtiber* is long. For that of genitives in *ius,* see § 283, Exc. 4.

INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension and singular number in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, are short; as,

ănĭmal, ănĭmālis; audax, audācis; sermo, sermōnis; fĕrox, fĕrōcis; ŏpus, ŏpĕris; cĕler, cĕlĕris; mīles, mīlĭtis; supplex, supplĭcis; murmur, murmŭris; dux, dŭcis; chlămys, chlămўdis; Styx, Stўgis. Thus,

Prōnăque cum spectent *ănĭmālia* cētĕra terram. *Ovid.* M. 1, 84.
Hæc tum multiplici pōpŭlos *sermōne* replēbat. *Virg.* A. 4, 189.
Incumbent *gĕnĕris* lapsi sarcīre ruīnas. *Id.* G. 4, 249.
Quālem virgĭneo dēmessum *pollĭce* flōrem. *Id.* A. 11, 68.
Adspĭce, ventōsi cĕcĭdērunt *murmŭris* auræ. *Id.* E. 9, 58.

Exceptions in Increments in A.

1. (*a.*) Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annĭbal, Annĭbālis; Amilcar, Amilcāris.*

(*b.*) *Par* and its compounds, and the following—*ănas, mas, vas* (*vădis*), *baccar, hĕpar, jŭbar, lar, nectar,* and *sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *daps, dăpis; Arabs, Arăbis.*

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ădis, ănis,* or *ătis*) increase short; as, *lampas, lampădis; Mĕlas, Mĕlānis, poĕma, poĕmătis.*

4. The following in *ax* increase short:—*ăbax, anthrax, Arctŏphўlax, Atax, Atrax, clĭmax, cólax, córax,* and *nyctĭcórax, drŏpax, fax, harpax, pănax, smĭlax,* and *stўrax.*—The increment of *Sўphax* is doubtful.

Exceptions in Increments in O.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as, *marmor, marmŏris; corpus, corpŏris; ĕbur, ĕbŏris.* But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ădor* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique cases, have *omicron*, but long in those which have *omĕga;* as,

Aēdon, Aēdŏnis; Agămemnon, Agămemnŏnis:—Plăto, Plătōnis; Sĭnon, Sĭnōnis; Sĭcyon, Sĭcyōnis. *Sīdon, Orion,* and *Ægæon,* have the increment common.

3. (*a.*) In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, whether Greek or barbaric, *o* is generally short; as,

Măcĕdo, Măcedŏnis. So, *Amazōnes, Aŏnes, Myrmĭdōnes, Santōnes, Saxōnes, Sēnōnes, Teutōnes,* etc.

(*b.*) But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Suessōnes* (or *-iōnes*), *Vettōnes, Burgundiōnes. Brĭtŏnes* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *or* increase short; as, *Hector, Hectŏris; rhētor, rhētŏris; Agēnor, Agēnŏris.*

5. Compounds of *pus,* (πύς), as *trĭpus, pŏlўpus, Œdĭpus,* and also *arbor, mĕmor, bos, compos, impos,* and *lĕpus,* increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,

scrobs, scrŏbis; ĭnops, ĭnŏpis; Dŏlŏpes. But it is long in the increment of *cercops, Cyclops,* and *hydrops.*

7. The increment of *Allobrox, Cappădox,* and *præcox,* is also short.

Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. Nouns in *en, enis* (except *Hȳmen*), lengthen their increment; as, *Sīren, Sīrēnis.* So, *Aniēnis, Nēriēnis,* from *Anio* and *Nērio,* or rather from the obsolete *Aniēn* and *Nēriēnes.*

2. *Hæres, lōcŭples, mansues, merces,* and *quies*—also *Iber, ver, lex, rex, ălec* or *ălex (hăl-) narthex* and *vervex—plebs* and *seps*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aër* and *œther*) increase long; as, *magnes, magnētis; crāter, crātēris.*

Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. Nouns and adjectives in *ix,* increase long; as, *victrix, victrīcis; fēlix, fēlīcis.*

Exc. *Călix, Cĭlix, coxendix, fĭlix, fornix, hystrix, lărix, nix, pix, sălix, strix,* and rarely *sandix* or *sandyx,* increase short.

2. *Vibex* and the following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis, glis, lis, vis, Nēsis, Quĭris,* and *Samnis.* The increment of *Psŏphis* is common.

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis* increase long; as, *delphin, delphīnis; Sălāmis, Sălāminis.*

Exceptions in Increments in U.

1. Genitives in *ŭdis, uris,* and *ŭtis,* from nominatives in *us,* have the penult long; as,

pălus, pălūdis; tellus, tellūris; vĭrtus, vĭrtūtis. But *intercus, Lĭgus* and *pĕcus, pĕcŭdis,* increase short.

2. *Fur, frux,* (obs.), *lux,* and *Pollux,* increase long.

Exceptions in Increments in Y.

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis,* increase long; as, *Trāchyn, Trāchȳnis.*

2. The increment of *bombyx, Ceÿx, gryps,* and *mormyr,* is long; that of *Bebryx* and *sandyx* is common.

INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ **288.** 1. A noun in the plural number is said to increase, when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

REMARK. When the ablative singular is wanting, or its place is supplied by a form derived from a different root, an ablative may, for this purpose, be assumed, by annexing the proper termination to the root of the plural.

2. When a noun increases in the plural number, its penult is called the plural increment; as, *sa* in *mūsārum, no* in *dŏmĭnōrum, pi* in *rūpium* and *rūpibus.*

3. In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

bŏnārum, ănĭmābus, rērum, rēbus, gĕnĕrōrum, ambōbus; sermōnĭbus, lăcŭbus.
Thus,

> Appia, *longārum*, tĕrĭtur, rēgīna *viārum. Stat.* S. 2, 2, 12.
> Sunt lacrȳmæ *rērum*, et mentem mortālia tangunt. *Virg.* A. 1, 462.
> Atque ălii, *quōrum* cōmœdia prisca *virōrum* est. *Hor.* S. 1, 4, 2.
> *Portŭbus* ēgrĕdior, ventisque *fĕrentibus* ūsus. *Ovid.*

IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ **289.** 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dă-tis; dŏces, dŏ-cē-mus.*

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

ă-mas,	mŏ-nes,	au-dis,
1	1	1
ă-mā-mus,	mŏ-nē-tur,	au-dī-tis,
1 2	1 2	1 2
ăm-ā-bā-mus,	mŏn-ē-rē-tur,	au-di-ē-bas,
1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3 4
ăm-ā-vĕ-rā-mus.	mŏn-ē-bim-ĭ-ni.	au-di-ē-bām-ĭ-ni.

3. A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

4. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, **an active voice**, formed from the same root, may be supposed.

Thus the increments of *læ-tā-tur¹, læt-ā-bā-tur¹²*, etc., are reckoned from the supposed verb *læto, lætas.*

§ **290.** In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

ămāre, mŏnēre, făcĭtōte, vŏlŭmus, rĕgĕbāmĭni. Thus,

> Et *cantāre* pāres, et *respondēre* părāti. *Virg.* E. 7, 5.
> Sic ĕquĭdem *dūcēbam* ănĭmo, *rēbarque* futūrum. *Id.* A. 6, 690.
> Cumque lŏqui pŏtĕrit, mātrem *făcĭtōte* sălūtet. *Ovid,* M. 9. 378.
> *Scindĭtur* incertum stŭdia in contrāria vulgus. *Virg.* A. 2, 39.
> Nos nŭmĕrus *sŭmus*, et frūges consūmĕre nāti. *Hor.* Ep. 1, 2, 27.

(*a.*) Exceptions in Increments in A.

The *first* increment of *do* is short; as, *dămus, dăbāmus, dăret, dă-tūrus, circumdăre, circumdăbāmus.*

(b.) *Exceptions in Increments in* E.

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *bĕris* and *bĕre*; as,

rĕgĕre (infin. and imperat.), *rĕgĕris* or *rĕgĕre* (pres. ind. pass.), *rĕgĕrem* and *rĕgĕrer* (imp. subj.); *amābĕris, amābĕre; monēbĕris, monēbĕre.*

NOTE 1. In *vĕlim, vĕlis,* etc., from *vŏlo,* (second person, regularly *vŏlis,* by syncope and contraction *vis*), *ĕ* is not an increment, but represents the root vowel *ŏ,* and is therefore short; § 284, and § 178, 1.

2. *E* is short before *ram, rim, ro,* and the persons formed from them; as,

amāvĕram, amāvĕrat, amāvĕrim, monuĕrimus, rexĕro, audivĕritis.

NOTE 2. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *flēram,* for *flēvĕram.*

For the short *e* before *runt,* in the perfect indicative, as, *stĕtĕrunt,* see *Systole,* § 307.

(c.) *Exceptions in Increments in* I.

1. *I* before *v* or *s,* in tenses formed from the second root, is long; as,

petīvi, audīvi, quæsīvit, divīsit, audīvimus, divīsimus, audīvĕram.

2. *I* is long, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, in the final syllable of the third root of *gaudeo, arcesso, divido, facesso, lacesso, pĕto, quæro, recenseo* and *obliviscor;* as,

gāvīsus, arcessītus, divīsus, facessītus, lacessītus, petītus, quæsītus, recensītus, oblītus; gāvīsūrus, etc.

3. *I* in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *ĭmus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

audīre, audīrem, audītus, audītūrus, pres. *vĕnīmus,* but in the perfect *vēnīmus.* So in the ancient forms *ībam, ībo,* of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutrībat, lēnībunt;* and also in *ībam* and *ībo,* from *eo.*

NOTE 3. When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audĭunt, audĭē-bam.*

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of subjunctives in *sim, sis, sit,* etc., (§ 162, 1,); as, *sīmus, sītis, velīmus, velītis,* and their compounds; as, *possīmus, adsīmus, malīmus, nolīmus.* So also in *nolīto, nolīte, nolītōte,* after the analogy of the fourth conjugation.

5. *I* in *ris, rimus* and *ritis,* in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

vidĕris, Mart., *occīdĕris,* Hor.; *vidĕrĭtis* (Ovid), *dedĕrĭtis* (Id.); *fecĕrĭmus* (Catull.), *egĕrĭmus* (Virg.)

(d.) *Exceptions in Increments in* U.

U is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb; as,

secūtus, solūtus, secūtūrus, solūtūrus.

RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF PENULTIMATE AND ANTEPE-
NULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *ăcus, ĭcus,* and *ĭcum,* shorten the
penult; as,

ămārăcus, Ægyptiăcus, rusticus, trīticum, viāticum.

Except *Dācus, mērācus, ŏpācus; ămīcus, aprīcus, fīcus, mendīcus, pīcus,
postīcus, pŭdīcus, spīcus, umbilīcus, vīcus.*

2. Words ending in *ābrum, ūbrum, ācrum,* and *ātrum,* lengthen the
penult; as,

candēlābrum, dēlūbrum, lāvācrum, vērātrum.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

ăpŏthēca, cloāca, lactūca, lōrīca, phōca.

Except *ălīca, brassica, dīca, fūlīca, mantīca, pĕdīca, pertīca, scŭtīca, phălārīca,
tūnīca, vŏmīca;* and also some nouns in *ĭca* derived from adjectives in *ĭcus;*
as, *fŭbrīca, grammătīca,* etc. So *mŭnīcæ.*

4. Patronymics in *ădes* and *ĭdes* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantĭădes,
Priămĭdes.*

Except those in *ĭdes* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs* (*ĭs*); as,
Atrīdes, from *Atrēus; Neoclīdes,* from *Neoclēs;* except, also, *Amphiărāïdes,
Bēlīdes, Amÿclīdes, Lÿcurgīdes.*

5. Patronymics and similar words in *aïs, eïs,* and *oïs,* lengthen the
penult; as,

Achāïs, Chrÿsēïs, Mīnōïs. Except *Phōcăïs* and *Thēbăïs.* The penult of *Nē-
reïs* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

rādo, cēdo, dulcēdo, formīdo, rōdo, testūdo. Except *cădo, dīvīdo, ĕdo* (to eat),
cŏmĕdo, Macĕdo, mŏdo, sŏlīdo, spădo, trĕpĭdo. Rūdo is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *udus* lengthen it;
as,

callĭdus, herbĭdus, limpĭdus, lĭvĭdus, perfĭdus; crūdus, lūdus, nūdus, sūdus, ūdus.
Except *īdus, fīdus, infīdus, nīdus, sīdus.*

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

sāga, collēga, aurīga, rūga; ĭmāgo, cālīgo, ærūgo. Except *cālīga, ossĭfrăga,
tŏga, plăga,* (a region, *or* a net), *fŭga* and its compounds, *stēga, eclŏga, ĕgo,
harpăgo, ĭlăgo.*

9. Words in *le, les,* and *lis,* lengthen the penult; as,

crīnāle, mantēle, ancīle; āles, mīles, prōles; annālis, crūdēlis, cīvīlis, cūrūlis.—
Except *măle;*—verbals in *ĭlis* and *bĭlis;* as, *ăgĭlis, ămābĭlis;*—adjectives in
ătĭlis; as, *umbrātĭlis;*—and also, *indŏlis, sŏbŏlis; pĕriscĕlis, dăpsĭlis, grăcĭlis,
hŭmĭlis, părĭlis, sĭmĭlis, stĕrĭlis, măgĭlis, strĭgĭlis.*

10. Words in *elus, ela, elum,* lengthen the penult; as,

phăsēlus, quĕrēla, prēlum. Except *gĕlus, gĕlum, scĕlus.*

11. Diminutives in *olus, ola, olum, ulus, ula, ulum,* also words in

ilus, and those in *ulus*, *ula*, and *ulum*, of more than two syllables, shorten the penult; as,

urceŏlus, filiŏla, lectŭlus, rătiuncŭla, corcŭlum, pābŭlum; rŭtĭlus, garrŭlus, fābŭla. Except *āsĭlus.*

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

fāma, poēma, rīma, plūma. Except *ănĭma, cŏma, dĕcŭma, lacrĭma, victĭma, hāma.*

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

lēvāmen, grāmen, crīmen, flūmen, jūmentum, ātrāmentum. Except *tămen, cŏlŭmen, Hymen, ĕlĕmentum,* and a few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, *ălĭmentum, dŏcŭmen* or *dŏcŭmentum, ĕmŏlŭmentum, mŏnŭmentum, rĕgĭmen, spĕcĭmen, tĕgĭmen,* etc.

14. Words ending in *imus* shorten the penult; as,

ănĭmus, dĕcĭmus, fĭnĭtĭmus, fortissĭmus, maxĭmus. Except *bīmus, līmus, mīmus, ŏpīmus, quādrīmus, trīmus,* and two superlatives, *īmus* and *prīmus.*

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus,* the quantity remains the same; as, *dĕcŭmus, optŭmus, maxŭmus,* for *dĕcĭmus,* etc.

15. *A, e, o,* and *u,* before final *mus* and *mum,* are long; as,

rāmus, rēmus, extrēmus, prōmus, dūmus, pōmum, vōlēmum. Except *ătŏmus, balsămum, cinnămum, dŏmus, glŏmus, hŭmus, postŭmus, thălămus, tŏmus, călămus, nĕmus.*

16. (*a.*) Words in *na, ne, ni,* and *nis,* lengthen the penult; as,

lāna, ărēna, cărīna, mātrōna, lūna, māne, septēni, octōni, ĭnānis, fīnis, immūnis. Except *adēna, cottāna, ptĭsāna, mĭna, gēna, bēne, sĭne, cănis, cĭnis, jŭvĕnis;* and the following in *ĭna,—buccĭna, dŏmĭna, fiscĭna, fēmĭna, fuscĭna, lămĭna, māchĭna, păgĭna, pătĭna, sarcĭna, tibīcĭna, trŭtĭna:* and in plur. *ăpĭnæ, mĭnæ, nundĭnæ.* So compounds of *gĕno; us, indĭgĕnus.*

(*b.*) Verbs in *ino* and *inor* shorten the penult; as,

destĭno, fascĭno, inquĭno, sĭno, crimĭnor. Except *festīno, propīno, sŏgīno, ŏpīnor,* and the compounds of *clīno;* as, *inclīno,* etc.

17. (*a.*) Adjectives in *inus,* when they express time, or indicate a material or an inanimate substance, shorten the penult; as,

crastĭnus, dĭūtĭnus, pristĭnus, pĕrendĭnus: făgĭnus, crŏcĭnus, hydcĭnthĭnus, ădămantĭnus, crystallĭnus, ŏlĕăgĭnus, bombȳcĭnus. Except *mātūtīnus, rĕpentīnus, vespertīnus.*

(*b.*) Other adjectives and words in *inus* and in *inum* lengthen the penult; as,

canīnus, bīnus, pĕregrīnus, mārīnus, clandestīnus, sŭpīnus: līnum. Except *ăcĭnus, ăsĭnus, coccĭnus, cŏmĭnus, ĕmĭnus, cŏphĭnus, dŏmĭnus, fūcĭnus, fătĭcĭnus, prōtĭnus, sĭnus, termĭnus, gĕmĭnus, circĭnus, mĭnus, vătĭcĭnus, succĭnum, fascĭnum.*

18. *A, e, o,* and *u,* before final *nus* and *num,* are long; as,

urbānus, sĕrēnus, patrōnus, prōnus, mūnus, tribūnus, fānum, vĕnēnum, dōnum. Except *ănus,* an old woman, *galbănus, mănus, ŏcĕănus, plātănus, ĕbĕnus, gĕnus, līmĭgĕnus, pĕnus, tĕnus, Vĕnus, ŏnus, bŏnus, sŏnus, thrŏnus; lăgănum, peucĕdănum, pŏpănum, tympănum, abrŏtŏnum.*

19. Words ending in *ba, bo, pa,* and *po,* shorten the penult; as,

făba, jŭba, syllăba; bĭbo, cŭbo, prŏbo; ălăpa, lŭpa, scăpha; crĕpo, particĭpo. Except *glēba, scrība, būbo, glābo, lībo, scrībo, sīpho, cēpa, cūpa, pāpa, pūpa, rīpa, scōpa, stūpa; cāpo, rēpo, stīpo.*

20. Words in *al, ar, are,* and *aris,* lengthen the penult; as,

tribūnal, vectīgal: lūpānar, pulvīnar; altāre, lūqueāre; nāris. Except *ănĭmal, căpĭtal, cŭbĭtal, tŏral, jŭbar, sŏlar, măre, bĭmāris, hĭlāris, canthāris, cappāris, lĭaris.*

21. Before final *ro* or *ror,* *a* and *e* are short; *i, o,* and *u,* are long; as,

āro, păro, fĕro, gĕro, sĕro, cĕlĕro, tempĕro, quĕror; mīror, spīro, tīro; auctōro, ignōro, ōro; cūro, dāro, fīgāro; fŭro, spĕro; fŭro, mōror, sŏror, rŏro, fŭro, sătŭro; and derivatives from genitives increasing short; as, *augŭror, dĕcŏro, mĕmŏro, murmŭro,* etc.; from *augur, augūris; dĕcus, dĕcŏris,* etc.

22. Before final *rus, ra, rum, e* is short; the other vowels are long; as,

mērum, mērus, hĕdĕra, sĕrum, cĕtĕrum; cārus, mīrus, mōrus, mūrus, gȳrus; āra, spīra, ōra, nātūra, lōrum.
Except, 1. *austĕrus, gălĕrus, plĕrus, prŏcĕrus, sincĕrus, sĕrus, sĕvĕrus, vĕrus, crătĕra, cĕra, pĕra, panthĕra, stătĕra.*
Exc. 2. *barbărus, cammărus, camărus, canthărus, chŏrus, fŏrus, hellĕbŏrus, nărus, ŏpĭpărus, ŏvĭpărus, phosphŏrus, pirus, sătȳrus, scărus, spărus, tartărus, tŏrus, zĕphȳrus; amphŏra, ancŏra, cĭthăra, hăra, lȳra, mŏra, purpŭra, phĭlȳra, pȳra, sătŭra; fŏrum, gărum, părum, suppărum.*

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as,

fūmōsus, vīnōsus.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult; as,

pĭĕtas, cīvĭtas, bŏnĭtas.

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, those in *iter* and *itus* shorten it; as,

stātim, (constantly), *vīrītim, tribātim; acrĭter, fundĭtus.* Except *stătim,* (immediately), *offātim.*

26. (*a.*) Words in *ates, itis, otis,* and in *ata, eta, ota, uta,* lengthen the penult, as,

rātes, pēnātes, rītis, mītis, cārȳōtis, Īcārĭōtis, pīrāta, mēta, poēta, ālūta, cĭcūta. Except *sĭtis, pŏtis, drăpĕta, nŏta, rŏta.*

(*b.*) Nouns in *ita* shorten the penult; as,

ămĭta, nāvĭta, orbĭta, sēmĭta. Except *pĭtuĭta.*

27. Nouns in *atum, itum, utum,* lengthen the penult; as,

lāpātum, ăcŏnītum, vĕrātum. Except *dēfrŭtum, pulpĭtum, pĕtŏrĭtum, lŭtum* (mud), *complŭtum.*

28. Nouns and adjectives ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,

barbātus, grātus, bŏlētus, făcētus, crīnītus, pĕrītus, ægrōtus, tōtus, argūtus, hirsūtus. Except *cātus, lātus,* (*-ēris*), *ĭmpĕtus, mĕtus, vĕgĕtus, vĕtus; ănhēlĭtus, dĭgĭtus, grătuĭtus, hālĭtus, hospĭtus, servĭtus, spīrĭtus; antīdŏtus, nŏtus, quŏtus, tŏtus* (so great); *arbūtus, pūtus; inclȳtus;* and derivatives from perfect participles having a short penult; as, *exercĭtus, hăbĭtus.*

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

clāva, ŏlīva, dīves, nāvis, cīvis, păpāver, pāro, prīvo, ōvum, prāvus, æstīvus, fūgĭtīvus. Except *ăvis, brĕvis, grăvis, lĕvis, ŏvis; căvo, grăvo, jŭvo, lăvo, lĕvo, ŏvo; ăvus, căvus, făvus, nŏvus, făvor, păvor, nŏvem.*

30. Words ending in *dex, dix, mex, nix, lex, rex,* lengthen the penult; as,

cōdex, jūdex; lōdix, rādix; cimex, pūmex; jūnix; ĭlex; cārex, mūrex.
Except *cŭlex, silex, rŭmex.*

II. ANTEPENULTS.

§ 292. 1. *I* is short in diminutives in *iculus* and *icellus* (*a, um*), whether nouns or adjectives; as,

collĭcŭlus, dulcĭcŭlus, crātĭcŭla, pellĭcŭla, mollĭcellus. Except words in which the preceding vowel is short; as, *cutĭcŭla, cănĭcŭla:* or in which *i* is long in the primitive; as, *cornĭcŭla,* from *cornix, -ĭcis.*

2. Numerals in *ginti, ginta, ēni,* and *esĭmus,* lengthen the antepenult; as,

vĭginti, quădrāginta, trĭcēni, quinquāgēsimus.

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,

vinŏlentus, fraudŭlentus, pulvĕrŭlentus, trŭcŭlentus.

4. A vowel before final *nea, neo, nia, nio, nius, nium,* is long; as,

ărānea, linea, cāneo, mūnia, pūnio, Fāvōnius, patrĭmōnium. Except *castānea, tĭnea, măneo, mĭneo, mŏneo, sĕneo, tĕneo, ignōmĭnia, luscĭnia, vēnia, lānio, vēnio, ingĕnium, gĕnius, sĕnio, sĕnĭum;* words in *ĭnium,* as, *lēnōcĭnium;* and derivatives in *ōnius,* when *o* in the root of the primitive is short; as, *Agămemnŏnius,* from *Agămemnon, -ŏnis.*

5. Words ending in *areo, arius, arium, erium, orius, orium,* lengthen the antepenult; as,

āreo, cĭbārius, plantārium, dictērium, censōrius, tentōrium. Except *căreo, vărius, dēsidĕrium, impĕrium, măgistĕrium, ministĕrium.*

6. Adjectives in *atĭcus, atĭlis,* lengthen the antepenult; as,

ăquātĭcus, plumātĭlis. Except some Greek words in *ātĭcus;* as, *grammătĭcus*

7. *I* before final *tūdo* is short; as,

altĭtūdo, longĭtūdo.

8. Verbals in *bĭlis* lengthen *a* but shorten *i* in the antepenult; as,

ămābĭlis, mĭrābĭlis; crēdĭbĭlis, terrĭbĭlis. In *hăbĭlis,* b belongs to the root.

9. *U* before *v* is short, (except in *Jūverna*) ; as,

jŭvĕnis, jŭvĕnālis, jŭvĕnīlitas, flŭvius, dīlŭvium.

III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Patrials and proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *shorten* the penult:—

ba,	de,	o,[6]	ges,	dus,[13]	ena,[19]	arus,	atus,[22]
ca,[1]	le,[4]	on,[7]	les,	eus,[14]	anes,	erus,[21]	itus,[23]
la,[2]	pe,[5]	os,[8]	lis,[10]	gus,[15]	enes,	yrus,	otus.[24]
be,	re,	er,[9]	bus,	lus,[16]	aris,	asus,	
ce,[3]	nl,	mas,	cus,[11]	mus,[17]	yris,	osus,	
che,	il,	ras,	chus,[12]	plus,[18]	asis,[20]	usus,	

Exceptions.

¹Mărīca, Năsīca.—²Ĕriphy̆la, Mĕssāla, Philōmēla, Suādēla.—³Bĕrĕnīce.—⁴Ĕriphy̆le, Nĕŏbūle, Pĕrĭmēle.—⁵Eŭrōpe, Sĭnōpe.—⁶Carthāgo, Cūpāvo, Cūpīdo, Orīgo, Theāno.—⁷Alēmon, Anthēdon, Chalcēdon, Iāson, Phīlēmon, Pŏly̆phḗmon, Sarpēdon, Thermōdon.—⁸Cercy̆ros, Pĕpărēthos, Pharsālos, Sĕrīphos.—⁹Mĕlĕāger.—¹⁰Bessālis, Eŭmēlis, Jŭvĕnālis, Martiālis, Phāsēlis, Stymphālis.—¹¹Bĕnācus, Caīcus, Grānīcus, Nūmīcus, Trĭvīcus.—¹²Ŏphiūchus.—¹³Aby̆dos.—¹⁴Cāphăreus, Enīpeus, Prōmētheus, Phōrōneus, Salmōneus, Oīleus.—¹⁵Cēthḗgus.—¹⁶*Names in* -chus, *in* -olus (*except* Ǽolus, Naŭbŏlus), *in* -bulus, (*except* Bibŭlus) Eumēlus, Gætūlus, Iūlus, Massy̆lus, Orbēlus, Pharsālus, Sardānāpālus, Stymphālus.—¹⁷*Some in* -dēmus *and* -phēmus; as, Acădēmus, Pŏly̆phḗmus.—¹⁸Sĕrīphus.—¹⁹Alcmēna, Athēnæ, Cāmēna, Fīdēna, Mĕssēna, Mŭrēna, My̆cēnæ.—²⁰Amāsis.—²¹Hŏmērus, Ĭbērus.—²²Arātus, Cærātus, Torquātus.—²³Hērāclītus, Hermăphrŏdītus.—²⁴Būthrōtus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana,¹	sa,	num,⁷	tas,	nus,¹²	urus,	etus,¹⁶
ina,²	ta,⁴	tum,	des,⁹	pus,¹³	esus,¹⁵	ntus,
ona,³	tæ,⁵	or,⁸	tes,¹⁰	irus,	isus,	ytus,¹⁷
yna,	ene,⁶	nas,	tis,¹¹	orus,¹⁴	ysus,	vus.

Exceptions.

¹Sēquăna.—²Mŭtĭna, Prōserpĭna, Ruspĭna, Sarsĭna.—³Axŏna, Matrŏna.—⁴Dalmăta, Prŏchy̆ta, Sarmăta, Lapĭtha.—⁵Galătæ, Jaxămĕtæ, Massăgĕtæ, Măcĕtæ, Sauromătæ.—⁶Cly̆mĕne, Hĕlĕne, Melpŏmĕne, Nyctĭmĕne.—⁷Arĭmĭnum, Drĕpănum.—⁸Nŭmĭtor.—⁹Mīltĭădes, Py̆lădes, Sōtădes, Thūcy̆dĭdes; *patronymics in* -des, (§ 291, 4,) *and plurals in* -ades.—¹⁰Antĭphătes, Chărĭtes, Eŭry̆bătes, Ichnŏbătes, Energĕtes, Massăgĕtes, *and all names in* -crates.—¹¹Dercĕtis.—¹²Apĭdănus, Apŏnus, Cărănus, Chry̆sŏgŏnus, Cĭmĭnus, Cly̆mĕnus, Concănus, Dardănus, Diădūmĕnus, Eărĭnus, Erĭdănus, Fŭcĭnus, Hĕlĕnus, Lĭbănus, Mŏrĭni, My̆cŏnus, Nebrŏphŏnus, Olĕnus, Pĕrĭcly̆mĕnus, Rhŏdănus, Santŏnus, Sēquăni, Stĕphănus, Telĕgŏnus, Tĕrŭnius, *and names in* -gonus *and* -xenus.—¹³Œdĭpus.—¹⁴Pācŏrus, Bospŏrus, *and names in* -chorus *and* -phorus; as, Stēsĭchŏrus, Phosphŏrus.—¹⁵Ephĕsus, Vogĕsus, Volĕsus.—¹⁶Iăpĕtus, Tāy̆gĕtus, Vĕnĕtus.—¹⁷Epy̆tus, Any̆tus, Eury̆tus, Hippŏly̆tus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and adjectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, I. Exc. 6.

Ænēas, Æthīon, Achĕlōus, Achillēus, Alcy̆ŏnēus, Alexandrīa, Alōeus, Alphēus, Amĭnēus, Amphiārāus, Amphĭgĕnīa, Amphīon, Amy̆thāon, Arīon, Anchīsēus, Atlantēus, Antĭŏchīa, Bĭŏnēus, Cæsărēa, Cālaurēa, Calliŏpēa, Cassĭŏpēa, Cleanthēus, Cy̆dŏnēus, Cy̆mōdŏcēa, Cy̆thērēa, Dārīus (-ēus), Dēĭdāmīa, Didy̆māon, Diŏmēdēus, Dolichāon, Echīon, Elēus, Endy̆mīŏnēus, Enȳo, Eŏus, Erĕbēus, Erecthēus, Gālātēa, Gĭgantēus, Hērāclēa (-ēus), Hippŏdāmīa, Hy̆pĕrīon, Ilithȳīa, Imāon, Iŏlāus, Iphĭgĕnīa, Ixīon, Lāŏdāmīa, Lātōus, Lesbŏus, Ly̆cāon, Machāon, Mausŏlēum, Mēdēa, Mĕnĕlāus, Mēthīon, Myrtōus, Ophīon, Orīon, Orīthȳīa, Orphēus, Pallantēum (-us), Pandīon, Paphāgēa, Pēnēus, Penthēsīlēa, Phœbēus, Poppēa, Prōtĕsĭlāus, Py̆rēnēus, Sardŏus, Thālīa.

NOTE. *Eus* in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diphthong; as, *Alcēus, Œnēus, Orphēus, Pēleus, Perseus, Prōteus, Thēseus, Ty̆deus*, which are dissyllables; *Briăreus, Enīpheus, Macăreus, Ty̆phōeus*, which are trisyllables; *Idŏmĕneus*, etc. Cf. § 283, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written *υεε (eios), eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphēūs.* So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erĕbēūs, Erecthēūs, Orphēūs; aurĕūs, lignĕūs.*

QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. VOWELS.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 294. (*a*.) All monosyllables, except enclitics, ending in a vowel, are long; as,

ā, āh, dā, stā, ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē, rē, ĭ, fĭ, hī, quī, nī, sī, O or *ŏh, dō, prō, prōh, quō, stō, tū.*

POLYSYLLABLES.

A *final.*

1. *A* final, in words declined, is short; as, *mūsă, templă, căpĭtă, Tȳdeă.* Thus,

<div style="text-align:center">*Mūsă mĭhī causas mĕmŏră; quo nūmĭne læso....* Virg. A. 1, 8.</div>

Exc. *A* final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *es ;* as,

<div style="text-align:center">*Mūsā, fundā; O Ænēā, O Pallā, O Anchisā.*</div>

2. *A* final, in words not declined, is long; as, *ămā, frustrā, anteā, ergā, intrā.* Thus,

<div style="text-align:center">*Extrā fortūnam est quidquid dōnātur ămīcis.* Mart. Epig. 5, 42, 7.</div>

Exc. *A* final is short in *eiā, itā, quiā,* and in *pŭtā,* when used adverbially, in the sense of 'for example.' It is sometimes short in the preposition *contrā,* and in numerals ending in *ginta;* as, *trĭginta,* etc. In *postea,* it is common.

A final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphă, bētă,* etc., and in *tărătantără,* the imitated sound of the trumpet.

E *final.*

§ 295. *E* final, in words of two or more syllables, is short; as, *nătĕ, patrĕ, ipsĕ, currĕ, rĕgĕrĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.* Thus,

<div style="text-align:center">*Incĭpĕ, parvĕ puer, rīsu cognoscĕrĕ mātrem.* Virg. E. 4, 60.</div>

REMARK. The enclitics *-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -te, -pte,* etc., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nĕquĕ, hūjuscĕ, suaptĕ.* Cf. § 294, (*a*.)

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions; as,

Calliŏpē, Tȳdĭdē, fĭdē. So also in the compounds of *rē* and *diē;* as, *quārē, hŏdiē, prĭdiē, postrĭdiē, quŏtĭdiē,* and in the ablative *fāmē,* originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. *E* final is long in Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es,* of the third declension; as, *Achillē, Hippŏmĕnē;* and in Greek neuters plural; as, *cētē, mēlē, pĕlăgē, Tempē.*

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *dŏcē, mŏnē ;*—but it is sometimes short in *căvĕ, vălĕ,* and *vĭdĕ.*

Exc. 4. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension; as,

plăcĭdē, pulchrē, valdē for *vălĭdē, maxĭmē;* but it is short in *bĕnĕ, mălĕ, infernĕ,* and *supernĕ.*

Exc. 5. *Fĕrē, fermē,* and *ŏhē,* have the final e long.

I *final.*

§ **296.** *I* final is long; as, *dŏmĭnī, fīlī, classī, dŏcērī, sī.* Thus,

> Quid *dŏmĭnī* făcĭent, audent eum tālĭa fūres. *Virg.* E. 3, 16.

Exc. 1. (*a*.) *I* final is common in *mĭhi, tĭbi, sĭbi, ĭbi,* and *ŭbi.*

(*b*.) In *ŭbĭque* and commonly in *ĭbĭdem* it is long, but in *ŭbĭvis* and *ŭbĭnam* it is short.—(*c*.) In *nĭsi, quăsi,* and *cui,* when a dissyllable, *i* final is common, but usually short. In *ŭtĭnam* and *ŭtĭque,* and rarely, also, in *ŭti,* it is short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Pallădĭ, Mĭnōĭdĭ, Tēthÿĭ.*

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in the vocative of Greek nouns in *-ĭs;* as, *Alexĭ, Daphnĭ, Pārĭ.* But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *-īs, (ῠς) -entos;* as, *Sĭmŏī, Pÿrŏī.*

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *-sĭ,* or, before a vowel, *-sĭn;* as, *Dryăsĭ, hērōĭsĭ, Trōăsĭn.*

O *final.*

§ **297.** *O* final, in words of two or more syllables, is common; as, *virgŏ, ămŏ, quandŏ.* Thus,

> *Ergŏ* mĕtu căpĭta Scylla cĕrt Inĭmīca păterno. *Virg.* Cir. 386.
> *Ergŏ* sollĭcĭtæ tu causa, pĕcūnĭa, vītæ es ! *Prop.* 3, 5, 1.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *dŏmĭnō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō.*

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō, falsō, mĕrĭtō, vulgō, eō, quō;* and also in *omnīnō,* in *ergō,* 'for the sake of,' and in the interjection *iō.*

REMARK 1. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of the Augustan age.

REM. 2. In poets subsequent to the Augustan age, final *o* in verbs, in gerunds, and in the adverbs *ădeo, ideo, ergo, sĕro, vĕro, porro, retro, immo, idcirco, sŭbito,* and *postrēmo,* is sometimes short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *cito, illico, prŏfecto,* and the compounds of *mŏdo;* as, *dummŏdŏ, postmŏdŏ,* etc.; and in *ĕgo* and *hŏmo* it is more frequently short than long.

Exc. 4. *O* final in Greek nouns written with an omĕga (ω) is long; as, *Clīō, Dīdō, Athō,* and *Andrŏgeō,* (gen.)

U *final.*

§ **298.** 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū, cornū, Panthū, dĭctū, dĭū.* Thus,

> *Vultū,* quo cœlum tempestātesque sĕrēnat. *Virg.* A. 1, 255.

Exc. *Indŭ* and *nēnă*, ancient forms of *in* and *non*, have *u* short. *U* is also short in terminations in *ŭs* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *contentŭ'*, for *contentŭs*. See § 305, 2.

Y *final.*

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Mŏlÿ, Tīphÿ.* Thus,

> *Mŏlÿ* vŏcant sŭpĕri: nigrā rādīce tĕnētur. *Ovid.* M. 14, 292.

Exc. *Y* in the dative *Tēthÿ*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 283, III.

I I. CONSONANTS.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 299. 1. Monosyllabic *substantives* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short;

> *sōl, vir, fūr, jūs, splēn, vēr, fŭr, lār, Nār, pār, Sēr, fūr, făs, măs, rēs, pēs, Dīs, glīs, līs, vīs, flōs, mōs, rōs, Trōs, ōs, (ōris), dōs, grūs, rūs, tūs;—nĕc, in, ăn, ăb, ăd, quid, quĭs, quŏt, ĕt; as,*

> Ipse dŏcet *quid* ăgam. *Fās est ĕt ăb* hoste dŏcēri. *Ovid.* M. 4, 428.
> *Vēr* ădeo frondi nēmŏrum, *vēr* ūtile silvis. *Virg.* G. 2, 323.

NOTE. The rules for the quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant imply that the consonant is single, and that it is preceded by a single vowel. If otherwise the syllable will be long by § 283, IV. and II.

EXC. 1. *Cŏr, fĕl, mĕl, pŏl, vir, ŏs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vădis*), are short.

EXC. 2. *En, nōn, quīn, sīn, crās, plūs, cūr,* and *pār,* are long: so also are particles and pronouns ending in *c,* except *nĕc,* which is short, and the pronouns *hic* and *hoc,* in the nominative and accusative, are common.

EXC. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns and forms of verbs in *as, es,* and *is,* are long; as, *hās, quās, hōs, nōs, vōs, quōs, hīs, quīs;—dās, flēs, stēs, is, fīs, sīs, vīs;* except *ĕs* from *sum* which is short.

EXC. 4. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of their root; as, *dic, dūc,* from *dico, dūco; făc, fĕr,* from *făcio, fĕro.*

POLYSYLLABLES.

D, L, N, R, T, *final.*

2.   Final syllables ending in *d, l, n, r,* and *t,* are short; as, *illŭd, consŭl, carmĕn, pătĕr, căpŭt.* Thus,

> Obstăpuit *sĭmŭl* ipse, *sĭmul* perculsus Achātes. *Virg.* A. 1, 513.
> *Nōmĕn* Ariōnium Sĭcŭlas *implēvĕrăt* urbes. *Ovid.* F. 2, 93.
> Dum *lŏquŏr, horrŏr,* hăbet; parsque est mĕmĭnisse dŏlōris. *Id.* M. 9, 291.

EXC. 1. *E* in *liēn* is long.

EXC. 2. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on,* written with an *omicron*), masculine or feminine accusatives in *an* or *en,* and genitives plural in *on,* lengthen the final syllable; as,

> *Tītān, Orīōn, Ǣnēăn, Anchīsēn, Callĭŏpēn; ĕpĭgrammătōn.*

Exc. 3. *Aēr*, *œthēr*, and nouns in *ēr* which form their genitive in *ēris*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

cratēr, *sotēr*. So also *Ibēr*; but the compound *Celtĭber* has sometimes in Martial its last syllable short.

REMARK. A final syllable ending in *t*, may be rendered long by a diphthong, by contraction, by syncopation, or by position; as, *aut*, *ăbĭt* for *ăbiit*, *fūmāt*, for *fumāvit*, *āmānt*. See § 283, II. III. IV., and § 162, 7, (*d.*)

M *final.*

NOTE. Final *m* with the preceding vowel is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ecthlipsis*, § 305, 2.

3. Final syllables ending in *m*, when it is not cut off, are short; as,

Quam laudas, plūmā? coeto *nŭm* ădest hŏnŏr idem. *Hor.* S. 2, 2, 28.

REMARK. Hence in composition the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* are short; as, *cŏmĕdo*, *circŭmăgo*.

C *final.*

4. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *ālēc*, *illīc*, *istāc*, *illūc*. Thus,

Illīc indocto prīmum se exērcuit arcu. *Tib.* 2, 1, 69.

Exc. The final syllable of *dōnĕc* is short; as,

Dōnĕc ĕris fēlix, multos nŭmĕrābis ămīcos. *Ovid.* Trist. 1, 9, 5.

AS, ES, *and* OS, *final.*

§ **300.**   Final syllables in *as*, *es*, and *os*, are long; as,

mūsās, *piĕtās*, *ămās*, *Ænēās*, *quiēs*, *sermōnēs*, *diēs*, *Pēnĕlŏpēs*, *dŭcentiēs*, *mŏnēs*, *hŏnōs*, *vīrōs*, *dŏmĭnōs*. Thus,

Hās autem *terrās*, Itālīque hanc lītŏris ōram. *Virg.* A. 3, 396.
Si mŏdo *dēs* illis cultus, *similēsque* parātus. *Ovid.* M. 6, 454.

Exc. 1. (*a.*) AS. *As* is short in *ănăs*, in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *ădis* or *ădos*; as, *Arcăs*, *Pallăs*; and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *hērŏăs*, *lampădăs*.

(*b.*) *As* is short also in Latin nouns in *as*, *ădos*, formed like Greek patronymics; as, *Appăăs*.

Exc. 2. ES. (*a.*) Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospĕs*, *līmĕs*, *hĕbĕs*; gen. *hospĭtis*, etc.

(*b.*) But it is long in *ăbiĕs*, *ăriĕs*, *păriĕs*, *Cĕrēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds *cornĭpēs*, *sōnĭpēs*, etc.

(*c.*) *Es*, in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds, and in the preposition *pĕnĕs*, is short.

(*d.*) *Es* is short in Greek neuters in *es*; as, *căcŏĕthĕs*, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Arcădēs*, *Trŏĕs*, *Amăzŏnĕs*; from *Arcas*, *Arcădis*, etc.

Exc. 3. OS. (*a.*) *Os* is short in *compŏs*, *impŏs*, and *ŏs* (*ossis*), with its compound *exŏs*.

(*b.*) *Os* is short in Greek nouns and cases written in the original with *omicron*; as (1) in all neuters; as, *chăŏs, ĕpŏs, Argŏs;* (2) in all nouns of the second declension; as, *Ilĭŏs, Tyrŏs, Dēlŏs;* except those whose genitive is in *ō,* (Greek *ω*); as, *Athŏs,* gen. *Athō;* (3) in genitives singular of the third declension; as, *Pallădŏs, Tēthyŏs,* from *Pallăs* and *Tēthys.*

IS, US, *and* YS, *final.*

§ **301.**   Final syllables in *is, us,* and *ys,* are short; as,

turrĭs, mīlĭtĭs, mītĭs, āmātĭs, ămābĭs, măgĭs; pectŭs, bŏnŭs, ējŭs, ămānŭs, rursŭs, tĕnŭs; Căpys, Itys. Thus,

> Non ăpĭs inde tŭlit collectos sēdŭla flōres. *Ovid.* M. 13, 928.
> Sērĭus aut citius sēdem prŏpĕrāmŭs ad ūnam. *Id.* M. 10, 33.
> At Căpys, et quōrum mĕlior sententia menti. *Virg.* A. 2, 35.

Exc. 1. IS. (*a.*) *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

mūsīs, nōbīs; omnīs, urbīs, (for *omnēs, urbēs*); *quīs,* (for *quēīs* or *quĭbus*). So also in the adverbs *grātīs, ingrātīs,* and *fŏrīs,* which are in reality datives or ablatives plural.

> Et liquĭdi sĭmŭl ignis; ut hīs exordia prīmīs. *Virg.* A. 6, 33.
> Quīs ante ōra patrum Trōjæ sub mœnibus altis. *Id.* A. 1, 95.
> Non *omnīs* arbusta jŭvant, hŭmĭlesque myrīcæ. *Id.* E. 4, 2.
> Adde tŏt ēgrēgĭas urbīs, ŏpĕrumque labōrem. *Id.* G. 2, 155.

(*b.*) *Is* is long in the nominative of nouns whose genitive ends in *ĭtis, ĭnis,* or *entis;* as, *Samnīs, Sălămīs, Sĭmŏīs.*

(*c.*) *Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

audīs, nescīs. So also in the second persons, *fīs, īs, sīs, vīs, vēlīs,* and their compounds; as, *adsīs, possīs, quamvīs, mālīs, nōlīs,* etc. Cf. § 299, 1, Exc. 3.

(*d.*) *Rīs,* in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as, *vidērīs.*

Exc. 2. US. (*a.*) *Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, (§ 89, Rem., and § 283, III.); as,

tellūs, virtūs, incūs;—frūctūs. But *pălŭs,* with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, Art. Poet. 65.

(*b.*) *Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ous* (*ὄυς*)whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Amāthūs, Opūs, Œdipūs, tripūs, Panthūs;* gen. *Dĭdūs, Sapphūs.* But compounds of *pus* (*πους*), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *pŏlypŭs.*

NOTE.   The last syllable of every verse, (except the anapæstic and the Ionic *a minōre*), may be either long or short at the option of the poet.

REMARK.   By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as, in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

> Sanguĭnēăque mănu crĕpĭtantia concŭtit armā. *Ovid.* M. 1, 143.
> Non ēget Mauri jacŭlis, nec arcū. *Hor.* Od. 1, 22, 2.

VERSIFICATION.

FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

I. SIMPLE FEET.

1. *Of two Syllables.*

Spondee,.............two long, — —; as,.................*fŭndănt.*
Pyrrhic,............two short, ◡ ◡; as,................*Dĕus.*
Trochee, or *choree*,....a long and a short, — ◡; as,.........*ārmă.*
Iambus,..............a short and a long, ◡ —; as,..........*ĕrānt.*

2. *Of three Syllables.*

Dactyl,..............a long and two short, — ◡ ◡; as,....*cōrpŏră.*
Anapæst,.............two short and a long, ◡ ◡ —; as,.......*dŏmĭnī.*
Tribrach,............three short, ◡ ◡ ◡; as,..............*făcĕrĕ.*
Molossus,............three long, — — —; as,...............*cōntēndūnt.*
Amphibrach,..........a short, a long, and a short, ◡ — ◡; as,..*ămārĕ.*
Amphimacrus, or *Cretic*, a long, a short, and a long, — ◡ —; as,..*cāstĭtās.*
Bacchius,............a short and two long, ◡ — —; as,.......*Cătōnēs.*
Antibacchius,........two long and a short, — — ◡; as,.......*Rōmānŭs.*

II. COMPOUND FEET.

Dispondee,..........a double spondee, — — — —; as,.........*cōnflīxĕrūnt.*
Proceleusmatic,......a double Pyrrhic, ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡; as,........*hŏmĭnĭbŭs.*
Ditrochee,..........a double trochee, — ◡ — ◡; as,.........*cōmprŏbāvĭt.*
Diambus,.............a double iambus, ◡ — ◡ —; as,.........*ămāvĕrānt.*
Greater Ionic,.......a spondee and a Pyrrhic, — — ◡ ◡; as,..*cōrrēxĭmŭs.*
Smaller Ionic,.......a Pyrrhic and a spondee, ◡ ◡ — —; as,..*prŏpĕrābānt.*
Choriambus,.........a choree and an iambus, — ◡ ◡ —; as,..*tērrĭfĭcānt.*
Antispast,...........an iambus and a choree, ◡ — — ◡; as,..*ădhæsĭssē.*
First epitrit,.......an iambus and a spondee, ◡ — — —; as,..*ămāvĕrānt.*
Second epitrit,......a trochee and a spondee, — ◡ — —; as,..*cōndĭtōrēs.*
Third epitrit,.......a spondee and an iambus, — — ◡ —; as,..*dĭscōrdĭās.*
Fourth epitrit,......a spondee and a trochee, — — — ◡; as,..*ădūlāxĭstĭs.*
First pæon,..........a trochee and a Pyrrhic, — ◡ ◡ ◡; as,..*tēmpŏrĭbŭs.*
Second pæon,........an iambus and a Pyrrhic, ◡ — ◡ ◡; as,..*pŏtēntĭă.*
Third pæon,.........a Pyrrhic and a trochee, ◡ ◡ — ◡; as,..*ănĭmātŭs.*
Fourth pæon,........a Pyrrhic and an iambus, ◡ ◡ ◡ —; as,..*cĕlĕrĭtās.*

REMARK. Those feet are called *isochronous*, which consist of equal times; as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.

METRE.

§ 303. 1. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

2. In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

3. Metre is divided into *dactylic, anapæstic, iambic, trochaic, choriambic,* and *Ionic.* These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

4. A *metre* or *measure*, in a specific sense, is either a single foot, or a combination of two feet. In the dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the other metres, of two feet. Two feet constituting a measure are sometimes called a *syzygy.*

VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich :* a half verse, a *hemistich.*

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic, iambic,* etc.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *sēnārius,* consisting of six feet; *octōnārius,* of eight feet; *mŏnŏmĕter,* consisting of one measure; *dīmĕter,* of two; *trimĕter, tetramĕter, pentamĕter, hexamĕter ;*—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic, Anacreontic, Alcaic, Asclepiadic, Glyconic, Phalæcian, Sotadic, Archilochian, Alcmanian, Pherecratic, Aristophanic,* etc., from *Sappho, Anacreon, Alcæus, Asclepiādes, Glȳcon, Phalæcus, Sotādes, Archilŏchus, Alcman, Pherecrātes, Aristophānes.* etc.—and sometimes from the particular uses to which they were applied; as, the *prosodiac,* from its use in solemn processions, the *paræmiac,* from its frequent use in proverbs.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

(1.) A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic.*

(2.) A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic ;* if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic.*

(3.) A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous.*

(4.) A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermĕter.*

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the *species,* the second to the *number of metres,* and the third to the *ending ;* as, the *dactylic trimĕter catalectic.*

5. A verse or portion of a verse of any kind (measured from the beginning) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called a *trihĕmĭmĕris;* if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called a *penthĕmĭmĕris;* if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, a *hepthĕmĭmĕris;* if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, an *ennehĕmĭmĕris.* A portion of a verse consisting of one whole metre and a half, is called a *hēmĭŏlĭus,* as being the half of a *trimeter.*

NOTE. The respective situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place.*

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

REMARK. In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

SYNALŒPHA.

§ **305.** 1. *Synalœpha* is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel.

Thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua; Dardănĭdæ infensi, Dardănĭd' infensi; vento huc, vent' huc.* So,

Quidve mŏror? si omnes ūno ordĭne hăbētis Achīvos. *Virg.* A. 2, 102.

Which is scanned thus—

Quidve mŏror? s' omnes ūn' ordĭn' hăbētis Achīvos.

(1.) The interjections *O, heu, ah, proh, væ, vah,* are not elided; as,

O et de Lătĭā, O et de gente Sābīnā. *Ovid.* M. 14, 832.

REMARK. But *O,* though not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

Te Cŏrȳdon O Alexi; trăhit sua quemque vŏluptas. *Virg.* E. 2, 65.

(2.) Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case, when in the thesis of a foot, they are commonly made short; as,

Victor ăpŭd răpĭdum Sīmoënta sŭb Ilĭō alto. *Virg.* A. 5, 261.
Anni tempŏre eo quī Etēsĭæ esse fĕruntur. *Lucr.* 6, 717.
Ter sunt cōnātī impŏnĕre Pēlĭō Ossam. *Virg.* G. 1. 281.
Glaucō et Panŏpēæ, et Inōo Mēlicertæ. *Id.* G. 1, 436.

(3.) Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

Et vēra incessu pătuit deă. Ille ŭbi mātrem.... *Virg.* A. 1, 405.

(4.) Synalœpha in a monosyllable occasionally occurs; as,

Sī ad vitŭlam spectas, nihil est, quod pocŭla laudes. *Virg.* E. 3, 48.

For synalœpha at the end of a line, see *Synapheia,* § 307, 3.

ECTHLIPSIS.

2. *Ecthlĭpsis* is the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel. Thus,

O cūras hŏmĭn*um,* O quant*um* est in rēbus ināne! *Pers.* 1, 1.

Which is thus scanned—

O cūras hŏmĭn' O quant' est in rēbus ĭnāne.

Monstr*um* horrend*um*, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ădemptum. *Virg.* A. 3, 658.

(1.) This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

Corpŏr*ūm* officium est quŏniam prēmĕre omnia deorsum. *Lucr.* 1, 363.

See § 299, 2.

(2.) Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elide1 by the early poets where before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *con-tent' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque*; *omnibu' rēbus.* (*Lucr.*) So,

Tum lătērāl*i'* dŏlor, certissĭmo' nuncĭo' mortis. *Lucil.*

REMARK. This elision took place principally in short syllables.

For ecthlipsis at the end of a line, see *Synaphēia*, § 307, 3.

SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. Synæresis is the contraction into one syllable of two vowels which are usually pronounced separately. Thus,

Aureā percussum virgā, versumque vēnēnis. *Virg.* A. 7, 190.
Eosd*em* hăbuit sēcum, quĭbus est ēlāta, căpillos. *Prop.* 4, 7, 7.
Titўre, pascentes a flūmine *reice* căpellas. *Virg.* E. 3, 96.

REMARK 1. So *Phaëthon* is pronounced *Phæthon*; *alveo, alvo*; *Orphea, Orphia*; *deorsum, dorsum.*

(1.) Synæresis is frequent in *ii, iĭdem, iisdem, dii, diis, dein, deinceps, deinde, deest, deěrat, deēro, deěrit, deesse*; as,

Praecĭpĭtātur ăquis, et ăquis nox surgit ab *isdem.* *Ovid.* M. 4, 92.
Sint Mæcēnātes; non *deērunt*, Flacce, Mārōnes. *Mart.* 8, 56, 5.

REM. 2. *Cui* and *huic* are usually monosyllables.

(2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *e* in *anteambŭlo, anteĭre, antĕhac, dehinc, mehercŭle*, etc., and *a* in *contraire.*

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* followed by another vowel retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *abiĕte, arĭĕte, abiĕgnæ, pariĕtibus, consilĭum, fortuitus, Nāsidiēnus, vindemiātor, omnĭa; gĕnŭa, tĕnuis, pitŭĭta, fluviōrum*, etc. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w*; as, *abyĕte, paryĕtibus, consilyum, fortwitus, Nāsidyēnus, omn-yā, tenwis, pitwita*, etc.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

NOTE. In Statius, the word *tĕnuiōre* occurs as a trisyllable, in which the three vowels, *uio*, are united in pronunciation; thus, *tĕn-wiō-re.*

(4.) Sometimes, after a synalœpha or ecthlipsis, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet;* consilĭum *et,—consil-yet.*

(5.) If only one of the vowels is *written*, the contraction is called *crasis;* as, *di, consili*, for *dii, consilii.*

DIÆRESIS.

2. *Diærĕsis* is the division of one syllable into two; as,

aulāi, Trŏia, sĭlŭa, sŭädent; for aulæ, Troia or Troja, silva, suädent. So, sŭēsco for suesco; rēliquŭis for rēliquus; ecquĭis for ecquis; mĭlŭŭs for milvus, etc., as,

> Æthĕreum sensum, atque *aurāī* simplĭcis ignem. *Virg.* A. 6, 747.
> Atque alios alii irrident, Vĕnĕremque *sŭādent. Lucr.* 4, 1153.
> Grammătici certant; et ădhuc sub *indĭce* lis est. *Hor.* A. P. 78.
> Aurārum et *sĭlŭæ* mĕtu. *Id.* O. 1, 23, 4.

(1.) So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong (*u* or *υ*); as, *ĕlĕgēïa* for *ĕlĕgīa, Bacchēïa* for *Bacchēa, Rhœtēïūs* for *Rhœtēïus, Plēïăs* for *Plĭăs:* and also in words of Latin origin; as, *Vēïus* for *Veius, Aquilēïă* for *Aquilēïă.*

REMARK. This figure is sometimes called *dialÿsis.*

SYSTOLE.

§ **307.** 1. *Systŏle* is the shortening of a syllable which is long by nature or by position; as,

> *vĭdē'n* for *vĭdesne,* in which *e* is naturally long; *sătĭn'n* for *sătisne,* in which *i* is long by position;—*hŏdĭe* for *hŏc dĭe ; multĭmŏdis* for *multīs mŏdis.* So,
> Dīcĕre multĭmŏdis vōces, et flectĕre cantus. *Lucr.* 5, 1405.

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ăb, ăd, ŏb, sŭb,* and *rĕ,* in compound words, those prepositions retain their naturally short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *ăbĭci, ădĭcit, ŏbĭcis,* etc. Thus,

> Si quid nostra tuis *ădĭcit* vexātio rēbus. *Mart.* 10, 82, 1.

REMARK. In some compounds the short quantity of *ăd* and *ŏb* is preserved before a consonant by the elision of the *d* or *b* of the preposition, as in *ăpĕrio, ŏpĕrio, ŏmitto,* etc.

(2.) The penult of the third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *stĕtērunt, tŭlērunt,* etc.; but others ascribe these irregularities to the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

DIASTOLE.

2. *Diastŏle* is the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short.

(1.) It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re;* as, *Priămīdes, rēlĭgio,* etc. Thus,

> Hanc tibi *Priămīdes* mitto, Lēdæa, sălūtem. *Ovid.* H 16, 1.
> *Rēlĭgīōne* patrum multos servāta per annos. *Virg.* A. 2, 715.

(2.) Some editors double the consonant after the lengthened *re;* as, *rellĭgio.*

(3.) Diastole is sometimes called *ectăsis.*

SYNAPHEIA.

3. *Synapheia* is such a connection of two consecutive verses, that the first syllable of the latter verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthlipsis. See §§ 283 and 305.

(1.) This figure is most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minŏre.*

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

> Præceps silvas montesque *fugĭt*
> Cītus Actæon. *Sen.*

Here the *i* in the final syllable of *fugĭt,* which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants, *tc.*

> Omnia Mercŭrio sĭmĭlis, vōcemque cŏlōrem*que*
> Et crīnes flāvos.... *Virg.* A. 4, 558.
> Dissĭdens plēbi nŭmĕro beātor*um*
> Exĭmĭt virtus. *Hor.* O. 2, 2, 18.

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalœpha are combined, *que*
being elided before *et* in the following line; in the latter there is a similar
combination of synapheia and ecthlipsis.

(2.) By synapheia, the parts of a compound word are sometimes divided be-
tween two verses; as,

> .... si non offendĕret ūnum—
> *Quemque* poëtārum līmæ lăbor et mŏra... *Hor.* A. P. 290.

(3.) In hexameter verse a redundant syllable at the end of a line elided be-
fore a vowel at the beginning of the next line, by causing the accent to fall on
the second syllable of the concluding spondee, and connecting the two verses
by synapheia, excites the expectation of something which is to follow, and
often tends to magnify the object; as,

> Quōs sŭpĕr- | -ātrā sī- | -lēx, jām- | -jām lăp- | -sūrā cā- | -dēnti- | -*que*
> Imminet assimĭlis. *Virg.* A. 6, 602.

REMARK. The poets often make use of other figures, also, which, however,
are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthĕsis, ŏphærĕsis, syncŏpe, epenthĕsis,
apocŏpe, paragōge, tmĕsis, antithĕsis,* and *metathĕsis.* See § 322.

ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ **308.** (1.) *Rhythm* is the alternate elevating and depress-
ing of the voice at regular intervals in pronouncing the syllables
of verse.

(2.) The elevation of the voice is called *arsis,* its depression *thesis.*
These terms designate, also, the parts of a foot on which the eleva-
tion or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot; and hence,
in a foot composed wholly of long, or wholly of short syllables, when
considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined; but when
such foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, its arsis is
determined by that of the latter.

REMARK. Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on
the first syllable; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as
long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — ◡ ◡, and anapæst, ◡ ◡ —, it is equal; in the tro-
chee, — ◡, and iambus, ◡ —, it is twice as long. This difference in the pro-
portionate duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm.
A foot is said to have the *descending* rhythm, when its arsis is at the beginning,
and the *ascending,* when the thesis is at the beginning.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called
the *ictus.* When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into
two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis,* as used by the an-
cients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time,
and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus

Note 2. As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalœpha and ecthlipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

CÆSURA.

§ **309.** *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

Cæsura is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot;* 2, of the *rhythm;* and 3, of the *verse.*

1. Cæsura of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

Silves- | -trem tenu- | -i Mu- | -sam medi- | -tāris a- | -vēnā. *Virg.* E. 1, 2.

2. Cæsura of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding verse.

Rem 1. It hence appears that the cæsura of the rhythm is always a cæsura of the foot, as *e. g.* in the 2d, 3d, and 4th feet of the preceding verse; but, on the contrary, that the cæsura of the foot is not always a cæsura of the rhythm, as *e. g.* in the fifth foot of the same verse.

(1.) Cæsura of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand in the arsis of the foot instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus;* as,

Pēctŏrĭ- | -bŭs ĭnhĭ- | -āns spī- | -rāntĭā | cōnsŭlĭt | ēxta. *Virg.* A. 4, 64.

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

Rem. 2. Cæsura of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. Cæsura of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

Rem. 3. The cæsura of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause.* In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter, of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the cæsural pause will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary, under each species of verse.

Rem. 4. The effect of the cæsura is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

DACTYLIC METRE.

§ **310.** I. A *hexameter* or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Āt tŭbǽ | tērrĭbĭ- | -lēm sŏnĭ- | -tūm prŏcŭl | ǽrĕ că- | -nōrŏ. *Virg. A. 9, 503.*
Intōn- | -sĭ crī- | -nēs lōn- | -gǎ cēr- | -vīcĕ flŭ- | ēbānt. *Tibull. 3, 4, 27.*
Lūdĕrĕ | quǽ vĕl- | -lēm cālā- | -mō pēr- | -mīsĭt ă- | -grēstī. *Virg. E. 1, 10.*

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic* ; as,

Cārā dē- | -ūm sŏbŏ- | -lēs māg- | -nūm Jŏvĭs | Incrē- | -mēntūm. *Virg. E. 4, 49.*

REMARK 1. In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees;

Quādrŭpĕ- | -dāntĕ pŭ- | -trēm sŏnĭ- | -tū quātĭt | ūngŭlă | cāmpum. *Virg. A. 8, 596.*
Illī īn- | -tēr sĕ- | -sē māg- | -nā vī | brāchĭă tōllunt. *Id. A. 8, 452.*

REM. 2. Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables, and a monosyllable at the end of a line is generally ungraceful, but sometimes produces a good effect; as,

Stērnītŭr, | ēxănĭ- | -mīsquĕ, trĕ- | -mēns prŏ- | -cūmbĭt hŭ- | -mī bōs. *Virg. A. 5, 481.*
Pārtŭrĭ- | -ūnt mōn- | -tĕs: nās- | -cētŭr | rīdĭcŭ- | -lūs mūs. *Hor. A. P. 139.*

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura.* (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Rōmǽ | mǽnĭă | tērrŭĭt | īmpĭgĕr | Hānnĭbǎl | ārmīs. *Enn.*

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the *penthemimĕris,* i. e. after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as *the heroic cæsura.* Thus,

Āt dŏmŭs | intĕrĭ- | -ōr rĕ- | -gǎlī | splēndĭdă | lāxū. *Virg. A. 1, 637.*

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Īnfān- | -dūm rĕ- | -gīnā | jŭ- | -bēs rĕnŏ- | -vārĕ dŏ- | -lōrem. *Virg. A. 2, 3.*
Īndĕ tŏ- | -rō pătĕr | Æně- | -ās ‖ sīc | ōrsŭs ăb | āltŏ. *Id. A. 2, 2.*

REM. 3. When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the *hephthemimĕris,* i. e. after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Prīmă tĕ- | -nēt, ‖ plān- | -sūquĕ vŏ- | -lāt ‖ frĕmĭ- | -tūquĕ sĕ- | -cūndo. *Virg. A. 5, 338.*

6. The cæsura after the third foot, dividing the verse into exactly equal parts, was least approved; as,

Cuī nōn | dīctŭs Hy- | -lās pŭĕr ‖ ēt Lā- | -tōnĭă | Dēlos. *Virg. G. 3, 6.*

REM. 4. The cæsura pause between the fourth and fifth feet was considered as peculiarly adapted to pastoral poetry, particularly when the fourth foot was a dactyl, and was hence termed the *bucolic* cæsura; as,

Stānt vītŭ- | -lī ēt tĕnĕ- | -rīs mŭ- | -gītĭbŭs ‖ āĕră | cōmplēnt. *Nemes.*

NOTE 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* or *syllabic* cæsura; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic,* as a trochee immediately precedes. When a cæsura occurs in the fifth foot it is usually the trochaic cæsura, unless the foot is a spondee; as,

Frāxĭnŭs | īn sīl- | -vīs pŭl- | -chērrĭmā, | pīnŭs ĭn | hōrtīs. *Virg. E. 7, 65.*

(*a.*) It is to be remarked that two successive trochaic cæsuras in the *second* and *third* feet are, in general, to be avoided, but they are sometimes employed to express irregular or impetuous motion; as,

Ūna Eu- | -rūsque̅ Nō- | -tūsque̅ rū- | -ŭnt cre̅- | -bērque̅ prō- | -cēllīs. *Virg.* A. 1, 85.

(*b.*) Successive trochaic cæsuras are, in like manner, to be avoided in the *third* and *fourth* feet, and are approved in the *first* and *second*, in the *fourth* and *fifth*, and in the *first, third* and *fifth*. See Virg. A. 6, 651: 1, 94: and 6, 522.

NOTE 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot there is often a cæsura *of the foot*; while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Bellī | ferrā- | -tōs pōs- | -tes, ‖ pōr- | -tāsque̅ rē- | -frēgit. *Hor.* S. 1, 4, 61.

II. The *Priapēan* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth place, but often a spondee and rarely a dactyl; in the second, usually a dactyl; and an amphimacer and more rarely a dactyl in the third; as,

Ō cō- | -lōnĭā | quæ cŭpīs ‖ pōntĕ | lŭdĕrĕ | lōngō. *Catull.* 17, 1.

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V. Thus,

Ō cō- | -lōnĭā, quæ | cŭpīs
Pōntĕ | lŭdĕrĕ lōn- | -gō.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapēan*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tērtĭā | pārs pā- | -trī dātā ‖ pārs dātā | tērtĭā | mātrī. *Catull.* 62, 64

See above, 6.

§ 311. III. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet.

REMARK 1. It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable; the last, of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | -rē̄ sĕquī- | -tūr ‖ sēmĭnā | quīsque̅ sŭ- | -ǣ. *Prop.* 3. 7, 20.
Cārmĭnī- | -bŭs vī- | -vēs ‖ tēmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | -īs. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts; as,

Nātū- | -rē̄ sĕquī- | -tūr ‖ sēm- | -ĭnā quīs- | -quĕ sŭǣ.
Cārmĭnī- | -bŭs vī- | -vēs ‖ tēm- | -pŭs ĭn ōm- | -nĕ mĕīs.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penthemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In Ovid, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

REM. 2. This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *elegiac* verse. Thus,

Flēbĭlĭs īndīgnōs, Ēlĕgēīā, sōlvĕ căpīllos.
Ah nimis ēx vērō nūnc tibī nōmĕn ĕrīt! *Ovid.* Am. 3, 9, 3.

§ **312.** IV. The *tetrameter a priōre*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gărrŭlă | pĕr rā- | -mōs, ăvīs | ōbstrĕpīt. *Sen.* Œd. 454.

V. The *tetrameter a posteriōre*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Ibĭmŭs, | Ō sŏcĭ- | -ī, cŏmĭ- | -tēsque. *Hor.* Od. 1, 7, 26.

REMARK. The penultimate foot in this, as in hexameter verse, may be a spondee, but in this case the preceding foot should be a dactyl; as,

Mēnsō- | -rĕm cŏhĭ- | -bēnt Ar- | -ēbȳtă. *Hor.* Od. 1, 28, 2.

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grātō | Pȳrrhă sŭb | ăntro. *Hor.* Od. 1, 5, 3.

REMARK. But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic Archilochian* consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first and second feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pŭlvĭs ĕt | ŭmbră sŭ- | -mus. *Hor.* Od. 4, 7, 16.

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Rīsĭt Ā- | -pōllo. *Hor.* Od. 1, 10, 12.

IX. The *Æolic pentameter* consists of four dactyls preceded by a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus. Thus

X. The *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of a dactylic penthimimeris and a dactylic dimeter; as,

Vīsĕ- | -bāt gĕlĭ- | -dæ | sīdĕră | brūmæ. *Boëthius.*

REMARK. A trochee is sometimes found in the first place and an iambus in the first and second places.

XI. The *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Faliscan* consists of the last four feet of a hexameter, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee; as,

Ūt nŏvă | frūgĕ grā- | -vīs Cĕrĕs | ĕat. *Boëthius.*

XII. The *Tetrameter Catalectic* consists of the tetrameter a priore wanting the latter half of the concluding dactyl; as,

Ōmne hŏmĭ- | -nūm gĕnŭs | īn tēr- | -ris. *Boëthius.*

ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ **313.** I. The *anapæstic monomēter* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ŭlŭlăs- | -sĕ cănĕs. *Sen.*

II. The *anapæstic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapæsts; as,

> Phărĕtrā̆- | -quē grăvēs | dătĕ sæ̆- | -vă fĕrō.... *Sen.*

REMARK 1. The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

REM. 2. Anapæstic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

IAMBIC METRE.

§ 314. I. 1. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet; as,

> Phāsē- | -lŭs ĭl- | -lĕ, ‖ quĕm | vĭdē- | -tĭs hōs- | -pĭtēs.... *Catull.* 4. 1.

2. The cæsura commonly occurs in the third but sometimes in the fourth foot.

3. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Latin poets, but to vary the rhythm spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places. In every foot, also, except the last, which was always an iambus, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapæst or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus, but the use of the dactyl in the fifth place was very rare; as,

> Quō, quō | scĕlēs- | -tĭ rŭī- | -tĭs? āut | cūr dēx- | -tĕrīs.... *Hor.* Epod. 7, 1.
> Ălĭtĭ- | -bŭs āt- | -quē cănĭ- | -bŭs hŏmĭ- | -cĭdam Hēc- | -tŏrēm.... *Id.* Epod. 17, 12.

4. Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic, or double pyrrhic, was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapæst) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

5. The following, therefore, is the scale of the Iambic Trimeter:—

6. In the construction of the Iambic Trimeter an accent should fall on the second syllable of either the third foot or both the second and fourth feet; as,

> Ĭbīs | Lĭbūr- | -nīs ĭn- | -tĕr āl- | -tă nā- | -vĭum |.
> Utrŭm- | -nĕ jūs- | -sĭ pĕr- | -sĕquē'- | -mūr ō- | -tĭum. |

II. The *scazon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth; as,

> Cūr ĭn | thĕā- | -trŭm, Căto̅ | sĕvĕ- | -rĕ, vē- | -nĭstī?
> An ĭdē- | -ŏ tăn- | -tŭm vēn- | -ĕrās, | ŭt ēx- | -īrēs? *Mart.* Ep. 1, 1, 3.

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic* trimeter, from its inventor Hippōnax.

III. The *iambic tetrameter* or *quadrātus*, called also from the number of its feet *octonarius*, a measure used by the comic poets, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nūnc hīc | diēs | ăliām | vītam āf- || -fĕrt, ăli- | -ōs mō- | -rēs pōs- | -tŭlat. *Ter.* A.1,2,18.

REMARK. The cæsura regularly follows the second measure.

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic* or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter (I.); as,

Dēprĕn- | -să nā- | -vĭs ĭn | mărī, | vēsā- | -niēn- | -tĕ vĕn- | -to. *Catull.* 25, 13.

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic* or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vōcā- | -tūs āt- | -quĕ nōn | vōcā- | -tūs āū- | -dit. *Hor.* Od. 2, 18, 40.
Trăhūnt- | -quĕ sīc- | -cās mach- | -īnæ | cărĭ- | -nas. *Id.* Od. 1, 4, 2.

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Fōrtī | sĕquē- | -mūr pēc- | -tŏre. *Hor.* Epod. 1, 14.
Canīdĭ- | -ă trăc- | -tāvĭt | dăpēs. *Id.* Epod. 3, 8.
Vĭdē- | -rē prŏpĕ- | -rāntēs | dŏmum. *Id.* Epod. 3, 62.

REMARK. The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

The following is its scale:—
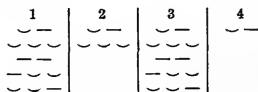
VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rēdē- | -gĭt ĭn | vērōs | tĭmō- | -rēs. *Hor.* Od. 1, 37, 15.

REMARK. Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | ĕbūr | nĕque āū- | -rĕum.... *Hor.* Od. 2, 18, 1.

REMARK. This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ŭt tĭ- | grĭs ōr- | -bă gnā- | -tīs. *Sen.* Med. 863.

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

REMARK 1. It was so denominated from the *Galli* or priests of Cybele, by whom it was used.

REM. 2. In the first foot of each dimeter the anapæst was generally pre-
ferred to the spondee. The catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter
is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sŭpĕr āl- | -tă vĕc- | -tŭs A- | -tȳs ‖ cĕlĕrī | rătĕ mā- | -rīa. *Catull.* 63, 1.

REM. 3. The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

TROCHAIC METRE.

§ **315.**   1. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambics. The addi-
tion or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, ren-
ders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the be-
ginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency or
redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven feet, fol-
lowed by a catalectic syllable. In the first five places and very
rarely in the sixth, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a
trochee only. In the *even* places, besides the tribrach, it admits
also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleus-
matic; as,

Jūssūs | ēst ĭn | ērmīs | īrĕ: ‖ pŭrūs | īrĕ | jūssūs | ēst. *Auct. P. Vĕn.*
Rōmŭ | līĕās | ĭpsă | fēcĭt ‖ cŭm Sā- | -bīnīs | nūptĭ- | -ās. *Id.*
Dănāī | dēs, eō- | -ĭtĕ; | vēstrās ‖ hīc dī- | -ēs quæ- | -rīt mā- | -nūs. *Sen.*

The following is its scale:—

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
‿‿	—‿	‿‿	—‿	—‿	—‿	—‿	—
	——		——		——	,	
	‿‿‿		‿‿‿		‿‿‿		
	‿‿‿		‿‿‿		‿‿‿		

REMARK 1. The *pure* trochaic verse was rarely used, and the dactyl very
rarely occurs in the fourth place. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after
the fourth foot, thus dividing the verse into a complete dimeter and a catalec-
tic dimeter. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet
into the odd places.

REM. 2. The complete trochaic tetrameter or *octonarius* properly consists of
eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalec-
tic tetrameter; as,

Īpsĕ | sūmmīs | sāxīs | fīxūs | āspĕ- | -rīs, ĕ- | -vīscĕ- | -rātŭs. *Enn.*

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists
of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a
dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Īntĕ- | -gēr vī- | -æ, ‖ scĕlĕ- | -rīsquĕ | pūrūs. *Hor.* Od. 1, 22, 1.

1. Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second
foot a trochee.

2. Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsura after the
fifth semi-foot.

NOTE 1. In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes
divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic
which follows; as,

Lābĭ- | -tūr rī- | -pā Jŏvĕ | nōn prŏ- | -bānte ux-
ōrĭūs | āmnīs. *Hor.* Od. 1, 2, 19.

It has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one Sapphic verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

NOTE 2. This verse is sometimes scanned as epichoriambic, having an epitrite in the first place, a choriambus in the second, and ending with an iambic sizygy catalectic; thus,

<div align="center">Intĕg'r vī- | -tæ, scĕlĕrĭs- | -quē pūrŭs.</div>

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; as,

<div align="center">Nōn ĕst | vīvĕrĕ, | sēd vă- | -lērĕ | vītă. *Mart.*</div>

REMARK 1. Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

REM. 2. The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic*, as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not belong to it exclusively.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, and a catalectic syllable, but admitting also in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

<div align="center">Nōn ĕ | -būr nĕ- | -que aūrĕ- | -um. *Hor.* Od. 2, 18, 1.
Lēnĭs | āc mŏdĭ- | -cām flū- | -ēns
Aūră, | nĕc vĕr- | -gĕns lă- | -tus. *Sen.* Œd. 887.</div>

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ **316.** (*a.*) In a pure choriambic verse each metre except the last is a choriambus, and the last an Iambic syzygy.

NOTE. A spondee and iambus, i. e. a third epitrite, are sometimes used in place of the Iambic syzygy.

(*b.*) An *epichoriambic* verse is composed of one or more choriambi with some other foot, especially a ditrochee or a second epitrite, joined with it.

I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

<div align="center">Tū nē | quæsĭĕrĭs, | scīrĕ nĕfās, | quĕm mĭhī, quĕm tĭbī., *Hor.* Od. 1, 11, 1.</div>

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius; as,

<div align="center">Omnĕ nĕmŭs | cūm flŭvīĭs, | ōmnĕ cănāt | prōfūudum. *Claud.*</div>

2. In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

<div align="center">Tē dĕŏs ō- | -rō, Sȳbărĭn | cūr prŏpĕrēs | āmāndō. *Hor.* Od. 1, 8, 2.</div>

3. Some scan this verse as an epichoriambic tetrameter catalectic, beginning with the second epitrite.

III. 1. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiades) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

<div align="center">Mǣcē- | -nās, ătăvīs || ēdĭtĕ rēg- | -ĭbus. *Hor.* Od. 1, 1. 1.</div>

2. This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes, though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

3. The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

4. This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III.

<p align="center">Mēcē- | -nās, ătă- | vīs ‖ ĕdĭtē | rēgĭbŭs.</p>

IV. 1. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

<p align="center">Sīc tē | dīvă pŏtēns | Cȳprī...   *Hor.* Od. 1, 3, 1.</p>

2. The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, the verse might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. Thus,

<p align="center">Sīc tē | dīvă pŏ- | -tēns Cȳpri.</p>

V. 1. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrates), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

<p align="center">Grātŏ, | Pȳrrhă, sŭb ān- | -trŏ.   *Hor.* Od. 1, 5, 3.</p>

2. The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an anapest, rarely an iambus.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, this measure might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

4. The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. 1. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

<p align="center">Lȳdĭā dīc | pĕr ōmnēs.   *Hor.* Od. 1, 8, 1.</p>

2. This verse is by some called the choriambic dimeter catalectic. Cf. § 316, (*a.*)

IONIC METRE.

§ **317.** I. The *Ionic a majōre*, or *Sotadic*, (from the poet Sotādes), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

1. The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and either of the two long syllables in those feet into two short ones; as,

<p align="center">Hās, cŭm gĕmĭ- | -nā cŏmpĕdĕ, | dēdĭcăt că- | -tēnās,
Sătūrnĕ, tĭ- | -bĭ Zŏīlŭs, | ānnŭlōs prī- | -ōrēs. *Mart.*</p>

2. Hence the following is its scale:—

<p align="center">

1	2	3	4
‒ ‒ ᵕ ᵕ	‒ ‒ ᵕ ᵕ	‒ ‒ ᵕ ᵕ	‒ ‒
‒ ᵕ ‒ ᵕ	‒ ᵕ ‒ ᵕ	‒ ᵕ ‒ ᵕ	‒ ‒
ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ	ᵕ ᵕ ‒ ᵕ ᵕ	‒ ‒ ᵕ ᵕ	ᵕ ‒
ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ	ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ	ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ ᵕ	

</p>

NOTE. The final syllable, by § 301, note, may be short.

II. 1. The *Ionic a minōre* consists generally of verses of three or four feet, which are all smaller Ionics; as,

<p align="center">Pŭĕr ālēs, | tĭbĭ tēlās, | ┣ŏpĕrōsāē- | -quĕ Mĭnērvāē... *Hor.* Od. 3, 12, 4.</p>

2. In this verse, as in the anapæstic, no place is assigned to the pause; because, since the metres, if rightly constructed, end with a word, the effect of a pause will be produced at the end of each metre.

COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre or *Elegiambus* consists of a dactylic penthemimeris (312, VII.), followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scrĭbērĕ | vērsĭcŭ- | -lōs ‖ ămō- | -rĕ pēr- | -cŭlsūm | grāvī. *Hor.* Epod. 11, 2.

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre or *Iambelegus* consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nīvēs- | -quĕ dē- | -dūcūnt | Jŏvēm: ‖ nūnc mărĕ, | nūnc sĭlŭ- | -æ. *Hor.* Epod. 13, 2.

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of an iambic penthemimeris, i. e. of two iambic feet and a long catalectic syllable, followed by a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Vĭdēs | ŭt āl- | -tā ‖ stēt nĭvĕ cān- | -dĭdum. *Hor.* Od. 1, 9, 1.

REMARK 1. The first foot is often a spondee.

REM. 2. The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

REM. 3. This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priōre* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Sōlvĭtūr | ācrĭs hī- | -ēms grā- | -tā vĭcĕ ‖ vērĭs | ēt Fā- | -vōnī. *Hor.* Od. 1, 4, 1.

REMARK. The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic* tetrameter or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees, i. e. of a dactylic dimeter followed by a trochaic monometer; as,

Lēvĭā | pērsŏnŭ- ‖ -ērĕ | sāxă. *Hor.* Od. 1, 17, 12.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. 1. A poem may consist either of one kind of verse only or of a combination of two or more kinds.

2. A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon;* that which has two kinds, *dicōlon;* that which has three kinds, *tricōlon.*

3. When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrŏphon;* when after the third line, *tristrŏphon;* and when after the fourth, *tetrastrŏphon.*

4. The several verses which occur before the poem returns to the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe.*

5. A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicōlon distrŏphon,* (see § 320, 3); when it contains three, *dicŏ-*

lon tristrophon, (Auson. Profess. 21); when four, *dicolon tetrastrophon*, (§ 320, 2); and when five, *dicolon pentastrophon.*

6. A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *tricolon tristrophon*, (§ 320, 15); when four, *tricolon tetrastrophon*, (§ 320, 1).

HORATIAN METRES.

§ **320.** The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, V.); as,

> Vidēs, ŭt āltā stĕt nĭvĕ cāndĭdŭm
> Sōrāctĕ, nĕc jām sūstĭnĕānt ŏnŭs
> Silvæ lăbŏrāntēs, gĕlūquĕ
>   Flūmĭnā cōnstĭtĕrīnt ăcūtŏ.   (*Lib.* 1, 9.)

REMARK. This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); as,

> Jām sătĭs tērrīs nĭvīs ātquĕ dīræ
> Grāndĭnīs mīsĭt pătĕr, ĕt, rŭbēntĕ
> Dēxtĕrā sācrās jăcŭlātŭs ārcēs,
>   Tērrŭĭt ūrbĕm.   (*Lib.* 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); as,

> Sīc tē Dīvă pŏtēns Cўprī,
> Sīc frātrēs Hĕlĕnæ, lūcĭdă sīdĕră...   (*Lib.* 1, 3.)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

> Ĭbīs Lĭbūrnīs īntĕr āltă nāvĭŭm,
>   Ămīcĕ, prōpūgnācŭlă.   (*Epod.* 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

> Scrībĕrīs Vārĭŏ fōrtĭs, ĕt hōstĭŭm
> Vīctŏr, Mæŏnīī cārmĭnīs ālĭtĭ,
> Quām rēm cūmquĕ fĕrōx nāvĭbŭs āŭt ĕquīs
>   Mīlēs, tē dūcĕ, gēssĕrĭt.   (*Lib.* 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, V.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

> Dĭānăm, tĕnĕræ, dīcĭtĕ vīrgĭnēs;
> Intōnsŭm, pŭĕrī, dīcĭtĕ Cŷnthĭŭm,
> Lātōnāmquĕ sŭprēmŏ
>   Dīlēctăm pĕnĭtŭs Jŏvī.   (*Lib.* 1, 21.)

7. The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; as,

> Mæcēnās ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbŭs.   (*Lib.* 1, 1.)

8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriōre* (§ 312, V.); as,

> Laūdābūnt aliī clārām Rhŏdŏn, aūt Mītўlēnen,
> Aūt Ĕphĕsūm, bĭmărīsvĕ Cŏrīnthī...   (*Lib.* 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,

> Tū nē quaēsiĕrĭs, scīrĕ nĕfās, quĕm mĭhī, quĕm tĭbī... (*Lib.* 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

> Nŏx ĕrăt, ĕt caēlō fūlgēbăt lūnā sĕrēno
> Intĕr mīnōră sīdĕra.   (*Epod.* 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) containing spondees; as,

> Jām, jam ēffĭcācī dō mănūs scĭēntīæ.   (*Epod.* 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

> Lŷdĭā, dīc, pĕr ōmnes
> Tē Dĕōs ōrō, Sўbărĭn cūr prŏpĕrās ămāndo...   (*Lib.* 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter without spondees (§ 314, I.); as,

> Altĕrā jām tĕrĭtūr bēllīs cīvĭlĭbūs ǣtas;
> Sūīs ĕt ĭpsā Rōmā vīrĭbūs rŭĭt.   (*Epŏd.* 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

> Dīffūgērĕ nĭvēs: rĕdĕūnt jām grāmĭnă cāmpīs,
> Ārbŏrĭbūsquĕ cŏmæ.   (*Lib.* 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

> Pēttī, nĭhĭl mē, sīcŭt āntĕā, jŭvat
> Scrībĕrĕ vērsĭcŭlos,
> Amōrĕ pērc'lsūm grăvī.   (*Epoa.* 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, 1.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

> Hŏrrĭdā tēmpēstās cælūm cōntrāxit; ĕt īmbres
> Nīvēsquĕ dēdūcūnt Jŏvem;
> Nūnc mărĕ, nūnc sĭlŭæ...   (*Epod.* 13.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

> Sōlvĭtŭr ācrĭs hĭēms grātā vĭcē vērĭs ĕt Făvōnī,
> Trăhūntquĕ sĭccās māchĭnæ cărīnas.   (*Lib.* 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, V.); as,

> Nōn ĕbūr nĕquĕ aūrĕum
> Mĕā rĕnīdĕt īn dŏmō lăcūnar.   (*Lib.* 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minōre* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,

> Mĭsĕrārum ēst nĕquĕ ămōrī dărĕ lūdăm, nĕquĕ dūlcī... (*Lib.* 3, 12.)

§ **321.** A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE.

*Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a refer-
ence to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is
explained.*

Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis........	No. 4	Tu ne quæsiĕris............	No. 9
Quum tu, Lydia...............	3	Tyrrhēna regum............	1
Rectius vives.................	2	Ulla si juris................	2
Rogāre longo.................	4	Uxor paupĕris Ibўci........	3
Scribēris Vario...............	5	Velox amœnum............	1
Septĭmi, Gades........	2	Vides, ut altā.............	1
Sic te Diva potens...........	3	Vile potābis...............	2
Solvĭtur acris hiems	17	Vitas hinnuleo	6
Te maris et terræ............	8	Vixi puellis................	1

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyric compositions, viz :—

1. Dactylic Hexameter.	11. Choriambic Pentameter.
2. Dactylic Tetrameter *a posteriōri.*	12. Choriambic Tetrameter.
3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.	13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.
4. Adonic.	14. Glyconic.
5. Trimeter Iambic.	15. Pherecratic.
6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.	16. Choriambic Dimeter.
7. Iambic Dimeter.	17. Ionic *a minōre.*
8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.	18. Greater Alcaic.
	19. Archilochian Heptameter.
9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.	20. Lesser Alcaic.
10. Sapphic.	

APPENDIX.

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ **322.** Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasm.*

1. *Prosthĕsis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus,* for *nātus; tĕtŭli,* for *tŭli.* These, however, are rather the ancient customary forms, from which those now in use were formed by aphærĕsis.

2. *Aphærĕsis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st,* for *est ; rābōnem,* for *arrābōnem.*

3. *Epenthĕsis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *ālĭtŭum,* for *ālitum ; Māvors,* for *Mars.*

4. *Syncŏpe* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *deûm,* for *deōrum ; meûm factûm,* for *meōrum factōrum ; sæcla,* for *sæcŭla ; flesti,* for *flēvisti ; rēpostus,* for *rēpŏsĭtus ; aspris,* for *aspĕris.*

5. *Crasis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo,* for *cŏăgo ; nīl,* for *nihil.*

6. *Paragōge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med,* for *me ; claudier,* for *claudi.*

7. *Apocŏpe* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn',* for *mēne ; Antōni,* for *Antōnii.*

8. *Antithĕsis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *olli,* for *illi ; optŭmus,* for *optĭmus ; afficio,* for *adfĭcio. O* is often thus used for *u,* especially after *v ;* as, *volus,* for *vultus ; servom,* for *servum.* So after *qu ;* as, *æquom,* for *æquum.*

9. *Metathĕsis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as, *pistris,* for *pristis.*

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis, pleonasm, enallăge,* and *hyperbăton.*

1. (*a.*) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence ; as,

Aiunt, scil. *hŏmĭnes.   Dārius Hystaspis,* scil. *fīlius.   Căno,* scil. *ĕgo.   Quid multa ?* scil. *dicam.   Ex quo,* scil. *tempŏre.   Fĕrīna,* scil. *caro.*

(*b.*) Ellipsis includes *asyndĕton, zeugma, syllepsis,* and *prolepsis.*

(1.) *Asyndĕton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *ăbiit, excessit, ēvāsit, ērūpit* scil. *et.* Cic. This is called in pure Latin *dissŏlūtio.*

(2.) (a.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb, which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pācem an bellum gĕrens*: (Sall.) where *gĕrens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pācem* requires *ăgĕre*. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fūgā versābimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

(b.) *Nĕgo* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Nĕgant Cæsărem mansūrum, postŭlātăque interpŏsita esse,* for *dicuntque postŭlāta...* Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(c.) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called zeugma, but more commonly syllepsis; as, *Et gĕnus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vīlior algā est.* Hor. *Cāper tibi salvus et hædi.* Virg. *Quamvis ille nĭger, quamvis tu candĭda esses.* Id.

(3.) *Syllĕpsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another; as, *Attŏnĭti nŏvĭtāte păvent* Baucis, *timĭdusque* Philēmon. Ovid. *Prōcumbit ūterque prōnus hŭmi,* i. e. *Deucălion et Pyrrha.* Id. *Sustŭlĭmus mănus et ĕgo et* Balbus. Cic. So, Ipse cum frātre *ădesse* jussi sŭmus. Id. *Prŏjectisque ămĭcŭlo et lĭtĕris.* Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prŏlepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Principes utrinque pugnam ciĕbant, ab Săbīnis* Mettius Curtius, *ab Rōmānis* Hostus Hostīlius. Liv. *Bŏni quŏniam convenīmus ambo,* tu *cālămos inflāre,* ĕgo *dīcĕre versus.* Virg.

2. (a.) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

Sic ōre lŏcūta est. Virg. *Qui măgis vēre vincĕre quam diu impĕrāre mālit.* Liv. *Nēmo ūnus.* Cic. *Forte fortūnā.* Id. *Prūdens sciens.* Ter.

(b.) Under pleonasm are included *parelcon, polysyndĕton, hendĭădys,* and *periphrăsis.*

(1.) *Părelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *ĕgŏmet, ăgĕdum, fortassean.* Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Pŏlÿsyndĕton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurusque Nŏtusque ruunt crēberque prŏcellis Afrĭcus.* Virg.

(3.) *Hendĭădys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et, -que,* or *atque,* instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Pātĕris lĭbāmus et* auro, for *aureis pătĕris.* Virg. *Libro et silvestri sūbĕre clausam,* for *libro sūbĕris.* Id. *Cristis et auro.* Ovid. Met. 3, 32.

(4.) *Pĕriphrăsis* or *circumlŏcūtio* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tĕnĕri fœtus ŏvium,* i. e. *agni.* Virg.

3. (a.) *Enallăge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(b.) Enallăge includes *antimeria, hetĕrōsis, antiptōsis, synĕsis,* and *anacŏlūthon.*

(1.) *Antĭmĕria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud vīvĕre triste,* for *nostra vīta.* Pers. *Aliud ĕras.* Id. *Conjŭgĭum vĭdĕbit?* for *conjŭgem.* Virg.

(2.) *Hetĕrōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another; as, *Ego quŏque una pereo,* quod *mihi* est cārius, for *qui mihi sum cārior.* Ter.

Rōmānus *prælio* victor, for *Rōmāni victōres.* Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, cordu, ōra,* etc. See § 98. *Me truncus illapsus cĕrebro sustŭlĕrat,* for *sustŭlisset.* Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(3.) *Antiptōsis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen* Iūlo, for *Iālus.* Virg. § 204, R. 8. *Uxor invicti Jŏvis esse nescis,* for *te esse uxō-rem.* Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synēsis,* or *synthĕsis,* is adapting the construction to the *sense* of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Sŭbeunt Tēgĕa jŭventus auxĭlio tardi.* Stat. *Concursus pŏpŭli mĭrantium quid rei est.* Liv. *Pars in crŭcem* acti. Sall. *Ubi illic est scĕlus, qui me perdĭdit?* Ter. *Id mea mĭnĭme rēfert, qui sum nātu maxĭmus.* Id. See § 205, R. 3, (1.) and (3.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Anăcŏlūthon* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est ălĭcunde ălĭquis objectus-lĭbos, omne quod est intĕrea tempus, priusquam id rescĭtum est,* lucro est. Ter In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habēmus,* and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnĭbus,* leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (*a.*) *Hўperbăton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(*b.*) Hўperbăton includes *ănastrŏphe, hystĕron prŏtĕron, hўpallăge, synchўsis, tmēsis,* and *părenthĕsis.*

(1.) *Anastrŏphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos,* for *per transtra.* Virg. *Collo dăre brāchia circum,* for *circumdăre.* Id. *Nox ērit ūna sŭper,* for *sŭpĕrĕrit.* Ovid. *Et făcit āre,* for *ārĕfăcit.* Lucr.

(2.) *Hystĕron prŏtĕron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Mŏriā-mur, et in mĕdĭa arma ruāmus.* Virg. *Vălet atque vĭvit.* Ter.

(3.) *Hўpallăge* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nŏva fert ănĭmus mūtātas dĭcĕre formas corpŏra,* for *corpŏra mūtāta in nŏvas formas.* Ovid. *Dăre classĭbus Austros,* for *classes Austris.* Virg.

(4.) *Synchўsis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vŏcant Ĭtāli, mĕdiiquæ in fluctĭbus, āras,* for *quæ saxa in mĕdĭis fluctĭbus, Ĭtāli vŏcant āras.* Virg.

(5.) *Tmēsis* or *dĭacŏpe* is the separation of the parts of a compound word. as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens,* for *septentriōni.* Virg. *Quæ me cumque vŏcant terræ.* Id. *Per mīhi, per, inquam, grātum fĕcĕris.* Cic.

(6.) *Părenthĕsis* or *dĭalўsis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Tītўre dum rĕdeo,* (brĕvis est via,) *pasce căpellas.* Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism,* which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulāĭ,* for *aulæ; sĕnāti,* for *sĕnātŭs; fuat,* for *sit; prŏhibesso,* for *prŏhibŭĕro; impetrassēre,* for *impetrātūrum esse; fărier,* for *fări; nēnu,* for *non; endo,* for *in;—Opĕram ăbūtitur,* for *opĕrā.* Ter. *Quid tĭbi hanc cūrātio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hĕlĕne,* for *Hĕlĕna; Antĭphon,* for *Antĭpho; aurās* (gen.), for *auræ; Pallădos, Pallăda,* for *Pallădis, Palladem; Trōasin, Trōădas,* for *Trōădĭbus, Trōădes;—Abstinēto īrā-rum.* Hor. *Tempus dĕsistĕre pugnæ.* Virg.

§ **324.** (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined cer-tain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical *figure* is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a *word* from its original and customary meaning, is called a *trope.*

1. (*a.*) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, Ridet *ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætas* aurea, The golden age. Ovid. Naufrágia *fortúnæ*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis* oculi, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus ánimum glóriæ* stímŭlis *concĭtat*. The harshness of a metaphor is often softened by means of *quási, tamquam, quĭdam,* or *ut ita dicam*; as, *In únâ philôsôphiâ* quási tăbernácŭlum *vítæ suæ* collŏcárunt. Id. Opímum quoddam et tamquam adipátæ *dictiónis gēnus*. Id.

(*b.*) *Cătachrêsis* or *ăbúsio* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, Vir *grégis ipse* cáper. Virg. Eurus per Sicŭlas equitávit *undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; as, *Mortáles*, for *hómines*. Virg. *Amor dúri* Martis, i. e. *belli*. Id. *Fruges* Cérerem appellámus, *vinum autem* Liběrum. Cic. *Cúpio* vigiliam *meam tĭbi trádére*, i. e. *meam cúram*. Id. Pallida *mors*. Hor. *Hausit* pátēram, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. Vína *cŏrōnant*, i. e. *pátēram*. Id. *Necte* ternos cŏlóres, i. e. *tria fíla diversi cŏlóris*. Id. *Cédunt* arma tŏgæ, i. e. *bellum páci*. Cic. Sæcŭla mitescent, i. e. *hómines in sæcŭlis*. Virg. *Vívat* Pácúvius vel Nestŏra *tótum*. Juv. *Doctrínâ* Græcia *nos súpérabat*, for Græci *súpérábant*. Cic. Pági centum Suevórum ad rípas Rhéni *consédérant*, for *págŏrum incŏlæ*. Cæs. Tempŏra *ámicórum*, for *res adversæ*. Cic. Claudius *lege prædiátóriâ vénális* pépendit, for *Claudii prædium*. Suet. *Vĭci* ad Jánum *médium sédentes*, for *Jáni vícum*. Cic.

3. *Sўnecdŏche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a species, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it; a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, Fontem *ferébant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *dŏmus*. Id. *Armáto milite complent*, for *armátis milítibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *gládius*. Id. *Qui Córinthiis* ŏpérĭbus *abundant*, i. e. ráxis. Cic. Urbem, urbem, *mi Rúfe, cóle*, i. e. *Rómam*. Cic. Centum *puer ártium*, i. e. *multárum*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve* bóne *vir, cŭrasti* próbe. Ter. Egrégiam *véro* laudem, *et* spólia ampla *réfertis, túque, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hўpérbŏle* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth; as, *Ipse* arduus, altáque pulsat *sidéra*. Virg. Ocĭor Euro. Id.

6. *Mĕtálepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post áliquot áristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, and this for *annos*.

7. (*a.*) *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *O návis, référent in máre te nóvi fluctus*. Hor.

(*b.*) An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *ænigma*; as, *Dic, quĭbus in terris tres páteat cæli spátium non amplius ulnas*. Virg.

8. *Autŏnŏmásia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, Irus et set subito, qui mŏdo Crœsus *érat*, for *pauper* and *dives*. Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *pótor Rhŏdáni*, for *Gallus*. Hor. *Éversor Carthágĭnis*, for *Scípio*. Quint. *Elŏquentiæ princeps*, for *Cicero*. Id. Týdides, for Diomédes. Virg.

9. *Lĭtótes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo*, I blame. Ter. *Non innóxia verba*. Virg.

10. *Antiphrásis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning; as, *Auri* sacra *fámes*. Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæsari*, i. e. *si mortuus esset*. Vell.

12. *Antănaclásis* or *punning* is the use of the same word in different senses; as, *Quis néget Ænéæ nátum de stirpe Nérŏnem?* Sustŭlit *hic mátrem*, sustŭlit *ille patrem*. Epigr. Amári *jucundum est*, si cărĭtur ne quid insit ămári. Cic.

13. *Anáphŏra* or *epănáphŏra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihílne te nocturnum præsidium pălătii*, nihil *urbis vigiliæ*, nihil *timor pópuli*, etc. Cic. Te, *dulcis conjux*, te, *sölo in litöre sēcum*, te, *vēniente die*, te, *decēdente, cănēbat.* Virg.

14. *Epistrŏphe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses; as, *Pœnis pópu̇us Rōmánus justítiâ* vīcit, *armis* vīcit, *liběrālitáte* vīcit. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio.*

15. *Symplŏce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphŏra and the epistrŏphe; as, Quis *lēgem tūlit ?* Rullus: Quis *mājörem pópuli parten suffrāgiis privávit ?* Rullus: Quis *cömítia præfuit ?* *Idem* Rullus. Cic.

16. *Epănálepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. Geor. II. 4—7.

17. *Anădiplōsis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Sěquitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur ěquo fúdens.* Virg. A. 10, 180. *Nunc ětiam audes in hörum conspectum* vēnire, vēnire *audes in hörum conspectum ?* Cic. This is sometimes called *epănastrŏphe.*

18. *Epănădiplŏsis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, Crescit *ămor nummi, quantum ipsa pĕcūnia* crescit. Juv.

19. *Epănŏdos* or *régressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crūdēlis máter mágis, an puer imprŏbus ille ?* Imprŏbus ille puer, crūdēlis tu quŏque, máter.* Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, Excitāte, excitāte *eum ab inf̆eris.* Cic. Ah Cŏrýdon, Cŏrýdon, quæ te dēmentia cēpit ?* Virg. *Ibīmus, ibīmus, utcumque præcēdes.* Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Quæ reliqua spes mănet libertātis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est ?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *gradātio.*

22. *Incrēmentum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Fácinus est, vincīri cīvem Rōmánum ; scĕlus, verbĕrári ; prŏpe parrĭcidium, nĕcāri ; quid dīcam in crŭcem tŏlli ?* Cic.

23. *Polyptōton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbŏne rĕpellitur umbo ; ense mĭnax ensis, pĕde pes, et cuspĭde cuspis.* Stat.

24. *Paregmĕnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non pŏtest, quin ĕjusdem hómĭnis sit, qui imprŏbos prŏbet, prŏbos imprŏbāre.* Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnābo.* Plaut.

25. *Părŏnŏmásia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound; as, *Amor et melle et felle est fēcundíssimus.* Plaut. Cĭvem bŏnārum artium, bŏnárum partium. Cic. Amantes *sunt ámentes.* Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnŏmĭnátio.*

26. *Hŏmœoprŏphŏron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tĭte, tūte Tĭti, tĭbi tanta, t̆yranne, tŭlisti.* Enn. *Neu patrie vālida in viscera vertite vīres.* Virg.

27. *Antíthesis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hújus ŏrātiónis difficilius est* exitum *quam* principium *invēnire* Cic. Cæsar benéficiis *ac* mūníficentiā *magnus habēbátur ;* integritāte vītæ Cato. Sall.

28. *Oxymŏron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors.* Hor. *Quum tácent, clámant.* Cic.

29. *Synŏnýmia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non fĕram, non pátiar, non sĭnam.* Cic. *Prōmitto, récipio, spondeo.* Id.

30. *Părăbŏla* or *Simĭle* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rĕpente te, tamquam serpens e lătĭbŭlis, ŏcŭlis ēmĭnentĭbus, inflāto collo, tŭmĭdis cervīcĭbus, intŭlisti.* Cic.

31. *Erōtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēdĭtis ăvectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquŏra possunt accīpĕre?* Id.

32. *Epănorthōsis* or *Correctĭo* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Fīlium ŭnĭcum ădŏlescentŭlum hăbeo: ah! quid dixi? me hăbēre?* *Imo hăbui.* Ter.

33. *Apŏsĭōpēsis*, *Rĕtĭcentĭa*, or *Interruptĭo*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ĕgo—sed mōtos præstat compōnĕre fluctus.* Virg.

34. *Prŏsŏpŏpœia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quæ (patria) tēcum, Cătĭlīna, sic ăgit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sĕcūres.* Hor.

35. *Apostrŏphe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vi pŏtĭtur; quid non mortālĭa pectŏra cōgis, auri sacra fāmes!* Virg.

36. *Părăleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

37. *Epĭphōnēma* or *Acclīmātĭo* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tantæ mōlis ĕrat Rōmānam condĕre gentem.* Virg.

38. *Ecphōnēsis* or *Exclāmātĭo* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempŏra! O mōres!*

39. *Apŏrĭa*, *Dĭăpŏrēsis*, or *Dŭbĭtātĭo*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prŏlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vĕram anceps pugnæ fuĕrat fortūna. Fuisset: Quem mĕtui mŏrĭtūra?* Virg.

§ **325.**   To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate *defects* or *blemishes* in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rĭgŏrōsus*, for *rĭgĭdus* or *sĕvērus; dŏmĭnus*, for *dŏmĭnus; davi*, for *dĕdi.*

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vĕnus pulcher ; vos invĭdēmus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdrum*, a murder; *constăbŭlārius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos ăciem, et prœlia, et hostem poscĭtis.* Sil.

5. *Amphĭbŏlia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, a Gaul, or a cock. *Aio te, Æăcĭda, Rōmānos vincĕre posse.* Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism.* Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum*, instead of *Fac me certĭōrem*, is an Anglicism.

ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

I. OF TIME.

1. *The Roman Day.*

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural.* Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours,* which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigíliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise.

2. *The Roman Month and Year.*

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

Jānuārius . 31 days.	Maius . . 31 days.	September 30 days.
Februārius 28 or 29.	Jūnius. . 30 "	October . . 31 "
Martius. . 31 days.	Quintilis 31 "	Nŏvember 30 "
Aprilis . . . 30 "	Sextilis . 31 "	December 31 "

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintilis, Sextilis, September,* etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards called *Jūlius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends,* the *Nones,* and the *Ides.* The Calends (*Cǎlendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The Nones (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth,* and the Ides (*Idus*), the *thirteenth;* except in March, May, July, and October, when the Nones occurred on the *seventh* day, and the Ides on the *fifteenth.*

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next Calends, Nones, or Ides, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the Nones; after the Nones, so many days before the Ides; and after the Ides, so many before the Calends, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārias,* or *Jānuārii, scil. die ante:* the third, *tertio Nōnis;* the fourth, *pridie Nōnas;* and the fifth, *Nōnis.* The sixth was denoted by *octāvo Idus;* the seventh,

septimo Idus ; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The four-teenth was denoted by *undēvigēsimo Cālendas Februārias,* or *Februārii ;* and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *prīdie Calendas,* etc., scil. *ante :* in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be deter-mined, were reckoned ; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio,* the third *quarto,* etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to sub-tract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Jānuārias,* we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e. 4—1=3, and 5—3=2) : this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprīlis :* the Ides of April falling upon the 13th, we take 6—1, i. e.) 5 from 13, which leaves 8 (i. e. 6—1=5, and 13—5=8) : the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(*a.*) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintiles* is 15—2=13, and 30—13=17, i. e. the Roman date XV. Cal. Quint. is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(*b.*) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have 5+1—3=3; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have 13+1—10=4; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus, 31+2—22=11, and the date is *XI. Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies bīsextus,* and the year itself *annus bīsextus,* bissextile or leap year.

(*a.*) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postrīdie cālen-das,* etc.

(*b.*) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood.

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

Days of our months.	MAR. MAI. JUL. OCT.	JAN. AUG. DEC.	APR. JUN. SEPT. NOV.	FEBR.
1	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Non.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonæ.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Id.	XIX. Cal.	XVIII. Cal.	XVI. Cal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Cal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie " Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Cal.	
31	Pridie Cal.	Pridie Cal.		

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

23.	VII. *Calendas Martias.*	27.	IV. *Cal. Mart.*
24.	*bisexto Cal. Mart.*	28.	III. " "
25.	VI. *Cal. Mart.*	29.	*pridie Cal. Mart.*
26.	V. " "		

(a.) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (b.), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is 29+2—27=4, and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(b.) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:— *bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is 3—2=1, and 29—1=28, and the given day is equivalent to the 28th of February.

(8.) The Latins not only said *tertio*, *pridie*, etc., *Calendas*, etc., but also *ante diem tertium*, etc., *Calendas*, etc.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III. Cal.*, etc.

(9.) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Latīnas fērias in ante diem tertium Idus Sextĭlis ēdixit*, The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicātio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octōbres.* Id. So, Ad pridie *Nōnas Maias.* Cic.

(10.) The week of seven days (*hebdŏmas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Sōlis*, Sunday; *dies Lūnæ*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercŭrii*, Wednesday; *dies Jŏvis*, Thursday; *dies Vĕnĕris*, Friday; *dies Satúrni*, Saturday.

(11.) The term *nundinæ* (from *nŏvem—dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12.) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis condĭtæ*, and by abbreviation, *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c.* 684. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is 754−684=70 before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c.* 767, and the corresponding year of our era is 767−753=14.

II. TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

Of the As.

§ **327.** The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (libra), or of measure (jŭgĕrum). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse hēres*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dŭpondius* (*duo pondo*) for the *As* originally weighed a pound), i. e. 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), i. e. 2½ Asses; *Tressis*, i. e. 3 Asses; *Quatrussis*, i. e. 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, i. e. 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *unciæ*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

	Unciæ.		Unciæ.
As..........................	12	Quincunx	5
Deunx........................	11	Triens........................	4
Dextans......................	10	Quădrans, or Tēruncius..........	3
Dodrans......................	9	Sextans......................	2
Bes..........................	8	Uncia........................	1
Septunx......................	7		
Semis	6	Sescuncia......................	1½

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

1 Uncia contained	2 Sēmunciæ.
" "	3 Duellæ.
" "	4 Sicĭlici.
" "	6 Sextŭlæ.
" "	8 Drachmæ.
" "	24 Scrŭpŭla.
" "	48 Obŏli.

ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Tēruncius*, *Sembella*, and *As* or *Lībella*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victōriātus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus*, of gold.

				$	Cts.	M.
	The Tēruncius			0	0	3.9
2	Tēruncii make	1 Sembella		0	0	7.8
2	Sembellæ	"	1 As *or* Libella	0	1	5.6
2½	Asses*	"	1 Sestertius	0	3	9
2	Sestertii	"	1 Quinārius	0	7	8
2	Quinārii	"	1 Dēnārius	0	15	6
25	Dēnārii	"	1 Aureus	3	90	0

* Sometimes also (in copper) the triens, sextans, uncia, sextŭla, and dūpondius.

ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

Sestertii Nummi.

	$	Cts.	M.
Sestertius (or nummus)	0	3	9
Dĕcem sestertii	0	39	0
Centum sestertii	3	90	0
Mille sestertii (equal to a sestertium)	39	0	0

Sestertia.

	$	Cts.	M.
Sestertium (equal to mille sestertii)	39	0	0
Dĕcem sestertia	390	0	0
Centum, centum sestertia, or centum millia sestertiûm	3900	0	0
Dĕcies sestertiûm, or dĕcies centēna millia nummûm	39000	0	0
Centies, or centies H. S.	390000	0	0
Millies H. S.	3900000	0	0
Millies centies H. S.	4290000	0	0

N. B.—The marks denoting a Sestertius nummus are IIS., LLS., IIS., which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 asses. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood, as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, H. S. MC. is millies centies IIS.; whereas IIS. MC. is only 1100 Sestertii.

ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *sēmisses*, *trientes*, *quādrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—

                                                    Per cent. a year.

Asses ūsūræ or centēsīmæ	12
Sēmisses ūsūræ	6
Trientes ūsūræ	4
Quadrantes ūsūræ	3
Sextantes ūsūræ	2
Unciæ ūsūræ	1
Quincunces ūsūræ	5
Septunces ūsūræ	7
Bosses ūsūræ	8
Dodrantes ūsūræ	9
Dextantes ūsūræ	10
Deunces ūsūræ	11

ROMAN WEIGHTS.

			Oz.	Dwts.	Gr.
	Silĭqua		0	0	3.036
3	Silĭquæ make	1 Obŏlus	0	0	9.107
2	Obŏli "	1 Scrŭpŭlum	0	0	18.214
3	Scrŭpŭla "	1 Drachma	0	2	6.643
1½	Drachma "	1 Sextŭla	0	3	0.857
1½	Sextŭla "	1 Siclĭcus	0	4	13.286
1½	Siclĭcus "	1 Duella	0	6	1.714
3	Duellæ "	1 Uncia	0	18	5.143
12	Unciæ "	1 Libra* (As)	10	18	13.714

* The Libra was also divided, according to the fractions of the As, into Deunx, etc.

ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS DRY.

			English Corn Measure.			
			Peck.	Gal.	Pint.	Sol. in.
	Lĭgŭla		0	0	0 1-48	0.01
4	Lĭgŭlæ make	1 Cyăthus	0	0	0 1-12	0.04
1½	Cyăthus "	1 Acētābŭlum	0	0	0 1-8	0.06
4	Acētābŭla "	1 Hēmĭna	0	0	0 1-2	0.24
2	Hēmĭnæ "	1 Sextārĭus	0	0	1	0.48
16	Sextārĭi "	1 Modĭus	1	0	0	7.68

ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS LIQUID.

			English Wine Measure.			
			Galls.	Pints.	Sol. in.	
	Lĭgŭla		0	0 1-48	0.117	
4	Lĭgŭlæ make	1 Cyăthus	0	0 1-12	0.469	
1½	Cyăthus "	1 Acētābŭlum	0	0 1-8	0.704	
2	Acētābŭla "	1 Quartārĭus	0	0 1-4	1.409	
2	Quartārĭi "	1 Hēmĭna	0	0 1-2	2.876	
2	Hēmĭnæ "	1 Sextārĭus*	0	1	5.636	
6	Sextārĭi "	1 Congĭus	0	7	4.942	
4	Congĭi "	1 Urna	3	4 1-2	5.33	
2	Urnæ "	1 Amphŏra (or Quadrantal)	7	1	10.66	
20	Amphŏræ "	1 Cūleus	143	3	11.095	

* The *Sextārius* was also divided into twelve equal parts, called *cyăthi*, and therefore the *calices* were denominated *sextantes, quadrantes, trientes*, according to the number of *cyăthi* which they contained.

N. B.—*Cădus*, *congiārius*, and *dōlĭum*, are the names of certain *vessels*, not *measures*, of capacity.

ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

				English paces.	Feet.	Inch. Dec.
	Digĭtus transversus			0	0	0.725 1-4
1 1-5	Digĭtus	make	1 Uncĭa	0	0	0.967
3	Unciæ	"	1 Palmus minor	0	0	2.901
4	Palmi mĭnōres	"	1 Pes	0	0	11.604
1 1-4	Pes	"	1 Palmĭpes	0	1	2.505
1 1-5	Palmĭpes	"	1 Cŭbĭtus	0	1	5.406
1 2-3	Cŭbĭtus	"	1 Grădus	0	2	5.01
2	Grădus	"	1 Passus	0	4	10.02
125	Passus	"	1 Stădium	120	4	4.5
8	Stădia	"	1 Milliārium	967	0	0

ROMAN SQUARE MEASURES.

	Roman sq. feet.	English rods.	Sq. pls.	Sq. feet.
Jŭgĕrum (As)	28,800	2	18	250.05
Deunx	26,400	2	10	183.85
Dextans	24,000	2	02	117.64
Dodrans	21,600	1	34	51.42
Bes	19,200	1	25	257.46
Septunx	16,800	1	17	191.25
Sēmis	14,400	1	09	125.03
Quincunx	12,000	1	01	58.82
Triens	9,600	0	32	264.85
Quădrans	7,200	0	24	198.64
Sextans	4,800	0	16	132.43
Uncĭa	2,400	0	08	66.21

REMARK 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses,* their silver money by *sestertii,* and their gold money by *aurei* and sometimes by Attic *talents.*

REM. 2. The *as,* as the unit of money, was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only 1-24th of a pound.

REM. 3. (*a.*) The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses,* whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *dēnārius* was equal to eighteen *asses.*

(*b.*) The *sestertius,* or sesterce, was one fourth of the *dēnārius,* or two *asses* and a half (*sēmistertius*). The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus,* as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

(*c.*) The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *dēnārii,* or 100 sesterces.

REM. 4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii,* ten sesterces; *centum sestertii,* a hundred sesterces.

REM. 5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted either by *mille, millia,* with *sestertiûm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the neuter noun *sestertium,* which itself signified *a thousand* sesterces. Thus they said *quadrāginta millia sestertiûm,* or *quadrāginta sestertia,* to denote 40,000 sesterces. With the genitive *sestertiûm, millia* was sometimes omitted; as, *sestertiûm centum,* scil. *millia,* 100,000 sesterces.

REM. 6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *dĕcies centēna millia sestertiûm,* 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia,* however, were generally omitted; thus, *dĕcies sestertiûm,* and sometimes merely *dĕcies.* See § 118, 5.   So, *centies,* 10 millions; *millies,* 100 millions.

Rem. 7. Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. Tac. *Quinquāgies sestertio*, 5,000,000 sesterces. Id. But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

ABBREVIATIONS.

§ **328.** The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., *Aulus.*
C., *Caius,* or *Gaius.*
Cn., *Cnēus.*
D., *Dēcimus.*
L., *Lūcius.*
M., *Marcus.*

M. T. C., *Marcus Tullius Cicero.*
M., *Mānius.*
Mam., *Māmercus.*
N., *Nūmērius.*
P., *Publius.*

Q., or Qu., *Quintus.*
Ser., *Servius.*
S., or Sex., *Sextus.*
Sp., *Spūrius.*
T., *Titus.*
Ti., or Tib., *Tibĕrius.*

A. d., *ante diem.*
A. U. C., *anno urbis conditæ.*
Cal., or Kal., *Cälendæ.*
Cos., *Consul.*
Coss., *Consŭles.*
D., *Divus.*
D. D., *dōno dĕdit.*
D. D. D., *dat, dicat, dēdĭcat,* or *dōno dicat, dēdicat.*
Des., *dĕsignātus.*
D. M., *diis mānibus.*
Eq. Rom., *ēques Rōmānus.*

F., *Fīlius;* as, M. F., *Marci fīlius.*
Ictus, *jūrisconsultus.*
Id., *Idus.*
Imp., *impĕrātor.*
J. O. M., *Jŏvi, optĭmo maxĭmo.*
N., *nĕpos.*
Non., *Nōnæ.*
P. C., *patres conscripti.*
Pl., *plēbis.*
Pop., *pŏpŭlus.*
P. R., *pŏpŭlus Rōmānus.*

Pont. Max., *pontĭfex maxĭmus.*
Pr., *prætor.*
Proc., *prōconsul.*
Resp., *respūblica.*
S., *sălŭtem, sacrum,* or *sĕnātus.*
S. D. P., *sălŭtem dicit plūrĭmam.*
S. P. Q. R., *Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus.*
S. C., *sĕnātûs consultum.*
Tr., *tribūnus.*

To these may be added terms of reference; as, *c., căput,* chapter; *cf., confer,* compare; *l. c., lŏco citāto; l. l., lŏco laudāto,* in the place quoted; *v., versus,* verse.

DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ **329.** 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, but few vestiges remain. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the golden, silver, brazen, and iron ages.

2. The golden age is reckoned from the time of Livius Andronīcus, about A. U. C. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. U. C. 767, or A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, and in connection with the history of the language, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.

3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

5. The body of Latin writings has been otherwise arranged by Dr. Freund, so as to be comprised in three main periods,—the *Ante-classical*, *Classical*, and *Post-classical*. The ante-classical extends from the oldest fragments of the language to Lucretius and Varro; the classical from Cicero and Cæsar to Tacitus, Suetonius, and the younger Pliny inclusive; the post-classical from that time to the fifth century of our era. The classical Latinity is subdivided into (*a.*) *Ciceronian*, (*b.*) *Augustan*, (*c.*) *post-Augustan*, and to the language of the fourth and fifth centuries he has given the title of *late Latin.*

LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES.

(From the Lexicon of Facciolatus.)

WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronĭcus.	L. Cornelius Sisenna.	Q. Novius.
Lævius.	P. Nigidius Figŭlus.	C. Q. Atta.
C. Nævius.	C. Decius Laberius.	L. Cassius Hemĭna.
Statius Cæcilius.	M. Verrius Flaccus.	Fenestella.
Q. Ennius.	Varro Attacĭnus.	Q. Claud. Quadrigarius.
M. Pacuvius.	Titinius.	Cœlius Antipăter.
L. Accius.	L. Pomponius.	Fabius Pictor.
C. Lucilius.	C. Sempronius Asellĭo.	Cn. Gellius.
Sex. Turpilius.	Cn. Matius.	L. Piso, and others.
L. Afranius.		

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.	Sex. Aurelius Propertius.	P. Ovidius Naso.
M. Accius Plautus.	C. Sallustius Crispus.	Q. Horatius Flaccus.
M. Terentius Afer.	M. Terentius Varro.	C. Pedo Albinovănus.
T. Lucretius Carus.	Albius Tibullus.	Gratius Faliscus.
C. Valerius Catullus.	P. Virgilius Maro.	Phædrus.
P. Syrus.	T. Livius.	C. Cornificius.
C. Julius Cæsar.	M. Manilius.	A. Hirtius, *or* Oppius.
C. Cornelius Nepos.	M. Vitruvius.	P. Cornelius Severus.
M. Tullius Cicĕro.		

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævŏla.	M. Antistius Labeo.	Masurius Sabīnus.
Alfenus Varus.		

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.
P. Velleius Paterculus.
L. Junius Moderatus
    Columella.
    Pomponius Mela.
A. Persius Flaccus.
Q. Asconius Pedianus.
M. Annæus Seneca.
L. Annæus Seneca.

M. Annæus Lucanus.
T. Petronius Arbiter.
C. Plinius Secundus.
C. Silius Italicus.
C. Valerius Flaccus.
C. Julius Solinus.
D. Junius Juvenalis.
P. Papinius Statius.
M. Valerius Martialis.

M. Fabius Quintilianus.
Sex. Julius Frontinus.
C. Cornelius Tacitus.
C. Plinius Cæcilius Se-
    cundus.
L. Annæus Florus.
C. Suetonius Tranquil-
    lus.

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat un-
certain:—

Q. Curtius Rufus.
Valerius Probus.

Scribonius Largus.
Sulpitia.

L. Fenestella.
Atteius Capito.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius,
Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius,
and Curtius.

WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.
L. Apuleius.
Q. Septimius Tertullia-
    nus.
Q. Serenus Sammoni-
    cus.
    Censorinus.
    Thascius Cæcilius
    Cyprianus.
T. Julius Calpurnius.
M. Aurelius Nemesianus.
    Ælius Spartianus.
    Julius Capitolinus.
    Ælius Lampridius.

Vulcatius Gallicanus.
Trebellius Pollio.
Flavius Vopiscus.
Cœlius Aurelianus.
Flavius Eutropius.
Rhemnius Fannius.
Arnobius Afer.
L. Cœlius Lactantius.
    Ælius Donatus.
C. Vettus Juvencus.
    Julius Firmicus.
Fab. Marius Victorinus.
Sex. Rufus, or Rufus
    Festus.

Ammianus Marcel-
    linus.
Vegetius Renatus.
Aurel. Theodorus Macro-
    bius.
Q. Aurelius Symmachus.
D. Magnus Ausonius.
    Paulinus Nolanus.
Sex. Aurelius Victor.
Aurel. Prudentius Cle-
    mens.
Cl. Claudianus.
    Marcellus Empiricus.
    Falconia Proba.

Of an Age not entirely certain.

Valerius Maximus.
Justinus.

Terentianus Maurus.
Minutius Felix.

Sosipater Charisius.
Flavius Avianus.

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Licinius Proculus.
Neratius Priscus.
P. Juventius Celsus.
Priscus Jabolenus.
Domitius Ulpianus.

Herennius Modestinus.
Salvius Julianus.
Caius.
Callistratus.
Æmilius Papinianus.

Julius Paulus.
Sex. Pomponius.
Venuleius Saturninus.
Ælius Marcianus.
Ælius Gallus, and others.

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius,
and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of
some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preced-
ing ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron
age.

Palladius Rutilius Taurus Æmiliānus.
Æmilius Mæcer.
Messāla Corvīnus.
Vibius Sequester.
Julius Obsĕquens.
L. Ampelius.
Apicius Cœlius.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.
Prŏbus (auctor Notārum.)
Fulgentius Planciădes.
Hygīnus.
C. Cæsar Germanĭcus.
P. Victor.
P. Vegetius.

Auctōres Priapeiōrum.
Catalecta Virgilii et Ovidii.
Auctor oratiōnis Sallustii in Cic. et Cicerōnis in Sall.; item illus *Antĕquam iret in exsilium.*
Auctor Epistŏlæ ad Octavium.
Auctor Panegyrĭci ad Pisōnem.
Declamatiōnes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliāno, Porcio Latrōni, Calpurnio Flacco.

Interpres Darētis Phrygii, et Dictyos Cretensis.
Scholiastæ Vetĕres.
Grammatĭci Antīqui.
Rhetōres Antīqui.
Medĭci Antīqui.
Catalecta Petroniāna.
Pervigilium Venĕris.
Poemātia et Epigrammăta vetĕra a Pithæo collecta.
Monumentum Ancyrānum.
Fasti Consulāres.
Inscriptiōnes Vetĕres.

WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutilius Numatiānus.
Servius Honorātus.
D. Hieronȳmus.
D. Augustīnus.
Sulpicius Sevērus.
Paulus Orosius.
Cœlius Sedulius.
Codex Theodosiānus.
Martiānus Capella.
Claudiānus Mamertus.
Sidonius Apollināris.

Latīnus Pacātus.
Claudius Mamertīnus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrĭci vetĕres.
Alcīmus Avītus.
Maul. Severīnus Boēthius.
Prisciānus.
Nonius Marcellus.
Justiniāni Institutiōnes et Codex.

Ruf. Festus Aviēnus.
Arātor.
M. Aurelius Cassidōrus.
Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
Venantius Fortunātus.
Isidōrus Hispalensis.
Anonȳmus Ravennas.
Aldhelmus *or* Althelmus.
Paulus Diacŏnus.

32*

INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the *Sections* and their divisions: R. stands for *remark*, N. for *note*, E. for *exception*, w. for *with*, and pr. for *prosody*.

B.

C.

D.

G.

Hipponactic trimeter, 314, II.; tetrameter, 314, IV.

Historical present, 145, I. 3; perfect, 145, IV., R. 1; for the pluperfect, 259, R. 1, (d.); infinitive, 209, R. 5; tenses, 258.

Hoc, pleonastic, 207, R. 21 and 22; *hoc* w. partitive gen. 212, R. 3, N. 1; *hōc* with comparitives, 256, R. 16.

Hodie, pr., 285, 2, R. 1.

Homo, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 69, E. 2; *homo*, *homines*, ellipsis of, 209, R. 2, (2.); 205, R. 7, (1.); 229, R. 4.

Homœopheron, 324, 26.

Honor, (-*os*), declined, 57.

Horace, key to the odes of, 321.

Horatian metres, 320.

Horreo, w. inf., 271, N. 1.

Hortor, w. *ad*, 225, R. 1; w. *ut*, *ne*, etc., 273. 2; without *ut*, 2 2, R. 4.

Hospes, gender of, 30; formation of nom. sing., 56, I., R. 3; genitive, 73, 2; abl., 113, E. 2; as an adj., 123, 8.

Hostis, w. gen. or dat., 222, R. 2, (c.)

'However' w. a relative, how expressed in Latin, 280, III., (3.)

Huc, w. genitive, 212, R. 4, N. 3, (b.); *huccine rerum*, 212, R. 4, N. 3.

Humi, constr., 221, R. 3; *humo*, 254, R. 2; 255, R. 1.

Huic, pronunciation of, 9, 5; pr., 306, R. 2.

Hujus non facio, 214, R. 1.

Hujusmodi, 134, R. 5; w. *qui* and the subj. 264, I, N.

Hypallage, 323, 4, (3.)

Hyperbaton, 323, 4.

Hyperbole, 324, 5.

Hypercatalectic or hypermeter verse, 304, (3, 4.)

Hypothetical sentences, 259, R. 3, (c.), (d.), and R. 4; 260, II.; in the inf., 268, R. 4 — R. 6.

Hysteron proteron, 323, 4, (2.)

I.

I, its sound, 7 and 8; *i* and *j* but one character, 2, 3; *i* for *ii* in gen. of 2d decl. 52; *i* changed to *e* in forming certain noms., 56, I., R. 3; nouns in *i*, gender of, 66; genitive of, 68; genitive of Greek nouns in, 73, R.; dat. of 3d decl. in, 79; abl. sing. in, 82; 113; in gen. and dat. sing. of 5th decl., 90, R. 2; *i* ending the former part of a compound noun or adj., 103, R. 1; 131, N.; *i* in dat. sing. of nine adjs. in *us* and *er*, 107; in 1st person sing. of the perf. act., 147, 3; *i*, the characteristic vowel of the 4th conj., 149, 2; cf. 150, 5; *i* or *e* for the Greek ει, 283, E. 6, (1.); increment in, 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; *i* final, quantity of, 285, R. 4.; 293.

-ia, abstracts in, 101, 3; in nom., acc. and voc. plur., 83; 85.

-iacus, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.)

Iambic metre, 314; 303; tetrameter, 314, III.; trimeter, 314, I.; catalectic, 314, IV.; dimeter, 314, VI.; hypermeter. 314, VII.; acephalous, 314, VIII.; catalectic, 314, IX.; iambico-dactylic metre, 318, II.

-ianus, adjs. in, 128, 6, (f.)

-ias, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)

Ibi, ellipsis of before *ubi*, 206, (3.), (a.)

-icis, genitives in, 78, 2, (2.) and (3.) 74, E. 2.

-icius, adjs. in, 128, 2; *-icius* or *-itius*, verbal adjs. in, 129, 5.

Ictus, 308, 3.

-iculus, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, R. 1.

-icus, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.), and 2, (a.), and 6, E.!

Id, before a relative pron., 206, (13.); w. gen., 212, R. 3; *id temporis*, *ætatis*, *id genus*. etc., 234, II., R. 3; 253, R. 3; *id ago*, constr., 273, N. 1; 207, R. 22; *id quod* instead of *quod*, 206, (13.), (b.); as acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.)

Idem, declined, 134, R. 6; how used, 207, R. 27; w. gen., 212, R. 3; w. dat., 222, R. 7; 207, R. 27, (d.); supplying the place of *item*, *etiam*, or *tamen*, 207, R. 27; *idem qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut*, *cum*, etc., 207, R. 27, (a.); 222, R. 7; *idem—idem*, 'at once,' 207, R. 27, (c.); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

Ides, 326, 2.

-ides, and *-iades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.); pr., 291, 4.

Idiotism, 325, 6.

-idis, genitives in, 73, E. 1; 74, E. 2.

Idoneus, qui, 264, 9; 270, R. 1.

-itus, adjs. in, 129, 2.

-ei, in 5th decl., quantity of the *e*, 283, I., E. 2.

-ies, advs. in, 192, II., 3.

Igitur, 198, 6; its place, 279, 3, (b.); equivalent to 'I say,' 278, R. 10.

Ignavus, w. geuitive, 213, R. 1; 275, III., R. 1, (2.)

-ii in genitive contracted, 52; how accented, 14, E.

-ile, derivative nouns in, 100, 9.

-ilis, adjs. in, 129, 4; 128, 4.

Illac, in answer to *qua?* 191, R. 1, (d.)

Illacrimo, w. dat., 224, N. 1, 4.

Illative conjunctions, 198, 6.

Ille, declined, 134; its uses, 207, R. 20—26; w. *quidem*, redundant, 207, R. 21; its relation to time, 207, R. 23, (c.); as a pron. of the 3d pers., 207, R. 20; relation of *hic* and *ille*, 207, R. 23; *ille*, w. subj., 264, 1, N.

Illic, pron., how declined, 134, R. 3; *illic*, *illuc*, *illinc*, advs., their reference, 191, R. 1, (c.)

-illimus, superlatives in, 125, 2.

Illiusmodi, 134, 5.

-illo, verbs in, 187, II., 4.

Illud, w. genitive, 212, 3, N. 1, (a.); pleonastic, 207, R. 22; as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

Illuto, w. dat., 224, 4.

-illus, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, A. 3.

-im in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79; 80; *im* for *eum*, 134, R. 1; *-im-, is*, etc., in pres. subj., 162, 1; adverbs in, 192, I. and II.

Imbecillus, pr., 284. 2, R. 2.

Imbuo, constr., 231, R. 4.

Imitative verbs, 187, 3.

Immemor, gen. of, 112, 2; abl., 113, E. 3; gen. plur., 114, E. 2.